CROP PRODUCTION SCIENCE IN HORTICULTURE **17**

Tropical Root and Tuber Crops

Cassava, Sweet Potato, Yams and Aroids

Vincent Lebot

www.cabi.org

Crop Production Science in Horticulture Series

Series Editors: Jeff Atherton, Professor of Tropical Horticulture, University of the West Indies, Barbados, and Alun Rees (retired) former Head of Crop Science, Glasshouse Crops Research Institute, Horticultural Consultant and Editor of the *Journal of Horticultural Science and Biotechnology*.

This series examines economically important horticultural crops selected from the major production systems in temperate, subtropical and tropical climatic areas. Systems represented range from open field and plantation sites to protected plastic and glass houses, growing rooms and laboratories. Emphasis is placed on the scientific principles underlying crop production practices rather than on providing empirical recipes for uncritical acceptance. Scientific understanding provides the key to both reasoned choice of practice and the solution of future problems.

Students and staff at universities and colleges throughout the world involved in courses in horticulture, as well as in agriculture, plant science, food science and applied biology at degree, diploma or certificate level will welcome this series as a succinct and readable source of information. The books will also be invaluable to progressive growers, advisers and end-product users requiring an authoritative, but brief, scientific introduction to particular crops or systems. Keen gardeners wishing to understand the scientific basis of recommended practices will also find the series very useful.

The authors are all internationally renowned experts with extensive experience of their subjects. Each volume follows a common format covering all aspects of production, from background physiology and breeding, to propagation and planting, through husbandry and crop protection, to harvesting, handling and storage. Selective references are included to direct the reader to further information on specific topics.

Titles Available:

1. **Ornamental Bulbs, Corms and Tubers** A.R. Rees
2. **Citrus** F.S. Davies and L.G. Albrigo
3. **Onions and Other Vegetable Alliums** J.L. Brewster
4. **Ornamental Bedding Plants** A.M. Armitage
5. **Bananas and Plantains** J.C. Robinson
6. **Cucurbits** R.W. Robinson and D.S. Decker-Walters
7. **Tropical Fruits** H.Y. Nakasone and R.E. Paull
8. **Coffee, Cocoa and Tea** K.C. Willson
9. **Lettuce, Endive and Chicory** E.J. Ryder
10. **Carrots and Related Vegetable *Umbelliferae*** V.E. Rubatzky, C.F. Quiros and P.W. Simon
11. **Strawberries** J.F. Hancock
12. **Peppers: Vegetable and Spice Capsicums** P.W. Bosland and E.J. Votava
13. **Tomatoes** E. Heuvelink
14. **Vegetable Brassicas and Related Crucifers** G. Dixon
15. **Onions and Other Vegetable Alliums, 2nd Edition** J.L. Brewster
16. **Grapes** G.L. Creasy and L.L. Creasy
17. **Tropical Root and Tuber Crops: Cassava, Sweet Potato, Yams and Aroids** V. Lebot
18. **Olives** I. Therios

This page intentionally left blank

Tropical Root and Tuber Crops

Cassava, Sweet Potato, Yams and Aroids

Vincent Lebot
CIRAD
Centre de Coopération Internationale
en Recherche Agronomique
pour le Développement
France

www.cabi.org

CABI is a trading name of CAB International

CABI Head Office
Nosworthy Way
Wallingford
Oxfordshire OX10 8DE
UK

Tel: +44 (0)1491 832111
Fax: +44 (0)1491 833508
E-mail: cabi@cabi.org
Website: www.cabi.org

CABI North American Office
875 Massachusetts Avenue
7th Floor
Cambridge, MA 02139
USA

Tel: +1 617 395 4056
Fax: +1 617 354 6875
E-mail: cabi-nao@cabi.org

© V. Lebot 2009. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form or by any means, electronically, mechanically, by photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the copyright owners.

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library, London, UK.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Lebot, Vincent.
Tropical root and tuber crops : cassava, sweet potato, yams, aroids / Vincent Lebot.
p. cm. -- (Crop production science in horticulture series ; 17)
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 978-1-84593-424-8 (alk. paper)
1. Root crops--Tropics. 2. Tuber crops--Tropics. 3. Tropical crops. I. Title. II. Series: Crop production science in horticulture ; 17.

SB210.T76L43 2009
635′.20913--dc22

2008022907

ISBN-13: 978 1 84593 424 8

Typeset by Columns Design, Reading, UK.
Printed and bound in the UK by MPG Biddles Ltd, King's Lynn.

Contents

Acronyms and Abbreviations xiii

Preface xv

Section I Cassava

1
Origin and History 3
Domestication 3
Discovery of the Crop by Western Explorers 7
Present Geographical Distribution 9

2
Taxonomy and Botany 13
Classification 13
Morphological Description of *M. esculenta* Crantz 14
Related Species 18
Cytology 19

3
Breeding and Genetics 21
Objectives and Selection Criteria 21
Sexual Reproduction and Sterility 22
Crossing Techniques and True Seed Production 23
Selection Methods and Programmes 25
Heritability of Major Traits 28
Genotype × Environment Interactions 31
Use of Related Species 32
Polyploidy Breeding 33

Rapid Vegetative Propagation 33
Use of Molecular Markers 35
Transgenic Technologies 36
Germplasm Conservation 37

4
Developmental Physiology 39
Growth Cycle 39
Photoperiodism 44
Temperature 44
Nutrition 45
Water Deficit and Stress 46
Yield Potential 47

5
Agronomy 49
Soil Preparation 49
Propagule Selection and Preparation 50
Plant Densities and Crop Establishment 52
Intercropping 54
Weeding 56
Fertilization and Nutrient Disorders 57
Harvesting 60

6
Pests and Diseases 63
Pests 63
Nematodes 67
Bacteria 67
Fungi 69
Viruses 71
Integrated Pest and Disease Management 75

7
Postharvest Quality and Marketing 77
Chemical Composition 77
Physiological Disorders in Freshly Stored Roots 78
Marketing and Quality Standards 80
Storage Methods 81
Traditional Processing Techniques 83
Industrial Processing 85

Section II Sweet Potato

8
Origin and History 91
Domestication 91
Discovery of the Crop by Western Explorers 93
Present Geographical Distribution 97

9
Taxonomy and Botany 99
Classification 99
Morphological Description of *Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam. 99
Related Species 102
Cytology 104

10
Breeding and Genetics 107
Objectives and Selection Criteria 107
Sexual Reproduction, Incompatibility and Sterility 108
Crossing Techniques and True Seed Production 110
Selection Methods and Programmes 111
Heritability of Major Traits 115
Genotype × Environment Interactions 118
Use of Related Species 119
Rapid Vegetative Propagation 120
Use of Molecular Markers 122
Transgenic Technologies 123
Germplasm Conservation 125

11
Developmental Physiology 127
Growth Cycle 127
Photoperiodism 130
Temperature 131
Nutrition 133
Water Deficit and Stress 134
Yield Potential 136

12
Agronomy 139
Soil Preparation 139
Propagule Selection and Preparation 140
Plant Densities and Crop Establishment 142

Intercropping 143
Weeding 144
Fertilization and Nutrient Disorders 145
Harvesting 149

13
Pests and Diseases 151

Pests 151
Nematodes 156
Bacteria 158
Fungi 160
Viruses 163
Integrated Pest and Disease Management 165

14
Postharvest Quality and Marketing 167

Chemical Composition 167
Physiological Disorders in Freshly Stored Roots 171
Marketing and Quality Standards 171
Storage Methods 172
Traditional Processing Techniques 174
Industrial Processing 177

Section III Yams

15
Origin and History 183

Domestication 183
Discovery of the Crop by Western Explorers 187
Present Geographical Distribution 188

16
Taxonomy and Botany 191

Classification 191
Morphological Description of Major Cultivated *Dioscorea* spp. 193
Related Species 206
Cytology 207

17
Breeding and Genetics 211

Objectives and Selection Criteria 211
Sexual Reproduction and Sterility 213
Crossing Techniques and True Seed Production 214

Selection Methods and Programmes 216
Heritability of Major Traits 218
Genotype × Environment Interactions 219
Use of Related Species 220
Polyploidy Breeding 221
Rapid Vegetative Propagation 221
Use of Molecular Markers 223
Transgenic Technologies 225
Germplasm Conservation 226

18
Developmental Physiology 229

Growth Cycle 229
Photoperiodism 232
Temperature 235
Nutrition 235
Water Deficit and Stress 236
Yield Potential 237

19
Agronomy 239

Soil Preparation 239
Propagule Selection and Preparation 241
Plant Densities and Crop Establishment 243
Intercropping 246
Weeding 246
Fertilization and Nutrient Disorders 248
Harvesting 250

20
Pests and Diseases 253

Pests 253
Nematodes 254
Bacteria 256
Fungi 256
Viruses 260
Integrated Pest and Disease Management 263

21
Postharvest Quality and Marketing 265

Chemical Composition 265
Physiological Disorders in Freshly Stored Tubers 268
Marketing and Quality Standards 269

Storage Methods 270
Traditional Processing Techniques 272
Industrial Processing 274

Section IV Aroids

22
Origin and History 279
Domestication 279
Discovery of the Crop by Western Explorers 281
Present Geographical Distribution 282

23
Taxonomy and Botany 285
Classification 285
Morphological Descriptions of Major Aroids 286
Related Species 298
Cytology 298

24
Breeding and Genetics 301
Objectives and Selection Criteria 301
Sexual Reproduction and Sterility 302
Crossing Techniques and True Seed Production 303
Selection Methods and Programmes 306
Heritability of Major Traits 308
Genotype × Environment Interactions 309
Use of Related Species 311
Polyploidy Breeding 311
Rapid Vegetative Propagation 312
Use of Molecular Markers 313
Transgenic Technologies 315
Germplasm Conservation 315

25
Developmental Physiology 319
Growth Cycle 319
Photoperiodism 322
Temperature 323
Nutrition 324
Water Deficit and Stress 325
Yield Potential 326

26
Agronomy 329
Soil Preparation 329
Propagule Selection and Preparation 330
Plant Densities and Crop Establishment 331
Intercropping 333
Weeding 333
Fertilization and Nutrient Disorders 334
Harvesting 336

27
Pests and Diseases 339
Pests 339
Nematodes 342
Bacteria 343
Fungi 343
Viruses 348
Integrated Pest and Disease Management 349

28
Postharvest Quality and Marketing 351
Chemical Composition 351
Physiological Disorders in Freshly Stored Corms 354
Marketing and Quality Standards 354
Storage Methods 355
Traditional Processing Techniques 357
Industrial Processing 358

References 361

Index 405

This page intentionally left blank

Acronyms and Abbreviations

AFLP	amplified fragment length polymorphism
a.i.	active ingredient
BP	before present
CG	cyanogenic glucosides
CGIAR	Consultative Group on International Agricultural Research
CGR	crop growth rate
CIAT	Centro Internacional de Agricultura Tropical
CIP	Centro Internacional de la Papa, Peru (International Potato Center)
CIRAD	Centre de Coopération Internationale en Recherche Agronomique pour le Développement, France
CTCRI	Central Tuber Crops Research Institute, India
DAP	days after planting
DM	dry matter
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid
ET	evapotranspiration
FAO	Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations
FFS	Farmer field school
HCN	hydrogen cyanide
GA	gibberellic acid
GBSS	granule-bound glucosyl transferase
GCA	general combining ability
G × E	genotype × environment
HPLC	high performance liquid chromatography
IITA	International Institute for Tropical Agriculture
INRA	Institut National de la Recherche Agronomique, France
IPGRI	International Plant Genetic Resources Institute
IPM	integrated pest management
LAI	leaf area index
LED	light emitting diode
LSU	Louisiana State University
MAS	marker-assisted selection

MDH	malate dehydrogenase
NAR	net assimilatory rate
NRCRI	National Root Crop Research Institute, Nigeria
PCR	polymerase chain reaction
PEG	polyethelene glycol
PNC	primary nodal complex
PPB	participatory plant breeding
PPO	polyphenol oxidase
QTL	quantitative trait loci
RH	relative humidity
RAPD	random amplified polymorphic DNA
RFLP	restriction fragment length polymorphism
SCA	specific combining ability
SPE	standard pan evaporation
SNP	single nucleotide polymorphisms
SPYN	South Pacific Yam Network
SSR	simple sequence repeats
TANSAO	Taro Network for South-east Asia and Oceania
TCS	true cassava seeds
TIA	trypsin inhibitor activity
USDA	US Department of Agriculture
VGI	vegetative growth index
WAP	weeks after planting
WP	wettable powder

Preface

Vegeculture, tropical food production based on vegetatively propagated energy crops, probably emerged before agriculture based on cereals and grains. The tropical root and tuber crops (cassava, sweet potato, yams and aroids) are among the oldest on earth. In many areas, especially in the wet tropics, they were the only staples and fed extensive populations before the introduction of cereals. Today, they represent the second most important set of food crops in developing countries, closely following the cereals. They are produced with low inputs but are an important source of income and employment in marginal areas, especially for women. Consumed mostly by the poorest, they contribute greatly to food security and are held in high esteem culturally. They are also cash crops and are used for animal feed or as raw material for industrial processing.

Sometimes considered as plants of the past, they are, on the contrary, crops of the future since they allow local production of carbohydrates, which can substitute expensively imported cereals. With world population projected to increase from the present 6.6 bn to 8 bn by 2025, it may be argued that the demand for carbohydrates will soon exceed the production potential of areas devoted to the cultivation of cereals. This is especially critical in the wet tropics, where the majority of the world population lives. In circumstances of global climatic change, such a scenario may render increased production of tropical root and tuber crops imperative. This may come about all the sooner if some countries decide to retain their harvests of cereals, to divert it into the production of biofuels, or if the ever-increasing cost of energy causes imported foodstuffs to become too expensive.

As a group, the tropical root and tuber crops are efficient plants and if marginal land is to be exploited to support burgeoning populations, their potential, clearly untapped, will need to be developed. Although these species belong to different botanical families, they are grouped together because they are vegetatively propagated, bulky and perishable (Table I). Despite these constraints, they have proven surprisingly transferable and are now cultivated

Table I. Characteristics of the tropical root and tuber crops.

Characteristics	Cassava	Sweet potato	Yams	Aroids
World production 2006 (millions t)*	226	124	51	13
World cultivated area 2006 (million ha)	18.6	9.0	4.6	1.9
World average yield 2006 (fresh t/ha)	12.2	13.7	11.2	6.7
Yield potential (fresh t/ha)	90	120	110	110
Planting material (propagule)	Stems	Vine cuttings	Tubers	Corms, suckers
Growth period (months)	8–36	3–6	8–36	6–16
Optimal rainfall (mm)	1000–1500	750–1000	1200–1500	2500–3500
Optimal temperature (°C)	25–30	20–25	30	20–35
Drought resistant	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
Waterlogged tolerant	No	No	No	Yes
Shade tolerant	No	No	No	Yes
Fertility and organic matter requirements	Low	Low	High	High
Seasonality of crop cycle	No	Yes	Yes	No
In-ground storage life	Long	Moderate	Moderate	Long
Postharvest storage life	Very short	Short	Long	Moderate
Leaves used for human consumption	Yes	No	No	Yes
Leaves used for animal feed	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
Dry matter (% fresh weight, FW)*	30–40	20–35	20–40	20–30
Starch (% FW)	27–37	18–28	20–25	15–25
Starch grain size (diameter in microns)	5–50	2–40	1–70	1–6
Amylose (% starch)	15–30	8–32	10–30	3–45
Gelatinization temperature (°C)	49–73	58–65	69–88	68–75
Total sugars (% FW)	0.5–2.5	1.5–5.0	0.5–2.0	2.0–3.0
Proteins (% FW)	0.5–2.0	1.0–3.0	2.0–4.0	1.5–3.0
Fibres (% FW)	1.0	1.0	0.6	0.5–3.0
Vitamin A (mg/100 g/FW)	17	900	117	0–42
Vitamin C (mg/100 g/FW)	50	35	25	10
Minerals (% FW)	0.5–1.5	1.0	0.5–1.0	0.5–1.5
Energy (kj/100 g/FW)	600	500	440	400
Anti-nutritional compounds	Cyanogens	Trypsin inhibitors	Alkaloids, tannins	Oxalate crystals

Note: *After www.fao.org (2007).

throughout the world. In many places, they are grown together within the same plots, in home gardens or in mixed cropping systems, complementing each other throughout the year to produce a steady supply of energy. Vegeculture is very much alive and adapting to changing environments.

However, compared to other crops of equivalent economic importance, the tropical root and tuber crops are seriously under-researched. Considered in most developing countries as of lesser priority, well below traditional export commodities inherited from the colonial era, these food crops do not receive from governments the attention they deserve. More widely, western ethnocentric prejudices have induced an even more striking neglect of their essential food security role.

They share common biological traits. All are perennial species in the wild but cultivars are annual and need to be replanted to produce desirable underground storage organs. The flowering ability of cultivars is erratic; they have variable ploidy levels but are predominantly allogamous and highly heterozygous. Unlike most crops, they are not grown for their fruits or seeds and their reproductive biology is often unknown to farmers. As the major traits under selection are not assessed visually, the domestication process is somewhat peculiar compared to other crops. The focus is not on the aerial morphotype but rather on the chemotype of underground organs. Wild forms accumulate secondary metabolites as a natural defence against predators and domestication entails reducing these anti-nutritional compounds while increasing those of value in human consumption.

The origin of these species is a puzzling enigma. Cultivated varieties were collected by botanists as early as the voyages of the first European explorers, and these were used to describe the botanical species. Taxonomists argue that the cultivated species are nowadays unknown in the wild state, which encourages much speculation regarding their wild progenitors. The scientific community has engaged in controversial debate to pinpoint their direct ancestors and the exact geographic location of their domestication. Evidence is now accumulating, with the contribution of molecular markers and of archaeological studies, to reveal that domestication probably occurred on several occasions over a vast geographical area and in different periods of history. In fact, the process of domestication is still being used by farmers who capture attractive, volunteer, genotypes appearing spontaneously in their cropping cycles. If they do not use true botanical seeds, they somehow benefit from the results of sexual recombination by cloning spontaneous hybrids. Their varieties do exchange genes and gene flows occur between wild and cultivated forms, sometimes between cultivated and feral plants escaped from cultivation and surviving in the wild via vegetative propagation.

As for most vegetatively propagated species, breeding is based on selection of numerous hybrids evaluated for a few traits of agronomic interest. Parents selected on their individual value are intercrossed and visual appraisal is used to discard undesirable genotypes. This slow process is conducted on research

stations, even though it is well known that genotype × environment interactions are significant. Moreover, the distribution of selected clones is constrained by their low multiplication rate, the large number of smallholders, their geographical isolation, the absence of a 'seed' industry and strict international quarantine regulations. Participatory plant breeding, although considered as illusory for decades, now appears increasingly attractive.

The understanding of the developmental physiology of these crops, an essential prerequisite for improving their performance, is poorly documented, to say the least. Unlike cereals and pulses, they are big plants that are not grown easily in greenhouse pots. It is therefore difficult to secure the controlled conditions necessary for reliable physiological studies.

Because of their biological constraints, when cultivation intensifies, these species often appear vulnerable to build-up of pest and pathogen populations. Their clonal nature accelerates the spread of diseases. Virus infections of planting material greatly enhance dispersal. In many cases, farmers cannot rely on an outside source of healthy planting material and have to manage the health status of their propagating stocks themselves. As these crops are mostly cultivated by smallholders, pesticides are rarely used. Ironically, recently developed pest and disease integrated management systems tend to recommend techniques very similar to ancient ones in which different varieties or intercrops are mixed together, thereby creating obstacles to pathogen expansion within sustainable agroforestry systems. In such conditions, vegeculture appears to be a promising approach for the future, especially as soil disturbance is often limited to the loci of planting.

The lack of technical information is likely to constrain the development of processing these crops for the feeding of urban dwellers. Their underground organs are not of uniform shape, making mechanical peeling difficult. Flesh colour and texture vary and there is a paucity of data on their starches that hinders wider utilization. Among the numerous research priorities are their nutritional properties. Their greater future might come not only from their historical substitution for cereals but also from new uses, or as sources of new forms of starch, or for as yet undefined processed products based on secondary metabolites (e.g. carotenes and anthocyanins). Increasingly, these compounds are needed by food industries and the tropical root and tuber crops have the potential for high yields of them, compared to other crop species.

The aim of this book is to summarize the available information regarding the origin, taxonomy, breeding, physiology, agronomy, pathology and processing of cassava, sweet potato, yams and aroids. Each of these crops deserves a book by itself and it has been a rather cumbersome task to reduce the wealth of information available to a single volume. In so doing, I may well have overlooked some important data in my efforts to extract the most significant.

This book is for my colleagues who are researchers in the developing countries. It attempts to explain that some problem-solving approaches used for one species may often be applicable to another and that none of these

crops, therefore, should be neglected. This book is also for farmers, students and all stakeholders in developing countries, to persuade them that imported food dependency is not inevitable. Local crops and local foods for local markets can be promoted while developing agro-processing industries to satisfy local needs. Finally, this book is for those who, working in prestigious international institutions, consider that the tropical root and tuber crops are a mere folk heritage of the past which cannot adapt to modern globalization when, in fact, they represent a rational local solution for development.

I wish to express my deepest gratitude to the numerous farmers who have taken the time to explain to me the amazing performance of their plants. Special thanks are due to Alfreda Mabonlala for all of the illustrations. The contribution of CIRAD, my home institution, is gratefully acknowledged, as well as that of FFEM (Fond Français pour l'Environnement Mondial).

Vincent Lebot
Port-Vila, May 2008
E-mail: lebot@cirad.fr

This page intentionally left blank

Section I

Cassava

Cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz, Euphorbiaceae, Dicotyledons) is the sixth most important crop after wheat, rice, maize, potato and barley and is the primary staple for more than 800 million people in the world, mostly in the poorest tropical countries. The term cassava is most likely derived from the Arawak word for bread, *casavi* or *cazabi*, and the term manioc from the Tupi word *maniot*, which French explorers converted to manioc. Cassava plays an essential food security role because its matured edible roots can be left in the ground for up to 36 months. The crop therefore represents a household food bank that can be drawn on when adverse climatic conditions limit the availability of other foods. The variety of foods that are made from the roots and the nutritious leaves are reasons why cassava cultivation is expanding worldwide.

This page intentionally left blank

1

Origin and History

DOMESTICATION

The exact place and circumstances of the origin of cassava are mysterious and have been debated profusely. Until the end of the 19th century, all authors agreed that all *Manihot* species originated in South America. They observed that Brazil was the most likely area of origin because, confirming de Candolle and Vavilov's theories on the geographical origin of cultivated plant species, this country was host to the greatest intraspecific variability. This is particularly true in northern Brazil. The Brazilian hypothesis, however, is based on evidence which is fairly recent, dated between AD 110 and 1300 on Marajo Island in the Amazon delta, and other indications found where Rio Ventuari and Orenoque meet, dated around AD 450 (Rogers, 1965). The hypothesis of an exclusive Amazonian origin seems weak, as most *Manihot* species are light-demanding. Other historical and archaeological data point to two other potential centres of origin. One could be in Central America (Mexico, Guatemala and Honduras) and is supported by evidence from Sierra de Tamaulipas in the north-east of Mexico, dated 200 to 900 BC, and on starch grains found in the Tehucan Valley, state of Pueblo, Mexico. The other centre could be located in the dry coastal savannahs of Venezuela and Peru, where there are some graphical representations of roots dated to around 2000 BC. Traditional ovens used to cook *casabe* pancakes made of cassava have been dated to around 1200 BC in Malambo, northern Colombia, and other archaeological remains found on the site of Rancho Peludo (Maracaïbo Lake in Venezuela) and dated to 2700 BC (Léon, 1977).

Manioc use is difficult to document archaeologically because its organic remains are poorly preserved. It is sometimes argued that sweet varieties of manioc, which do not need special preparation, were domesticated first. Present distribution of sweet and bitter cultivars shows that sweet types are predominant in the east of South America, and especially in the Amazon, while bitter types are more frequent in the west and in Central America and Mexico. In fact, sweet types are cultivated mostly where cassava is consumed as a

vegetable and bitter types are cultivated where cassava is processed, but the situation is not clear-cut.

The occurrence of morphologically related species in South and Central America indicates a large number of species in Mexico and on the Pacific coast of Central America, as well as in north-west South America. It is believed that there are four separate areas of origin for cassava: Guatemala and Mexico; the coastal savannahs of north-western South America; eastern Bolivia and north-western Argentina; and eastern Brazil (Spath, 1973). Numerous interspecific hybrids between several *Manihot* species have been reported in Brazil and it is therefore postulated that cassava could be an interspecific hybrid domesticated approximately 2000 years ago, or more recently. Cassava is now known to include cultivated and wild forms and three subspecies have been recognized (Table 1.1).

Spontaneous wild forms of cassava are growing in the central Brazilian state of Goiás and Allem (1994) believes that this latter region is the centre of domestication. Others, however, argue that cassava and its potential ancestor (*M. esculenta* ssp. *flabellifolia*) were probably domesticated in the seasonal forests of the Guyanas and Venezuela or in central Brazil (Piperno and Pearsall, 1998).

Molecular phylogenetic approaches have been used to understand *Manihot* species' relationships in an attempt to elucidate the origin of the cultivated *M. esculenta*. DNA sequences including chloroplast DNA and nuclear regions, such as the internal transcribed spacer region of ribosomal DNA, were used to construct a phylogeny. The overall sequence similarity between species within the genus is striking. *Manihot* is thought to be a fairly recently composed genus, based on morphological similarities and the lack of chromosome differentiation. However, two distinct groups are clearly revealed, one representing South American species and the other representing Central American ones (Bertram, 1993; Hillis *et al*., 1996). In Guatemala, assessment of simple sequence repeat (SSR) diversity has revealed wide genetic diversity within traditional landraces of

Table 1.1. Subspecies of cassava and *Manihot* closest related species.

Subspecies and related species	Geographical origin
Manihot esculenta ssp. *esculenta*	Brazil, cultivated
M. esculenta ssp. *flabellifolia*	Brazil, wild forms
M. esculenta ssp. *peruviana*	Brazil, Peru, wild forms
M. carthaginensis	Countries bordering the Caribbean
M. aescufolia	Mexico, Central America
M. grahami	Brazil, Paraguay, Uruguay, Argentina
M. flabellifolia	Brazil, Paraguay, Uruguay, Argentina
M. leptophylla	Brazil
M. pruinosa	Brazil, states of Mato Grosso and Goiás
M. saxicola	Guiana, Surinam, Venezuela

Source: Allem (2002).

cassava (Fregene *et al.*, 2003). Molecular sequencing also revealed close similarity between cassava (*M. esculenta*) and *M. esculenta* ssp. *flabellifolia*. This close genetic relationship has been confirmed with different markers, including AFLPs (Fregene *et al.*, 1994; Roa *et al.*, 1997) and microsatellites (Olsen and Schaal, 1999, 2001). Analyses of SNPs (single nucleotide polymorphisms) and SSR variation as a means of tracing cassava's evolutionary and geographical origins have also been conducted. The genetic diversity examined in cassava varieties representative of diversity within the crop and in more than 200 individuals collected from wild populations of two closely related *Manihot* species reveal that, for all the genes examined, SNPs and SSR alleles are shared between domesticated cassava and a specific geographical subset of wild *Manihot* populations. These findings indicate that: (i) cassava was probably domesticated from a single wild *Manihot* species, *M. esculenta* ssp. *flabellifolia*, rather than from multiple hybridizing species; and (ii) the crop most likely originated in the southern Amazon basin, in the Brazilian states of Rondónia and Mato Grosso (Olsen, 2004). Microsatellite markers also reveal the occurrence of morphological hybrids between *M. esculenta* and an unidentified wild relative in French Guiana, in the northern part of the Amazon basin (Duputié *et al.*, 2007).

Molecular data confirm previous field observations indicating that species boundaries are not clearly delimited and that *Manihot* species are interfertile (Rogers and Appan, 1973). These molecular data, combined with morphological data, strongly suggest that *M. esculenta* ssp. *flabellifolia* is the wild ancestor of cassava (Allem, 1994, 2002). As this subspecies occurs in the transition zone between the southern humid Amazon forest and the dry Cerrado of Brazil and Peru, it is logical to assume that cassava was domesticated somewhere in this vast geographical zone. This region is also thought to be the area of domestication of groundnut, chilli pepper and jack bean (Piperno and Pearsall, 1998). One of the assumptions was that cassava was domesticated directly from the wild and, because the crop was vegetatively propagated, traditional cultivars preserved similar botanical morphologies as the living ancestor.

Some authors have questioned the findings of molecular marker studies on the basis that these studies are quite geographically and temporally confined, making it difficult to understand or trace widespread domestication, at least from an archaeological standpoint (Perry, 2002). Archaeological studies of plant remains indicate that an increase in seed size is correlated with intensive cultivation and domestication of seed crop plants. For cassava, the hypothesis is that starch granules of domesticated types should be significantly larger than those of wild, or less intensively cultivated, species. This hypothesis was demonstrated as valid when a comparative study analysed modern starch granules from cassava roots collected in the Upper Rio Negro region of Venezuela and the north coast of Peru, and archaeological data. One conclusion of this work is that two clear lines of evidence suggest that the coastal and lowland regional varieties of cassava differ from one another. The pattern of starch granule formation is different in the Peruvian and Panamanian cassava, and the

morphology is also distinct. The distinct types are 8000 years old in the lowlands of Panama and at least 3000 years old in Peru. These may be representatives of different taxa and the one from Panama appears to be related more to the putative ancestor of cassava, *M. esculenta* ssp. *flabellifolia* (Piperno and Holst, 1998).

The first diagnostic phytoliths from the underground storage organs of cassava have demonstrated their usefulness in identifying prehistoric root processing with a study of stone artefacts from a Valdivia household (2800–2400 BC, calibrated) at Real Alto, Ecuador. Heat altered (gelatinized) and unaltered starches from cassava were also found on these stone tools. In combination, these phytoliths and starch residues provide evidence that both raw and cooked cassava were processed in Ecuador's early agricultural economy (Chandler-Ezell *et al.*, 2006).

The data resulting from these various studies support the multiple domestication hypothesis (Ugent *et al.*, 1986), rather than the single origin hypothesis. Cassava could have been domesticated more than once over time and in distant sites across the Brazilian states of Rondónia, Mato Grosso and Goiás (Allem, 2002). Some parts of Peru, Ecuador and Bolivia, however, cannot be excluded (Fig. 1.1).

Fig. 1.1. Putative areas of origin and initial domestication of cassava (according to Allem, 1994, and Olsen and Schaal, 1999).

Cassava domestication is an ongoing process which has been comprehensively described. Farmers allow seedlings that appear in their fields to grow (Boster, 1985). Seedlings can result from cross-pollination between different varieties and different related species. Patterns of genetic diversity reveal that the incorporation of these volunteer seedlings is frequent and leads to an increase in a farmer's variety portfolio (Elias *et al.*, 2001). These seedlings contribute new genotypes but many are inbred, whereas multiplied clones are highly heterozygous since vigour, plant size and seedling heterozygosity are correlated, as in most plant species. In Guyana, Amerindian farmers traditionally select heterozygous seedlings. When they weed the fields, they kill small volunteers but retain large ones (Pujol *et al.*, 2005).

Domesticated cassava probably evolved from a fire-adapted and fire-following ancestor. Cassava was therefore pre-adapted to slash-and-burn agriculture, which allowed the spread of this species into habitats wetter than those colonized by its wild ancestors (Ellis *et al.*, 1982). However, cassava stops all photosynthetic functions, closing its stomata, when atmospheric humidity decreases, even when there is still water in the soil (El-Sharkawy and Cock, 1987). Some argue that this behaviour, typical of forest plants, may indicate an origin in the humid Amazon, where the relative humidity is rarely less than 70% (Allem, 2002). The debate is far from ended.

DISCOVERY OF THE CROP BY WESTERN EXPLORERS

Cassava was first introduced into Africa by Portuguese traders around 1550. The Portuguese learnt from the Tupinamba Indians of eastern Brazil how to process cassava into *farinha*. This flour was used as a provision for ships travelling between Africa and Brazil. It was first cultivated in Africa for the sole purpose of provisioning slave ships until 1600. Cassava was cultivated in Benin, Sào Tomé and Principe and on the Congo coast near the delta (Cabinda). During the 17th century, its cultivation progressed slowly in Angola, Zaire and along the Guinea Gulf. Cassava became an important food in Nigeria as early as 1700, but it seems that its cultivation and consumption in Africa only became significant in the late 1800s. It is argued that this development might have been the result of the introduction, by freed slaves, of processing and preparation techniques developed originally in Brazil (Jones, 1969).

The diffusion of cassava into the interior is poorly documented and only reported by European explorers who penetrated central Africa in the 19th century. Early dissemination of cassava to inland areas, at least in pre-colonial Congo, was carried out solely by Africans. When Europeans entered the interior, first by Stanley in 1877, the crop was already established. It is assumed that it initially expanded throughout the Bantu territories through traditional trade. Its spread was probably slow. Linguistic studies based on the similarities of local names indicate several routes. One extended from Angola to Mozambique, while another went from Zaire to Zimbabwe. The spread of

cassava towards the north-east along the Congo might have been faster. It has been suggested that cassava filled an important niche in tropical forest agriculture where few crops were properly adapted, most of the endemic African crop species (millet, fonio, niébé, voandzou, African rice, sorghum, yams) being domesticated in the savannahs or nearby. Many of the people of the Congo Basin were already accustomed to plantains, which required similar cultivation and processing techniques. Reports from 19th-century French explorers in central Africa support the hypothesis of diffusion along the Oubangui River. Cassava was introduced in francophone Africa along the coast of Cameroon and Gabon and, in this case also, it spread along fluvial trade routes. It became the principal food crop in the Estuaire (south of Libreville) in 1865 and further inland, in Franceville, in 1875. Unlike central Africa, the diffusion of cassava in West Africa was slow and most of the spread occurred in the 19th and 20th centuries (Carter *et al.*, 1992).

In the late 19th and 20th centuries, colonial administrators encouraged its diffusion and increased cultivation. Since then, its cultivation in Africa has expanded constantly, especially in the drier savannah areas. Just as in South America, in central African forest areas where cassava is an important staple, mostly bitter types are cultivated, while in coastal areas where cassava is complementary to other foods, sweet types are cultivated. The biological characteristics of the plant, its ability to survive after cultivation and the viability of its cuttings have contributed greatly to its spread. The consumption of cassava leaves was probably an African invention, but they are highly appreciated in Madagascar. In the Indian Ocean, the French navy introduced cassava into the Réunion and Mauritius Islands in 1738 and 1739, respectively. From there, the French introduced it into Madagascar, where it was cultivated on the central high plateaux of Imerina in 1875.

Western explorers introduced it to Ceylon (Sri Lanka) in 1786 and Calcutta in 1794. From the Indian Ocean islands, it was introduced to East Africa via Zanzibar in 1799 and reached Lake Victoria in 1862. Stanley recorded it in Uganda in 1878 (Silvestre and Arraudeau, 1983). In India, the Portuguese settlers introduced cassava to Goa during the 16th century, and from there to the coast of Kerala. Spanish traders introduced cassava in the Philippines, directly from Mexico, in the 17th century. From there it went to Indonesia during the 18th century. Cassava was brought to Penang from Jakarta and the first recorded commercial planting in Malaysia was in Malacca state around 1851. Just as in Africa, it seems that its cultivation really expanded in South-east Asia during the 19th century. In the Pacific, cassava was introduced by the French to New Caledonia from Réunion Island and then to the New Hebrides (now Vanuatu). Cassava reached Queensland, Australia, at the beginning of the 20th century.

PRESENT GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

Nowadays, cassava is cultivated in all the tropical countries of the world, including some isolated and remote islands of the Pacific. The great adaptability of cassava to marginal areas and its flexible growth cycle facilitate expansion worldwide, especially where there is high population pressure. When land is scarce, food requirements per unit of cultivated area rise and farmers shift to crops such as cassava with its higher output of energy per hectare. A few countries, however, account for the majority of world production (Scott *et al.*, 2000; FAO, 2007) (Table 1.2).

Table 1.2. Major cassava producing countries in the world in 2006.

Region	Country	Production (thousand t)	Area (thousand ha)	Average yield (t/ha)
Africa	Nigeria	45,721	3,810	12.0
	Congo (ex Zaire)	14,974	1,846	8.1
	Mozambique	11,458	1,105	10.4
	Ghana	9,638	790	12.2
	Angola	8,810	757	11.6
	Tanzania	6,500	670	9.7
	Uganda	4,926	379	13.0
	Benin	2,524	173	14.5
	Madagascar	2,359	389	6.1
	Cameroon	2,100	350	6.0
Asia	Thailand	22,584	1,071	21.1
	Indonesia	19,928	1,223	16.9
	Vietnam	7,714	475	16.2
	India	7,620	242	31.4
	China	4,318	266	16.2
	Cambodia	2,182	96	22.6
	Philippines	1,757	204	8.6
	Malaysia	375	38	9.9
	Sri Lanka	226	24	9.6
	Myanmar	207	16.5	12.5
America	Brazil	26,713	1,902	14.0
	Paraguay	4,800	300	16.0
	Colombia	2,000	180	11.1
	Peru	945	86	11.0
	Venezuela	489	41	11.7
	Cuba	450	80	5.6
	Bolivia	374	37	10.1
	Haiti	327	71	4.6
	Argentina	176	18	10.0
	Ecuador	100	23	4.4

Source: www.fao.org (2007).

Africa produces more cassava than the rest of the world. Total production in Africa increased from c. 35 million t in 1965 to over 80 million t in 1995 at an annual growth rate of 2.9%, which is roughly the same as the population growth rate. The increases in production during the past two decades were due largely to increases in cultivated area rather than in yield. The crop frequently replaces fallow, or is planted just before fallow. Cassava also replaces more demanding root crops, such as yams, in humid zones. Although African cassava production has grown from 90 to 145 million t in the past 4 years, and is expected to double over the next 20 years, disease has spoiled attempts to increase yields even further.

Nigeria is now the largest producer in the world. The constant increase in consumption and output of cassava in this country during the past two decades can be attributed to a combination of factors. The low per capita income and rapid population growth make cassava both a staple and a food security crop; but also, a ban imposed on cereal imports between 1987 and 1990 stimulated production. Multiple uses increase consumption, the roots being consumed in fresh and boiled form, in toasted granules (*gari*), chips, flour (*lafun*) and as unsteamed paste (*fufu*). Urbanization and rising incomes are also strengthening the demand for cassava (Nweke *et al.*, 1994). Nigeria is host country to the International Institute of Tropical Agriculture (IITA), which has been conducting long-term research programmes on cassava for more than four decades. Nigerian farmers have the opportunity to be early beneficiaries of the technical packages developed by IITA and improved varieties and cultivation techniques are quickly and widely adopted.

Mostly, cassava is consumed locally, so the crop does not play an important role as a foreign exchange earner but, with Asian countries having difficulties in satisfying growing international demand, African countries may have opportunities in the European Union market. Already, Ghana is exporting significant volumes of cassava chips. Cassava leaves, rich in protein, are a preferred vegetable in many African countries.

Cassava is grown today in all the tropical and subtropical countries of Asia. The major producing countries are Indonesia, Thailand, India (Kerala and Tamil Nadu states), China (Guangdong and Guanxi provinces located along the Vietnamese boarder), the Philippines and Vietnam. The soils used for cassava are usually of low fertility, as the best soils are reserved for rice. Most of Thailand's production occurs on the north-east and central plains. In Indonesia, the most important cassava producing areas are Java, south Sumatra and Kalimantan. Cassava is becoming an important crop in the Pacific Islands, one of the most intensive users of root crops in the world, but other traditional root crops predominate.

Latin America currently represents less than one-fifth of the global cassava output. Brazil alone accounts for about 70% of the region's output. Some of the world's most advanced cassava cropping systems are found in Brazil's subtropical regions, which are mostly producing starch for food and industrial

uses. In Colombia, almost half of the production comes from the seasonally dry Atlantic coast region and the other half from the Andean valleys of the eastern range and from the central part of the country. Cassava traditionally is planted by smallholders, but large-scale commercial plantings are being established in response to demand by processors. Colombia is host to the Centro Internacional de Agricultura Tropical (CIAT), which is the world's leading international research institute on cassava, and local farmers are the direct beneficiaries of the Institute's results. In Cuba, cassava is found on large state-owned farms using high-input cropping systems, while in Haiti it is cultivated mostly by smallholders with very limited means.

This page intentionally left blank

2

Taxonomy and Botany

CLASSIFICATION

The genus *Manihot* belongs to the Dicotyledon family, Euphorbiaceae. The Euphorbiaceae are composed of not less than 300 genera and 8000 species. Almost all of them are tropical species and produce latex. *Manihot glaziovii*, for example, was once cultivated in Brazil and Nigeria for rubber production. The genus *Manihot* has been classified under the *Manihotae* tribe and comprises 98 tropical species, all from the New World, among which the only commercially cultivated one is *M. esculenta* Crantz (Rogers and Appan, 1973).

Manihot species range in habit from herbs to shrubs, small trees and even climbing vines. All species have normal or tuberizing roots rich in starch and can produce toxic cyanogenic glucosides (CG). Their skin can range from smooth to rough and peeling. Lenticels and the central vascular strand are clearly visible. Their stems are very variable and can reach 30 cm in diameter, with extremely short or long internodes. Stem skin colour varies from very light grey, brown, yellowish or reddish. Internal tissues are always tender. Leaves are alternate, sessile or with a well-developed petiole. The lamina is highly variable. They are spirally arranged on the stem and have petioles 5–30 cm long, usually longer than the blades. The blades are deeply divided with 5–7, occasionally 3–9 lobes, obovate, lanceolate, pointed and with entire margins. The young leaves vary in colour from yellowish green to deep purple.

The inflorescences of the *Manihot* species are monoecious and, in extremely rare cases, dioecious, grouped in racemes or panicles. These are generally composed of one to a few female flowers, attached at their base to long pedicels and numerous male flowers with shorter pedicels. Pistillate flowers open before staminate flowers of the same inflorescence. Pollination is by insects. All *Manihot* species out-cross and this leads to extremely heterozygous gene pools. The fruits are capsules and can be elliptic, conical, smooth, or with small wings along their length. The seeds of all *Manihot* species present a caruncle, which usually plays a role in water exchange, enhancing germination in dry areas. The cotyledons are flat and large.

MORPHOLOGICAL DESCRIPTION OF *M. ESCULENTA* CRANTZ

Cassava flowers are borne on terminal panicles, with the axis of the panicle being continuous with that of the branch. Each panicle bears male and female flowers. The first ones are numerous and located near the tip of the inflorescence. The female ones occur at the base of the axis, on the lower part of the inflorescence, and are fewer in number than the male flowers. Each flower, male or female, has five united sepals and there are no petals. The male flowers have ten stamens grouped in two whorls of five each. The anthers are small and there is a nectar-bearing gland within the flower. The female flower has an ovary, mounted on a ten-lobed glandular disc, with three locules and six ridges (3–4 mm), each containing a single ovule. The stigma has three lobes, joining together to form a single style. The female flowers of *M. esculenta* always open first and the male flowers of the same inflorescence open 1 week or 10 days later (protogyny). However, male and female flowers on different branches of the same plant can open at the same time and self-pollination can occur. Cassava is cross-pollinated by insects. The fruit is a trilocular capsule, 1–5 cm in diameter, with six prominent ridges. Each locule contains a single carunculate seed (Fig. 2.1).

When cassava grows from seed, the plant develops a taproot, which becomes fibrous and tuberous. When grown from cuttings, adventitious roots develop from the base of the cuttings into a fibrous root system. Roots are the main storage organ in cassava. Only a few fibrous roots become tuberous and most of the others continue their function of nutrient absorption. The cassava root is circular in cross-section and is thicker at its proximal end. The distal portion tapers slowly towards the end and, beyond the tuberous section, the root extends as a normal root. The tuberous root is connected to the base of the plant by a woody section called the neck. The internal section of a starchy root is composed of three parts:

1. The bark (also called periderm), representing the outermost layer, is an assemblage of dead cork cells which seal the surface of the root. The periderm represents 0.5–2.0% of the total weight of the root and can be removed easily by simple scratching. As the root develops, new cambium forms and produces cork and restores the integrity of the protective layer.
2. Just beneath the periderm is the peel layer (also called phelloderm, cortex or secondary skin), which is only 1–2 mm thick and is usually white, pinkish or brownish. It can represent between 8 and 15% of the total weight of the root and is removed easily from the central cylinder by pulling.
3. The central portion representing the bulk of the root is the parenchyma. The flesh consists mostly of parenchymatous cells with large amounts of stored starch and is the edible portion. Extremely thin vascular bundles ramify through the flesh. There are no eyes or buds on the cassava root surface and it cannot be used as a means of vegetative propagation (Fig. 2.2).

Fig. 2.1. Inflorescences, male and female flowers and fruits of cassava.

A single cutting can produce one to three stems, the number of stems depending on the number of nodes and the type of planting of the cutting. Planted flat cuttings produce more stems. The mature stem is woody and the nodes present protuberant leaf scars. The main stems divide di- or trichotomously, producing secondary branches. Branching is the consequence of the transformation of the apex into a flowering bud. Two to three branches can be produced by the apical meristems. Cassava plants therefore branch depending on their flowering and some varieties can produce up to ten successive ramifications while others have none. Branching is variable: some cultivars branch near the base, others are erect and branch nearer the apex.

Older leaves are shed and are replaced by those formed by terminal buds, producing a hemispheric appearance of the canopy. Cassava leaves are lobed with palmated veins. The number of lobes ranges from 3 to 9, occasionally 11. Leaves located near the inflorescence are usually reduced in size and number of lobes. The leaves are alternate. Mature leaves are usually glabrous. The upper leaf surface is covered with a shiny and waxy epidermis. Most stomata are

Fig. 2.2. Transverse section of the cassava root.

found on the lower surface of the leaves (hypostomatous leaves) but some cultivars also have some stomata on the upper surface (amphystomatous leaves), although this was found in only 2% of the 1500 cultivars studied by El-Sharkawy and Cock (1987). Cassava photosynthesis follows a C_3 pathway adapted to a tropical environment requiring high temperature and high solar radiation (Angelov *et al.*, 1993).

The morphological characteristics of cassava are highly variable (Fig. 2.3). Given the large number of cassava varieties (morphotypes) cultivated in a large diversity of environments, it is difficult to describe precisely the extent of the continuum of variation found in farmers' fields. There are numerous morphological descriptors that can be used for cultivar characterization. The following are the basic descriptors (Alves, 2002) to be considered when identifying a cultivar:

- Apical leaf colour and pubescence.
- Central lobe shape.
- Petiole colour.
- Stem cortex and external colours.

Fig. 2.3. Leaf shapes of different varieties.

- Root peduncle presence.
- Root flesh, cortex and external colours.
- Root epidermis texture.
- Flowering.

The cassava plant can release cyanide in quantities that are toxic to humans. Cyanide occurs as two related cyanogenic glucosides (CG), linamarin and lotaustralin, but linamarin alone accounts for 93% of the total. Both the roots and the leaves contain CGs. These two CGs liberate hydrogen cyanide (HCN) on hydrolysis. At high concentrations, cyanide can cause death. The lethal dose of HCN for humans, when taken by mouth, ranges between 0.5 and 3.5 mg/kg body weight. Cyanogenesis occurs when the plant tissue is damaged and the linamarin present in the vacuole is brought into contact with linamarase, an endogenous enzyme in the walls of the cassava plant cells producing acetone cyanohydrin. All these compounds, acetone cyanohydrin, CGs and HCN, are commonly referred to as cyanogens. The cyanogen content is expressed in mg/kg, ppm (parts per million), or mg HCN/kg (Dufour, 2007). All cassava varieties contain CGs in

varying concentrations. The total cyanogen content of the roots varies from less than 20 mg to more than 4000 mg/kg dry matter (DM). The factors responsible for this variation are not yet clearly understood (McMahon *et al.*, 1995), but the genotype plays a determining role. Cultivars are classified as sweet (less than 100 mg total cyanogens/kg peeled fresh roots) and bitter (more than 100 mg cyanogens). Bitter taste is correlated with the cyanogen content and genotypes rich in CGs are easily identified (Chiwona *et al.*, 2004).

RELATED SPECIES

The taxonomy of *Manihot* has long been obscure because of some overlap in morphology between species, the plasticity of some morphological traits and the lack of highly discriminating characters. The classification developed by Rogers and Appan (1973) is accepted nowadays. It is based on multivariate analysis of 44 morphophysiological traits and classifies the 98 species in 19 different sections, varying from trees in the *Arboreae* section (i.e. *M. glaziovii*) to small shrubs in the *Stipularis* section. The cultivated species, *M. esculenta*, is placed in the *Manihot* section of the genus. This section contains low-growing shrubs adapted to savannahs and grasslands.

The majority of *Manihot* species are colonizers of well-drained limestone soils. They rarely become the dominant species in their habitat and are rather sporadic in their spatial distribution. There are two centres of diversity for the genus *Manihot*: the first is located in Brazil and hosts at least 80 different species. The other is located in Central America and hosts approximately 17 *Manihot* species. In Brazil, microcentres of diversity have also been defined where large numbers of species are concentrated in fairly small areas of approximately 2000 km^2. These microcentres result from frequent hybridizations between species and a highly heterogenic habitat that contributes to the isolation of fragmented gene pools. The region of greatest specific diversity is the Central Plateau of Brazil with 58 species. The majority of these species are found in dry regions, only a few being in the rainforest. Some, such as *M. pohlii*, *M. zehntneri* and *M. grahamii*, are weedy and able to colonize recently disturbed habitats rapidly. Tree-like species such as *M. glaziovii* are found mostly in north-eastern Brazil, whereas shrub-like species are found in the drier central Brazil (Schaal *et al.*, 2006).

There are numerous reports of natural hybridization among *Manihot* species, between wild species and between these and cassava. Several morphological markers, such as lobe shape, flower disc colour, fruit colour and shape, have been scored in progenies resulting from controlled crosses between cassava and wild *Manihot* species and their segregations are highly variable. Interspecific hybrids of cassava with *M. glaziovii*, *M. pseudoglaziovii*, *M. aesculifolia*, *M. pilosa*, *M. dichotoma*, *M. pohlii*, *M. neusana* and *M. anomala* were obtained successfully through controlled crosses, although their frequency was rather low (Nassar, 1989).

CYTOLOGY

All wild *Manihot* species examined cytologically have a chromosome number of $2n = 36$. Despite this fairly high chromosome number, all species behave like diploids at meiosis. Cassava generally is considered based on regular meiosis as a normal diploid with $2n = 36$ chromosomes (Allem, 1994) but natural triploids also occur and, in Vanuatu, they are selected by farmers and cultivated for their attractive features. There are occasionally some meiotic irregularities such as delayed separation and non-orientation of bivalents, restitution nuclei, monads and polyads (Bai, 1987). Cassava also has been reported as an allopolyploid, in fact a segmental allo-tetraploid, with a basic chromosome number of $x = 9$, suggesting that cassava could be derived from crosses between two closely related parental taxa. Studies conducted with isozymes, co-dominant markers, support this hypothesis and show a disomic inheritance at 12 loci (Magoon *et al.*, 1969; Umanah and Hartmann, 1973; Jennings and Iglesias, 2002).

Apparently, mitosis frequencies in root tips are higher between 7:30 and 8:30 a.m. Root tips are pretreated with 8-hydroxyquinoline for 1 h or with 0.2% colchicine for 10 min and fixed in 1:3 acetic acid:alcohol (Sreekumari *et al.*, 2000). Squashes are done in acetocarmine. Information on mitosis is, however, rather weak. On the other hand, meiosis has been well studied. There are remarkable differences between varieties, for chromosome behaviour during meiosis, which could be the result of an allopolyploid origin of cassava. For meiosis studies, pollen stainability and cytological behaviour, flower buds of appropriate stages are fixed in a mixture of three parts ethyl alcohol to one part proprionic acid for 2–3 days, after which they are transferred to 70% alcohol. Metaphase is extremely brief and occurs between 9:00 and 10:00 a.m. At that stage, chromosomes are between 0.7 and 1.3 μ and are generally of subspherical or ovoid shape, and are sometimes curved (Miège and Miège, 1954).

Anthesis occurs 2 weeks after meiosis. The pollen grains are stained in 2% propionocarmine, the deeply stained pollen being considered viable (Hahn *et al.*, 1990). When flower buds are 1.6 mm in diameter, pollen grains are between 20–25 μm and reach 30 μm when the buds are 1.8 mm in diameter, which is when tetrads mucilage is disappearing. When the buds reach 2.5 mm in diameter, pollen grains reach approximately 90 μm. When mature, they can reach up to 190 μm in diameter. Grains with a diameter above 130 μm germinate easily and represent approximately 60% of the pollen grains.

This page intentionally left blank

3

Breeding and Genetics

IITA in Ibadan, Nigeria, and CIAT in Cali, Colombia, began successful breeding programmes in the 1970s. National research institutes in Brazil, Cuba, India (Central Tuber Crops Research Institute (CTCRI) in Trivandrum, Kerala), Thailand, Indonesia, the Philippines and Vietnam among other countries, have also conducted scientific research on cassava breeding.

OBJECTIVES AND SELECTION CRITERIA

Objectives vary from one country to another and depend on the final use of the crop, whether for industrial needs or human consumption and subsistence. For industry, yield improvement (starch and DM) per unit of area and time is the main objective, while the situation is more complex for the subsistence crop, where chemotype and yield stability are very important.

There is some consensus on the ideotype (Cock *et al.*, 1979; Silvestre and Arraudeau, 1983; Jennings and Iglesias, 2002), namely:

- Only one stem per cutting, with little or no branching.
- High ratio roots/stems.
- Leaf area index (LAI) between 3 and 3.5.
- Large single leaf area.
- Short internodes and total height of the plant less than 2 m.
- Leaves of long life.
- Approximately eight tuberous roots.
- Short, compact roots, easy to harvest and to peel.
- Quality traits (starch, protein, carotene, low cyanogenic glucosides).
- Reduced postharvest deterioration.

The necessity of combining all these major traits is still debated and in Madagascar, for example, some hybrids with profuse branching have produced very high yields. There are, of course, many other traits that improved cultivars should have. Yield stability is associated with tolerance or resistance to local

pests and diseases. In Africa, cassava mosaic disease (CMD) and cassava brown streak disease (CBSD) are the major constraints. In India, a disease similar to CMD is also a constraint in Kerala and the southern region. Bacterial blight (induced by *Xanthomonas axonopodis* pv. *manihotis*) is present in Asia, Africa and Latin America and is also a major constraint. Arthropod pests feed on cassava leaves and reduce its productivity drastically. Clones with increased pubescence on the leaves, especially in their early developmental stage, present increased levels of resistance to these pests and this trait has been introduced into new varieties (Bellotti, 2002).

SEXUAL REPRODUCTION AND STERILITY

Erect, non-branching types are preferred by farmers and the elite cultivars in most regions are often those that flower poorly, or not at all. Consequently, it is often difficult to cross them with others. Some clones can flower as early as 6 weeks after planting (WAP), while others will do so only after at least 10 months of growth. Cassava flowers best at moderate temperatures, approximately 24°C. Generally, the first inflorescences which appear with the first ramifications tend to abort and only the ones following the subsequent ramifications are functional. Female flowers are open 10–14 days before the male ones on the same branch. The opening of the last female flowers might coincide with the opening of the first male flowers located on the same inflorescence, or with those of other inflorescences located on the same plant. Self-pollination can occur because male and female flowers on different branches or on different plants of the same clone can be open at the same time. During the day, female flowers remain open for 5–6 h before the male flowers open around noon. All flowers are closed during the second half of the afternoon. Anther dehiscence starts approximately 2 h after the opening of the flower and is complete after 1 h.

Pollen longevity is approximately of 1 week and the grains are disseminated by wind and insects. Abundant nectar produced 3 days before the flowers open and the sticky nature of the pollen and stigmas contribute to efficient insect pollination. Bees are especially fond of cassava flowers and visit them actively. The natural pollination rate is quite high. It has been demonstrated that plants located 30 m away from the father plant can be pollinated naturally (Kawano *et al.*, 1978). In practice, it is recommended therefore that genotypes are isolated by a distance of at least 50 m to avoid unwanted accidental pollination of mother plants.

Male sterility is frequent among cultivars. Pollen sterility is often observed and is thought to be the result of meiosis perturbations. Clones that are male sterile can have a normal formation of tetrads but, in some cases, monads and triads are also encountered. This suggests the formation of a nucleus after the first or second meiosis division, the absence of division, or the irregular formation of the cell wall. Pollen grains of very variable size are formed and

many male flowers are sterile and fall down before their full development. Other flowers produce empty anthers, or anthers that have encountered developmental problems. Male sterility could be attributed either to the allopolyploid origin of the species *M. esculenta*, which leads to meiosis abnormalities or to particular genes. The problem needs further investigation to find out how breeders might take advantage of this phenomenon.

CROSSING TECHNIQUES AND TRUE SEED PRODUCTION

Propagation from seeds occurs spontaneously in farmers' fields and farmers have, consciously or not, also contributed to the genetic improvement of the crop and the generation of useful diversity.

For controlled hand pollination between two parents, the pollen can be collected in bags and preserved for a few days in a dehydrated atmosphere with silica gel. Stigma receptivity lasts approximately 24 h. The day following the opening of the female flower, the stigma turns brown, dries and falls off. Apparently, the time between pollination and fertilization is 8–19 h. Stigma receptivity is quite brief and necessitates, when hand pollinating, repeating the operation every day to make sure that pollen is applied very soon after the opening of the flowers. For the production of full-sib progenies, all male and female flowers that are already open on a single inflorescence are eliminated. The inflorescence is then protected in a bag, ensuring good ventilation (not in plastic). Anthers that have been collected on the male parent are applied to the stigmas. Capsules mature in 10–14 weeks and seeds are harvested when the capsules are brown and start to open.

Another system is to plant a set of varieties in a specially designed crossing block and to eliminate all the male flowers from the plants used as female parents. Muslin bags are then placed with netting bags to catch the seeds as the capsules dehisce explosively. Polycross field designs using a random distribution of selected genotypes replicated several times are common and allow the production of cross-bred seeds, although this does not prevent occasional self-pollination. The fertility of some genotypes can be very low, but an average of one seed per capsule is commonly obtained, with a maximum of three. Studies conducted in India have shown that the number of capsules per plant can range from 16 to 168 for a male sterile cultivar ('Ambakadan') (Rajendran *et al.*, 2000).

In the humid ecological zone of Nigeria, a comparative study was conducted to assess the hybrid seed production efficiency after natural and artificial pollinations conducted on ten different genotypes. The time to 50% flowering and the number of pistillate and staminate flowers showed significant variation among parents. More staminate than pistillate flowers were produced in all ten genotypes, with a mean ratio of 8:1 (staminate:pistillate) per genotype. The hybrid seed production was also found to be significantly different in the ten

genotypes after natural and artificial pollination, and natural pollination was found to be three times more effective than artificial pollination for the rate of seed set. It was concluded that, in Nigeria, optimum seed production was obtained using male sterile females combined with male fecund parents, properly arranged in the field to promote cross-pollinations by wind or insects (Ogburia and Okele, 2001).

Cassava being highly heterozygous, its sexual progenies are heterogeneous with wide morphological variation among them. This type of plant–plant variation is not acceptable to commercial growers due to the strong preference of farmers for a particular variety, but in cases where the plant is grown for subsistence, plant variation is not a serious problem and true cassava seeds (TCS) give some advantages. The propagation rate is increased more than 15-fold and TCS are much more compact than cuttings (1.5 kg of TCS can cover 1 ha). TCS also have a longer viability than cuttings and can be stored easily and viruses are not seed transmitted. Finally, TCS can contribute to the rapid spread of the crop in distant areas because they are not bulky and are therefore easy to distribute. Seed production is, relative to the number of flowers produced, quite low. In some rare cases, it can be over 30% of the number of flowers pollinated, but for some genotypes, it is close to nil (Rajendran *et al.*, 2000).

In moist tropical climates, germination rates are very low after 6 months of storage. If the atmosphere is sufficiently dry, however, it is possible to store cassava seeds for up to 2 years at temperatures between 20 and 30°C. During storage, the seed is subject to biochemical transformation, mostly involving lipids. As early as the 4th day, there is an increase in enzyme activity, transforming fat to fatty acids. Other enzymes also produce sugars and starch, and proteins disappear within 8 days. Seed germination occurs between 10 and 20 days after sowing. Germination percentage declines with the storage duration. Different treatments have been used to improve the germination percentage: scarification, immersing the seeds in water at different temperatures and treatment with sulphuric acid at different concentrations and for varying lengths of time. All have negative or no effects.

High temperatures stimulate germination. Dry heat treatments (at 60°C or more) over a period of days or weeks improve germination. Under moisture conditions favourable for germination, maximum germination occurs when the mean temperature is around 33°C (Ellis *et al.*, 1982; Pujol *et al.*, 2005). Light appears to have a negative effect, decreasing the probability of germination or slowing down germination. If sown directly in soil, germination rates are between 30 and 50%. But, when trays are fully covered by dark cloth and kept for 2 weeks, a germination percentage of over 50% is easily obtained. In the field, good germination can be obtained by spreading a uniform, thick layer of soil on the seeds.

When sown directly *in situ*, survival of the seedlings ranges between 30 and 50%. Competition from weeds and unfavourable soil conditions often result in poor establishment. If the seedlings are managed in a nursery and

transplanted to the field, the establishment rate varies from 70 to 90%. Seedlings produce fibrous taproots and their removal while transplanting enhances tuber development. In India, studies conducted on popular cultivar ('Ambakadan') progenies indicated that seedlings had a CG and DM content comparable to the parents, and some of the hybrids were found to have a better DM content than the parents (Rajendran *et al.*, 2000). Tuber yield of first clones (C1) is significantly superior to that of the seedlings.

Farmers select their own cultivars from seedlings. In Ghana, a study showed that most communities had grown cassava for more than 100 years and had acquired and abandoned landraces (Manu *et al.*, 2005). Farmers do not understand the role of pollination in setting seed, do not purposely plant seeds and ignore or weed out cassava seedlings. However, some use stem cuttings from self-sown seedlings, often when planting material from their crops is scarce, and some purposely grow cuttings from a few such seedlings. Many seedlings are both reported and seen in newly planted crops, suggesting that some may be used accidentally as planting material, especially those seedlings that are perceptually indistinct from the planted crop, resulting in polyclonal landraces.

In Costa Rica, the role of the agricultural practices of Chibchan Amerindians in the maintenance of high levels of diversity has been demonstrated using isozyme markers. Low weeding, typical in traditional home gardens, contributes to the survival of seedlings and their subsequent capture in vegetative propagation (Zaldivar *et al.*, 2004).

Finally, in Vanuatu, South Pacific, it appears that the incorporation of volunteer plants, the products of sexual recombination, occurs commonly enough to have affected genotypic diversity greatly. The use of SSRs revealed a large excess of heterozygotes at almost all loci, indicating that human selection, perhaps also bolstered by natural selection, has favoured heterozygous genotypes. SSR data confirm that mechanisms linked to clonal propagation, mutations, genotype × environment interactions and sexual recombinations have promoted diversification. It is, however, difficult to weigh the respective contributions of these processes (Sardos *et al.*, 2006).

SELECTION METHODS AND PROGRAMMES

Programmes start with the collection, characterization and evaluation of germplasm, followed by crossing the selected accessions. The difference in agronomic performance between artificially produced hybrids and local traditional cultivars is not striking since, in many places, cassava breeding is still a fairly recent practice. Comprehensive characterization of landraces is therefore a necessary prerequisite. Crosses are then conducted between parents, local or introduced, which have been chosen on their performance, with little selection of genotypes based on their general combining ability, as is the rule for

seed-producing crops. Crosses can be done manually by controlled pollinations to produce full-sib progenies, or in polycross plots where natural open pollination is used to produce half-sib progenies and, when bulked together, populations for recurrent selection.

Field layout designs aimed at maximizing the frequency of crosses and at approaching theoretical panmixis have been elaborated. It is of utmost importance that sufficient knowledge on the flowering characteristics of the genotypes is available, since synchronization of flowering is a major constraint with such designs. It is, however, possible to delay planting of early flowering genotypes to increase the chances of synchronized flowering with late flowering genotypes. Male sterile accessions can be used as female parents in polycross plots.

Once seedlings are obtained, they must be propagated clonally and the material multiplied through successive clonal generations before accurate assessment of their performance can be conducted. Except for a very few deleterious traits, such as their susceptibility to local disease, it is necessary to assess the performance in the first clonal cycle (C1), in C2 and so on. This is a time-consuming process because only a limited number of cuttings can be taken from each stem. Cuttings from the midsections perform better than those from the top or bottom of the stems. Table 3.1. describes a typical selection cycle for cassava that is fairly conventional for a vegetatively propagated crop and is similar to that of the Irish potato (Rousselle *et al.*, 1996).

Success in cassava breeding programmes depends on:

- The choice of parents. Good genotypes do not always give good progeny.
- The size of progeny and the need to screen large numbers.
- The selection scheme. Selection during the second cycle of clonal evaluation (SRT) is the most crucial, eliminating 95% of the genotypes.

Depending on the technical and financial means, there is some variation between existing programmes, but the rationale is the same. Heavy selection pressure is applied at the seedling stage for resistance to disease. At IITA,

Table 3.1. Selection cycle in cassava.

Year	Activity	Number of genotypes	Plants per genotype
1	Crosses between parents	Up to 100,000	
2	F1: evaluation of seedlings, strong selection for local diseases, single row trial (SRT)	17,500–100,000	1
3	Clonal evaluation trial (CET)	2000–3000	6–12
4	Preliminary yield trial (PYT)	100–300	20–80
5	Advanced yield trial (AYT)	20–100	100–500
6	Regional trials (RT)	5–30	500–5000

Source: Jennings and Iglesias (2002) and Ceballos *et al.* (2004).

Nigeria, approximately 100,000 seedlings are visually screened for their resistance to CMD and bacterial blight and only 3000 are selected, while at CIAT, Colombia, 50,000 seedlings are screened (Ceballos *et al.*, 2004). In the clonal evaluation trial (CET), where 2000–3000 clones are evaluated, selection relies on high heritability traits such as harvest index (ratio of storage mass to total plant biomass) (Kawano, 2003). Plant architecture is also under heavy scrutiny at this stage, plants that do not branch until they reach about 1 m being favoured. This selection process is visual without any data recording in order to minimize costs and maximize the number of genotypes assessed. When the preliminary yield trial (PYT), advanced yield trial (AYT) and, especially, the regionl trial (RT) stages are reached, breeders are more interested in yield stability across different locations. Cooking quality (or 'poundability' for *fufu* at IITA) also begins in these trials. The selected clones are then released as new varieties. A new selection cycle can begin in which the new selected varieties are used as parents. Unfortunately, chemotypes with very attractive properties can be eliminated at an early stage because of the high selection pressure on other traits (Fig. 3.1).

A fairly common difficulty in breeding programmes is to satisfy the requirements of both industry and the fresh market. An industrial variety, for example, must have a high DM yield potential (t/ha) with a high DM content (% of fresh weight). For the bioethanol industry, accessions with small starch granules reducing the cost of starch hydrolysis are favoured. For human fresh consumption, flesh colour, the low cyanogenic potential and good cooking quality are important traits. High carotene cassava varieties are preferable for the poultry industry and also for areas where fresh yellow-fleshed roots are popular for human consumption (Africa and Melanesia). For the feed industry, high-protein accessions have been identified (Ceballos *et al.*, 2006a, b).

Fig. 3.1. The selection of new genotypes focuses mostly on agronomic traits, while potentially interesting chemotypes can be eliminated (Source: Lebot *et al.*, 2005).

The selection process is equivalent to mass recurrent selection. Great numbers have to be screened to achieve some progress. The process is based on the capture of additive effects and is particularly efficient for traits with high heritability when there is a broad genetic base, such as in South America. In Asia, the genetic variability is much narrower. It is, however, estimated that since the early 1980s, CIAT has introduced half a million F_1 hybrid seeds from the Colombia breeding programmes to broaden the genetic base and this has speeded up progress significantly (Howeler *et al.*, 2006). In Thailand, for example, approximately 372,000 genotypes obtained from more than 4100 crosses were screened by CIAT, but only three genotypes were selected and released as new varieties. They have contributed greatly to increasing cassava production in Thailand and South-east Asia. The total hectarage of CIAT-related improved cultivars in Asia is more than 1 million ha (Kawano *et al.*, 1998; Kawano, 2003). The Thai variety KU 50, released by Kasetsart University (Thailand) in 1992 is now grown under different names on 900,000 ha in Thailand, Vietnam, Indonesia and Cambodia and is probably the most widely grown variety in the world.

Successful breeding has also been achieved in Colombia, Brazil, India and Nigeria. Many improvement programmes in Africa have received IITA materials in tissue culture and true seed form. When tested in local environmental conditions, some of them outperformed local varieties and were released to farmers. In Nigeria, over 25 improved varieties have been released by the National Programme, in Sierra Leone up to eight varieties have been released and four in Ghana, and the situation is comparable in Eastern and Austral Africa where improved varieties are regularly released. In India, the first improved variety was released in 1971 and, since then, new varieties have been released regularly and have contributed to a remarkable increase in yield from 15 t/ha in 1971 to more than 31 t/ha in 2006.

The selection process has a few important constraints: breeding cycles are very long, no data are taken at the early stages to allow estimates of the general combining ability of the parents and it takes several steps until multi-location trials are established. A new scheme has been proposed for the CIAT programme based on a more accurate clonal evaluation and the use of a selection index (Ceballos *et al.*, 2006c).

HERITABILITY OF MAJOR TRAITS

Very little is known about the heritability of qualitative traits. It has been shown that thin lobes of the leaves are a dominant trait compared to wide lobes and that the brown colour of the root skin is dominant over white. It has also been observed that the size of the leaf is most likely a monogenic trait and that the red colour of the lamina is dominant over the green, indicating that anthocyanin pigmentation is probably a dominant trait on all parts of the plant

(Kawano *et al.*, 1978). Also, very little is known about the variability of the root nutritional and quality traits.

The screening of about 2500 genotypes for their nutritional (cyanogenic potential, carotene, mineral and sugar content) and agronomic (DM content, colour intensity and postharvest deterioration) traits reveals tremendous variation. Carotene content in the roots ranges from 0.102 to 1.040 mg/100 g fresh tissue and is correlated positively with colour intensity and cyanogenic potential. Average levels of Fe and Zn are 17.1 and 7.5 mg/kg, respectively. Many clones derived from Meso-America show high protein levels in the roots, probably as a result of introgression with wild species. The observed values for carotene, protein and mineral content suggest that there is potential for improving the nutritive value of cassava (Chavez *et al.*, 2005). There is variation in starch quality in relation to its amylose percentage, with a mean around 15%, and yellow cassava roots have considerable amounts of carotene (Iglesias *et al.*, 1997). In CTCRI, India, an attempt was made to improve the carotene content of local cultivars. It could be enhanced to 1500 IU of β-carotene per 100 g fresh weight in the first cycle of recurrent selection and up to 3983 IU/100 g in the fourth cycle, indicating that there is room for improvement (Nair and Unnikrishnan, 2007).

Cyanogenic glucocide (CG) accumulation varies with genotypes, growing conditions, age and part of the plant. CGs are probably higher in the leaves and skin of the roots because they act as a repellent to predators. Some Tukanoan farmers in the north-west Amazon tend to favour the bitter types over the sweet types, although no statistically significant correlation seems to exist between the root yield and the total cyanogen content. In this area, there is, however, a tendency for bitter types to produce higher yields because farmers preferentially plant them on more fertile soils and give them better care. The fact that cyanogenic plants release HCN when attacked by pests suggests a defence mechanism that could contribute to explaining why pests apparently attack bitter cultivars less than sweet cultivars. Some believe that the release of cyanide-free cultivars to farmers might prove disastrous (Wilson and Dufour, 2002).

It is useful to estimate the combining ability of the parents before crossing them, but there are some practical difficulties when undertaking such studies with cassava. These are due mostly to high heterozygosity and to the fact that morphological variation often masks real genetic variation. Frequently, the coefficients of variation obtained for a particular trait are so high that it is difficult to assess the performance of a clone (Ceballos *et al.*, 2006c).

Little is known about the inheritance of agronomic traits but CIAT has conducted diallel studies in three contrasting agroecological zones (acid soil savannahs, sub-humid environment and mid-altitude valleys). These studies allow a first assessment of: (i) the general combining ability (GCA), which corresponds to the average performance of parents in crosses; and (ii) the deviation of individual crosses from the average performance of parents. These

studies also allow the estimation of epistasis; in other words, the extent of the interaction between non-homologous genes. It is observed that genetic variability is concentrated in the within-family component and is significant for fresh root yield, fresh foliage yield, harvest index, root DM content and plant type scores. Estimates of dominance variance are considerably larger than those of additive variance for fresh root and foliage yields and it is therefore assumed that epistasis plays an important role in fresh root and foliage production (Pérez *et al.*, 2005a, b).

In the sub-humid environment, there are significant genetic effects for reaction to thrips, fresh root and foliage yields, harvest index, DM content and root DM yield. Significant epistatic effects are also observed for all variables, except harvest index. Dominance variance is significant and additive variance is significant only for reaction to thrips. Dominance probably plays an important role in complex traits such as root yield. It appears that not only are additive effects useful for determining the performance of progeny, but also that there is a large component of dominance effect. Heterosis is significant for traits such as fresh root yield. It is concluded that significant epistasis would justify the production of inbred parental lines to fix favourable allele combinations in the production of hybrids (Cach *et al.*, 2005).

It is thought that cassava improvement could benefit greatly from the introduction of inbreeding into the selection process. The production of homozygous lines through tissue culture techniques for the purpose of capturing hybrid vigour could offer promising perspectives. Increased homozygosity could result in a decrease of the genetic load and double haploids are expected to produce better hybrids. In India, inbred lines up to the fourth generation have been produced, with evident inbreeding depression in most morphological traits. Selected inbred progenies have been crossed with high-yielding released cultivars and a few hybrids appear significantly better in yield than the released cultivars (Ceballos *et al.*, 2006c).

CIAT is presently developing families with tolerance to inbreeding through recurrent selection. Large S_1 families have been developed and evaluated in order to assess the real impact of inbreeding depression on major traits. More than 20,000 botanical seeds have been obtained and these partially inbred genotypes are screened for root quality. It appears that inbreeding depression ranges from low levels for DM content (5% depression) to high levels for fresh root yield (more than 50% depression). Inbreeding causes a drastic reduction in vigour during the first cycles of selection but tolerance to inbreeding can be built up. The development of an efficient protocol for the production of double haploids could speed up the time necessary to reach sufficient levels of homozygosity. Inbreeding is also helpful for detecting useful genes and one of these is the waxy locus (*Wx*), which encodes the starch granule-bound glucosyl transferase (GBSS). The 'waxy' starch lacks amylose, and starch composed exclusively of amylopectin is advantageous for commercial applications. A clone resulting from the screening of self populations has been

shown to present a naturally occurring mutation on the *Wx* locus and the strategy is now to transfer this mutation to other genotypes. It is expected that about 25% of the progenies obtained from the second cycle of crosses will be homozygous for the *Wx* locus and will produce amylose-free starch (Ceballos *et al.*, 2008).

GENOTYPE × ENVIRONMENT INTERACTIONS

Cassava is subject to remarkable genotype × environment interactions. In most of the countries where cassava is cultivated, natural pollinations between local cultivars have produced genotypes well adapted to local conditions which have been selected by farmers. It has often been observed that improved varieties selected elsewhere perform poorly compared to these landraces. Observations made in Benin, West Africa, where 37 cassava genotypes, including advanced breeding lines, were tested for their reaction to bacterial blight in three distinct ecological zones, show significant interactions. Among the 37 genotypes tested, several genotypes could be recommended to farmers in specific ecozones, but only one was relatively stable in disease resistance and in high yield across the three ecozones (Zinsou *et al.*, 2005).

Studies conducted by CIAT in Colombia with different clones cultivated in contrasting environments have shown that fresh root yield is subject to strong genotype × environment interaction. General and specific combining ability effects and their interaction with the environment are significant for most traits (Calle *et al.*, 2005; Jaramillo *et al.*, 2005). There is an important interaction between the genotype and the temperature for yield. When four different cultivars are evaluated under three different temperatures (20, 24 and 28°C), higher yields are obtained, varying with the cultivar and temperature used (Irikura *et al.*, 1979). This indicates that the incidence of natural and local selection is highly significant on cultivar adaptation.

Genotype × environment interactions combined with farmers' particular tastes in subsistence agriculture and the lengthy process of bulking and distributing an improved variety to smallholders favour the development of geographically decentralized cassava breeding. Several experiences of participatory plant breeding have already been conducted successfully in Brazil (Gonçalvez and Saad, 2001). In Asia, participatory activities are also gaining momentum and are giving promising results (Howeler and Tan, 2001; Howeler, 2006). Cassava programmes in Africa are also considering farmer participatory selection. The approach ensures that disease resistance and yield are coupled with qualities important to farmers and communities. Using this approach, breeders involve farmers directly in their work to identify their preferences, which may involve taste, good cooking ability, early maturity, good storage in the ground, more roots per plant, pest and disease resistance and leaves suitable as a good vegetable.

USE OF RELATED SPECIES

Wild *Manihot* species have been used to introduce desirable genes into cassava, particularly for resistance to diseases such as mosaic virus and bacterial blight and to pests such as green spider mite and mealy bugs. They have also been used to increase protein content and decrease cyanide content. Interspecific progenies are highly variable, but a wide range of species appear to be useful (Silvestre and Arraudeau, 1983). These include:

- *M. anomala* (compact roots, adapted to shade and the wet tropics, normal meiosis, viable pollen).
- *M. caerulescens* (drought resistant, tolerant to toxic soils and adapted to low temperatures).
- *M. catinga*, *M. dichotoma*, *M. glaziovii* (resistance to mosaic virus).
- *M. oligantha* subsp. *nesteli* (numerous roots, well adapted to drought, low CG content, 7% of protein content in the roots, normal meiosis with 18 bivalents).
- *M. pseudoglaziovii* (tolerant to drought).
- *M. stipularis* (drought resistance, adapted to low temperature, dwarf trait).
- *M. tripartita* (compact roots, whitish flesh, high protein content).
- *M. tristis* subsp. *saxicola* (high protein content).

The most frequently used species is *M. glaziovii*, which has been shown to hybridize naturally with *M. esculenta*, although pollination rates are low. Bolhuis (1967) has shown that for 1183 hand pollinations, he obtained 50 fruits and 50 seeds (4%). The backcrosses of these F_1 hybrids with *M. esculenta* (8503 pollinations) gave 966 fruits and 1537 seeds (18%) and the backcross of the F_2 (6810 pollinations) yielded 12% success. Resistance to mosaic virus and bacterial blight, as well as low cyanide content, have been transferred successfully from *M. glaziovii* to locally adapted *M. esculenta* varieties in Africa (Hahn *et al.*, 1980). The interspecific hybrid of *M. oligantha* with cassava had a protein content up to 4% in the peeled roots (double that of common cassava), combined with a relatively low hydrogen cyanide (90 mg/kg HCN) content. Facultative apomixis exists in *M. dichotoma* and *M. glaziovii*. Apomixis correponds to the formation of seeds without fertilization. It is, however, present at a very low levels (1–2%) and apparently depends on meiotic irregularities (Nassar and Dorea, 1982).

Adaptation to marginal stressful environments could be achieved by crossing wild species such as *M. rubricaulis* and *M. grahami* with *M. esculenta*. These two species have amphistomatous leaves, a notably elevated activity in leaf extracts of the C_4 photosynthetic enzyme PEP carboxylase, very high leaf net photosynthetic rates and relatively low photorespiration. As most cassava cultivars have hypostomatous leaves, with a high stomatal density only on the lower surface of the leaf, it might be possible to transfer, via crosses, the efficient C_4 photosynthetic pathway and the amphistomatous leaves to *M. esculenta* (El-Sharkawy, 2004).

POLYPLOIDY BREEDING

Polyploids are morphologically distinct with their leaves generally broader, thicker and of a darker green. These leaf characteriztics are distinct, even at the seedling stage. The stomata are generally larger in size and are fewer per unit of area on the lamina. Finally, the pollen grains of the tetraploids are uniformly large, while some pollen grains of triploids are large and others small. In Brazil, the cultivar most tolerant to drought is a natural triploid ('Manebeba Branca'). Spontaneous polyploids exhibit greater genetic variability and are also more vigorous than autotetraploids induced by colchicine treatment.

Triploidy, as an effective tool in cassava improvement, especially for the production of high starch varieties for industrial use, was first realized in Kerala, India. Artificial autotetraploids with $2n = 4x = 72$ chromosomes were obtained through somatic doubling using colchicine (Abraham *et al.*, 1964) and a selected triploid called 'Sree Harsha' was released in 1998 by CTCRI (Sreekumari *et al.*, 1999). The protocols have been standardized and described in detail. Autotetraploids are induced by colchicine treatment using the cotton wool plug treatment. A diploid clone must be used as the female parent and reciprocal crosses are not successful, indicating that male gametes are more tolerant to higher ploidy. The mature female buds are bagged in the morning after the removal of the male buds on the inflorescence. Anthesis generally takes place about noon. After anthesis, the bags are opened and pollination is carried out by dusting the stigma with pollen from the male flowers and the female flowers are again bagged. It takes 75–90 days for the capsules to mature.

The triploids produced in India are found to be more vigorous than tetraploids, having stout stems and high leaf retention capacity. They also have an erect plant type with a mean number of 8.8 roots per plant. DM content is mostly above 45% compared to 29–35% in diploids and 30–36% in tetraploids. The starch content is also higher in triploids (Sreekumari *et al.*, 2000). These triploids can satisfy the needs of the industry, but more work is required to find out if they can also satisfy the fresh 'table' market, where consumers are hard to please.

Spontaneous tetraploids, triploids and $2n$ pollen (unreduced gametes) were also obtained in IITA from the diploid interspecific crosses and from open-pollinated interspecific hybrids. These involved female diploid plants of *M. esculenta* crossed with male parents of *M. pruinosa* or *M. glaziovii*. These two related species are strongly apomictic and can maintain their genetic identity through apomixes, but can also hybridize naturally with cassava. Facultative apomixis may play a role in $2n$ egg formation (Hahn *et al.*, 1990).

RAPID VEGETATIVE PROPAGATION

Once an improved genotype has been selected, the slow propagation rate is a serious practical constraint. In normal conditions, a cassava plant can produce, on

average, 10 to 20 good cuttings of 20–30 cm. Four clonal generations are therefore necessary to produce sufficient planting material to establish 1 ha at the most common density (10,000 plants/ha). Consequently, rapid propagation techniques have been developed and are now used widely. CIAT has developed a simple practical system of two-node cuttings planted flat, 1 cm deep, in a well-drained substrate, under a screen to preserve sufficient moisture. Young shoots sprouting from these cuttings are then separated as soon as they have two leaves (8–10 cm long) and are placed in plastic tubes of 2 cm in diameter, filled with boiled water. They then develop roots and are ready to be transplanted into the field. Using this system, a normal plant can produce 200 leafy cuttings in 4 months and 12,000–24,000 stakes/year if the two-node cuttings are collected 3 times a year on the mother plant (Cock *et al.*, 1976).

Another method for rapid multiplication has been devised using leaves excised with their axillary buds. When transferred to a mist propagator, they start to root and sprout. The propagules are transplanted 2–3 weeks later into small pots filled with peat, then after a month or so to the field. This method is quite labour-intensive but can produce between 100,000 and 300,000 stakes of a selected genotype in 18 months (Cock, 1985).

In Africa, IITA has developed an efficient rapid multiplication system based on the use of ministem cuttings. Cuttings from the hardwood portion may have one or two nodes, those from the semi-mature portion have four to six nodes and those from the tip portion may have six to ten nodes. Sprouting takes place in well-drained nursery beds where the hardwood ministem cuttings are planted horizontally at a spacing of 10 × 10 cm and a depth of 4–5 cm. The semi-mature and the tip-shoot cuttings are planted at the same spacing but vertically, with two-thirds of the cutting (the old end) below the ground and the remaining third (the young tip) above the ground. Transplanting is done in well-prepared fields during the rainy season, or with proper irrigation (IITA, 1998).

Using the Murashige and Skoog (MS) (1962)-based medium, Kartha (1974) developed the first meristem regeneration protocol for cassava, and it has been improved constantly since. *In vitro* culture can speed up the propagation rate greatly with, however, considerable variation between clones. On average, from a single bud it is possible to obtain in only 1 year between 15,000 and 100,000 *in vitro* plantlets. Tissue culture plantlets are distributed in culture tubes with appropriate culture medium. These plantlets have poorly developed cuticles and it is important to provide an environment with high relative humidity, such as a simple humidity chamber made out of plywood and plastic sheeting, for proper acclimatization. Once they have been pulled out of their tubes, the agar substrate is washed out gently and the bare root plantlet is transplanted to a Jiffy® peat or a vermiculite substrate in a small pot. Immediately after transplanting, the plants are placed in the humidity chamber, where they will stay for about 3 weeks before being transplanted to seedbeds at 50 × 50 cm spacing. They will produce semi-hardwood cuttings in 6–8 months (IITA, 2002).

USE OF MOLECULAR MARKERS

Sixteen enzyme systems have been studied to develop an accurate fingerprinting technique for cultivar identification in CIAT (Ramirez *et al.*, 1987). Isozymes have also been used successfully to study the genetic variation of cassava in West and central Africa (Lefèvre and Charrier, 1993), in Brazil (Resende *et al.*, 2000) and Costa Rica (Zaldivar *et al.*, 2004). In all four cases, enzyme systems, which are co-dominant markers, reveal sufficient polymorphism to study the genetic diversity of the crop.

Simple sequence repeats (SSRs or microsatellites) and amplified fragment length polymorphism (AFLPs) have been used in combination with isozymes to develop a core collection (Chavarriaga-Aguirre *et al.*, 1999). The picture produced by the three different markers is consistent. Accessions from Brazil and Colombia have the highest levels of diversity and Meso-American accessions present a few particular alleles. The application of these markers and the variability of chloroplast and nuclear ribosomal DNA are also useful to clarify the taxonomy of wild *Manihot* species (Fregene *et al.*, 1994; Roa *et al.*, 1997).

A molecular map has been developed using these various markers and molecular marker-assisted selection is used currently for key agronomic traits following the identification of quantitative traits loci (QTLs). The map was constructed from the segregation of RFLP (restriction fragment length polymorphism), SSR, RAPD (random amplified polymorphic DNA) and isozyme markers in a cross between two elite lines, one from IITA and the other from CIAT. Results revealed a few randomly distributed duplicated loci (< 5% of the total number of markers) that corresponded to what was observed in normal diploids (Fregene *et al.*, 1997). Together, the male- and female-derived maps today have more than 300 markers and this is estimated to cover approximately 80% of the cassava genome, which may be completed soon (Jorge *et al.*, 2000; Fregene *et al.*, 2003). Practical applications are the tagging of genes with agronomic interest, a more efficient selection in breeding schemes and the dissection of quantitative variation into Mendelian components (Mohan *et al.*, 1997). It is now hoped (Fregene *et al.*, 2001) that molecular markers will be used to:

- Increase the selection efficiency for root DM content, disease and pest resistance and harvest index during the seedling trial in order to improve the selection at the single row trial (SRT).
- Improve the choice of parents.

The broadening of the genetic base in Africa has been done by introducing South American seeds and *in vitro* cultured genotypes, where the dominant *CMD2* gene for cassava mosaic disease (CMD) resistance was introgressed through marker-assisted selection (MAS). Marker-assisted introgression of CMD resistance seems to produce interesting results, which could improve the potential value of South American genotypes for Africa (Okogbenin *et al.*, 2007).

TRANSGENIC TECHNOLOGIES

The use of transgenic technologies to incorporate desired traits into the most popular cassava cultivars is attractive because they allow rapid gene transfer from one cultivar to another, or from a wild species to a cultivar, bypassing problems related to heterozygosity and inbreeding. Cassava somatic embryos can be produced and whole plants can be recovered from immature leaf lobe explants (Szabados *et al.*, 1987). These embryos are used as the target for transgene insertion. The first transgenic cassava was made in 1995 at Wageningen University in the Netherlands, where amylose-free cassava genotype was produced using antisense technology to silence the *GBSS-I* gene (Taylor, N. *et al.*, 2004).

Nowadays, there are four distinct transformation systems employed to produce genetically transformed cassava. All four rely on the production of embryogenic tissues from *in vitro* leaf lobe explants (Fig. 3.2).

Molecular confirmation of transgene insertion and expression has been obtained on plants regenerated from these four protocols. It is not clear yet which of these systems is preferable and all have their strengths and weaknesses. The various criteria for assessment include time to recover transgenic plants,

Fig. 3.2. Schematic representation of the four systems currently used to transform cassava plants genetically (Source: Taylor, N. *et al.*, 2004).

labour involved, adaptation to various cultivars and the likelihood of generating chimeras or somaclonal variants. Up to now, transgenic plants have been obtained for nine cassava cultivars: 'Col-22', 'Col-1505', 'Col-2215', 'Per-183' and 'Ica-Negrita' from South America, '60444', 'Bonoua Rouge' and 'L2' from Africa and 'Adira-4' from Indonesia (Taylor, N. *et al.*, 2004).

There is a desire to develop very low or even acyanogenic cassava on the assumption that a decreased cyanogenic content in the most popular cultivars would reduce the danger of consumers' exposure to cyanide. The industrial processing of large quantities of cassava often generates toxic effluents. Overcoming such problems would improve cassava's economic potential (Anderson *et al.*, 2000; Siritunga *et al.*, 2004). A programme for transgenic control of the stem borer (*Chilomina clarkei*) and the hornworm (*Erinnyis ello*) is being developed by CIAT. Transgenes are being integrated into the most popular cultivars in Colombia and early results seem encouraging. It is also considered that transgenic cassava plants could play an important role in combating CMD in Africa by introducing new sources of resistance in the germplasm (Sangaré *et al.*, 1999). Property rights issues have prevented the development of transgenic cassava plants with the 5-enolpyruvylshikimate-3-phosphate (EPSP)-synthase gene, which confers resistance to glyphosate, a widely used herbicide. Finally, it appears possible to manipulate the protein content of the cassava root through genetic transformation, but this also presents other constraints. The new cultivar should be non-allergenic and should not affect adversely root yield, cooking and storage quality of the final food products (Zhang *et al.*, 2003).

The complete chloroplast genome sequence has been produced. This genome is composed of approximately 164,450 base pairs and includes about 128 genes; 49% of the gene code for proteins. The *atpF* intron (non-coding region), which was thought to be conserved in all land plants, is apparently absent in the cassava chloroplast genome. The intron loss is, however, a characteristic of most species belonging to the cassava family. The availability of the cassava chloroplast genome may accelerate the development of pathogen- and herbicide-resistant and drought-tolerant cassava varieties through plastid transformation (Daniell *et al.*, 2008).

It has been shown that cassava varieties can cross-pollinate naturally with wild relatives and therefore, in South America, transgenes could move easily from a genetically modified variety to other species.

GERMPLASM CONSERVATION

There are approximately 20,000 accessions of cassava and its wild relatives preserved in *ex situ* germplasm collections in CIAT, IITA and in national programmes of more than 45 different countries throughout the world (Bonierbale *et al.*, 1997). Various conservation techniques are available: field

gene bank, seed storage, *in vitro* reduced growth storage and cryopreservation of shoot tips and pollen. Field gene banks are by far the most common and provide readily accessible plant material for characterization and evaluation. However, they require large fields to maintain large collections and are exposed to pests and diseases. Cassava seeds store best in cool and dry conditions. Once dried, they can be sealed in aluminium foil envelopes and stored at –20°C for long-term conservation. Seeds for breeding programmes can be stored in paper bags at 5°C in a cold room with less than 30% humidity.

In vitro conservation techniques are being applied routinely (Ng *et al.*, 1999). Clones are conserved in constant temperatures of 23–25°C day and night, with 12 h light (at 1000–1500 lux), on a slightly modified MS culture medium. Three to five tubes per accession are maintained. Using disease and virus indexing, germplasm accessions can be multiplied safely and exchanged internationally (Frison and Feliu, 1991). The shoot tip is the most suitable material for the cryopreservation of clones and is the most amenable to tissue culture. Current protocols involve slow cooling with cryoprotectants and dehydration before direct immersion of cassava shoot tips in liquid nitrogen (Escobar *et al.*, 1995).

On-farm conservation methodology has yet to be developed, but should be encouraged to complement conventional *ex situ* approaches.

4

Developmental Physiology

GROWTH CYCLE

Cassava is a perennial shrub that can grow for years, alternating periods of vegetative growth and periods of storage in the roots, with eventually some periods of dormancy (if temperatures are low). During growth, there are five distinct phases with duration, depending on varietal differences, environmental conditions and cultivation techniques.

Phase 1. Sprouting

Sprouting occurs 5–15 days after planting (DAP) the stem cutting. Five DAP, the first adventitious roots develop from the cut surface of the stem cutting and also from the buds, which are situated under the soil surface. After 10 DAP, the first sprouting occurs. One or more axillary buds form a bud, a palmate leaf blade, subtended by a long petiole and an internode. Sprouting is influenced by the position of the stake: when the stem cutting has been planted vertically, there is a strong apical dominance, whereas when it has been placed almost horizontally, several buds can sprout but the fastest ones start next to the base. Vertically planted cuttings usually give rise to single stem plants and horizontally planted cuttings produce several stems, with those sprouting from the base being the more vigorous. This phase is over 20 DAP.

Phase 2. Leaf and Root System Development

The beginning of leaf development and the formation of the root system occurs between 20 and 90 DAP. Shoot and root growth rely on the reserves of the cuttings until 30 DAP. The leaves start to expand 30 DAP and the photosynthetic process begins to contribute to the plant growth. Fibrous roots

replace the first adventitious roots and start to grow at 25 cm/month or more, penetrating the soil to a depth of 40–50 cm. Few of these fibrous roots will later become starchy roots.

Phase 3. Canopy Establishment

The development of the stems and the establishment of the full leaf canopy occur between 90 and 180 DAP and this period corresponds to the maximum growth rates for leaves and stems. It is also during this phase that the architecture of the plant and its branching habit are established. After 120 DAP, the leaves are able to intercept most of the light falling on the canopy, when the maximum size of the canopy with the maximum DM partition of the leaves and stems are obtained. It is during this period that the most active vegetative growth of the plant occurs. Stem elongation can reach 4 cm/day and the rate of production of new leaves varies from 20 to 40 leaves per month. The leaf lifespan varies from 50 to 140 days but is much shorter during this phase than during phase 4, the root development phase. If branching occurs, then there is also a significant decrease of the individual leaf area. This phase can be considered to end when the total LAI reaches a maximum, between 3 and 6 months, and then decreases (Howeler and Cadavid, 1983; Alves, 2002).

Phase 4. High Carbohydrate Translocation

The translocation of carbohydrates to the roots occurs between 180 and 300 DAP. During this period, the photoassimilate partition from the leaves to the roots is accelerated and storage in the roots is faster. It is also during this period that the highest rates of DM accumulation occur in the roots. In the meantime, leaf senescence increases, more leaves fall and the stems become lignified.

Phase 5. Dormancy

Between 300 and 360 DAP, there is a dormancy period during which the leaf production is reduced and shoot vegetative growth has finished. Translocation of starch to the roots continues and maximum DM in the roots is reached. This phase is more pronounced in geographical regions with a significant variation in rainfall and temperature. Once the plant has completed its growth cycle 1 year after planting, a new phase of vegetative growth can start again with phases of DM accumulation in the roots and dormancy. The cassava plant is rarely harvested later than 2 years from planting because old plants tend to produce lignified roots and are susceptible to lodging and rot (Fig. 4.1).

Fig. 4.1. Partitioning of dry matter during the initial development of cassava (Source: Alves, 2002).

When the plant starts from a true botanical seed, there is no phase 1 and the young plant develops a taproot and numerous superficial roots. The rapid vegetative growth is followed by the storage of DM in the roots and a dormancy period as well, but the yield is poor. There is a positive correlation between leaf area, or the leaf area duration, and the yield of the roots. The leaf area per plant depends directly on the total number of apices, the number of leaves formed per apex, the leaf size and life. Plants produced from seeds develop less leaf area than those produced from stem cuttings (Cock *et al.*, 1979).

There are considerable differences between genotypes, as well as interactions with environmental conditions. Under normal conditions, the cassava leaf reaches its full size approximately 10–12 days after its emergence. Total leaf life, from its emergence to fall, depends on the cultivar, levels of shade, water and temperature and can range from 40 to more than 200 days, usually between 60 and 120 days (Alves, 2002). Again, there is considerable variation in leaf size between cultivars and between diploid and triploid cultivars, and this size depends on the age of the cassava plant. Usually, the leaves produced between 3 and 4 months after planting are the largest, but the branching pattern also influences the leaf size. Large leaves are produced when the number of apices is low and, conversely, branching types tend to produce smaller leaves (Fig. 4.2).

For cassava, as for all other crops, vegetative growth and yield performance can be evaluated using two parameters: LAI (the leaf area index: the

Fig. 4.2. Growth of the cassava plant during the first 12 months of the cycle (Source: Alves, 2002).

ratio of leaf area to ground area) and NAR (the net assimilatory rate: the rate of DM production per unit of leaf area). LAI is closely related to root storage, with an optimum LAI for root bulking rate between 3 and 3.5 (Cock *et al.*, 1979). The cassava plant should reach such a LAI as early as possible in order to produce high yields. As far as NAR is concerned, after the 4th month, more DM is accumulated in the roots than in the rest of the plant and at harvest (10–12 months after planting) the DM is located mainly in roots, followed by stems and leaves. The NAR and root growth rate are reduced when LAI increases from 3 to 6.

Unlike grain crops, in which the vegetative and reproductive phases are at different times and there is little or no competition for photoassimilates, cassava stems, leaves and roots develop simultaneously and photoassimilates are partitioned between the different organs (Cock, 1984). This type of partitioning of the DM leads to an optimum LAI value for the growth of roots when there is a balance between DM distribution in the underground and vegetative organs, under and above ground. If more photoassimilates are allocated to the stems and leaves than inducing in a larger LAI, then less DM will be allocated to root development. Figure 4.3 illustrates the total biomass of the plant, the shoots and root development as functions of the LAI.

Numerous co-factors are involved, however, and it is risky to assume that the performance of the plant depends on simple correlations between parameters. For example, the nutritional content of the cassava stems are directly influenced by the soil fertility where the mother plants are grown. The

Fig. 4.3. Relations between whole plant growth, partitioning of growth between stem and leaves, roots and LAI (Source: Cock, 1984; El-Sharkawy, 2004).

nutritional content of the collected cuttings, in turn, affects the yields of the subsequent crops directly, irrespective of their soil fertility status. The root formation and the sprouting rate are influenced by the NPK contents in the cuttings, indicating that the nutritional reserves contained in the stem are very important (Molina and El-Sharkawy, 1995). This demonstrates the importance of the quality of the planting material (Table 4.1).

Table 4.1. Effects of the nutrient content of cassava cuttings on the leaf area, fresh weight of foliage, stem and roots of subsequent crops.

Planting material treatment kg/ha				Subsequent crop treatment Unfertilized				Subsequent crop treatment Fertilized*		
N	P	K	LAI	foliage	stem	roots	LAI	foliage	stem	roots
	(kg/ha)			(t/ha of fresh weight)				(t/ha of fresh weight)		
0	0	0	0.4	1.1	2.0	13.5	0.7	1.7	4.5	19.1
0	100	100	0.5	1.0	2.6	17.5	0.8	1.6	3.6	24.7
100	0	100	0.4	1.1	3.0	14.9	0.7	1.5	4.4	23.5
100	100	0	0.3	1.1	2.3	15.8	0.6	1.6	4.5	24.7
100	100	100	0.9	1.7	3.1	24.2	1.3	2.1	6.2	30.2

Note: *Fertilized = application of 50, 43 and 83 kg/ha of N, P and K. LAI measured at 3 months after planting. Source: Molina and El-Sharkawy (1995).

PHOTOPERIODISM

In the tropics, variation in day length is small (10–12 h) and photoperiod may not limit cassava productivity. Some experiments have shown that the optimal light period is around 12 h, with some differences between genotypes. Long days do promote vegetative growth and do decrease root development. Short days increase root growth and reduce vegetative growth. It is therefore assumed that there is an antagonistic relationship between vegetative growth and the development of roots in response to variation of photoperiod. Long photoperiods may increase the growth requirements of the shoots, reducing the carbohydrates available for the growth of the roots (Alves, 2002). It has also been suggested that stem branching is associated with the onset of flowering, which is promoted, in some cultivars, by long days. At high latitude (for example, at 27°S in Australia), where photoperiods vary from 11 to 14 h, the concentration of the first flowering and branching occur when days are longer than 13.5 h (Keating *et al.*, 1982).

Cassava photosynthesis follows a C_3 pathway with a high optimum temperature of 35°C and a wide plateau from 25 to 35°C. Cassava requires high solar radiation for efficient photosynthesis and therefore shade has a considerable effect on cassava growth and production. Under shading, the root bulking process starts later and the number of roots per plant is reduced. All levels of shade delay root bulking and at 20, 40, 50, 60 and 70% shade, cassava yield is reduced by 43, 56, 59, 69 and 80%, respectively. Shading increases plant height and there is an increase in leaf area per unit weight (Okoli and Wilson, 1986).

TEMPERATURE

Temperature has considerable effects on cassava growth (Table 4.2). It affects sprouting, leaf formation, leaf size and therefore general plant growth. Cassava growth is favourable under temperatures ranging from 25 to 29°C, but it can tolerate as low as 12°C and as high as 40°C. At low temperatures, the sprouting of the stem cuttings is considerably delayed and the rate of leaf production is also decreased. At temperatures lower than 24°C, the rate of leaf formation decreases and at high temperatures, a leaf is fully expanded in 2 weeks. Its size increases with the age of the plant up to 4 months. At temperatures between 15°C and 24°C, leaf life is approximately 200 days but, at higher temperatures, it is only 120 days. At lower temperatures, leaf life may extend up to 200 days. At 24°C, the leaf life varies according to the genotype and plant age is approximately of 60–80 days during the first 4 months of growth (El-Sharkaway, 2004).

Sprouting is considerably hastened when temperature increases up to 30°C, but it slows down above 37°C. Again, there are considerable genotype

Table 4.2. Effects of different temperatures on cassava growth.

Air temperature (°C)	Physiological effects
< 15	Plant growth inhibited
< 17 or > 37	Sprouting impaired
< 17	Reduction of leaf production rate, total and root dry weight
16–38	Cassava plant can grow
16–30	Transpiration rate increases linearly and then declines
20–24	Leaf size and leaf production rate increased and leaf life shortened
25–29	Optimum for cassava growth
25–30	Highest rates of photosynthesis in greenhouse
28	Faster shedding of leaves with reduction of the number of branches
28.5–30.0	Sprouting faster and optimum
30–40	Highest rates of photosynthesis in the field

Source: Alves (2002).

× temperature interactions and different cultivars perform differently, indicating that natural selection is significant in cultivar adaptation to local environments.

NUTRITION

It is often stated that cassava is a heavy feeder that finishes the nutrients that are present in the soil, with a high efficiency in nutrient absorption on low nutrient soils, leaving them poorer than before. It is also thought that cassava exports more nutrients than most other crops and that it contributes to the decline of soil fertility. It is assumed that this could be the consequence of its powerful root system that would allow the plant to extract nutrients from a thick layer of soil. In fact, Howeler (2002) has shown that a very low percentage of roots reach the deep layers and that they contribute to water absorption only. When comparing average nutrient removal by cassava and various other crops, it appears that its reputation as a heavy feeder is exaggerated and that nitrogen (N), phosphorus (P) and potash (K) removal per tonne of DM is lower than removal by other major crops (Table 4.3).

Nutrient absorption depends on cassava growth rate, which in turn depends on climatic conditions, soil fertility and genotype. The nutrient contents in the roots and in the whole plant tend to be very high when yield is high and low when yield is low. If the nutrients removed are proportional to yield levels, then an average yield of 15 t/ha would remove approximately 35 kg of N, 5.8 kg of P, 46 kg of K and 4.1 kg of Ca. However, the relationship between dry root yield and root nutrient content is not linear so that, at lower

Table 4.3. Comparison between cassava and other crops for their average nutrient removal (in harvested DM product).

Crop/plant part	Yield dry* (t/ha)	N kg/ha	P kg/ha	K kg/ha	N kg/t DM	P kg/t DM	K kg/t DM
Cassava/fresh roots	13.5	55	13.2	112	4.5	0.83	6.6
Sweet potato/fresh roots	5.1	61	13.3	97	12	2.63	19.2
Maize/dry grain	5.6	96	17.4	26	17.3	3.13	4.7
Rice/dry grain	4.0	60	7.5	13	17.1	2.4	4.1

Note: *Assuming cassava to have 38% DM, grains 86% and sweet potato 20%.
Source: Howeler (2002).

yields, nutrient removal is significantly lower. Cassava yields as low as 10 t/ha can be sustained for several cropping seasons, as long as the tops are re-incorporated into the soil (Howeler, 2002).

WATER DEFICIT AND STRESS

Cassava is a drought-tolerant crop, but when deprived of water, plant and root development are affected. This leads to an altered starch biosynthesis, which is expressed by variation in starch quality whose magnitude depends on the severity of the stress conditions and stage of plant maturity. During the early phases of plant development, water stress delays normal growth, which resumes only when the immature plant receives sufficient water. In mature plants, the starch quality is affected by the environmental conditions, especially the onset of rain after a stress period, which reduces the starch yield (Sriroth *et al.*, 2001).

Cassava responds to water deficit by reducing its evaporating leaf area rapidly by partially closing the stomata. This increases the efficiency of water use. When severe, a drought period can induce diminution of the root yield, depending on the duration of the water deficit and its position in the growth cycle. The critical period is between 30 and 150 DAP, which corresponds to the root initiation phase. During that period, a water deficit of at least 2 months can cause a decrease in root yield from 32 to 60% (Connor *et al.*, 1981).

There are various mechanisms underlying cassava tolerance to water stress. They are related to the sensitivity of its stomata to both atmospheric and edaphic water stress (El-Sharkawy, 2004). In most plant species, a response to water stress is the closure of stomata, which directly decreases photosynthesis and growth. However, cassava stomata partially close when the air humidity is low and the leaf, being protected from dehydration, remains photosynthetically active. When water is available, the cassava plant keeps a high stomatal activity and maintains high internal CO_2 concentration. Under water stress, the plant closes stomata and decreases leaf area growth in response to small decreases in soil water. The closure of the stomata and the resulting decline of transpiration

protect leaf tissues from desiccation. The leaf area is decreased but expands rapidly as soon as water becomes available again. This response limits cassava transpiration surface during water deficit (Alves, 2002).

Under water deficit, cassava leaves accumulate large amounts of abscisic acid rapidly in young and mature leaves. The young leaves halt their expansion growth and their transpiration rate is decreased. The high abscisic acid levels under water stress are reversed after 1 day of watering and the rapid return to normal abscisic acid levels corresponds to the rapid leaf area growth. The rapid reduction in cassava leaf area growth and stomatal closure is probably due to the ability of cassava to produce and accumulate abscisic acid very early in the water stress phase (Alves and Setter, 2000). During stress, growth cessation involves both cell division and expansion but both are able to recover fully when stress occurs early. It is thought that the developmental and regulatory systems controlling cell division play an important role in the plant's response to stress (Alves and Setter, 2004).

Long leaf life and good leaf retention are two important physiological traits that contribute to yield. Cassava leaves can remain photosynthetically active under prolonged water stress over more than 2 months and are able to recover from stress. It has also been shown that the leaf petiole plays an important heliotropic role in orienting the leaf lamina towards the sun, maximizing light interception. The midribs of the lobes were found to control another leaf movement, which is leaf drooping or folding. This movement makes the leaf bend from the horizontal position it holds in the early morning by folding downward at noon. This occurs irrespective of soil water and leaf water pressure (El-Sharkawy and Cock, 1984). This movement decreases light interception by half compared to horizontal leaves. The outcome is a direct reduction in transpiration water loss, while the leaf keeps a relatively high photosynthetic rate. Consequently, this leaf movement may act as a water stress avoidance mechanism and contributes partly to cassava's drought tolerance (El-Sharkawy, 2004).

YIELD POTENTIAL

The crop canopy is a yield determinant. The ideal plant type for maximum yield under favourable conditions has been developed with a computer-based simulation (Cock *et al.*, 1979; El-Sharkawy, 2004). This ideal plant has the following traits:

- Maximum leaf size near 500 cm^2 per leaf blade at 4 months.
- Long leaf life (c. 100 days).
- LAI between 2.5 and 3.5 during most of the cycle.
- A harvest index greater than 0.5.
- Two vegetative shoots originating from the original cutting.

If such an ideal plant could exist, and provided that the growing conditions are optimal, predictions of a computerized model indicate that it could produce in a year 90 t/ha of fresh roots (approximately 30 t/ha DM). Observed yield potential for cassava compares favourably with other major crops and it produces more energy per hectare than maize, sorghum and rice (El-Sharkawy, 2004). An average experimental yield for several improved cultivars of 90 t/ha in 10 months has been measured over an experimental area of 1 ha in Colombia. The climatic conditions, with a high mean temperature (28°C) and high atmospheric humidity (70%), were near optimum. This confirms the validity of the computer-simulated plant type (El-Sharkawy *et al.*, 1990). The difference between the potential yield and the average farmers' yields is more than sixfold, indicating that the potential of cassava is far from being achieved.

5

Agronomy

Cassava can be cultivated successfully in areas with an annual rainfall of between 1000 and 3000 mm, but it can tolerate lower rainfall if it is well distributed. The most favourable conditions seem to be in climates with 1500–2000 mm/year and maximum solar radiation. Over the past 25 years in South-east Asia, yields were found to be higher when cassava was planted in the early part of the rainy season (Howeler, 2001). In many countries, however, some cassava is also planted at the end of the rainy season, a practice which becomes more risky as latitude increases. In areas with no marked seasonality, cassava can be planted all year-round.

SOIL PREPARATION

Depending on soil type and drainage, the field may be prepared as mounds, ridges, flat-tilled or not tilled. Drainage conditions determine the size of the ridges or mounds. In many areas, cassava is still cultivated in slash-and-burn traditional cropping systems where the plot is cleared from existing vegetation, exposing high organic matter soil content. The only soil preparation used is the loosening of the soil locally with a sharp spade, or even a planting stick. The soil is opened and the cutting is inserted, vertically, inclined or flat. This no-till soil preparation produces a texture sufficiently loose to allow good establishment of the stake, initial root penetration and, later, root thickening. In these conditions, farmers find that better soil preparation does not necessarily produce higher yields. They will put considerable effort into preparing the soil for their yams but not for cassava, as it can perform remarkably well with minimal soil preparation.

Under more permanent cropping systems, cassava requires a thorough loosening of the soil to produce a well-drained and aerated substrate for the roots to develop and function adequately. In South-east Asia, land preparation is usually carried out using a hoe or an animal-drawn plough, but in Thailand, Malaysia, Tamil Nadu and much of South Vietnam, land is now prepared by tractor, usually on contract. In most countries, the best yields are obtained by

two ploughings, followed by one discing and ridging, but ridging is not advisable if planting occurs during the dry season. Cassava is particularly susceptible to waterlogging and succumbs easily to excess water in the soil. In areas of high rainfall or heavy soils, drainage is obtained by preparing mounds, ridges or beds. Planting on ridges is better during the rainy season and planting on the flat is better during the dry season. Soil preparation can be reduced when mulching is applied. Mounds may range in height from 30 to 60 cm and cassava grown on mounds gives higher yields than that grown on unploughed land. Mounds also improve ease of harvesting. When mounds are prepared far ahead of planting, nutrients are leached from the loose soil (Howeler, 2001).

Continuous cassava cultivation leads to the breakdown of soil structure combined with increased erosion, which can occur after just two cycles. On rather steep slopes, cassava is planted by preparing only planting holes with a hoe, to minimize erosion. Zero tillage with herbicides has produced good results in Thailand but zero tillage is easier when the land comes out of bush fallow, which prevents excessive weed growth. In very weedy plots or where the soil is compact, zero tillage results in low yields and serious difficulty when planting, weeding and harvesting. To counter the soil-degrading effects of mechanical soil preparation, efficient techniques of conservation tillage probably require a combination of minimum tillage and the use of herbicides in pre- and post-emergence (Tongglum *et al.*, 2001).

PROPAGULE SELECTION AND PREPARATION

When a cassava stem cutting is planted in the upright position, with the older end in the soil, a mass of callus tissue forms at this older end and, within a few days, roots are produced. Roots also develop at any submerged nodes. It is preferable to cut stakes at a right angle to prevent splitting, which may provide entry for pathogens. Stems that are cut with a sharp angle induce a grouped development of roots and, when this is combined with an inclined planting, it allows the localization of the roots in one area of the soil and consequently the grouping of the roots together, easing the harvest. The vertical planting of stems which have been cut at a right angle induce the roots to radiate around the plant. Farmers tend to favour one or the other, depending on the type of soil, heavy and wet or light and dry (Raffaillac, 1992).

Stems used to prepare cuttings should be sufficiently lignified and the young branching tips avoided. They produce plants with early branching and flowering and are fragile, presenting difficulties to get established in the field. The over-lignified portions from the basal stems of old plants should also be avoided as they are poor in nutritive reserves and are more prone to infection with viral particles (Médard, 1973). It is fairly easy to select visually good cuttings. Stakes are at the right stage when the diameter of their pith is half the total diameter of the stake.

Higher yields are obtained in South-east Asia when stakes are cut from the mid and lower part of stems taken from mother plants that are about 8–12 months old. Many viruses, fungi and bacteria do not produce clearly visible symptoms but stakes should be inspected to select the best and to detect insect infestation. Postharvest chemical treatment of stakes with mixtures of systemic and contact fungicides, and with an insecticide when necessary, can protect and extend stake life during storage (Lozano *et al.*, 1981; Leihner, 2002). The selected planting material should be developed and nourished, mature and healthy stems, and kept in good storage conditions to minimize losses. Stored stakes should be as long as possible and not cut as this increases dehydration.

How long stakes can be stored depends on the variety and climatic conditions during storage. Where there are periods of the year when planting is not advisable, cassava stakes may have to be stored for several months. Viability is excellent for 1 month and it is, in some exceptional cases, possible to conserve stakes up to 5 months (Silvestre and Arraudeau, 1983). There are significant differences between stakes stored vertically or horizontally.

In India, healthy, mature stems approximately 1.2–1.5 m long from three different cultivars were stored for 5 months under hot, dry weather conditions, under different treatments and comparing different positions and techniques. The stems stored vertically under tree shade and buried in a sand bed and watered every 2 weeks retained moisture content (68–71%), had the greatest percentage of fresh stem (90–92%), had the greatest starch content (256–270 mg/g dry stem) and showed the greatest percentage of sprouting (91–95%). However, the plants obtained from these stems showed a lower reduction in yield (2.6–3.6 t/ha) as compared to root yield of plants from fresh stems. It is therefore recommended that cassava stems be stored vertically with the bottom portion (2–3 cm) buried in a sand bed and watered every 2 weeks, under open conditions with appropriate plant protection measures, over a period of 5 months under hot, dry weather conditions (Ravi and Suryakumari, 2005).

In the Philippines, it has been observed that stems could be stored in a vertical position in the open and covered with coconut palm fronds for up to 4 months without affecting the yield of the subsequent crop. In subtropical climates, such as in the cassava producing provinces of China, the stems need to be cut before the first frost and stored in trenches at least 1 m deep and covered with straw and soil to prevent frost damage. It appears that some varieties are more tolerant to low temperatures than others (Howeler, 2001).

The deterioration of the planting material is related to respiration and dehydration of the stems. Fresh stems continue to metabolize during storage, losing carbohydrates and valuable reserves, which will reduce sprouting vigour after planting. The percentage of sprouting can fall from 100 to only 30% when stem cuttings are stored for only 2 weeks at 24°C in the sun. On the other hand, if long stems are stored in the shade with 72% relative humidity and chemical (fungicide and insecticide) protection, over 95% of sprouting is

obtained after 201 days of storage. These stakes need further chemical treatment before planting to provide extra protection and stimulate growth (Leihner, 1984, 2002).

The size of the cutting is important and, in West Africa, cuttings measuring 40–50 cm give a higher yield than those measuring only 15–20cm (Onwueme and Charles, 1994). However, using long cuttings requires a large quantity of planting material and they are cumbersome to handle. Amerindians in Brazil use cuttings 50–60 cm long in non-mechanized cropping systems, but in the same country, modern and mechanized farms use 15–20 cm cuttings in mechanical planters. The most suitable length of cutting is found to be 15–20 cm in Thailand, 20–25 cm in Malaysia, 25–30 cm in India and short cuttings are recommended in the Philippines for horizontal planting and longer cuttings for vertical planting.

The number of nodes on the cutting is, however, equally important. Cuttings should have at least five nodes. When planting material is scarce, it is possible to use short cuttings of only two to three nodes placed for about a week in wet paper to produce sprouts and roots before planting. In Kerala, India, two- to three-node cuttings are planted close together in moist sand in a nursery for 20 days before transplanting, and this method is particularly useful in areas with a short rainy season. In the large commercial plantings of Indonesia, about 50 stems are bundled together with rubber bands and are cut with a circular power saw. The top of each bundle is dipped in red ink to facilitate planting (Howeler, 2001).

In Ivory Coast, West Africa, a simple technique for rapid production of cuttings is used for live plants (and different heights of where to cut the plant have been tested). It is possible to cut cassava plants at 10 cm from the soil surface 7 months after planting without affecting yield and DM in tuberous roots and this produces a higher number of cuttings per plant. Cutting plants higher up at 35–60 cm causes significant losses (N'Zue *et al.*, 2007).

PLANT DENSITIES AND CROP ESTABLISHMENT

When root production is the only objective, the optimal density is 10,000 plants/ha (1 × 1 m), which is adequate for commercial-size fresh roots. Planting densities depend on the growth habit of the cultivar (erect or low branching, early or late maturing), soil fertility, rainfall and temperature. The combination of these factors affects the development of the cassava plant canopy. In general, cassava should be planted at high densities (12,000–16,000/ha) for non-branching varieties, or for all varieties planted on poor soil, and at normal density (10,000/ha) in more fertile soils and especially for branching varieties, an attribute that all local cultivars have.

Higher plant densities can be used if the average size of the root is not important to achieve a higher yield (of smaller roots) per unit of area. Lower

densities (5000 plants/ha) can be used when vigorous branching cultivars are grown and high densities (20,000 plants/ha) with less vigorous cultivars under low fertility conditions. If the only objective is the production of stakes, a density as high as 40,000 plants/ha (0.5 × 0.5 m spacing) can be used (Leihner, 2002). When some planted cuttings do not germinate, the surrounding plants will grow over the empty space and their yield will compensate for the missing plants. Thus, if less than 30% of the plants are missing, it is not necessary to replant the missing plants. However, if replanting is carried out, it should be before the plants are more than 2 weeks old.

The variety, soil type and climate determine whether it is preferable to plant cuttings vertically, inclined or flat (Toro and Atlee, 1980; Raffaillac, 1992). Vertical planting provokes a rapid establishment and development of a good canopy cover. Horizontal planting has the advantage that there is no need to worry if the cutting is upside down and the shallower root system allows for easier harvest. Mechanical planters in use today are designed to plant horizontally: the machine opens a furrow in which the cutting is dropped flat and covered with soil. In fact, in regions with adequate rainfall (1000–2000 mm), the cutting position does not matter, but in areas with sandy soils or poor rainfall, vertical planting is safer (Leihner, 2002). In the Philippines, in areas with heavy rainfall, planting vertically on ridges is recommended and, in dry areas, planting horizontally on flat soil or in furrows.

In South-east Asia, results usually show no significant differences in yield due to planting position, although vertical or inclined planting produces slightly higher yields in China and significantly higher yields than horizontal planting in Thailand (Tongglum *et al.*, 2001). Globally, planting vertically or inclined produces higher yields than planting horizontally, especially during the dry season. Horizontal planting may result in poor sprouting when the surface of the soil is very hot and dry.

The depth of planting also depends on the local climatic and soil conditions. On dry, sandy soils, cuttings should be planted deeper and on wet and heavy soils, they should be planted shallower. Depth of planting may vary from 5 to 15 cm and it is often observed that deeper planting produces better yields than shallow planting in the dry season. In some cases, however, deeper planting may cause some difficulties at harvest, especially if it is done manually. Cassava planting is mechanized in some parts of Brazil and Colombia but manual planting is still the rule throughout Asia, even in large commercial plantings. Experienced crews in Thailand can plant cuttings in straight lines using only 8 man-days/ha (Howeler and Tan, 2001).

In any case, and because of cassava's high sprouting rate, it is recommended that only one cutting be used at each planting hole. In some traditional cropping systems, farmers often plant more than one cutting per hole. In doing so, farmers intend to favour a rapid establishment of ground cover and some control of weeds which are, in many systems, removed by hand. This practice is also a safety measure to ensure that at least one will sprout, or that they will harvest sufficient

roots per plant. This is not recommended, however, as it causes a waste of planting material and produces multistem plants, which are less efficient.

Spatial arrangements and planting patterns depend on the cropping system and are adapted according to the characteriztics of the harvester (in mechanical cultivation) and of intercrops (in traditional cultivation). Different spatial arrangements can be adopted to satisfy different systems' needs. One can, for example, use a wider than normal spacing between the cassava lines while narrowing the distance between the plants on the line. Such an arrangement facilitates the establishment of intercrops and reduces competition (Thung and Cock, 1979).

Cassava is often established on sloping land because of its minimal requirements for land preparation. However, it has been demonstrated that planting on slopes can result in severe erosion. *Stylosanthes guianensis* and *Vetiveria zizanioides* (vetiver grass), used as live barriers and hedgerows on slopes planted with cassava, reduce soil erosion considerably. Contour ridging is sometimes applied on gentle slopes but up-and-down ridging is more common when the land is prepared by tractor. In these areas, contour hedgerows interfere with tillage in straight lines. Closer spacing (0.8×0.8 m), combined with minimum tillage, mulching and planting at the end rather than the beginning of the rainy season, also contribute to the reduction of soil erosion (Howeler, 2001).

INTERCROPPING

More than one third of the cassava grown in the world is intercropped. It is often found in mixed stands with a variety of food and cash crops and this system minimizes risk, optimizes the land and maximizes labour inputs per unit of area and time. Under trees such as mature coconuts, oil palms or rubber, cassava tends to suffer from shading and production can be very low. Most intercropping systems associate cassava with long- and short-season crops, such as maize, cowpea and beans. The association with grain legumes is interesting because of their soil-improving (N-fixing) characteristics. In Colombia, simultaneous planting of cassava with common beans produces the greatest yields (Thung and Cock, 1979). It is observed that cassava with an erect growth, late branching and medium vigour produces less shade over the associated crop and is the most suitable for intercropping with low-growing annual species.

The yield of cassava can be reduced significantly if the intercrop creates strong competition for light, water and nutrients. When the aim is to establish another species in an already planted stand of cassava, light is the limiting factor. However, cassava intercepts less light towards the end of its growth cycle and if the initial spacing is suitable, it is possible to establish a quick crop during the last months of cassava's life. Although the productivity of an under-crop in

these conditions is lower than when both crops begin their cycle together, its contribution to the protection of the soil is an advantage (Leihner, 2002).

Intercropping cassava with upland rice, maize and grain legumes is a common practice in Indonesia. Intercropping with groundnut is more common in northern Vietnam and China, and vegetables are profitable intercrops in Tamil Nadu, India. Intercropping is not much practised in Thailand, Malaysia and Kerala, except for when cassava is intercropped in young rubber and coconut plantations. Grain legumes (common beans, cowpea, mung bean, groundnut) are grown simultaneously with cassava in Java, Indonesia. They have a significant soil protection role and a positive effect on income (Howeler, 2001).

If cassava is planted in an already established cover crop (i.e. *Dolichos* or *Glycine*), soil protection is good but cassava yield decreases due to competition from the legume in the critical establishment phase. With less invasive legumes, such as *Arachis pintoi*, the loss is tolerable but with *Stylosantes guianensis*, it is considerable (Leihner, 2002). Despite the positive contribution of cover crops, their adoption by smallholders is difficult because seed supply is always problematic, establishment in the fields is labour-intensive and their impact on cassava yield is not always significant.

Mulching under cassava offers soil protection against erosion but its adoption by farmers is minimal as there are serious constraints: the necessary biomass may not be readily available, the labour involved may be costly and there may be some competition with the biomass need for animal feed. Numerous cover crops are useful only within a rotation because of their weedy and vigorous behaviour (i.e. *Glycine*, *Puearia*, *Mucuna*) (Lal, 1990). Experiments are being conducted with N-fixing legume species to assess their potential as dead mulches when sprayed with herbicide prior to planting, and the first results are very encouraging. The mulch controls the weeds during the first two phases of the growth cycle and the soil is enriched in nitrogen, favouring early vegetative growth. For healthy growth, cassava depends on mycorrhizal symbiosis and the regular insertion of a legume in the cropping systems has been shown to increase spore counts by 36% at the end of the rotation. Rotation with green manure leads to balanced nutrient extraction, enhances soil life and reduces vulnerability to erosion (Leihner and Lopez, 1988).

The application of mulch made of the leaves of *Flemingia macrophylla* was found to have a positive effect on the root yield of cassava in South Benin, West Africa (Böhringer and Leihner, 1997), but it represented an important input. In Asia, green manuring and alley cropping have not been adopted, except for the use of *Tephrosia candida* as an erosion control in northern Vietnam. When species such as *Leucaena* are planted in alleys, there are no important shading effects from these species if they are pruned two to three times a year. Depending on the size of the plot, this work represents a significant investment in working man-days, which is not necessarily rewarding. *Leucaena* contributes high amounts of N but competes strongly for K. Considering the moderate N

but high K requirements of cassava, such alley cropping may result in the unbalanced development of leaves and stems and the low harvest indices and root yields.

WEEDING

Hand weeding is the most common technique, using hoes, shovels or machetes, but in some places, pulling them out by hand is preferred. The major weeds affecting cassava production are *Andropogon* spp., *Imperata cylindrica*, *Panicum maximum* and *Pennisetum* spp. for the grasses and *Commelina* spp., *Mimosa invisa* and *Mucuna pruriens* for the broadleaves, but many others can cause problems. *Imperata cylindrica* competes for water and also pierces the roots, providing entry to pathogens. The earliest growth stage, until the canopy closes completely, is the most critical period and it should be kept weed free during the first two phases of the growth cycle: stem cutting sprouting and canopy establishment. Weeding should start 3 WAP and should be repeated as often as necessary until the canopy closes in. Weed competition during the first 2 months can reduce yield by 50%. Weeding after 4 months will not necessarily increase yield and late weed infestations occurring before harvest appear to have little impact on yield, though this can disturb the harvest and lower the quality of the stakes of the future crop.

Weeding requires between 20 and 200 man-days/ha, making it one of the highest costs. Use of bullocks and pre-emergence herbicides, combined with intercropping, mulching or planting in the dry season, may all reduce weeding costs. No herbicide has been developed especially for cassava but the substituted ureas (diuron, fluometuron and linuron) are suitable and are moderately selective for the control of broadleaf weeds. Gramoxone and paraquat (0.5 kg/ha of active ingredient (a.i.)) are commonly used between rows. Diuron has been shown to be effective at 1.6 kg of a.i./ha, atrazine at 2 kg a.i./ha and fluometuron at 2 kg a.i./ha. For grasses, highly selective herbicides such as alachlor, butachlor and glyphosate (1 kg a.i./ha) are recommended, while oxyfluorfen can control both broadleaf weeds and grasses. Spraying can be carried out immediately after planting, within 4 days and before sprouting. In Thailand, the best results are obtained with pre-emergence application of metolachlor (1.56 kg a.i./ha) with or without post-emergence spraying of paraquat (0.5 kg a.i./ha), with glyphosate as a cost efficient alternative. If the treatment cannot be done at this very early stage, then protective shields must be used to avoid contact with shoots.

The more vigorous and early branching cultivars will develop a canopy rapidly and higher densities will also contribute to early formation of cover. Fallow management is important and plant cover crops such as *Mucuna* (60 × 40 cm, two seeds per hill), *Crotolaria* (drill at row spacing at 60 cm) and *Calopogonium* (drill at row spacing at 30 cm) are very useful in degraded and

weed-infested fields for one season, followed by cassava (Leihner and Lopez, 1988; Leihner, 2002). The growth of these cover crops is very useful in Ghana, where they cover the land completely and reduce the weed population greatly, and therefore the frequency of weeding.

FERTILIZATION AND NUTRIENT DISORDERS

Cassava cultivation on the same plot leads rapidly to nutrient depletion as a result of nutrient absorption by the plants and their removal with the harvested product, roots and stakes. Nutrient removal is higher when yields are high because when fertility is high, the plant has a higher nutrient concentration. In order to prevent nutrient depletion, an application of approximately 80 kg N, 9 kg P and 50 kg K/ha is recommended when the expected yield is approximately 15 t/ha if all the stems and the leaves are to be removed from the area (Howeler, 2001). However, if tops are returned to the soil, it has been shown in Thailand that after 19 years of cultivation, the yield is about 10 t/ha (twice as high as when tops are removed). With adequate fertilization, high yields of at least 20 t/ha are maintained during 19 years of continuous cropping (Howeler, 2002).

If crop yields are low and if other potential causes have been ruled out (i.e. pests, disease, shade, low temperatures), cassava may be suffering from nutritional deficiencies. A diagnostic can be done by combining different techniques. Visual identification of mineral deficiencies is a quick and cheap method. Many symptoms have been described with colour photos in several useful publications (Asher *et al.*, 1980; Lozano *et al.*, 1981; Howeler, 1996a, b; Susan John *et al.*, 2006). Soil analysis is quite advantageous because it can detect deficiencies before planting and, if necessary, elements can be applied to correct the problem during growth. In order to do so, representative soil samples are collected and mixed together, finely ground, screened and sent to the laboratory. The results are then compared with published data. Table 5.1 presents the ranges corresponding to the nutritional requirements of cassava (Howeler, 1996a, b).

The blade of the youngest, fully expanded leaf is the most suitable sample for indicating the crop's requirements. Normally, it is the fourth or fifth leaf from the top and only the blades are analysed, not their petioles. Approximately 20 leaf samples should be collected from a single plot, 4 months after planting, when the nutrient concentrations have stabilized. The leaves should be dried as soon as possible in an oven around 60–80°C for 24–48 h. Once ground, the dried leaves are preserved in vials until analysis. The diagnosis of nutritional disorders is done by comparing the values obtained from the laboratory to those given in Table 5.2, or with other levels presented in the literature (Howeler, 1996a, b). Other techniques, such as the missing element technique, can be used in pots in a greenhouse or in the field: all nutrients (i.e. N, P, K) are applied to all

Table 5.1. Levels of soil nutrients relative to cassava production.

Soil characteristic	Very low	Low	Medium	High	Very high
pH (in soil water)	< 3.5	3.5–4.5	4.5–7	7–8	> 8
Organic matter (%)	< 1	1–2	2–40	> 4	
Al saturation (%)			< 75	75–85	> 85
Salinity (mS/cm)			< 0.5	0.5–1	> 1
Na saturation			< 2	2–10	> 10
P (μg/g)	< 2	2–4	4–15	> 15	
K (meq 100/g)	< 0.1	0.1–0.15	0.15–0.25	> 0.25	
Ca (meq 100/g)	< 0.25	0.25–1	1–5	> 5	
Mg (meq 100/g)	< 0.2	0.2–0.4	0.4–1	> 1	
S (μg/g)	< 20	20–40	40–70	> 70	
B (μg/g)	< 0.2	0.2–0.5	0.5–1	1–2	> 2
Cu (μg/g)	< 0.1	0.1–0.3	0.3–1	1–5	> 5
Mn (μg/g)	< 5	5–10	10–100	100–250	> 250
Fe (μg/g)	< 1	1–10	10–100	> 100	
Zn (μg/g)	< 0.5	0.5–1	1–5	5–50	> 50

Source: Howeler (2002).

Table 5.2. Average nutrient concentrations in youngest, fully expanded leaf blades of cassava corresponding to different nutritional states of the plants.

Nutrient	Very deficient*	Deficient	Low	Sufficient	High	Toxic
N (%)	< 4	4.5	5	5.4	> 5.8	n.a.
P (%)	< 0.25	0.3	0.37	0.45	> 0.5	n.a.
K (%)	< 0.85	1	1.3	1.65	2.1	> 2.4
Ca (%)	< 0.25	0.35	0.45	0.65	0.8	> 0.88
Mg (%)	< 0.15	0.18	0.23	0.27	> 0.29	n.a.
S (%)	< 0.2	0.25	0.28	0.33	> 0.36	n.a.
B (μg/g)	< 7	11	17	23	50	> 64
Cu (μg/g)	< 1.5	2.5	5.4	8	12	> 15
Fe (μg/g)	< 100	105	115	130	170	> 200
Mn (μg/g)	< 30	35	45	100	200	> 250
Zn (μg/g)	< 25	28	34	36	90	> 120

Note: *Very deficient = < 40% maximum yield (m.y.); deficient = 40–80% m.y.; low = 80–90% m.y.; sufficient = 90–100% m.y.; high = 100% m.y.; toxic = < 90% m.y. Source: Howeler (1996a, b).

treatments with rates known to be non-limiting, except one nutrient which is missing in each treatment. The treatments exhibiting the poorest growth are those indicating which element is deficient.

Excess N induces an overproduction of leaves and stems and a poor root yield. It is important to apply the right amount, but also the right balance

between the various nutrients. Fertilizers are best applied as a band on one or both sides of the rows. Spot placement just beside the planting site is also effective. Broadcasting the fertilizer is discouraged as the nutrients are not readily accessible to the newly planted cassava and will favour weeds rather than the crop.

N deficiency reduces plant growth and yield of roots but there are no clearly observable symptoms or chlorosis. Stunting of cassava plants can occur without remarkable changes in leaf colour. It is sometimes observed in very sandy soils with poor organic matter. To compensate for deficiency, applications should be made at planting and again 3 months later at a low rate of 50–100 kg/ha. If cassava is grown for forage production, with green tops cut every 4 months, high rates of 200–300 kg/ha N have to be applied.

P deficiency produces leaves darker in colour with the purple coloration of the petioles more pronounced, but severe deficiency can also cause yellowing and necrosis of young leaves. All P fertilizers should be applied to the soil at planting as 200–400 kg/ha of P_2O_5. Mycorrhizal symbiosis around the cassava roots increases significantly the plant's ability to absorb P (Howeler, 2002).

K deficiency reduces the height of the plant without causing spectacular chlorosis. Plants have leaves with narrow and fewer lobes. Cassava has high requirements for K and, in many soils where K level is low, the response to N and P fertilizers is poor (Onwueme and Charles, 1994). Potassium should be band applied as 100–200 kg/ha of K_2O_5 at planting and again 3 months later. In traditional slash-and-burn agriculture, the high potassium requirement of cassava is met by the naturally rich ash left after the bush has been burned. However, in many areas, more demanding root crops such as yams, taro and sweet potato are planted before cassava and all export significant amounts of potash.

In some cases, magnesium, sulphur, zinc, copper, iron, manganese and boron deficiencies can produce remarkable chlorosis (Lozano *et al.*, 1981) but can be corrected with proper fertilizer applications. Cassava is very tolerant to soil acidity and, in most growing areas, the crop does not respond to the application of lime. When responses are reported, as in India and China, they may be due to Ca deficiency rather than to the neutralizing effect of lime itself. Significant variety differences in tolerance to Fe and Zn have been observed and a change of cultivar is often a more practical solution than correcting applications of micronutrients (Howeler, 2001).

In Asia, it is recommended that P be applied fully at the time of planting, while N and K can be applied at 30 DAP. Alternatively, all fertilizers can be applied together at 30 DAP. In China, the highest yields are reported with application split at 30 and 90 DAP. In India, the best results are reported with application of all N and K shortly after planting and in the Philippines, there are no significant differences between different split applications occurring between planting and 60 DAP. In Latin America, no significant differences

were found between the application of all three nutrients at planting and the split application of N, P and K at planting, 30 and 60 DAP. In Ghana, it is recommended that 400 kg NPK (15–15–15)/ha of 40 g per plant be applied and that the application is split. The first application should occur 30 DAP (spot placement and covered) and the second at 60 DAP (spot placement but not covered). Slow release fertilizers (lime, manures, rock phosphates) can be broadcasted and incorporated in the soil before planting, but highly soluble fertilizers should be band applied just after planting so that the young roots can absorb nutrients.

In traditional farming systems, smallholders apply animal manures to cassava with good results, but optimum rates and methods of application have not been tested experimentally. Rates vary from 5 to 10 t/ha of pig manure in Vietnam and south China, to 9 t/ha of cattle manure in Indonesia and 4–5 t/ha of chicken manure in Colombia (Howeler, 2002). In areas of Brazil where there are large cattle populations, there is a simple system where cattle are enclosed in plots in which cassava is to be planted. This economical application of nutrients to cassava gives good results (Silvestre and Arraudeau, 1983).

HARVESTING

Although the harvest can be spread over time, it is the most expensive operation and can represent between 30 and 50% of the total cost in any cropping system. Young roots contain a limited amount of starch, while old roots contain a high proportion of lignified and fibrous matter. It is best to harvest when the starch content of the root is at its maximum. For most cultivars, this occurs at around 10–12 months but, for early maturing varieties, it can be as early as the 7th month. However, the gains in yield that are obtained after 10 months of growth are quite significant and if there is no special reason for an early harvest, it is wise to leave cassava in the ground for a few more months as, at this stage, the crop does not require extra care. The cassava root deteriorates rapidly, in 36–48 h, so that farmers harvest only what is needed, leaving the remaining plants to continue growing until they are wanted. This is especially true in traditional cropping systems, but also in intensive and commercial ones where lines of the field are harvested one after the other, depending on handling capacity.

Hand harvesting is the rule. A machete is used to cut off the stems approximately 20–30 cm above the ground. If the ground is sufficiently loose, a strong pull at the base of the remaining portion of the stem is sufficient to lift out the roots and this is especially easy if the plant has been planted on ridges. If the soil is hard and compact, it might be necessary to loosen it with a tool before pulling, so the rapidity of the harvest depends on the compactness of the soil. On compact soils, a man can harvest 500 kg fresh roots/day and double this (1 t/day) on loose soils. Harvesting during the dry season is more difficult than during the wet season. This is unfortunate as many farmers involved in

some form of postharvest processing prefer to sun-dry their roots during the dry season. To save labour, some farmers replant cassava while harvesting. Once the roots have been lifted, stem cuttings of the same plant are established in a hole next to it. By the time the field has been harvested, it has again been replanted, although the differences in age between the first and the last plants can vary by up to 6 months. This practice should not be encouraged as it exhausts soil fertility rapidly.

Mechanical harvesting has been tried in various countries of Asia, Africa and South America but has encountered serious difficulties, one of which being the considerable power needed for lifting, approximately 100 hp per row (Silvestre, 1987). The tops that are removed can be shredded mechanically for subsequent incorporation into the soil, or kept as a source of planting material. Once the tops have been removed, the lifting has to be done within a few days or the plants will mobilize their reserves and initiate new shoots, reducing the quality of the roots. Several uplifting devices have been designed and tested but none seem to be satisfactory. The principle is rather simple and consists of a wide shear placed in front for slicing the earth and lifting and a vibrating system at the rear for removing the soil on the same principles as mechanized potato harvesting.

Transport of the roots can also be mechanized. A belt conveyer behind the lifting device transfers the roots into a trailer. Finally, the roots are separated from each other and the parts of the peduncle, or fragments of stem, which are still attached are eliminated. At this stage, the roots are screened and the ones not wanted are discarded. Harvesting requires between 20 and 40 man-days/ha, with transport being the most costly operation. The efficiency of harvesting depends on the soil texture and climatic conditions, but also on the weed population and the depth and shape of the roots. The development of varieties with compact root mass will make harvesting easier.

Cassava leaves are high in protein, with a favourable balance of amino acids, and can be used for animal feeding after proper drying and ensiling. In Asia, numerous experiments have been conducted with pigs, poultry, dairy and beef cattle and have shown very encouraging results. New varieties may need to be developed for this harvestable product. A combination of different techniques, plant spacing, fertilization and pruning times may allow farmers to increase the value of their harvest per hectare.

This page intentionally left blank

6

Pests and Diseases

Cassava is attacked by numerous pests and diseases that cause significant losses, especially in South America, its area of origin. Some pathogens attack only the stakes and invade the vascular system, constituting primary sources of infection, while others attack only foliar or root tissues. The vegetative nature of cassava propagation contributes to pest build-up and dissemination among countries and continents. Because of its long growth cycle, the cassava plant is almost always present in farmers' fields or backyards, contributing to the maintenance of pathogen populations and inoculums. The present shift towards large-scale planting to satisfy demand may contribute to the emergence of new or worse pest and disease problems.

PESTS

No less than 200 species have been reported to attack cassava. The pests vary greatly between the three major producing regions, indicating that severe quarantine measures should prevent the introduction of pests from the Americas to Africa, Asia and the Pacific. In Asia, none of the major American pests have become endemic and native arthropods are not causing serious crop damage (Bellotti *et al.*, 1999). Several pests endemic to the Americas (hornworms, mites, lace bugs, whiteflies and stem borers) could cause devastating losses if introduced accidentally to Africa or Asia. Some species considered to be minor pests in America could become major predators in geographical areas where they have no natural enemies (Table 6.1).

Pests damage cassava indirectly as they feed on the leaves or stems, reducing the canopy area of the plant, the leaf life and therefore its photosynthetic capacity. Arthropod pests appear to be more damaging during the dry season and do not seem to cause significant losses in humid areas with high rainfall. Because most pests prefer the younger and tender leaves, their feeding during the dry season causes the greatest yield losses. When the plant enters a wet season, it has the capacity to recover rapidly as it can produce a

Table 6.1. Geographical distribution of important pests of cassava.

Pest	Species	America	Africa	Asia–Pacific
Mites	*Mononychellus tanajoa*	x	x	
	Tetranychus urticae	x		x
Mealybugs	*Phenacoccus manihoti*	x	x	
	Phenacoccus herreni	x		
Whiteflies	*Aleurotrachelus socialis*	x		
	Aleurodicus dispersus	x	x	x
	Aleurothrixus aepim	x		
	Bemisia tabaci	x	x	x
	Bemisia afer	x	x	
Hornworm	*Erinnyis ello*	x		
	Erinnyis alope	x		
Lace bugs	*Vatiga illudens*	x		
	Vatiga manihotae	x		
Burrower bugs	*Cyrtomenus bergi*	x		
Thrips	*Frankliniella williamsi*	x	x	
	Scirtothrips manihoti	x		
Scales	*Aonidomytilus albus*	x	x	x
Fruit flies	*Anastrepha pickeli*	x		
	Anastrepha manihoti	x		
Shoot flies	*Neosilba perezi*	x		
	Silba pendula	x		
Gallmidge	*Jatrophobia (Eudiplosis) brasiliensis*	x		
White grubs	*Leucopholis rorida*	x	x	x
	Phyllophaga spp.	x	x	x
	Several others non-identified	x	x	x
Termites	*Coptotermes* spp.	x	x	x
	Heterotermes tenuis	x		
Stem borers	*Chilomima* spp.	x		
	Coelosternus spp.	x		
	Lagochirus spp.	x	x	x
Leaf-cutter ants	*Atta* spp.	x		
	Acromyrmex spp.	x		
Root mealy bugs	*Pseudococcus mandioca*	x		
	Stictococcus vayssierei		x	
Grasshoppers	*Zonocerus elegans*	x	x	
	Zonocerus variegatus	x	x	

Source: Bellotti *et al.* (1999).

new leaf canopy and therefore increase its photosynthetic rate in the newly formed leaves.

Mites

Of the 40 species reported, two are the most frequent: *Mononychellus tanajoa* originates in South America but is now present in Africa and *Tetranychus urticae* is present in South America and Asia. These green mites attack the growing point, feeding on young leaves and the tender portions of the stems. Infested leaves lose their normal colour, develop yellow spots and are deformed. Severe damage can stunt plant growth and induce branching. The continued use of acaricides is not feasible and control measures focus on host plant resistance and biological control. CIAT has succeeded in developing varieties with an improved level of resistance and has released them to farmers (Bellotti, 2002). Some predators, phytoseiid species from South America, have been identified. Out of the 66 species collected, 13 are known to occur frequently. Phytoseiid species have been introduced in Africa and, after several massive releases, *Typhlodromalus aripo* has contributed successfully to the biological control of the green mite (*M. tanajoa*) in Africa (Yanineck *et al.*, 1992, 1993).

Mealybugs

Approximately 15 species of mealy bug have been reported feeding on cassava but only *Phenacoccus manihoti* and *P. herreni* are economically important. The nymphs and adults feed on the leaves, causing yellowing and malformation. *Phenacoccus herreni* is found in northern South America and high populations cause serious yield losses. These populations peak during the dry season; however, the rains reduce them and permit the recovery of the crop. *P. manihoti* was introduced accidentally into Africa in the 1970s but has been biologically controlled since. In Africa, *Phenacoccus manihoti* has been controlled successfully through the introduction of a parasite, the predator wasp *Apoanagyrus lopezi* from South America, wherever it was released in Africa. In Brazil, in the states of Bahia and Pernambuco where cassava was suffering from *P. herreni* attacks, this mealy bug was controlled successfully by the introduction of parasites, *Acerophagus coccois*, *A. diversicornis* and *Aenasius vexans*, the last showing a strong preference for *P. herreni* (Bellotti, 2002).

Whiteflies

The whitefly, *Bemisia tabaci*, is known to transmit the cassava mosaic virus (CMD) in Africa, India and Sri Lanka. Whiteflies cause direct damage on

cassava by feeding on the phloem of the leaves, inducing leaf chlorosis and fall, which results in a reduction in root yield. Intercropping cassava is known to control the spread and development of whitefly populations efficiently but this technique depends on the intercropped species for success. Biological control might soon appear feasible using a group of microhymenopteran parasites. *Encarsia hispida* seems to be the most frequent parasite observed on the whitefly *Aleurotrachelus socialis* in South America but its real efficiency in controlling populations is not known (Evans and Castillo, 1998).

Lepidoptera (Hornworms, Stem Borers, Burrower Bugs, Lace Bugs)

Attacks of the hornworm, *Erinnyis ello*, and the stem borer, *Chilomima clarkei*, are the most devastating. The hornworm (*E. ello*) has a geographical range from Paraguay to the Caribbean. The larvae feed on the leaves, leaf buds and young stems. When attacks are severe, they cause complete defoliation of the plant but the plant recovers, especially if rainfall is good. Pesticides can control hornworm populations if they are detected at an early stage. Biological control is complicated by the fact that the release of predators has to be synchronized with the early stages of the hornworms, preferably the egg or the first to third larval instars. CIAT has developed a cheap, storable, biological pesticide consisting of a virus species of the family Baculoviridae. Infested larvae collected from the field, macerated in a blender, filtered and mixed with water are sprayed on hornworm-infested fields (Bellotti, 2002).

Populations of stem borers (*C. clarkei*) are highest during the rainy season and, when more than 35% of cassava plants show stem breakage, yield losses of up to 60% can occur. Once the larvae have entered the stem, control is quite impossible, but the early larvae are more vulnerable. CIAT plans to introduce *Bacillus thuringiensis* (*Bt*) genes through *Agrobacterium*-mediated genetic transformation into the embryonic tissues of cassava in an attempt to develop transgenic varieties resistant to *C. clarkei* (CIAT, 1999). The soil bacterium (*Bt*) carries a set of *cry* genes encoding insect-specific endotoxins that are efficient in combating a wide range of insects (Taylor, N. *et al.*, 2004).

Cyrtomenus bergi, the cassava burrower bug, feeds directly on the roots of the plant, causing economic losses in Costa Rica, Panama and Venezuela. The nymphs and adults feed on cassava roots by penetrating the peel using their strong stylet. Several soil pathogens (i.e. *Aspergillus*, *Fusarium*, *Pythium* spp.) then enter through the lesions and develop root rot. The rainy season greatly favours adult and nymph activity, while the dry season increases nymphal mortality. It appears that cultivars with low cyanogenic glucoside content are more susceptible and that cultivars with high CG content are resistant to *C. bergi* damage. Control is difficult and several costly pesticide applications are necessary.

In South America, a prolonged dry season is favourable for the development of lace bug (*Vatiga illudens* and *V. manihotae*) populations. Adults and nymphs feed on the lower surface of the leaves. They cause economic losses in Brazil.

Thrips

Thrips (*Frankliniella williamsi*, *Scirtothrips manihoti*) attack cassava in South America during the dry season. They damage the growing points. The young leaves are distorted and produce deformed older leaves with yellow spots. They also cause wounds on the young stems and the internodes are shortened. When the attack is severe, the plant can be reduced to a witch's broom appearance. Some cultivars are resistant but systemic insecticides such as dimethoate (160 cc a.i./ha) give good control (Lozano *et al.*, 1981).

NEMATODES

Nematodes are often responsible for indirect damage as they open the way to various bacterial or fungal infestations. The most frequently encountered belong to the genera *Meloidogyne*, *Pratylenchus*, *Heliocotylenchus*, *Rotylenchulus*, *Criconemoides*, *Scutellonema* and *Xiphinema* (McSorley *et al.*, 1983; Jatala and Bridge, 1990). The lesion nematode, *P. brachyurus*, causes serious damage in South America and Brazil. The most widely reported nematodes are the root-knot nematodes, which are found on cassava in all continents, including the Pacific islands (Bridge, 1988). The most important species are *M. incognita* and *M. javanica*. Females live in the roots and lay their eggs while feeding on the tissues. The tissues are disorganized and galls are produced on the roots. There are remarkable differences between cultivars, ranging from resistance to susceptibility. Root yield losses have been reported in Africa. When the infestation is severe, the root system is reduced considerably and causes stunting of the plant. The most serious effect of infestation is on storability and important postharvest losses are reported (Silvestre and Arraudeau, 1983; Hillocks and Wydra, 2002). The use of less susceptible cultivars and proper crop rotation can avoid infestations.

BACTERIA

The cassava bacterial blight (CBB) is one of the most serious diseases affecting cassava and is caused by *Xanthomonas campestris* pv. *manihotis* (or *X. axonopodis* pv. *manihotis*). It is found on cassava and related species (*M. apii*, *M. glaziovii* and *M.*

palmata). The bacterium is of South American origin and was observed in Brazil as early as 1912 (Silvestre and Arraudeau, 1983). It has caused severe epidemics following its introduction into Africa but the disease is minor in Asia. In the Republic of Congo, the introduction of the disease led to total loss of planting material but, after the introduction of resistant varieties, the disease was contained, though there are some indications that CBB still occurs sporadically in the rainforest zone. In West Africa, CBB is present in all producing countries and severe systemic infections cause significant losses in leaf biomass, root yield and in planting material. Most strains appear to be highly virulent (Wydra *et al.*, 2001).

The symptoms start with the presence of water-soaked angular spots and the total or partial wilting of the leaves and branches. The spots enlarge and turn brown with a circular necrotic area around them. There are gum exudates on the young stems and petioles, which are more pronounced during the rainy season. When the infection is severe, the shoots die back, giving a candlestick appearance to the plants. Various control measures have been recommended, from crop rotation to break the life cycle of the bacteria, to the burying and burning of infected plant material during the dry season. Grasshoppers are vectors of the disease and their control in fallow, around or in cassava fields, is another adequate control measure. Mixed cropping and the application of potash fertilizer are also recommended to lower the incidence of the disease. Improved varieties with resistance of CBB now exist in CIAT and IITA and have been released to farmers. It has been observed, however, that some varieties loose their resistance over time, probably because of the development of more virulent strains.

DNA fingerprinting of CBB strains has shown that there are no correlations between virulence and DNA groupings but that there are five clusters in South American grouping strains from climatic zones, while the African population is more uniform, reflecting its recent introduction. Consequently, great care should be taken when introducing material from South America to Africa (Verdier *et al.*, 1993). The selection of non-infected planting material is essential. Seeds are not *X. campestris*-free and this should be taken into account in the international exchange between South America and Africa, as new strains can be introduced. Seeds can be heat treated and tested for contamination. The FAO-IPGRI technical guidelines for the safe international movement of cassava provide useful details and recommendations (Frison and Feliu, 1991).

Angular leaf spot (also called bacterial necrosis) is another bacterial disease of cassava caused by *X. campestris* pv. *cassavae*. This disease has been reported in Malawi, Uganda, Rwanda, southern Africa and Niger. The symptoms are angular leaf spots with bright yellow exudates during periods of high humidity. Bacterial necrosis can lead to the complete defoliation of the plant. The disease occurs mostly on poor soils and after heavy rains (Hillocks and Wydra, 2002).

In South America, *Erwinia carotovora* ssp. *carotovora* causes the internal rotting of stems and branches with dark lesions and necrosis of the roots. The disease is characterized by a discoloration of the woody portion of the plant. In

Colombia, the spread of these bacteria appears to be due to fruit flies (*Anastrepha* spp.) and the insects make holes on the stem surface. These holes are easy to distinguish by the exuding latex where the stem has been perforated. In the Republic of Congo, soft rots of harvested roots have been observed. The planting of uninfested, healthy stakes of varieties known to be resistant to fruit fly damage and the appropriate use of insecticides is the recommended measure (Silvestre and Arraudeau, 1983).

FUNGI

Reportedly, close to 250 species of fungi have been found infecting cassava but only a dozen or so seem to have an economic importance. They can cause damage to the leaves, stems or roots (Table 6.2).

Table 6.2. Some of the most common fungi causing damage on cassava.

Species	Disease name	Leaves	Stems	Roots
Cercospora henningsii	Brown leaf spot	x		
C. caribaea	White leaf spot	x		
C. vicosae	Diffuse leaf spot	x		
Phyllosticta spp.	Ring leaf spot	x		
Oidium manihotis	Ash disease	x		
Uromyces spp.	Rust	x	x	
Colletotrichum gloeosporioides	Anthracnose		x	
Glomerella cingulata	Glomerella stem rot		x	
Botryodiplodia theobromae	Botryodiplodia stem rot		x	
Ophiobolus manihotis			x	
Phomopsis manihot			x	
Sphaceloma manihoticola	Superelongation disease		x	
Elsinoe brasiliensis			x	
Cochliobolus lunatus			x	
Phytophthora dreschleri	Phytophthora root rot			x
P. erythropseptica				x
P. richardii				x
P. parasitica				x
Pythium schleroteichum				x
Fomes lignosus	White thread disease			x
Sclerotium rolfsii	Sclerotium root rot			x
Armillariella mellea	Dry root rot			x
Fusarium monoliforme				x
F. oxysporum				x
F. semitectum				x
Phaeolus manihotis				x
Sphaerostilbe repens				x

Source: Silvestre and Arraudeau (1983); Hillocks and Wydra (2002).

The brown leaf spot caused by *Cercospora henningsii* is one of the most common diseases in cassava. This disease has a worldwide distribution and almost always occurs in plantings located in areas with high temperatures. The optimum conditions for spore production are when free water on the surface of the leaves reaches a temperature between 25 and 32°C. The older leaves are more susceptible than the younger ones. The disease is more widespread and severe when the plants are 5 months old. This disease is characterized by angular, uniformly brown spots located on both surfaces of the leaf. As the disease advances, the leaves become yellow, dry and finally fall. If susceptible cultivars are used, cassava plants can be severely defoliated at the end of the rainy season. This defoliation, especially when it is followed by the dry season, can cause yield losses of up to 20% on individual plants. The use of resistant varieties and of wider spacing between plants to reduce humidity are simple control measures. Fungicides are not economical.

White leaf spot is caused by *C. caribaea*, a species with worldwide distribution. This disease is commonly found in humid but cool growing areas and causes defoliation of susceptible genotypes. Sporulation occurs on the surface of the leaf lesions during humid weather and the conidia are distributed by rain and wind, from plant to plant. The lesions are small, angular and yellowish brown, the spots enlarge to reach 3–5 mm and have a purple border. The diffuse leaf spot caused by *C. vicosae* also has a worldwide distribution and is prevalent in warmer and humid areas, especially in Brazil and Colombia. The symptoms are distinct from the two previous *Cercospora* leaf spots, this species producing large and diffuse infections without definite borders, which may cover one third of a leaf lobe. Control measures are by the use of resistant varieties.

Phoma (or *Phyllosticta*) spp. are associated with leaf lesions causing ring leaf spot disease. It is characterized by large brown spots visible on both surfaces of the lamina that are circular with a diameter of approximately 1–3 cm and located on the edges of the lobes. The disease is quite common in Latin America but has also been reported in India and Africa. The spread of the disease seems to be favoured by temperatures below 22°C and is common during cool periods of wet weather. The disease can defoliate susceptible cultivars, cause dieback of the young shoots and sometimes kill the plant. Except for the use of resistant cultivars, no control measures are known (Lozano *et al.*, 1981).

Cassava anthracnose occurs worldwide and is common in the humid tropics. In Africa, it is more common in lowland rainforest than in the savannahs. It is caused by *Glomerella manihotis* but the *Colletotrichum* state (*C. gloeosporioides* f. sp. *manihotis*) is more commonly referred to. The symptoms are leaf spots of 10 mm in diameter produced at the base of the leaves but the stems can be attacked as well, causing cankers and damaging planting material. Spore dispersal is mainly by wind and water but sap-sucking insects might contribute to the infection. IITA has identified resistant cultivars (Ikotun

and Hahn, 1994). Stem cuttings stored in wet climates, for future planting, may be infected by *G. cingulata* and *Botryodiplodia theobromae*. Both fungi cause rots that appear at the cut end of the stems and spread inside during storage.

Several *Phytophthora* species are associated with cassava root rots and they often occur with some soilborne fungi such as *Pythium* or *Fusarium* spp. Root damage favours infections. The *Fusarium* species are a significant component associated with cassava root rot. Numerous and diverse species are associated with rotted cassava in Nigeria and Cameroon. The use of AFLP markers allowed the main species to be distinguished (*F. oxysporum* and *F. solani*) but species distribution varied among countries and among locations within a country. This suggests that genotype resistant at one location may not be resistant at another. The pathogens can be spread by cuttings (Bandyopadhyay *et al.*, 2006). In wet areas next to drainage ditches or in waterlogged soils, the losses can reach 80%. Symptoms are the dieback of terminal shoots, leading to sudden wilting of the plant. In Central Africa, most root rot disease is caused by *Fomes lignosus* but is significant only in fields cleared recently from the forest, where stumps have been left to rot. In West Africa, *Sclerotium* spp. affect old plants and the disease is identified by the white mycelium, which penetrates the root epidermis and causes necrosis and rot.

VIRUSES

Root crop species such as cassava tend to accumulate, through successive clonal generations, various viruses in their tissues and in planting material. So far, no less than 17 different viruses have been isolated and characterized and it is very likely that new ones also will be identified soon (Table 6.3).

These viruses belong to different taxonomic groups and they have a localized geographic area of distribution. In Central and South America, several viruses found on cassava do not produce symptoms and deleterious effects. The three viruses which cause diseases that are economically important are the cassava common mosaic virus, the cassava vein mosaic virus and the cassava frogskin virus (Calvert and Thresh, 2002).

Cassava Common Mosaic Disease (CsCMD)

The symptoms are a leaf mosaic and chlorosis, which are more severe during cool periods, where yield losses up to 60% have been reported. The CsCMD is most prevalent in southern Brazil and Paraguay. There are no known vectors and the primary source is infected planting material. It can be spread by mechanical transmission on knives used to prepare the planting material. The most efficient control measure is the elimination of plants showing CsCMD symptoms.

Table 6.3. The viruses affecting cassava.

Geographic region	Virus	Taxonomic group
South America	Cassava common mosaic virus	*Potexvirus*
	Cassava virus X	*Potexvirus*
	Cassava vein mosaic virus	*Caulimoviridae*
	Cassava Colombian symptomless virus	*Potexvirus*
	Cassava American latent virus	*Comoviridae: Nepovirus*
	Cassava frogskin virus	Unassigned
Africa	African cassava mosaic virus	*Geminiviridae: Begomovirus*
	East African cassava mosaic	*Geminiviridae: Begomovirus*
	South African mosaic virus	*Geminiviridae: Begomovirus*
	Cassava brown streak virus	*Potyviridae: Ipomovirus*
	Cassava common mosaic virus	*Potexvirus*
	Cassava Ivorian Bacilliform virus	Unassigned
	Cassava Kumi viruses	Unassigned
	Cassava 'Q' virus	Unassigned
Asia and the Pacific	Cassava common mosaic virus	*Potexvirus*
	Indian cassava mosaic virus	*Geminiviridae: Begomovirus*
	Cassava green mottle virus	*Comoviridae: Nepovirus*

Source: Calvert and Thresh (2002).

Cassava Vein Mosaic Disease (CVMD)

CVMD is very common in the semiarid zone of north-east Brazil, although there are also reports of occurrence in other states of Brazil. When a recently planted infected stem cutting sprouts, the first five leaves exhibit vein chlorosis in a chevron pattern, or as ring spots on the lamina. Leaf deformation is common. The symptoms are more pronounced in the semiarid areas but, except for the period just after sprouting, CVMD does not affect plant vigour. The virus spreads through a field, suggesting that there is a vector, but it has yet to be identified. The elimination of infected plants is an efficient control measure.

Cassava Frogskin Disease (CFSD)

CFSD was first reported in Colombia but it is spreading, and it has also been reported in Panama and Costa Rica. In most genotypes, the leaves are symptomless. Severity depends on the age of the roots and climatic factors. Hot and dry conditions inhibit the symptoms, while cooler temperatures enhance them. The characteristic root symptoms are ridges and corky layers forming raised fissures on the surface of the root periderm. Severely infected roots do not accumulate starch. The initial dissemination of CFSD is through infected

planting material and, within a field, the vector is the whitefly (*B. tuberculata*). The problem is that stems and leaves do not provide signs of infection and, to make matters worse, infected stems are thicker than those of healthy plants and tend to be selected by farmers as stakes for subsequent planting. CFSD can, however, be controlled by careful selection of stems from harvested plants with symptomless roots (Calvert and Thresh, 2002).

Cassava Mosaic Disease (CMD) in Africa

CMD caused by the African cassava mosaic virus and the cassava brown streak virus disease (cassava brown streak disease: CBSD) are the two most important virus diseases in Africa. The mosaic virus causes the plant's leaves to wither, retarding root growth. The brown streak virus destroys leaf tissue and makes cassava roots corky and inedible. CMD occurs in all the growing areas of Africa, including the neighbouring islands of Capo Verde, Seychelles, Zanzibar, Madagascar, Reunion and Mauritius (Fauquet and Fargette, 1990). In many African countries, the disease is recognized as a major threat. The situation can change dramatically in a timescale of only 5 years and can move from benign (less than 20% incidence) to epidemic (when CMD is spread by the whitefly vector, *B. tabaci*) and farmers experience severe losses. The symptoms of CMD are the green and yellow mosaics. Leaves affected by the green mosaic have contrasting areas of green and light green on the lamina and these symptoms normally are not associated with a decreased leaf area or yield. Leaves affected by yellow mosaic have contrasting areas of green and yellow, with a remarkable distorted lamina. CMD-resistant varieties do not express symptoms as much as susceptible varieties. IITA has released numerous resistant varieties and the seeds have been distributed widely or used in breeding programmes in many African countries. Unfortunately, in many cases, farmers continue to grow local varieties that have no resistance to CMD. The reasons for this paradoxical situation are not fully understood (Calvert and Thresh, 2002).

Some strains of the virus are more virulent than others. Symptoms also depend on climatic factors. The most efficient approach to reducing the incidence and severity of the disease is to use resistant varieties and sanitation, involving the use of CMD-free planting material and the destruction and removal of diseased plants. Cropping practices can also reduce the incidence of the disease. For example, some planting dates can avoid exposing young plants to large populations of whiteflies. Other techniques, such as intercropping with different species, are quite efficient in reducing the incidence. The use of virus-free planting material is a basic approach to the control of CMD. However, even if farmers are aware of this, it is difficult for them to distinguish uninfected plants at the time stem cuttings are prepared because the plants are often leafless following drought or pest attacks and, therefore, CMD symptoms are not apparent.

Cassava Mosaic Disease (CMD) in India

CMD is the only disease known to be important in Asia, but is restricted to India (mostly Kerala and Tamil Nadu) and Sri Lanka. The symptoms of mosaic disease reported in India are similar to those observed in Africa. The Indian isolates are serologically distinguished from the African ones and are therefore regarded as different strains, so that the disease is now referred to as Indian cassava mosaic virus (ICMV) (Table 6.3). CMD spreads naturally in India and the vector is the whitefly, *Bemisia tabaci*. Experiments conducted in India have shown, however, that the high incidence of the disease is due to the use of infected plant material rather than rapid spread by whiteflies. The high productivity of cassava in India is associated with the limited use of intercrops, weed control, application of fertilizers and use of irrigation whenever necessary. However, farmers give limited attention to the selection of healthy planting material.

The use of true seeds might be a solution. In India, two promising parents – a CMD-resistant exotic accession (MNga-1) and a local cultivar ('Ambakadan') with profuse fruit setting, seed output and male sterility – have been studied for their seed production. The hybrid progenies of these two parents reveal a higher percentage of CMD-free seedlings and first clonal progenies in the evaluation trials conducted over 2 years in two different locations. A nearly homogeneous hybrid population resistant to CMD could be obtained by systematic roguing at seedling and first clonal stages. In the open pollinated (OP) progenies of 'Ambakadan', the CMD infection increases drastically due to secondary spread of the pathogen (Rajendran *et al*., 2005).

Cassava Brown Streak Disease (CBSD)

CBSD occurs in Uganda, Tanzania, Mozambique, Kenya, Malawi, Zimbabwe and Zambia. The virus affects leaves, stems, roots and even fruits. The disease is named after the brown elongated necrotic lesions that develop on the young green tissues of affected plants. CBSD causes necrosis of the roots, which develop characteristic constrictions. The main effect of the disease is on the quality of the root produced and not in root number or yield. Necrosis decreases the commercial value of the roots produced, which become unusable and unmarketable when damage is extensive. In most cases, farmers have to harvest prematurely before serious deterioration of the roots occurs, which naturally lowers the yield. There is evidence of natural spread between plants as clones, and plants obtained from true botanical seeds introduced from West Africa have become infected in eastern Africa. The spread is attributed to an arthropod or other vector as yet unidentified.

In the near future, the importance of stringent quarantine measures will have to be emphasized to control the safe movement of germplasm and to restrict distribution of cassava viruses. The present quarantine measures

(Frison and Feliu, 1991) will have to be revised soon as new cassava viruses have been characterized. New detection methods have been elaborated and are now readily available for routine control (i.e. using PCR).

INTEGRATED PEST AND DISEASE MANAGEMENT

It is often observed that failure to adapt cultural practices can contribute to pest and disease outbreaks and more crop damage. Preventive measures are recommended to farmers (Lozano *et al.*, 1981) and include:

- Use of disease-free stem cuttings.
- Use of resistant or tolerant cultivars.
- Avoidance of soils infested with soilborne pathogens and insects or postponement of planting until the pathogen population is low.
- Use of selective pesticides or fungicides to avoid the destruction of enemies.
- Application of selective insecticides only when damage is severe and the plant cannot recover without the aid of the application.
- Observation of quarantine measures to avoid the dissemination of pests and viruses in areas where they do not yet occur.

Interestingly, traditional cropping systems, involving different varieties associated and intercropped with different food crop species, are presenting natural pest management control measures represented by the existing 'filters' established between cassava and various pests and diseases. Pesticide use is always minimal among smallholders as the cassava crop cycle is long and necessitates several applications in order to be effective. As cassava shifts to commercial planting, there may be a tendency to apply pesticides. There is potential to use biopesticides instead of chemical pesticides (e.g. the effectiveness of spraying the hornworm baculovirus), but further research is necessary to develop new biopesticides.

Cultural practices such as intercropping have been shown on many occasions and in different countries to be effective in reducing pest populations. Unfortunately, on commercial plantations where mechanization is a standard practice, farmers are often reluctant to adopt intercropping, although profuse data indicate that they should. Other measures, such as the mixing of different varieties, the burning of plant debris, proper crop rotation, changing of planting dates and use of high quality pest-free cuttings contribute to an ideal combination. The implementation of an efficient integrated pest management system combining biological control and varietal resistance is essential for sustaining good yields (Bellotti *et al.*, 1999).

The decision to use IPM should be based on detailed agrosystem studies and proper identification of problems, and preference should be given to those IPM components that are most appropriate under smallholding conditions. Consequently, the approach should be decided on a case by case basis (Hahn and Caveness, 1990).

This page intentionally left blank

7

Postharvest Quality and Marketing

CHEMICAL COMPOSITION

Compared to other plant-food groups, cassava roots are a good source of energy, an average source of minerals and vitamins and the poorest source of proteins. Cassava leaves provide an excellent source of calcium and a good source of proteins. The use of edible cassava leaves as a green vegetable is popular in Africa and Madagascar. The composition of the leaves is highly variable and there is a wide spread of values for moisture percentage, vitamin C and iron (Bokanga, 1994). The cyanide content of leaves is not significantly different than that of the roots and apparently there are no significant differences in cyanide content with time of harvest between 14 and 16 months. Cassava is, on average, the driest root crop (highest DM) (Table 7.1).

A comprehensive study conducted in the Pacific, and mostly in Melanesia (Bradbury and Holloway, 1988), on more than 80 samples from three different countries (Papua New Guinea (PNG), the Solomon Islands and Fiji) indicates a very low protein content, which is of concern for people whose diet is based on cassava, especially if no complementary source, such as green leaves, beans or animal protein, is readily available. In Melanesia, like elsewhere in the world, there are significant differences in the chemical composition of different cultivars of cassava grown in the same environment. There are differences in moisture, starch, energy, protein, dietary fibre and sugar between cultivars and the characterization of these differences is a necessary prerequisite for breeding programmes (Table 7.2).

There is now great interest (e.g. the *HarvestPlus* initiative) in enhancing the nutritional value of cassava through breeding. Reports on the variability of carotene content of cassava germplasm indicate that the intensity of root colour is highly correlated with carotene concentration. The carotene content in the fresh root varies from less than 0.77 mg/100 g dry root to up to 4.69 mg/100 g dry root. The genotypes with the highest concentration in the fresh roots are not the ones with the highest concentration after processing. High levels of carotene can be recovered after boiling and this recovery varies greatly,

Table 7.1. Comparison between cassava and other uncooked foods.

	Cassava root	Sweet potato root	Yam *D. esculenta* tuber	Taro corm	Rice, polished, raw	Beans, dried	Cassava leaves
Moisture content %	63	71	74	69	12	12	75
Energy (kJ/100 g)	610	460	414	490	1500	1200	230
Protein %	0.5	1.4	2.0	1.1	6.5	22	6
Energy from protein* %	1.5	5.3	8.5	3.9	7.2	31	44
Dietary fibre %	1.5	1.6	1.2	1.5	2.4	22	7
Ca	20	29	8	32	4	100	350
Fe	0.2	0.4	0.8	0.5	0.5	8	2.8
Vitamin A (retinol equiv.)	Traces	0.01	0.02	0.01	0	0.008	1.4
Vitamin C (ascorbic acid)	15	24	20	15	0	Traces	80

Note: *An indication of the food as a source of protein is obtained by calculating the % of the total energy of the food provided by the protein.
Source: Bradbury and Holloway (1988).

depending on the genotype (Iglesias *et al.*, 1997). A traditional cultivar of cassava with a lycopene content up to 5 mg/kg has been collected recently from the Amazon Basin and shows that there is potential to improve cassava for such secondary metabolites with healthy value. Lycopene occurs in tomato, guava, watermelon and pink grapefruit and is thought to counteract the incidence of degenerative diseases (Pires *et al.*, 2007).

Some health problems have been associated with cassava consumption and with the absorption of residual cyanogens in processed foods. These problems include toxicity and chronic neurological diseases, including tropical ataxic neuropathy (TAN) and Konzo. TAN is a neurological disease associated with extreme poverty and cassava-based diets, although some co-factors might be involved. Konzo disease has been reported in different countries of Africa where bitter cassava dominates the diet. Death can occur rapidly if an excessive amount of HCN is ingested. Fatalities are, however, an exception because of the low levels of HCN in processed foods obtained with techniques aiming at detoxifying cassava (Dufour, 2007).

PHYSIOLOGICAL DISORDERS IN FRESHLY STORED ROOTS

Cassava roots do not have endogenous dormancy, they have no function in vegetative propagation and they do not present bud primordia from which growth could start again. The roots are perishable and start to deteriorate

Table 7.2. Mean values of 82 samples of cassava collected from three different Melanesian countries.

Compounds	Mean values
Moisture %	62.8
Energy (kJ/100 g)	580
Protein %	0.53
Starch %	31.0
Sugar %	0.83
Dietary fibre %	1.48
Fat %	0.17
Ash %	0.84
Minerals (mg/100 g):	
Ca	20
P	46
Mg	30
Na	7.2
K	302
S	6.4
Fe	0.23
Cu	0.14
Zn	0.48
Mn	0.06
Al	1.83
B	0.07
Vitamins (mg/100 g):	
Vitamin A (retinol + β car.)	Traces
Thiamin	0.05
Riboflavin	0.04
Nicotinic acid	0.6
Organic acid anions and calcium oxalate (mg/100 g):	
Total oxalate	29
Soluble oxalate	17
Calcium oxalate	17
Free calcium	17
Malate	322
Citrate	323
Succinate	343
Trypsin inhibitor	< 0.1

Source : Bradbury and Holloway (1988).

between 1 and 6 days after harvest, depending on the genotype, temperature and storage conditions. The appearance of blue spots and streaks in the xylem vessels is the first stage of deterioration and suggests that an endogenous enzymatic activity is responsible. The bluish streaks gradually become more prominent and turn black after a week or so. It is suggested that vascular discoloration is caused by local stress produced by high rates of water loss at damaged sites. Polyphenol oxidase (PPO), an enzyme, has been found in the cortex tissue of cassava roots undergoing vascular discoloration. PPO and peroxidase enzyme systems increase during cassava deterioration (Richard, 1985). The greatest activities of peroxidase and PPO are related to high amounts of phenolic compounds. There are interactions among three factors: the degree of postharvest deterioration, the respiratory rate and the weight loss of the root. Genotypes with higher respiratory rate and weight loss develop faster postharvest deterioration. Deterioration tends to decrease with plant age and vascular discoloration is stimulated by the attack of a number of pathogens. There is a rapid accumulation of phenolic compounds such as coumarins, catechins and flavonoids, which probably contribute directly to deterioration (Buschmann *et al.*, 2000). Processes that inhibit PPO can prevent vascular streaking and deterioration; these are heat treatment, cold storage, anaerobic storage and dipping the roots in solutions of antioxidants (e.g. ascorbic acid, sodium metabisulphite).

Ethylene is produced in the cassava root after 16–18 h of incubation (Ravi and Aked, 1996). There are differences between varieties for the rate of ethylene production. Cultivars susceptible to postharvest deterioration produce more ethylene than resistant cultivars, so it is likely that there is a relationship between ethylene and the deterioration in cassava root tissues. Of course, postharvest deterioration is enhanced by root injury. The postharvest deterioration of cassava resembles a wounding response with insufficient healing of the attacked sites. In fact, wound healing occurs but is probably too slow. When healing occurs, it is able to halt cassava's physiological deterioration (Wenham, 1995).

The conventional breeding of varieties having longer shelf lives is a practical approach to solving the perishability problem in cassava. The introduction of a genetic modification into its metabolism might be another approach, although more data are needed to assess its potential. There is not much information available on the biochemical pathways associated with cassava postharvest deterioration. The use of improved storage techniques remains the most practical approach.

MARKETING AND QUALITY STANDARDS

For industry, the moisture content of the dried chips has to be reduced to 14% maximum. The standard specifications are 65% minimum for starch, 5% maximum for raw fibre and 3% maximum for sand or dust.

The ethnic markets in the EU and the USA exhibit a relatively consistent demand for fresh roots, with slight rises occurring during some cultural and ethnic holidays. Improvements in postharvest storage and marketing of waxed roots have resulted in increased consumption, especially in US cities with Hispanic American residents. Quality and promotional programmes conducted by Caribbean companies have broadened the market for fresh and frozen cassava in the USA. The leading exporting country to the USA is Costa Rica. In the EU, demand is mostly the result of a large African population.

Fresh cassava exports are required to be of excellent quality. The roots must be mature, fleshy, not fibrous, free from major deformities, fresh in appearance, free from soil, softness and decay, cuts and bruises and the whole roots should have a clean and intact skin. Whole roots should be not less than 20 cm in length and 5 cm in diameter at the thickest end. Varieties with brown to golden brown skin colour are preferred and white- and yellow-fleshed roots are popular. Greyish flesh colours are not acceptable. Exported cassava must meet the quarantine and phytosanitary requirements of the importing countries. Consequently, the roots have to be free from soil, pest, disease and other foreign matter. So far, no chemical treatments are required in the USA.

STORAGE METHODS

The success of storage methods depends on the condition of the cassava roots. Damaged roots deteriorate more rapidly and have a shorter postharvest life. Mechanical damage occurs during the harvesting of the roots, when the roots are pulled out of the ground, because of the breaking off of the root tip and bruising of the neck of the root where it is attached to the plant. Deterioration starts at such sites of physical damage. Cultivars with compact, cylindrical or conical roots with a well-developed peduncle and no longitudinal splits are better adapted to conservation techniques. Those with a short peduncle are difficult to separate from the main stem. The roots can be left in the ground after the plant has matured, but susceptibility to pathogens increases. The roots may increase in size but they also become more fibrous and woody.

The simplest way of preserving cassava is in the ground until the crop is harvested, but different genotypes have different optimum ages after which there is a loss in yield or an alteration in quality. Several techniques have been described for preserving harvested roots buried in sand or in the soil for 1 or 2 months without noticeable deterioration. These involve the harvest of undamaged bunches with a portion of the main stem and the preparation of pits under shade (Ravi *et al.*, 1996). In India and South-east Asia, cassava roots can also be stored in clamps built by laying a round bed of paddy straw or dried grass approximately 1.5 m diameter and 15 cm thick. A heap of 300–500 kg fresh roots is then piled on it in a conical shape and covered with straw and a thick layer (15 cm) of soil, which is collected around the clamp while digging

the drainage ditch (Richard and Coursey, 1981). These simple clamps, often built in the field, are known to preserve roots for as long as 2 months, although ventilators made of bamboos or fibres may be necessary in the hot season. Wire netting has to be placed around the clamps to prevent rodent attack.

Box storage, with sawdust, coconut husk or moist coir dust, is also effective for 4 weeks in suitable temperatures (approximately 22–24°C). The main cause of losses in the boxes is drying of the packing material and its limitations are the cost of the box and the extra labour required. Cassava roots can also be preserved in polyethylene films for up to 3 weeks with microbial and fungicide treatments. One limitation, however, is the high cost of polyethylene bags and fungicide. Without fungicide and using simple woven bags, storage can last 7–10 days.

Cassava roots have been found to store best at 3°C, with 14% loss after 2 weeks and 23% after 4 weeks. If the roots are stored between 0°C and 2°C, an internal browning occurs. At temperatures above 4°C, roots rapidly show blue mould infections and are rejected after only 2 weeks. If cassava roots are stored at low temperatures, they deteriorate rapidly as soon as they are shifted to room temperature. Deep-freezing in polyethylene bags or in plastic boxes is feasible and afterwards cassava roots are quite palatable, although with a spongy texture. Considerable volumes preserved in this way, peeled, pre-cut and frozen, are widely available in supermarkets in many countries.

A waxing treatment is also commonly used to extend shelf life and currently is the most common way of preserving cassava for the export niche markets of fresh roots (i.e. in the EU or the USA). Cassava roots are dipped in a 2.2% aqueous emulsion of fungicidal wax with 17% triethanolamine and 5% *O*-phenyl-phenol for 1 min and then drained, dried and stored at room temperature. This allows for an acceptable loss of 10% after 2–10 days. Roots dipped in ordinary paraffin wax during 45 s at 90–95°C can be stored for 1 month, and this is now adopted commercially. Such roots are found in EU supermarkets.

Dried cassava products are easier to store than fresh roots but there is often deterioration caused by fungi, bacteria, insects and rodents. If products have been properly dried, they are unable to support the development of micro-organisms. Some insects, however, such as the larger grain borer, *Prostephanus truncates*, have been introduced into Africa and are now major pests and economically significant losses are reported (Westby, 2002). Storage life can also be extended by removing surface bacteria through immersion in very hot water for varying periods of time, but recontamination must be prevented, normally by immediate aseptic packaging. This is expensive since it requires a sterile handling area fully equipped with automatic or semi-automatic handling equipment. Peeled and chopped cassava roots are also vacuum-packed in plastic bags immersed in boiling water for 2 min to destroy surface bacteria. This product is not fully sterile since water immersion at 90–95°C is not sufficient to destroy the heat-resistant spores of organisms such as *Bacillus*

or *Clostridium*. Such a treatment is, however, sufficient to shock spores and these can then be destroyed the following day by re-immersion in the boiling water bath. As an extra precaution, the product is again heat treated on a third day. This technology has the advantage that it is very inexpensive to set up and the process can be carried out with just a plastic bag sealer, although it is more efficient with a vacuum sealer.

TRADITIONAL PROCESSING TECHNIQUES

With the rapid spread of sweet type cultivars, cassava is now increasingly consumed boiled directly after harvest. Throughout West Africa, *fufu* is made by steaming or boiling peeled roots and pounding them into sticky dough, which is eaten with soups and sauces. In the Philippines, fresh cassava roots are squeezed and once the juice is expelled, the pulp is made into pellets called *landang*, or 'cassava rice'. In Vanuatu, the fresh roots are ground into a paste and steam cooked to produce *laplap*, a pudding. In many countries, however, cassava is often processed into various forms before being consumed and the various processing techniques aim at enhancing the culinary qualities of the resulting foods, but also at reducing cyanogens.

Cassava roots are peeled before processing. Peeling is a laborious process and mechanical peelers have been developed in Brazil, India and the Philippines. The roots are then grated and there are many different designs of graters, including metallic plates punched with nails or wooden planks pierced by nails. Some machines have been developed for grating in the starch extraction process.

Once finely grated, cassava is easy to sun-dry but, depending on the location, sun-drying can be a fairly slow process and, in many countries, it goes through pressers first to extract water from the pulp. It takes, on average, 3 days during the dry season and a week in the wet season to sun-dry cassava properly. The growth of moulds occurs during the wet season and can lead to the development of mycotoxins, rendering the product non-marketable. In fact, fungal growth occurs not only during sun-drying but also during storage when conditions are humid. In such cases, there is the possibility of mycotoxin formation and different *Aspergillus*, *Cladosporium*, *Fusarium* and *Penicellium* species are involved (Westby, 2002). Various simple techniques exist to improve the sun-drying process, including different sizes and shapes of cassava pieces and different pressers (hydraulic or manual).

The fermentation of grated roots is important in many West African countries. Grated roots are allowed to ferment in bags for 3–5 days and this causes lactic acid fermentation and a decrease in pH to less than 4. Pre-mould fermented roots are inserted during grating as starter colonies to inoculate and activate the process. This is the case for roasted granules (*gari* in Nigeria), steamed granules (*attiéké* in Ivory Coast) and fermented pastes (*agbelima* in Ghana and *placali* in Ivory Coast). Fermentation of cassava roots can also be done

under water and different products are made as wet pastes (*akpu*, *fufu*, *chikwangue*) and dried flours. Fermentation softens the roots, which are then easily broken into small pieces and sieved to remove fibres. Traditional processing and fermentation or sun-drying techniques also aim at reducing the cyanogens in the cassava products (Table 7.3).

In the case of *casabe*, the flat bread used as a dietary staple by indigenous groups in the Amazon region, the grating causes an extensive disintegration of tissues and, therefore, contact between the enzyme (linamarase) and the cyanogenic glucoside (linamarin). As the inner peel is grated with the pulp, hydrolysis is activated because the enzyme activity is higher in the peel (Dufour, 2007). For *gari*, the basis of the Nigerian diet, the roots are peeled and grated and the mash is allowed to ferment for several days before it is drained off and toasted. The initial grating is, here again, the most important stage in the detoxification process. In Brazil, *farinha* is made following a very similar process. *Farinha d'agua* follows a slightly different preparation because the whole roots are first soaked in water for several days. They are then grated, mashed and allowed to ferment for several days. *Bâton de manioc* is a fermented and cooked paste served with soups and stews in central Africa. The roots are first peeled, chopped, soaked in water for 2 days, drained off, pounded and ground into a fine paste before being wrapped in leaves and boiled. The final cooking is important in removing the cyanogens. Fermented flours are produced following a lengthy process where the peeled roots are sun-dried for 3 days, piled in heaps and covered for several days, scraped to remove any moulds, crushed, sun-dried again for 3 days, pounded and finally sieved into flour. The first sun-drying phase is a sort of curing serving to inhibit bacterial growth, while the heap phase extends the time for enzymatic degradation. The

Table 7.3. Efficacy of six traditional processing techniques to remove cyanogens.

Food	Region	Processing steps	Days	Cyanogens, removed %
Casabe	South America	Scrape, grate, wash, separate starch, ferment, drain, cook	3	97
Gari	West Africa	Peel, grate, ferment, drain, toast	4	93
Farinha d'agua	South America	Peel, soak, grate, ferment, drain, toast	8	99
Bâton de manioc	Africa	Peel, chop, soak, drain, pound, wrap, boil	5	> 99
Fermented flour	East Africa	Sun-dry, ferment, crush, sun-dry, pound, sieve	6	95
Sun-dried flour	Africa	Sun-dry, pound, sieve	17	66

Source: Dufour (2007).

efficiency of the final sun-drying is important in removing residual volatile cyanogens (Dufour, 2007).

The roots, stems and leaves of cassava are used for animal feed. Roots have a low amylose content compared to other starchy foods and the high energy value of cassava makes it a very attractive ingredient in animal feed. Fresh cassava roots are sometimes fed to cattle, raw or boiled, but, depending on the variety and on the cyanogen concentration, feeding on fresh roots may cause toxicity. The low protein content is, of course, a disadvantage and necessitates additives to balance a cassava-based diet. The aerial parts of the plants, on the other hand, have a high protein content (as high as 17% DM) and the green foliage can be pruned after only 4 months and every 60 days to yield up to 4 t/ha/year of crude protein (Lebot, 1997; Balagopalan, 2002). Pigs are very often fed fresh leaves, but farmers are sometimes reluctant to feed ruminants with cassava leaves because of the possible toxic effects and the lack of knowledge of the high protein content of the leaves. Cassava silage is made after chopping the plant into smaller pieces with mechanical choppers. One problem is the release of considerable volumes of silage effluents containing essential nutrients. Silage can be prepared in pits near animal sheds and silage made of grass mixed with cassava can be stored for off-season use.

In South-east Asia, fresh roots are sliced into chips with mechanical choppers and sun-dried on concrete floors for 2–3 days until they reach 14% moisture content. These chips are produced mostly in Thailand and are marketed directly to factories in Europe, where they are processed into feed pellets. The dried chips are preheated with steam, passed through a die (7–8 mm) when they are still soft and warm and are then cooled down to harden. Dust-free, hard pellets are produced with industrial machines. Several organisms and techniques can increase the protein content of cassava products using solid-state fermentation involving the fungus *Trichoderma pseudokoningii*. An increase in protein content, from 1.3 g/100 g initially to 14.3 g/100 g after the enrichment process, was observed using cassava flour as the solid ingredient (Balagopalan, 2002).

INDUSTRIAL PROCESSING

The constraints being faced by cassava processors are the relatively high cost of the roots, appropriate and affordable equipment, poor product qualities, the absence of producer and processor organizations and high energy costs. Industrial processing includes:

- Peeling.
- Grating.
- Starch extraction.
- Fermentation.

- De-watering by pressing.
- Frying and toasting.
- Pounding and changing the texture.
- Drying.
- Grinding, milling and sieving.

For all these operations, a wide range of relevant equipment exists in Nigeria (Sanni *et al.*, 2006) and elsewhere.

Industrial processing aims mostly at extracting cassava starch. Starch represents between 70 and 85% of the root DM and is easily extractable because cassava roots contain low levels of fat and protein. The starch grains are oval with a flat surface on one side and measure between 5 to 40 μm. Glucose is the only monosaccharide in cassava starch and its amylose content ranges from 13 to 24% (Richard *et al.*, 1991). In many countries, starch extraction is conducted in villages. The fresh roots are washed, peeled with knives and grated into a pulp through a perforated steel plate. The pulp is then washed with water by hand and the fibre is squeezed out while the starchy milk is collected in a container, where it settles. The supernatant is removed and the moist starch is dried on trays or mats. In some places, the starchy milk is trapped in some sort of fabric and hung so that it drains before it is sun-dried. However, most starch processing is done by small companies using simple machines designed locally. In many cases, electricity is used.

After rasping, the fresh pulp is pumped on to a series of flat vibrating screens of decreasing mesh size, which retain the coarse fibres and the fine particles. The process is conducted under a gentle flow of water to separate starch from the fibres. The starchy milk is channelled for sedimentation and then filtered again through a fine nylon or stainless steel screen. A cake is then obtained containing 30–40% moisture, cut into pieces and sun-dried. In larger factories, high-pressure water jets, combined with the abrasion of the roots against drum walls and against each other, remove most of the skin. Static mill screens working in series sprayed with the slurried pulp then cause the smaller starch granules to pass through slots, while the fibres are separated in a continuous flow. Mechanical dehydration is then done either by vacuum filters or centrifuges and hot air drying is carried out at 150°C, where dried starch granules are separated and transformed into a fine powder of 10–13% moisture (Balagopalan, 2002).

Cassava gum is ideal for food packaging because of its excellent cohesiveness and bland flavour. It is obtained by cooking starch in a stainless steel container until it gelatinizes. The paste should flow freely in a continuous stream and, on cooling, become more viscous. Although gums can be prepared without additives, various chemicals are added to increase viscosity. These gums are very useful for laminated papers, wallpapers and pasting labels. Dextrin can be used at a higher concentration than starch as a gum for envelopes, bottle labels, postage stamps and cardboard boxes, and it dries faster.

Cassava starch can be converted into glucose by acid hydrolysis or enzyme hydrolysis. Glucose syrup is used in the confectionery, pharmaceutical and food industries. The conversion of glucose to fructose can be done by alkali or by the enzyme, glucoisomerase. Fructose syrup is gaining in importance and fructose is twice as sweet as sucrose and four times sweeter than glucose. Maltose, a reducing sugar, can be obtained commercially from cassava starch by enzyme treatments using β-amylase or fungal α-amylase. Maltodextrins, produced by the action of α-amylase on starch, are partially hydrolysed starch and are approved as a food ingredient (Balagopalan *et al.*, 1988).

Modified starches are also produced to improve their functionality for industrial applications so that they can be cooked properly at higher concentrations. Their viscosity is reduced so that their dispersion is improved. Acid-modified starches are clear and stable and may be used for adhesives, gum tapes or bag adhesives. Oxidized starches are used in the paper industry, for wrapping cotton or synthetic textiles. Cross-linked starches, acetylated starches and cationic starches find their application in starch paper coatings, water-resistant adhesives and coating binders (Balagopalan, 2002).

Biodegradable plastic made from starch is increasingly popular among responsible consumers. The process involves mixing and blending starch with synthetic polymers and stabilizing, gelatinizing and plasticizing agents. Films can be blown that are 40% starch and are biodegradable. Starch can also be incorporated into synthetic polymers to improve plastics for specific uses, such as agricultural plastic mulches and single-use disposable packaging.

Industrial processing of starch generates considerable waste in solid or liquid form. The brown peel of the cassava root, the periderm, can represent up to 5% of the roots, but it can be used for animal feed. The problem comes from the liquid residues resulting from the large quantities of water used during the process, the effluents, which pose problems to life in rural areas. The concentration of cyanoglucosides in the effluents is a threat to groundwater. It is therefore necessary to settle and filter through sand and charcoal to reduce pollution (Balagopalan, 2002).

In South-east Asia and China, the demand for monosodium glutamate made out of cassava is increasing constantly to satisfy the growing needs of the fast-food industries and the market for cassava starch is therefore expected to grow to meet this demand.

There is, at present, tremendous interest in producing ethanol and biofuel from cassava roots, but in tropical countries, cassava has to compete with sugarcane and in temperate countries, with maize. On average, it is estimated that for every tonne of cassava roots having 23% starch content, it is feasible to produce approximately 166 l of ethanol and up to 20% blending with petrol is possible.

This page intentionally left blank

Section II

Sweet Potato

Sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam., Convolvulaceae, Dicotyledons) is ranked seventh in world crop statistics, just after cassava. Its roots are rich in carbohydrates and vitamin A and its leaves are rich in proteins. It can produce more edible energy per hectare and per day than wheat, rice or cassava. It has diverse uses ranging from consumption of fresh roots or leaves to processing into animal feed, starch, flour, noodles, natural colorants, candy and alcohol. The underground storage organs of the sweet potato plant are storage roots, as for cassava. Unlike yams, *I. batatas* does not produce tubers which correspond to subterranean stems or part of a stem that thicken and contain stored reserves. Sweet potato produces storage roots which present a cellular arrangement identical to a primary root with a radial vascular bundle.

This page intentionally left blank

8

Origin and History

DOMESTICATION

Sweet potato originated on the American continent. Based on the number of related species and analysis of their morphological variation, the geographical centre of origin of *I. batatas* and its wild relatives has been thought to be between the Yucatan peninsula in Mexico and the Orinoco River in Venezuela (Austin, 1977, 1987). It seems that the oldest remains of dried sweet potatoes are from the caves of the Chilca Canyon in Peru, which have been radiocarbon dated to 8000 years old (Engel, 1970; Woolfe, 1992). Sweet potato roots have also been excavated from an archaeological site located in the Casma Valley of coastal Peru, dated between 1785 and 1120 BC (Ugent *et al.*, 1981). An analysis of their starch granules revealed that they were significantly smaller in size compared to the modern cultivars but that they were definitely from the species *I. batatas* (Perry, 2002) (Fig. 8.1).

Morphological analysis of the various related species indicates that *I. trifida* is the closest wild relative to the sweet potato (Austin, 1977, 1987) but *I. tabascana* is also morphologically very close (Austin and De La Puente, 1991). Several hypotheses have been formulated to discuss the botanical and geographical origins of the sweet potato. Using chromosome numbers and genome analysis, Nishiyama (1971) defined a *Batatas* group of related species composed of four American species: *I. batatas*, *I. trifida*, *I. littoralis* and *I. leucantha*. He proposed that sweet potato could have originated from the diploid species, *I. leucantha*, from which the tetraploid, *I. littoralis*, has derived through polyploidization. The hybridization between these two species could have produced *I. trifida*, a hexaploid species generated by natural doubling of the triploid interspecific hybrid. Further cross-pollinations between these wild species, followed by selection and domestication of interesting genotypes, could have produced the hexaploid species, *I. batatas*.

But, this hypothesis has been challenged by a taxonomic revision of the *I. batatas* complex, where Austin (1987) observes that there are, in fact, not less than 13 American *Ipomoea* species that can be assumed to be closely related to

Fig. 8.1. The geographical centre of origin of *Ipomoea batatas* and its closest wild relatives.

the sweet potato. He also suggested that natural hybridization between *I. trifida* and *I. triloba* resulted in the generation of the wild ancestors of the present *I. batatas*. Autopolyploidy of *I. trifida* and the occurrence of 2*n* gametes might also have been involved in the origin of sweet potato, allowing natural interconnection between species of different ploidy levels (Shiotani, 1987). It has been shown that 2*n* pollen is produced by the diploid, *I. trifida*, and some genotypes of *I. batatas* and that polyploidization through fertilization by non-reduced gametes could allow gene flow between different *Ipomoea* species (Orjeda *et al.*, 1990; Freyre *et al.*, 1991). It is therefore possible that *I. batatas* could have been generated by natural hybridization between several wild species, rather than descending from a single ancestor.

McDonald and Austin (1990) believe that true wild populations of *I. batatas* do exist and that, unlike those escaped from cultivation, they have dehiscent capsules with four seeds, and stems that lack adventitious roots at most nodes. Living populations of *I. batatas* var. *apiculata* have been described in the state of Veracruz, Mexico. This botanical variety is distinguished from *I. batatas* by indehiscent capsules. Interestingly, these authors maintain that the indehiscent character is important for seed dispersal. The capsules have been floated in water for several days without opening and sinking. Apparently, their seeds are still viable after being in salt water for a week.

Molecular markers (RFLPs, RAPDs and microsatellites) have been used to clarify affinities between related species and they have confirmed the relationship of *I. batatas* with *I. trifida* (Jarret *et al.*, 1992; Jarret and Austin, 1994; Buteler *et al.*, 1999). Restriction analysis of chloroplast DNA also indicates that *I. trifida* is probably one of the ancestors of *I. batatas* (Huang and Sun, 2000). More recently, molecular cytogenetic techniques such as fluorescence *in situ* hybridization (FISH) have been used. Among various diploid species studied, *I. trifida* appears to be the closest relative to *I. batatas*. Chromosome organization shows that hexaploid *I. batatas* is more closely related to *I. trifida* than to *I. tabascana* (Srisuwan *et al.*, 2006). This very close genetic relationship between these three species has also been revealed using the *exon* and *intron* β-amylase gene sequences, which indicate that *I. batatas* is closer to *I. trifida* than it is to *I. tabascana* and, in fact, this latter species might have derived through hybridization between the first two (*I. batatas* and *I. trifida*) (Rajapakse *et al.*, 2004). Cytogenetic investigations using FISH, however, conclude that more than one progenitor is involved in the phylogeny of the sweet potato and that the allopolyploid hypothesis supported by cytology should be retained, suggesting that sweet potato genome is composed of three different genomes, two from closely related species and one from a distant relative (Ting and Kehr, 1953; Srisuwan *et al.*, 2006).

Because the natural distribution of *I. trifida* is between Peru and Mexico, it is logical to assume that the domestication of the sweet potato occurred within this vast geographical region. The question is therefore where exactly and on which side of the Panama isthmus, the domestication process first occurred. The hypothesis of a direct and single ancestry with *I. trifida* is unlikely. Central America is a region rich in related species, with great diversity within *I. trifida* and *I. batatas* and is therefore the favourite candidate. Molecular markers used to study the diversity existing within the CIP (Centro Internacional de la Para) collection indicate that Central America presents the highest total number of alleles, number of region-specific alleles and heterozygosity, while the Peru–Ecuador region presents the lowest values on all three counts. These results confirm previous molecular marker studies and support the hypothesis of Central America as the primary centre of diversity and the most likely centre of origin of the sweet potato (Gichuki *et al.*, 2003). The lower molecular diversity in the Peru–Ecuador region suggests distribution from the primary centre of origin, so that the Peru–Ecuador region should be considered as a secondary centre (Zhang *et al.*, 2000, 2001).

DISCOVERY OF THE CROP BY WESTERN EXPLORERS

Columbus introduced the plant to Western Europe on his return from his first voyage to the New World in 1492. From records made by Columbus in Hispaniola, by the various Spanish explorers and missionaries in Mexico and

Peru and by the Portuguese in Brazil, it was apparent that sweet potato was cultivated widely throughout Central and South America before the first European contact.

The sweet potato has a long cultivation history in Oceania but the origin of the crop in the Pacific has long been a mystery. When Captain James Cook arrived in Tahiti and Hawaii, the sweet potato was already well established and widely cultivated. Polynesians being expert sailors and navigators, it is possible that they would have reached South America and brought back with them this remarkable plant species. Barrau (1957) was the first to propose three possible routes for the introduction of this vegetatively propagated crop to the Pacific Islands, the so-called *kumara*, *batatas* and *kamote* lines.

The hypothesis that there was a direct prehistoric transfer by Peruvian or Polynesian voyagers from South America to Polynesia has been a controversial issue. Linguistic affinities between the Quechua name for sweet potato (*kumal*) and the Polynesian word *kumara* suggest a human transfer, but it is not known if Peruvian or Polynesian voyagers were involved (Yen, 1974, 1982a). Archaeological data obtained throughout the Pacific tend to consolidate the history of successive waves of settlements from the west and that there was no Peruvian input into Polynesian culture. It is therefore assumed that the distribution of the sweet potato, from South America and throughout the Pacific, was the result of Polynesian migrations and colonization of the most remote islands (Ballard *et al.*, 2005). Carbonized remains of sweet potato from Easter Island and the island of Hawaii pre-date western contact. The sweet potato could have reached Hawaii possibly by about AD 1100 or 1200, Easter Island by AD 1300, the Cook Islands around AD 1000–1100 and from there could have been distributed to New Zealand by AD 1150–1250, where it was the staple of the Maori people.

In Vanuatu, the word used in local vernacular languages is *kumala*, but it is not known if the sweet potato is a secondary Polynesian introduction on this Melanesian archipelago or if it could have been introduced with other staple foods from the Solomon Islands by early migrants.

Based on palynological and soil depositional evidence (Golson, 1977; Gorecki, 1986; Haberle, 1998), it is suggested that the sweet potato could have arrived in the New Guinea highlands by 1200 BP. It could also, however, have reached New Guinea much later, during the earliest contacts between European explorers and the Melanesian peoples. The dense populations encountered by the Europeans during the 1920s discoveries of the PNG highlands appeared to western scientists as exceptionally dependent on *I. batatas*, both for the people and as fodder for their pigs. It has been argued that this plant was responsible for an '*Ipomoean* revolution' in this isolated region, allowing it to be densely populated (Ballard *et al.*, 2005). DNA analysis shows that PNG cultivars after a long, isolated evolution in a particular agroecological environment have diverged significantly from their ancestors in South America (Zhang *et al.*, 1998a). This confirms their ancient presence on the big island of New Guinea.

Two other lines could be responsible for the introduction of the sweet potato into this part of the world. The *batatas* line is based on the hypothesis that Portuguese explorers could have transferred West Indian cultivars grown in Europe to Africa, India and the East Indies. The *kamote* line assumes that Spanish galleons voyaging between Acapulco and Manila spread sweet potato clones from Mexico to the Philippines while trading across the Pacific (Yen, 1974). DNA fingerprinting has been used to clarify the debate and to study genetic similarities between cultivars from Oceania and the Americas. Significant gene transfers between Mexico and Oceania were revealed. In contrast, there is little relationship between the Peru–Ecuador germplasm and that of Oceania, which suggests that this region might not be the origin of the Oceanian material. Human dispersal from Mesoamerica via the *kamote* line is, therefore, the most probable of these two alternatives (Rossel *et al.*, 2001).

Ocean current simulations also suggest that sweet potato capsules simply could have drifted away from South America to the distant islands. It is therefore possible that the natural dispersal of fruits could have been responsible for its introduction (Montenegro *et al.*, 2007). Even if this fourth alternative is theoretically feasible, it is difficult to imagine the various steps involved in such dispersal and its subsequent adoption by human populations (Fig. 8.2).

After AD 1500, with the exploration and colonization of Africa, Portuguese explorers transferred West Indian clones collected around Hispaniola directly to Africa, India and the East Indies in the 16th century. Spanish explorers carried the plant, probably in the form of storage roots, in easterly and westerly directions. First, it was taken from South America to Spain and to other European countries (Belgium, England, France and Holland), where growth was not satisfactory due to the low temperatures. It was then taken to the warm coastal regions of Africa, where it spread rapidly. By the mid-19th century, the plant was widely grown from Zanzibar to Egypt. It is possible that in eastern Africa, the crop gradually ousted local yams because it gave quicker return for less work. In Uganda, where a virus ravaged cassava in the 1990s, rural communities depended on the sweet potato for their survival.

The Spanish explorers carried the crop from Mexico to the Philippines (the *kamote* line) soon after their conquest of the former. From there, the Portuguese introduced the plant to India and Malaysia. Fukiense sailors took the storage roots from the island of Luzon in the Philippines to Fukien in South China in 1594, but also from Fukien to Taiwan and to the Okinawa islands and Japan in 1674 (Yen, 1982a). Sweet potato has often been a lifesaver: before the First World War, the Japanese used it when typhoons demolished their rice fields. The plant kept millions from starvation in famine-plagued China in the early 1960s.

The possible introduction of the sweet potato in New Guinea via the *kamote* or *batatas* lines during the 16th century could have come about through Indonesia and the present Irian Jaya. Sweet potato was already present in Java

Fig. 8.2. The three possible routes for introduction of the sweet potato into Oceania (Source: Ballard *et al.*, 2005, after Yen, 1982a).

by 1610, probably introduced by the Portuguese, and in eastern Indonesia by 1633, where it was most likely introduced by the Spanish. During the 16th and 17th centuries, there were extensive trading routes between the Moluccas (now Sulawesi) and New Guinea, so it is likely that the sweet potato reached New Guinea shortly after it reached the Moluccas (Ballard *et al.*, 2005).

The dissemination of the plant to North America was by explorers and traders travelling on land from Mexico to southern USA or by sea from the West Indies to colonies on the US east coast. The sweet potato was grown by European settlers in Virginia as early as 1648, in Carolina by 1723 and in New England by 1764. In the latter part of the 18th century, the sweet potato was cultivated throughout the southern states (Edmond and Ammerman, 1971).

PRESENT GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

Sweet potato is now cultivated in more than 100 developing countries. It is typically a smallholder crop grown on marginal soils with limited inputs. In these countries, yields are well below the average for developed countries, so improvement is readily feasible (Table 8.1.).

The sweet potato is a dry-land crop tolerant of a wide range of edaphic and climatic conditions. It is more tolerant of cold than other tropical root and tuber crops and therefore it can be grown at altitudes as high as 2500 m. It has

Table 8.1. Major countries in the world producing sweet potato in 2006.

Region	Country	Production (thousand t)	Area (thousand ha)	Average yield (t/ha)
Africa	Nigeria	3,205	989	3.2
	Uganda	2,604	590	4.4
	Tanzania	1,056	526	2.0
	Rwanda	886	148.5	6.0
	Burundi	835	125	6.7
	Angola	659	143.8	4.6
	Madagascar	526	123.9	4.3
	Ethiopia	409	50.3	8.1
	Egypt	300	10	30.0
	Kenya	231	24.3	9.5
Asia	China	100,215	4,629	21.7
	Indonesia	1,840	176.9	10.4
	Vietnam	1,461	188.4	7.8
	Japan	1,053	40.8	25.8
	India	933	107.2	8.7
	Philippines	575	120.6	4.8
	Bangladesh	311	35.1	8.9
	North Korea	392	31.5	12.4
	South Korea	283	17.2	16.4
	Solomon	89	6.2	14.4
America	USA	714	35.5	20.1
	Brazil	514	45.3	11.3
	Cuba	450	74.3	6.1
	Argentina	273	15.8	17.2
	Peru	185	11.3	16.4
	Haiti	161	55.5	2.9
	Mexico	69	3.2	21.5
	Dominican Rep.	36	6	5.9
	Jamaica	25	1.4	18.5
	Venezuela	13	1.5	8.8

Source: www.fao.org (2007).

become the staple of many communities living in the highlands of Uganda, Rwanda and Burundi in East Africa, and PNG.

Asia is the world's largest producing region, with more than 125 million t of fresh roots produced annually. China alone produces more than 100 million t and accounts for 85% of sweet potato production worldwide. In China, sweet potato is a major source of animal feed and raw material for food processing industries, and new uses are generating more demands for the crop. Sichuan and Shandong are the two largest sweet potato-producing provinces (Fuglie and Hermann, 2004). Nearly half of Asian production is for animal feed, with the remainder used primarily for human consumption, either as fresh (boiled roots) or processed products (noodles).

The average annual per capita consumption of fresh roots (FAO, 2007) is estimated at 10 kg in Africa, 20 kg in Asia, 5 kg in Latin America, 7 kg in Japan and only 2 kg in the USA, but is more than 75 kg in Oceania (PNG and the Pacific Islands). Within these geographic regions, however, consumption can vary greatly. In Africa, for example, the annual per capita consumption is estimated at more than 160 kg in Rwanda and more than 100 kg in Burundi. African farmers produce only about 7 million t of sweet potatoes annually and most of the crop is cultivated for human consumption. African yields are low, about a third of Asian yields, indicating huge potential for future growth.

In Latin America and the Caribbean, production and area planted are important in developing countries such as Cuba and Haiti. In Cuba, the recent decline in sweet potato yields reflects the shortage in chemical pesticides and the transition to biological control of important pests. In other countries such as Peru, production and yields rose spectacularly over the last decade as this country hosts CIP, the world's leading international research institute on sweet potato, and local farmers are benefiting directly from the Institute's results.

Between 30,000 and 40,000 ha of sweet potato are grown annually in the USA, where production is concentrated in North Carolina, Louisiana, Texas, Mississippi and California. A typical sweet potato farm in the USA is approximately 150 ha and a grower needs this large area to rationalize the investment in machinery, storage and packing facilities. The crop is capital-intensive and growers must invest between US$1 and 2 million in their farm to purchase machinery designed for sweet potato, the prime objective being labour cost reduction (La Bonte and Cannon, 1998).

9

Taxonomy and Botany

CLASSIFICATION

The Convolvulaceae is a family of herbaceous and woody, often climbing species, which is well distributed throughout temperate and tropical latitudes in a wide range of habitats. Many species have long, trailing stems and are typical of rich vegetation, or open drier places, including sand dunes. The woody species are characteristic of tropical regions and, in open woodland, large trees up to 10 m high can occur. Convolvulaceae species have alternate and simple leaves, their flowers are bisexual with five free sepals, five fused petals and five stamens fused at the base of the corolla tube. The fruit is a dehiscent capsule. The characters of the ovary, styles and stigmas are used to differentiate up to ten tribes of genera (Heywood, 1985).

Ipomoea is a large genus composed of approximately 400 species. Most of them are annual and perennial herbaceous vines, with a few erect shrubs found in the tropics. This large genus is subdivided into several subgenera and sections. A number of African and Australian species are collected from the wild as emergency foods. In South-east Asia and Melanesia, *I. aquatica* is cultivated for its delicious leaf tops, eaten like spinach and rich in proteins.

MORPHOLOGICAL DESCRIPTION OF *IPOMOEA BATATAS* (L.) LAM.

I. batatas is a vine-like, perennial herb, treated as an annual when cultivated. It has trailing or twining stems and containing latex in all its parts. The stems can be prostrate or ascending, often twining, thin (3–10 mm in diameter), with internodes varying from 2 to 20 cm long, glabrous or pubescent and light green to purple in colour. The long, thin stems that creep on the surface produce roots where nodes make contact with the soil. Stem length ranges from 1 to 5 m, depending on genotype. The epidermis of the stem is composed of a thin layer of cells, and stomata and hairs are present. Under the epidermis

is the cortex, composed of several layers of cells containing chlorophyll. Latex ducts are also present in the stem cortex and an abundant white latex exudes when the stems are cut. The endodermis is under the cortex. The vascular bundles have phloem on the outside and inside and xylem in between. The centre of the stem is occupied by the pith, composed of large cells.

The leaves are highly variable, sometimes on the same plant, depending on their age. They are arranged spirally with a 2/5 phyllotaxy. They are simple and exstipulate, with petioles measuring between 5 and 30 cm long. Their laminas are mostly ovate and can be entire to deeply digitately lobed, with their base usually cordate. Their tips can be acute or obtuse and the leaves can be glabrous, or with variable pubescence. Their colour is also highly variable, from light green to deep purple, sometimes with purple stain at their base, or with green or purple veins beneath (Fig. 9.1).

The flowers are solitary or in clusters of up to 22 buds, growing out of the leaf axils. Their peduncles vary from 3 to 15 cm long. Each flower bud has five sepals, five petals, five stamens and a compound pistil. There are two bracteoles, small and lanceolate, the calyx are deeply five-lobed (1–2 cm long) and the corolla has a typical funnel shape measuring from 3 to 6 cm long and 2 to 5 cm in diameter. Colours vary from light pink to deep purple in the throat and are paler at their margins. Five stamens are attached at the base of the corolla and are of variable length. The filaments and the anthers are also white, and the two-celled ovary is surrounded by an orange nectary.

Fig. 9.1. Sweet potato stem, leaves and flowers.

Sweet potato fruits are glabrous or hirsute, dehiscent capsules measuring 5–10 mm in diameter. They contain up to four seeds, but usually only one or two are fully developed. These seeds are brown or black, glabrous, angular and measure approximately 2–3 mm long. Their testa is very hard and the cotyledons are bi-lobed. They are flat on one side and convex on the other. If their coat is scarified, either mechanically or chemically, and the seeds are subjected to favourable conditions for germination, the embryo grows rapidly. Thus, the embryo does not appear to have a dormancy period. After germination, the radicle appears first and grows downward, developing into the primary root system. The hypocotyl brings the cotyledons above the surface of the substrate. The two cotyledons grow on opposite sides of the stem and the epicotyl develops into a primary shoot stem.

Ipomoea batatas produces an extensive, fibrous root system which develops from the nodes of the cutting, but the trailing stems also develop roots when their nodes are in contact with the soil surface. Five to ten storage roots are produced per plant by the thickening of adventitious roots. They develop below and at a short distance from the level of the basal stems. Cultivars vary in the colour of the skin (called the periderm) and in the colour and chemical composition of the flesh. Within the same cultivar, they vary in number per plant and in size and shape within the same plant, as well as between plants of the same clone growing next to each other in the same field. The principal tissues of the storage root are the periderm, the secondary vascular bundles underneath the periderm and the tracheids, sieve tubes and laticifers interspersed among storage parenchyma. The structure of the storage root is complex and includes conducting tissues, parenchymatous storage cells, latex vessels, an epidermis and the outer periderm. These roots can be fusiform, globular, round or ovate, with a smooth, ridged or rough surface. The root skin colour varies from white to yellow, orange, red, purple or brown and the flesh colour may be white, yellow, orange, reddish or purple.

The root growth in diameter is due to the activity of three distinct cambia: the cork cambium, the vascular cambium and the anomalous cambium. The cork cambium produces several layers of cork cells on the outside and a layer of living cells on the inside. The vascular cambium arises from parenchyma cells and, very early in the life of the root, it forms a continuous ring producing secondary phloem on the outside and a large amount of storage parenchyma on the inside (Edmond and Ammerman, 1971) (Fig. 9.2).

Unlike cassava, with a storage root similar to a normal root, except for storage parenchyma produced by each of the xylem, sweet potato storage root growth comes from the combined activity of primary, secondary and tertiary meristematic layers associated with xylem tissues. The sweet potato storage root, however, has some anatomical differences from a normal root: the initiation of a storage organ and the capacity to produce buds and sprouts on the root skin.

Fig. 9.2. Sweet potato storage roots.

RELATED SPECIES

Van Ooststroom (1953) recognized the existence of interrelationships between *I. triloba*, *I. trifida*, *I. tiliacea*, *I. gracilis* and *I. batatas* and included these five species in the *Batatas* section. The sweet potato and other relatives were then grouped in a new *Batatas* section, which included 11 species and two natural hybrids (Austin, 1987), but McDonald and Austin (1990) revised the taxonomy of the *Batatas* section, which now includes 16 taxa (Table 9.1).

It is sometimes difficult to identify accurately all accessions belonging to one species because there is a continuum of variation, including sepal characters which have been considered by Austin (1977) for the taxonomy. The sweet potato, *I. batatas*, is distinct from the other species in chromosome number, cross-compatibility and the formation of edible roots. It is assumed that a number of species showing ability to intercross with sweet potato should have a common genome, even though the ploidy level is different. Based on morphological observations, it is often difficult to distinguish members of the *I. batatas* group from other species in the *Batatas* series (Nishiyama, 1975, 1982).

Tuberous, root-forming diploids have been found in *I. trifida* (Kobayashi, 1984) and when they are recombined, some sweet potato varieties produce seedlings that never form tuberous roots. This trait has probably arisen from

Table 9.1. The species and natural hybrids of the *Batatas* section.

Species	Ploidy	Geographical range
Ipomoea batatas (L.) Lam.	6*x*	American tropics
I. cyanchifolia Meisner	2*x*	Brazil
I. gracilis R. Brown	4*x*	Australia
I. × *grandiflora* (Dammer) O'Donnell	2*x*	South-east South America
I. lacunosa L.	2*x*	Eastern USA
I. × *leucantha* Jacquin	2*x*	Widespread in the Tropics
I. littoralis Blume	4*x*	Pacific Islands, Mexico
I. peruviana O'Donnell	?	Peru
I. ramosissima (Poir.) Choisy	2*x*	Central and South America
I. tabascana MacDonald & Austin	4*x*	Mexico
I. tenuissima Choisy	2*x*	Caribbean Islands
I. tiliacea (Willd.) Choisy	4*x*	Caribbean
I. trichocarpa Elliott	2*x*	North and South America
I. trifida (HB & K) G. Don.	2*x*, 4*x*, 6*x*	Central America, Mexico
I. triloba L.	2*x*	Caribbean and Central America
I. umbraticola House	2*x*	Costa Rica, Mexico, Nicaragua

hexaploid *I. trifida* by successive mutations of several genes. Several wild communities of *I. trifida* were studied *in situ* along the coast of Santa Marta, in Colombia. *Ipomoea trifida* vegetatively propagates naturally, as well as by true seeds. Seed setting is not high compared to flowering number, indicating an allogamous behaviour. Tetraploid and hexaploid *I. trifida* are found in the wild and can be differentiated on the basis of their morphological characters. In general, they have larger leaves, thicker vines and fewer flowers than diploids. It is often necessary to confirm field observations with cytological counts in order to avoid doubts. Austin (1987) however, thinks that the so-called *I. trifida* hexaploids are, in fact, feral *I. batatas* (escaped from cultivation). He also believes that wild *I. trifida* tetraploids are the result of crosses between *I. trifida* diploids and *I. batatas* hexaploids. Kobayashi (1984) proposes the '*I. trifida* complex' concept which refers to an ecological group including plants ranging from diploids to hexaploids and different ecotypes adapted to special environments (Fig. 9.3).

Wider phylogeny issues would also have to consider another interesting group of edible *Ipomoea* species, including *I. gracilis*, which have been domesticated by the Australian aborigines in northern Australia. Although it

Fig. 9.3. The *Ipomoea trifida* complex (adapted from Kobayashi, 1984).

is difficult to imagine how they could have contributed to the evolution of the sweet potato, their adaptation to drought might be interesting for breeding purposes (Yen, 1982a).

CYTOLOGY

Within the *Ipomoea* species, the base number of chromosomes is 15 and some are di-, tri-, tetra- or hexaploids with, respectively, 30, 45, 60 or 90 chromosomes. The genomic composition of *I. batatas* has been debated profusely and it is not clear if it is an autopolyploid or allopolyploid, or an auto-allo-hexaploid (Yen, 1974).

For mitotic chromosome studies, cuttings of old stems are prepared and put in water to produce roots. The young root tips are then pre-treated with an antimitotic (8-hydroxyquinoline) for 4 h at 16°C and are fixed in 3:1 ethanol–acetic acid for 48 h. In diploid wild *Ipomoea* species, the karyotypes constitute metacentric and submetacentric chromosomes. It is quite difficult to obtain evenly spread metaphases for *I. batatas* mitosis (on root tips) and to observe clearly and independently the 90 chromosomes. It is therefore difficult to observe where the centromeres are located on the chromosomes of the sweet potato. Jones (1965) observed that meiotic activity was highly regular in 40 clones of *I. batatas*. Multivalents appeared to be low in number, indicating that the ancestral parents were not closely related, supporting the hypothesis of an allopolyploid origin. This hypothesis is also supported by the tetrasomic inheritance of β-amylase in the storage roots of sweet potato (Kumagai *et al.*, 1990).

Other cytogenetic studies have, however, suggested that the sweet potato and *I. trifida* polyploids are autopolyploids with the genome of the *I. trifida* diploid. Synthetic hexaploids (artificially induced with colchicine) and hybrids present almost complete pairings at metaphase I (meiosis), with rare univalents.

The raw colchicine hexaploids are partially fertile in crosses with sweet potato cultivars. The chromosome configurations are almost complete in the synthetic hexaploids and their hybrids with sweet potato, indicating that they have the same genome structure as *I. batatas* cultivars. The predominant multivalent formation in both hexaploids is also an indication that there is gene exchange between the chromosomes of the two species (Shiotani and Kawase, 1987). Cytogenetic studies have also reported unreduced gamete formation in diploid *I. trifida*, in triploid hybrids from diploid and tetraploid crosses between the sweet potato and diploid *I. trifida*. Unreduced gametes may present practical interest in which hexaploid genotypes could be produced through crosses between triploid or tetraploid hybrids (Oracion *et al*., 1990).

Molecular work based on the tetrasomic inheritance of microsatellite markers (SSRs) supports the hypothesis that sweet potato is an allo-auto-hexaploid with two non-homologous genomes (Zhang *et al*., 2001). Fluorochrome banding and FISH techniques have confirmed the allohexaploid composition of the sweet potato genome (Srisuwan *et al*., 2006).

This page intentionally left blank

10

Breeding and Genetics

The sweet potato is almost always self-incompatible and this, combined with other seed-limiting processes, has impaired the understanding of its breeding. Several physiological problems also impede seed production. The practical consequences of self-incompatibility and sterility have been recognized by different researchers in different countries (Wang, 1982; Martin, 1988; Wilson *et al.*, 1989; Mok *et al.*, 1998; Mihovilovich *et al.*, 2000). It is difficult to produce seeds by self-pollination. Hand pollination cannot produce more than four seeds, and often only one or two. Because of its polyploidy, the sweet potato is not a suitable species for Mendelian genetics and the segregation ratios are quite complex.

Despite these practical constraints, numerous breeding programmes were implemented in the 1970s but mostly in temperate climates, in the USA or Japan, and subtropical Taiwan. Since the early 1980s, and thanks to the leadership of CIP, various programmes are now being conducted in the tropics.

OBJECTIVES AND SELECTION CRITERIA

The sweet potato is a versatile plant offering various products: fresh food, processed starch, alcohol and foliage for animal feed. Throughout the world, farmers are looking for earliness, either for commercial production or for subsistence. However, for subsistence cropping systems, varieties should also be able to produce well during an extended harvest season. Throughout the world, breeders are attempting to improve traits sought by various markets. Among the numerous characteristics that breeders want to improve is the short shelf life of the sweet potato after harvest, which is a serious constraint. If it could be extended, it would improve the potential for transporting and trading sweet potatoes. In most countries where sweet potato is consumed as a staple, high DM content in the storage roots is an important characteristic as it is often associated with good eating quality and long shelf life. High DM corresponds to processing efficiency and is therefore important in countries where the crop is processed and for starch extraction. Farmers using sweet

potato foliage for animal feeding look for vigorous canopy development. The importance of pests and diseases varies significantly from one region to the other but, in most cases, is a priority for breeders. Scab (*Elsinoe batatas*) is important in the humid tropics of Asia and the Pacific, while viruses are important in Africa and weevils (*Cylas* spp.) are the most serious pests on all continents. Finally, the most important environmental stresses are drought, poor soil fertility, excess moisture and cold in high altitude.

Considering regional variation in needs for new sweet potato varieties, it is important to decentralize germplasm evaluation and breeding work. CIP has developed a fully decentralized network for sweet potato breeding, encouraging strong collaboration with partners in national programmes in order to select locally for diseases, pests, abiotic stresses and market needs. In fact, the quarantine problems associated with the movement of germplasm are such than centralized breeding would not achieve much in terms of improved variety dissemination (Mok *et al.*, 1998).

SEXUAL REPRODUCTION, INCOMPATIBILITY AND STERILITY

Each flower opens only once, just after sunrise and starts to fade by noon. When the stamens are shorter than the pistil, it is fairly easy to hand pollinate the stigmas but when they are about the same length or taller, it is difficult to find the stigma and hand pollination is time-consuming. Hand-pollinated flowers usually produce capsules with only two seeds and open-pollinated ones produce capsules with one to three seeds. Sweet potato is outcrossing, with cross-pollinations being done mostly by honeybees and many other insect species. In most cases, however, very few capsules and seeds are produced. This is caused by two distinct phenomena: self-incompatibility and sterility.

Self-incompatibility in sweet potato has been shown to conform to the multi-allelic sporophytic type (pollen dependent) that also exists in the Asteraceae and Brassicaceae families. Seed setting failure is often associated with complete pollen germination failure. A close inspection of hand-pollinated stigmas reveals three different behaviours of the pollen:

1. In compatible crosses, all pollen grains simply fail to germinate.
2. In compatible crosses, all pollen grains germinate.
3. In some crosses, some pollen germinates and some does not.

The inhibition of pollen germination is therefore the physiological basis of incompatibility in sweet potato. A series of multiple alleles controls this incompatibility and these alleles act sporophytically to determine the pollen phenotype. Since the sweet potato is a hexaploid, it is assumed that the incompatibility loci have been duplicated, or even triplicated, during its evolution (Martin, 1982).

Sterility in sweet potato results from a series of processes that are easy to detect (Table 10.1). Several days after anthesis, the ovaries of pollinated flowers begin to develop. During the process, all ovules grow together up to the third day. One or two fertilized ovules increase rapidly, whereas the growth of the others is arrested. As the good seeds continue to grow, the aborted ovules are compressed on one side of the capsule and die. When the fruit dries, the mature seeds shrink to approximately 3 mm in diameter, about half their size when green and mature. The aborted ovules dry to appear as scales of approximately 0.5–1.5 mm long. Large seeds germinate more rapidly than smaller seeds. Small seeds, however, can represent up to 50% of the total number of seeds obtained, depending on the genotypes involved.

It is likely that sterility is caused by high polyploidy. It can be caused by accidents occurring in meiosis, resulting in defects and recombination that lead to an unbalanced gene distribution, producing embryos with a defective combination of genes that cannot function properly. It is possible that open-pollination practised over several generations could favour fertile plants that tend to flower freely. Martin and Jones (1971, 1986) have shown that flowering increased up to 300% in only six generations of open-pollinated crosses. It is unlikely that selection pressures increase sterility or self-incompatibility.

Table 10.1. Detectable failures in the reproductive processes of sweet potato.

Failures	Method of detection	Estimated damage
Male gametes are abnormal	Pollen production failure	Rare
Female gametes are abnormal	Microscope examination	Very rare
Some pollen does not germinate	Pollen counts on stigma	Very common
Stigma does not stimulate germination	Pollen fails to germinate	Rare but known
Pollen tubes do not pass from stigma to style	Microscope observation	Common, 30–95% of studied cases
Pollen tubes do not pass through entire style	Microscope observation	Common, 10–20%
Pollen tubes do not result in fertilization	Microscope observation, seed and scale counts	Common, 10–60%
Ovules develop as scales	Observations and counts	Very common, 75%
Seeds do not develop normal endosperms	Observations and counts	Very common, 25–50%
Seeds do not germinate	Observations and counts	Common, 10–25%
Seedlings are weak and die	Observations and counts	Uncommon, 2–3%
Seedlings do not grow into mature plants	Observations and counts	Uncommon, 1%
Mature plants do not flower	Observations	Rare

Source: Martin (1982).

CROSSING TECHNIQUES AND TRUE SEED PRODUCTION

Most sweet potato genotypes flower naturally within the tropics and it is not necessary to use grafting, girdling or day-length control, which breeders in temperate countries have to use to induce flowering during long days (Edmond and Ammerman, 1971). Parent clones, planted in crossing blocks isolated from other flowering sweet potatoes, are open-pollinated by naturally occurring insects. Sweet potato flowers best during short days and, in tropical countries, the cool season is the best period for producing seeds. In the southern hemisphere, for example, the crossing block is planted during the first 2 weeks of April. Flowering begins 6 weeks later and continues for 3–4 months. Seeds are harvested from June to September. In Taiwan, in the northern hemisphere, the best season for pollination is from the beginning of November to the middle of December, when the average daily temperature is between 20°C and 25°C, with a maximum seed set occurring when the mean daily temperature is about 23.9°C (Wang, 1982).

The vine cuttings of the parent clones are planted at 1 × 1 m, with two cuttings per planting position. Usually, ten plants of each genotype are enough, although more may be needed for genotypes with poor flowering. Usually, the climbing vines of four plants are mixed together on a pyramid-like system with four 2 m-high stakes tied together. Eventually, wires connect the pyramids to allow trellising of the vines, which promotes flowering. Staking facilitates hand pollination and insect pollination, but such plants can be damaged easily by strong winds. It is not recommended that crossing blocks be fertilized with nitrogen as this promotes lush and leafy vines without flowering. Various insects and diseases can reduce flowering, especially scab (*E. batatas*) in the wet tropics.

When hand pollinating, it is necessary to ensure that the flowers are well protected from pollination by insects. The buds and flowers due to open the following morning are prevented from opening by clipping the tip of the corolla. The best time to clip flowers is during the afternoon or the evening of the day before hand pollination. The flower from the male parent is carried to the female parent and the clip is removed gently without destroying the corolla. The petals are then spread and the anthers of the male parent are rubbed gently over the stigma of the female parent. In order to prevent pollen contamination, the corolla of the pollinated flower is tied together so that insects cannot reach the stigma. Another technique uses 2 cm-long pieces of drinking straw, which are pushed on the unopened corollas 1 day before anthesis. After hand pollination, the corolla is rolled again and pushed into the straw again.

For genetic studies, the female parent flowers are emasculated by hand to eliminate all possibility of pollen pollution. Success rates depend on the weather and the health of the plants used, but approximately 50% of the pollinated flowers produce two seeds. It is possible, however, to improve this rate with better nursery techniques. For example, in Japan, 12 bi-parental crosses were made

and grafting on *I. nil* was conducted in order to promote flowering. Hand pollination was done inside a glasshouse, with great care being taken to isolate the plants from pollinating insects. From 14,256 hand pollinations, 8910 seeds were finally harvested, representing a success rate of 62.5%, which is considered as very high for such an operation (Mok *et al.*, 1998).

Seeds mature between 4 and 6 weeks after pollination. Each capsule is harvested by hand when it is fully brown and the pedicel has dried. It is necessary to collect them in the crossing block every morning as mature capsules fall off easily or dehisce and release their seeds while opening. Seeds are then extracted and those that are lightweight, deformed or with insect or fungus damage are discarded. An easy way of selecting the healthy seeds is to put them in a container with water and to eliminate those that float. Once properly dried, they can be stored and remain viable for up to 20 years if the storage conditions are well controlled (18°C, 50% relative humidity) and for at least 5 years in a simple desiccator with silica gel lodged in a refrigerator.

Since sweet potato seeds have a very hard coat, they germinate slowly and irregularly. The most practical way of scarifying substantial volumes of seeds is to soak them in concentrated sulphuric acid (98% H_2SO_4) in a glass beaker for 40 min. The seeds are then rinsed under running water for 5–10 min. This technique gives about 95% germination success (Wilson *et al.*, 1989). It is also possible simply to soak the seeds overnight in water and this improves germination, although it will be irregular, occurring over several weeks. Immediately after scarification or soaking, the seeds are placed individually in *Jiffy*® pots or equivalent and germination occurs readily. Seedlings are planted at 0.5 × 0.5 m and are ready to harvest at 10 weeks. Cuttings are then replanted for the first 'hill trial'.

SELECTION METHODS AND PROGRAMMES

Recurrent selection appears to be suitable for sweet potato breeding as it permits minor and recessive genes to be expressed and selected with a progressive increase in population. With this type of mass selection, the capture of additive effects is straightforward, consisting of the selection of a number of genotypes for one or more desirable traits and their hybridization in a polycross block by honeybees. Numerous seedlings are screened for desirable traits and the best are used, with or without the best parents, in a new polycross block for a second cycle of natural hybridization. This technique results in the rapid accumulation of suitable genes. A study conducted with DNA markers has confirmed the usefulness of a polycross breeding strategy, in spite of frequent cross-incompatibility. Moreover, the high level of genetic variation in polycross breeding lines can certainly assist in selecting elite material (Hwang *et al.*, 2002) (Fig. 10.1).

However, this simple selection method has to be complemented with efficient screening techniques and for many traits; the identification and the measure-

Fig. 10.1. Morphological variation found in polycross breeding lines (in Vanuatu).

ment of a particular trait is often the weakest operation (Martin, 1988). In practice, breeding lines are evaluated in a series of trials conducted in research stations and in farmers' fields. Undesirable genotypes are discarded as early as possible and the selection process concentrates on eliminating the poorest genotypes, rather than on selecting the best. It takes approximately 2 years from the crossing block until the first harvest of the IT-1 (Table 10.2). Consequently, if a crossing block is planted once a year, there are two recurrent-selection populations to be managed at the same time.

Superior genotypes usually have an efficient photosynthetic surface and produce high yields of high quality in a relatively short time. The factors determining the photosynthetic surface are the length of the stem and the number of leaves per unit length of stem. Simple visual tools are developed to screen thousands of genotypes efficiently for such traits. Some bushy types, however, can develop with short stems an ample photosynthetic surface over a small area. Selection has to be cautious and to proceed step by step, combining important characters. The short shelf life of the sweet potato is being improved and a simple technique for assessing rates of deterioration is the measurement of weight loss during the first week of storage, a good indicator of the subsequent rates of deterioration (Rees *et al.*, 1998).

In Japan, *Shochu* alcohol production is one of the largest markets for processed sweet potatoes. 'Joy White', a new cultivar released by the Kyushu National Agricultural Experiment Station in 1994, has a starch content of approximately 25% DM and its roots have low sugar content (approximately 2.7% DM). *Shochu* alcohol obtained from 'Joy White' is fruitier and has a lighter taste than the usual sweet potato alcohol.

The colorant industry is looking for natural red colour because consumers prefer natural food ingredients to artificial ones. New cultivars with high anthocyanin content and high yields are being developed. 'Ayamurasaki' for example, has elongated, fusiform and uniform good shaped roots with dark-purple skin and a deep purple flesh. Anthocyanins extracted from its roots are used for confectionery and in various foods as a colorant. A dry powder and a paste made from this variety are also used for breads, noodles and snack foods (Yamakawa, 1998; Yoshinaga, 1998). It is now possible to predict anthocyanin content and composition by appreciation of the paste colour without going through expensive HPLC analyses (Yoshinaga *et al.*, 1999). Anthocyanins, responsible for the bright purplish colour, are synthesized throughout the stage of storage root development, but not in a steady manner. It is possible to screen numerous genotypes but only after the 9th week of growth, when the percentage of peonidin, which is an index for anthocyanin composition in purple-fleshed sweet potato, becomes constant and when the storage roots reach a diameter over 20 mm (Yoshiniga *et al.*, 1999).

Major compounds can be quantified routinely using near infrared reflectance spectroscopy (NIRS) and this technique seems promising for breeders (Lu and Sh, 1990). On the other hand, for β-carotene, spectro-

Table 10.2. Characters evaluated in each trial of a sweet potato breeding programme.

No. of genotypes in trial	Planting pattern	Characters evaluated
2000 seedlings in seedling nursery (SN)	50 × 50 cm, 1 seedling per genotype	Leaf scab score at harvest, vine length and thickness, storage root skin colour and flesh colour.
100 genotypes in hill trial (HT)	1 × 1 m, 3 plants per genotype (2 cuttings per mound)	Leaf scab score, early maturity, little-leaf score, virus score, vine length and thickness, storage root skin and flesh colour, yield (low, medium, high) and specific gravity measured in the field.
100 genotypes in preliminary trial (PT)	1 × 1 m, 6 plants per genotype (2 cuttings per mound)	Leaf scab score, early maturity, little-leaf score, virus score, vine length and thickness, storage root skin and flesh colour, root shape, skin smoothness, skin cracking, number of storage roots per plant and individual size, yield (low, medium, high) and specific gravity measured in the field.
25 genotypes in intermediate trials IT-1 and 13 genotypes in IT-2	1 × 1 m, 10 plants per genotype (2 cuttings per mound)	Leaf scab score, early maturity, little-leaf score, virus score, vine length and thickness, storage root skin and flesh colour, root shape, skin smoothness, skin cracking, number of storage roots per plant and individual size, marketable weight, edible weight per plant and specific gravity measured in the field.
7 genotypes in advanced trials AD-1 and 5 genotypes in AD-2	1 × 1 m, 16 plants per genotype, 4 datum plants (2 cuttings per mound)	Same as IT plus tuber dry weight and eating quality.
2 genotypes in on-farm trials	Planting patterns determined by farmers. Number of replications and number of plants per replication determined by availability of cuttings. Trial is best located in the middle of the farmer's field.	Average leaf scab score over the season, virus score, marketable weight and tuber numbers and eating quality, as judged by farmers and farmers' choice of which clone will be replanted.

Source: Wilson *et al.* (1989).

photometry over estimates the HPLC values for β-carotene content because of the presence of minor carotenoids. It is thought, however, that screening large numbers can be done using a cost efficient spectrophotometer and that the expensive HPLC is necessary only for the accurate quantification of β-carotene (Kimura *et al.*, 2007).

The flavour of sweet potato is of utmost importance to consumers but it is difficult to measure accurately, and this is an obstacle to reliable selection. If flavour could be measured analytically, then the number of genotypes that could be screened accurately would be increased. A study conducted in Georgia, USA, indicates that it is possible to distinguish differences in aroma between genotypes using gas chromatography analysis. Compounds such as sugars and organic acids can also be quantified. The advantages are an accurate parent line and progeny selection (Kays *et al.*, 1998). It is now important to evaluate the practicalities and economics of establishing such a system on a routine basis for breeders.

In Guadeloupe, French West Indies, consumers prefer the non-sweet varieties of sweet potato and studies were conducted to obtain genotypes with low sugar content, high yield and high DM content. Eighteen introduced and local cultivars were characterized using HPLC and results showed that sucrose was the major sugar in all clones, with glucose and fructose contents being higher than maltose or raffinose. These less sweet clones are now being crossed in order to lower the sugar content of local varieties (Mathurin *et al.*, 1998).

In the USA, breeders are also attempting to reduce sugar levels. The cultivar 'GA90-16', an open-pollinated seedling selection derived from a polycross nursery, has been released to farmers because of its lower levels of odour-active volatiles and endogenous sugars. In baking trials, it has a bland flavour compared to the intensely flavoured cv. 'Jewel'. However, when prepared as French fries, 'GA90-16' absorbs less fat than 'Jewel'. These are yellowish, dry tasting and devoid of the typical sweet potato flavour, while 'Jewel' French fries are, because of their high sugar content and very dark, oily and soft texture (Kays *et al.*, 2001).

HERITABILITY OF MAJOR TRAITS

It has been determined that flesh colour, flesh oxidation, percentage dry weight, percentage crude starch, percentage crude protein, skin colour, resistance to root-knot nematode and vine length all have high heritabilities (Table 10.3).

In Bogor, Indonesia, heritability of storage roots is about 61.2% for the family and 58.6% for individual genotype response, agreeing with estimates in temperate countries, but it is not certain that this would be the case for other traits. For DM content, heritability is high enough to make rapid progress with phenotypic variation (Mok *et al.*, 1998).

Table 10.3. Narrow sense heritability estimates for sweet potato.

Trait	Heritability estimates (%)
Root weight	25, 41, 44
Growth cracking	37, 51
Flesh colour	53, 66
Flesh oxidation	64
Dry matter	65
Fibre	47
Skin colour	81
Sprouting	37, 39
Vine length	60
Leaf type	59
Flowers/inflorescence	50
Fusarium wilt resistance	50, 86, 89
Nematode egg mass index	57, 69, 75
Insect complex resistance	45
Flea beetle resistance	40
Weevil resistance	84

Source: Jones *et al.* (1976), Jones (1986) and Martin (1988).

Qualitative characters are distinguished easily one from the other (for example, storage root skin colour) and generally are controlled by only one or two sets of genes. Quantitative characters such as the shape and yield of the storage roots are indistinct and continuously grade into each other, involving many sets of genes. White flesh colour seems to be dominant over orange flesh. For such characters, progenies often resemble the parents and genetic improvement through recurrent selection is rapid. As for other root crop species, the total carotene content appears to be controlled by several genes, probably six that are additive.

Starch, along with carotene and protein, are the three essential characters in sweet potato breeding programmes for human consumption. The broad sense heritability of starch digestibility is very high and its improvement is theoretically feasible, but it necessitates facilities for routine analysis and screening of numerous genotypes. The costs are so high that unless a simple screening tool is available, it does not seem practical to retain this trait in a conventional breeding programme (Zhang and Li, 2004). Apparently, the starch content of sweet potatoes is determined mainly by the additive effect of polygenes and, therefore, the accumulation of genes controlling high starch content is recommended. A few genes with simple dominance seem to control the inheritance of fibre size, while the total fibre content is controlled by several genes, suggesting that low-fibre improvement is quite feasible. Unfortunately, carotene content seems to be correlated negatively with DM, while starch content and DM are correlated positively: both are associated with eating

quality. A genotype with only high carotene content probably would have a low DM and high moisture and this would be unpalatable for most consumers throughout the tropics. A starch content of about 20% and a DM above 30% should be considered as criteria more important than either protein or carotene content (Wang, 1982).

Selection for high DM content is very effective because there is tremendous variation for this trait in the germplasm, ranging from only 14% to more than 44%, and because the heritability of DM has been estimated at 75–88% (Zhang and Li, 2004).

The Japanese approach for accumulating the genes for starch content is via inbreeding by selfing and sib cross. The development of inbred lines with high DM content and subsequently crossing them with elite cultivars is an attractive approach. The first step is to develop inbred lines that are derived from different parents and the second step is the evaluation of the specific combining ability of each inbred line. Enhancement of the combining ability of various traits is an important step in the Japanese programme as it raises the efficiency of cultivar improvement. Apparently, inbreeding depression occurs in root yield but not in DM, and heterosis is observed through crosses of inbred lines in root yield rather than in DM content. The differences in the inbreeding depression and heterosis of agronomic traits in the progenies of self-compatible genotypes suggest that each trait is controlled by different genes. DM content is probably controlled by additive gene effects, while root yield is controlled by dominant gene effects. Breeding lines with a starch content of up to 28–30% of DM have been developed (Komaki *et al.*, 1998).

In China, the majority of the cultivars released before the early 1990s have a DM content lower than 30%. Chinese breeders are introducing accessions from various sources, and especially from CIP, from which more than 100,000 botanical seeds and 55 advanced breeding lines have been introduced. The population mean is increasing for this trait through population improvement (Zhang and Li, 2004).

Considerable variation exists for crude protein content in sweet potato and Li (1982) has reported a range of 1.27–10.07% dry weight among 300 different accessions in Taiwan, with most of them averaging around 4–5%. A high broad sense heritability of 90% has been reported with significant genotype × location interaction but no genotype × year interaction (Collins *et al.*, 1987). Zhang and Li (2004) found that the narrow-sense heritability of family means for crude protein is 0.57, while narrow-sense heritability among individuals is only 0.15. Moreover, they recorded a negative genetic correlation between crude protein content and DM. They concluded that mass selection cannot be effective in increasing crude protein in sweet potato because the heritability based on individuals is too low.

In sub-Saharan Africa, some experiments have been conducted in order to identify the extent of genetic variability of iron and zinc concentration and to determine their heritabilities. The results showed high heritability for iron

(0.74), zinc (0.82) and DM concentration (0.93) among half-sib families. In this case, mass selection could improve the nutritional value of sweet potato (Courtney, 2007).

GENOTYPE × ENVIRONMENT INTERACTIONS

Sweet potato yield is very sensitive to environmental changes. In East Africa, multi-local yield trials comparing newly selected clones to local cultivars were used to test yield stability in adverse environments. Some genotypes appear to be fairly yield stable but, for most of the others, G × E interactions increase with increasing elevation, for example. Selecting new cultivars in an environment with adverse conditions seems to be an efficient and practical way of identifying cultivars with good environmental adaptability (Janssens, 1984, 1988). In Ethiopia, a study conducted to determine root yield stability and the nature and magnitude of G × E interaction using six introduced and one farmers' cultivar, at four locations for 3 consecutive years has also shown significant variation among genotypes (Tekalign, 2007).

Quality traits of interest to breeders, such as β-carotene content, are also influenced by the environment (Collins *et al.*, 1987; David *et al.*, 1998). A study conducted in Peru to investigate G × E interaction effects on commercial yield and β-carotene concentration in storage roots revealed that out of nine cultivars tested, none had had satisfactory stability. The lack of association between high yield and stable performance suggests that G × E interactions are important and there is a need to study the yield performance of selected genotypes in varying agroclimatic conditions. Interestingly, β-carotene content increased in almost all tested genotypes when grown at higher altitude (Manrique and Hermann, 2001).

Another study in Peru, comparing nine genotypes of diverse origins with local cultivars at seven locations using two N treatments (0 or 80 kg/ha) has, however, shown that the G × E interactions are smaller than the genetic variation of nutritional traits. The G × E interactions are larger, or nearly equal to, the genetic variation of yield traits. The contribution of N application to G × E appears not to be significant. A specifically adapted genotype was observed with considerable yield advantage over all widely adapted genotypes in low-yielding environments. Different locations varied in their selection ability for storage root yield. Apparently, low-yielding or marginal environments are not disadvantaged when breeding efforts are conducted in more favoured locations (Gruneberg *et al.*, 2005).

Various environmental factors such as growing season, total rainfall and location have been shown to affect the protein content of the sweet potato (Bouwkamp *et al.*, 1985; Bradbury *et al.*, 1985; Lin, 1989). Trypsin is a major digestive tract enzyme that hydrolyses proteins so that they can be digested and assimilated. Different levels of trypsin inhibitor activity (TIA) in sweet potato

have been reported but G × E interactions affect TIA significantly. When environmental conditions change, TIA and crude protein content change as well (Zhang *et al.*, 1998b).

Similar responses and significant G × E interactions are known to occur in PNG, where sweet potato is the major food crop in the highlands. It is observed that a variety which performs well under wet conditions is likely to perform even better in places with a distinct dry season. In that country, subsistence farmers do not readily adopt improved varieties developed away from farming systems and local environments and it is more appropriate to develop new cultivars in the different agroecological zones (Van Wijmeersch, 2001).

In order to satisfy varied regional needs for improved varieties and to take into consideration these significant G × E interactions, CIP has adopted the convergent–divergent scheme for sweet potato breeding which involves maximizing the use of local and diverse genetic resources, promoting collaboration among breeders and selecting varieties for wide adaptability. In practice, seeds from various sources are used to form the base population. The seedlings are planted and superior genotypes are selected and intercrossed and seeds of the population from cycle 1 are returned to the different collaborating sites. During the intercrossing, each location can introduce elite germplasm for introgression of specific genes (Mok *et al.*, 1998).

In Uganda, it is appropriate to decentralize breeding work. A study where 16 farmer (5 cvs) and breeder (11 cvs) varieties were evaluated for yield in 20 trials during 2000–2001 for three seasons in four locations has shown that farmer varieties performed, on average, better than official breeder varieties. This illustrates the potential that local cultivars can have in regions where high diversity of sweet potato landraces exists (Abidin *et al.*, 2005). Again in Uganda, researchers and farmers have identified preferred introduced varieties through participatory evaluation and selected new cultivars from seedling populations. One released variety ('NASPOT 1') has been adopted by farmers mostly for its high and early yield of large and mealy roots. Farmers also selected cultivars among the seedling populations for a wider range of attributes. Some of the attributes needed by farmers, such as suitability for sequential piecemeal harvesting or the tolerance to abiotic or biotic stresses such as drought or pest damage, were found to be difficult to predict by researchers during their on-station work (Gibson *et al.*, 2008).

USE OF RELATED SPECIES

Other *Ipomoea* spp. may contribute to the genetic improvement of the sweet potato by providing new genes, such as those for resistance to pests and diseases. Their usefulness is not straightforward as tremendous variation already exists for most traits within the *I. batatas* germplasm. Resistance to weevils (*Cylas* spp.), scab (*E. batatas*) and black rot (*Ceratocystis fimbriata*) have

been found in *I. trifida.* The wild *Ipomoea* species' adaptation to very different environments make them attractive, but their use is often constrained by the absence of storage roots and the sexual barriers to crossability with *I. batatas* due to different ploidy levels. In Japan, interspecific hybridization has been used since the 1950s to improve sweet potato. Some traits of *I. trifida* are of interest to sweet potato breeders: drought tolerance, disease resistance and root storability. After interspecific hybridization and subsequent introgression, high-starch cultivars have been developed (Shiotani *et al.*, 1991). Other related species might be useful to build up resistance to weevils as there is very little resistance in sweet potato. The characteristics of the *I. batatas* group and the related species assumed to be close relatives are presented in Table 10.4.

The A-group includes species that are self-compatible and cross-compatible with each other. In the X-group, there are two tetraploids which can be intercrossed with one another. Species of the X-group can cross with those of the A-group when they are pollen parents. The B-group is composed of di-, tetra- and hexaploids, which cannot intercross with species of the A- and X-groups. The crossability between two different *Ipomoea* species depends on the balance of chromosome numbers and also on the homology between the two genomes. The crossability with sweet potato is less effective with diploid and tetraploid *I. trifida* than between hexaploid *I. trifida* and hexaploid *I. batatas*. The efficiency of the $2n$ pollen was evaluated in polyploidization using $4x \times 4x$ ($2n$) crosses but all progenies were $4x$, which suggested the existence of barriers to crossability between $4x$ genotypes and their $2n$ pollen-producer counterparts (Hoa and Carpena, 1994; Becerra Lopez-Lavalle and Orjeda, 2002).

RAPID VEGETATIVE PROPAGATION

Tissue culture of sweet potatoes has received much attention and applications are numerous in sanitization and rapid propagation of selected genotypes. Several protocols have been developed and have shown their efficiency for *in vitro* propagation (Litz and Concover, 1978; Jarrett *et al.*, 1984; Liu and

Table 10.4. Sexual compatibility relationships in *Ipomoea batatas, Batatas* section.

A-group Self-compatible *I. triloba* group	X-group Self-incompatible	B-group Self-incompatible *I. batatas* group
I. triloba (2*x*)	*I. tiliacea* (4*x*)	*I. leucantha* (2*x*)
I. lacunosa (2*x*)		*I. littoralis* (4*x*)
I. ramoni (2*x*)	*I. gracilis* (4*x*)	*I. trifida* (6*x*)
I. trichocarpa (2*x*)		*I. batatas* (6*x*)

Cantliff, 1984). Sweet potato is unusual in that shoot regeneration may also occur from adventitious roots produced in culture. Significant differences in callus characteristics are apparent in the early establishment of cell cultures. Some of these differences are due to the protocols but genotypes are the most important sources of variation (Templeton-Somers and Collins, 1988).

In Zimbabwe, for example, different cultivars react differently to micropropagation. The comparative evaluation of the productivity of four micropropagated cultivars was compared to traditional cuttings for survival, vine length and root yield. It appears that survival percentages for all the cultivars do not improve significantly with micropropagation and there are no significant differences in vine length between micropropagated and farm-retained planting materials 10 WAP. However, the mean tuber weight differs significantly and this could imply differences in susceptibility to virus infection. The use of micropropagated planting material may result in increased yields for certain varieties but the practical implications are far from obvious as farmers do not have ready access to micropropagated sweet potato material (Matimati *et al.*, 2005).

In Japan, a temperate country, the production of healthy propagules has to be done at a certain time of the year, rapidly and in sufficient volumes. For propagule production, a number of shoots are harvested from stock-mother plants and they are prepared in single-node or multi-node cuttings for successive regeneration. A first approach is to micropropagate, under artificial light, leafy node and shoot cuttings which are about 2 cm in length, using a media in multicell plug plastic trays. During a 2-week period, these microcuttings develop their roots and then produce shoot growth with 4–6 unfolded leaves. When these leafy node and stem cuttings are about 15–30 cm in length, they can be used as propagules. A second approach is done in insect-proof greenhouses under natural light. The production rate has been shown to be greater when single-node leafy cuttings are used instead of multi-node leafy cuttings. Pathogen- and pest-free plug transplants can be produced in great numbers with minimum space and at low cost under artificial light and on a commercial basis in Japan. In fact, the photosynthetic abilities of young plants grown from tissue culture and under hydroponics with artificial light are as high as those grown in a greenhouse under natural light (Kozai *et al.*, 1998).

Single-node leafy cuttings can be used to produce low-cost, pathogen-free transplants but necessitate great care and high labour inputs. The yield and growth of plants obtained from transplants with four to six unfolded leaves (about 15 cm shoot length) produced in plastic 55- or 35-ml multicell plug trays, similar to those used for vegetable production, have been compared with unrooted conventional cuttings (about 30 cm-long terminal vine cutting with seven to eight unfolded leaves). Overall, it was found that the growth and yield from plug transplants were significantly higher than those from conventional cuttings. Plug transplants with intact roots produced greater growth and yield, regardless of plug volume, than did plug transplants without roots. It appears

that plug transplants produced with artificial light result in a higher yield of storage roots after a complete cycle in the field than those produced with traditional stem cuttings. These plug transplants have a survival rate close to 100% and a rapid and uniform growth because they already have a developed root system before their field transplantation, unlike traditional stem cuttings (Saifu Islam *et al.*, 2002). Although this technique is clearly promising for the rapid propagation of elite material, there are still several steps which require simplification for it to be used easily by smallholders and commercial growers.

Sweet potato has an unusually high rate of somatic mutation, even as great as 20% in the cultivar 'Jewel' in the USA. The incidence of these mutations is higher in the storage roots than in the foliage and propagation by stem cuttings rather than from storage roots appears to reduce the rate of mutation. The most frequent mutation affects the colour of the root skin and flesh. Mutations may appear either as bud sports or as chimeras. It is too early, however, to assess the incidence of single node cutting propagation on the rate of mutation.

USE OF MOLECULAR MARKERS

One of the earliest uses of DNA markers was that of RFLPs to conduct a phylogenetic study of the *Batatas* section. RAPD and AFLP markers have also been used together to identify relationships among some species in the *Batatas* group. Similarity measures and resulting dendrograms using RAPD and AFLP data are comparable. They reveal that the wild tetraploid species, *I. gracilis* and *I. tiliacea*, are distinct from *I. batatas*. The diploid *I. trifida* and the wild tetraploid accessions are genetically related to the cultivated sweet potato and are the possible progenitors of *I. batatas* (Jarret *et al.*, 1992). Since then, molecular marker research has been limited to germplasm evaluation and characterization (He *et al.*, 1995; Villordon and La Bonte, 1995, 1996; Prakash *et al.*, 1996) and to map making (Ukoskit and Thompson, 1997, Ukoskit *et al.*, 1997). However, so far, the total percentage of scorable primers from sweet potato is disappointing: it is only 14% compared with 32% for another allohexaploid, wheat (La Bonte *et al.*, 1998).

Based on DNA fingerprinting, it is quite clear that there are two major groups of cultivars, those from PNG and those from South America. It appears that PNG cultivars are significantly different from their ancestors in South America, probably as a result of independent evolution in a geographically isolated environment. The genetic base of the PNG cultivars does, however, appear to be narrower than the South American base (Zhang *et al.*, 1998a).

To promote the implementation of genetic analyses in the Japanese breeding programmes, a set of microsatellite markers has been developed which covers the entire genome. Seventy-five SSR (simple sequence repeat) loci showed length polymorphisms and out of these polymorphic loci, 71% were

associated with some genes (Hu *et al.*, 2004). Microsatellites have been used successfully to analyse the genetic diversity and genetic relationships among genotypes produced via polycross breeding (Hwang *et al.*, 2002). Also, the use of microsatellite co-dominant molecular markers demonstrates the feasibility of identifying paternity using a minimal number of loci (Buteler *et al.*, 2002). Microsatellite markers appear promising because there are those which can disclose multiple alleles at a particular locus, although they are more expensive than others.

AFLPs have been used to detect markers suitable for the identification of plants possessing a resistant reaction to root-knot nematode (*Meloidogyne incognita*). Two F_1 populations were screened. The first population consisted of 48 half-sib genotypes developed at the Louisiana State University (LSU). The second population consisted of 54 full-sibs developed by CIP breeding programmes. The results for plant nematode resistance indicate a bimodal distribution among the genotypes for the LSU population and a normal distribution for the CIP population. Models for root-knot nematode resistance prediction achieved 89% (LSU) and 88% (CIP) efficiencies (Mcharo *et al.*, 2005). AFLP markers have also been found to be useful to identify genotypes susceptible or resistant to sweet potato virus disease (SPVD) in Kenya (Miano *et al.*, 2008).

Although these results appear promising on paper, for the time being, there is no practical use of molecular markers in sweet potato, for example, for marker-assisted selection at the field level. This is quite surprising considering the global importance of the crop and the fact that sweet potato is also an economically important crop in developed countries (the USA, China and Japan).

TRANSGENIC TECHNOLOGIES

Two different approaches are being used, one mediated by *A. tumefaciens* and the other by direct gene transfer using particle bombardment. One of the major constraints in developing transgenic sweet potatoes is that regeneration is genotype dependent.

The regeneration protocol mediated by *A. tumefaciens* uses two different plasmids, which are transferred to *A. tumefaciens* by electroporation. This system appears to work efficiently and allow the transformation and regeneration of genotypes widely cultivated in Asia and Africa (Mok *et al.*, 1998). Trypsin inhibitors are potential candidates for the development of transgenic sweet potato with resistance to weevils (*Cylas* spp.) and genes coding for them have been selected (Newell *et al.*, 1995). Ten sweet potato transgenic lines of the cultivar 'Jewel', hosting a cowpea trypsin inhibitor, have been developed successfully by Axis Genetic Ltd (UK) and CIP. After propagation and isolated screenhouse trials, these lines are now being evaluated in the field in Cuba and

China for their resistance to *C. formicarius* (Mok *et al.*, 1998). In Japan, transgenic plants of cv. 'Kokei 14' have been obtained from embryogenic calluses using *A. tumefaciens*-mediated transformation. They were evaluated in the greenhouse and the plants grew normally with well-formed storage roots after 3 months. It was concluded that some agronomically important genes can be introduced easily with this system (Otani *et al.*, 2001). For example, starch composition can be altered by genetic transformation: out of 26 transgenic plants obtained, one plant showed the absence of amylose in the storage roots (Kimura *et al.*, 2001).

The *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation method based on callus organogenesis has since been improved. Stable transgenic plants are obtained in 6–10 weeks after infection with *A. tumefaciens*. PCR (polymerase chain reaction) is used to confirm the stable integration of transgenes into the sweet potato genome (Luo *et al.*, 2006). In South Korea, a successful and reliable *Agrobacterium* transformation of the *bar* gene conferring herbicide resistance has been achieved and the method seems to have the potential to develop new varieties with enhanced tolerance to the herbicide 'Basta' (Choi *et al.*, 2007).

In Japan, the coat protein gene of the sweet potato feathery mottle virus (SPFMV) was introduced by direct gene transfer using electroporation or particle bombardment. Calluses were bombarded with particles and regenerated plants were confirmed as hosting the transgenes using PCR analysis (Murata *et al.*, 1998). Transgenic lines were then obtained from independent calli and each line was vegetatively propagated and grafted on to morning glory (*I. nil*) that had been infected with the SPFMV. Three months after grafting, an ELISA assay showed that virus accumulation was suppressed in the transgenic lines as compared with normal ones. The transgenic lines were also shown to be highly resistant to primary and secondary infections by the virus. Consequently, particle bombardment appears to be a reliable technique to transfer foreign genes into the sweet potato genome (Okada *et al.*, 2001, 2002).

The enhancement of tolerance to various environmental stresses is also attractive and has been attempted. Sweet potato was transformed with spermidine synthase genes derived from *Cucurbita ficifolia*. The transgenic plants showed twice as high spermidine content as the wild type counterpart in both leaves and storage roots. These transgenic plants were tested for their tolerance to salt and drought. One of their most interesting traits was the increase in the number of storage roots produced under both non-stress and stressful environments. It was also observed that the transgenic plants were less affected, producing higher mass of storage roots and starches than normal plants under stress. The transgenic plants also showed increased tolerance to chilling- and to heat-mediated damage compared to the normal plants. It was concluded that sweet potato could be made more tolerant to environmental stresses through the introduction of the spermidine synthase genes. The transgenic plants were also found to be more tolerant to herbicide paraquat (Kasukabe *et al.*, 2006).

A study conducted to evaluate the nutritional quality of genetically modified sweet potato on growth, lipid metabolism and protein metabolism of

hamsters has shown that they contain less protein to maintain normal animal growth. It was, however, observed that transgenic sweet potato had good quality protein that supported the growth of hamsters better than did normal plants (Shreen and Pace, 2002).

Obviously, more research is needed to assess the potential of these transformation techniques for the sustainable improvement of the crop.

GERMPLASM CONSERVATION

The maintenance of *ex situ* collections of sweet potato is laborious and losses are frequently suffered due to biotic and abiotic stresses. The CIP germplasm collection contains not less than 5500 accessions of *I. batatas* originating from 57 different countries (Zhang *et al.*, 2000). New Guinea is the second largest centre of genetic diversity in the world. The number of varieties grown in New Guinea has been estimated at some 5000, of which about 1600 are maintained in *ex situ* collections. There are several thousand accessions conserved in collections worldwide and a major task is to eliminate duplicates.

Core collections are being developed using molecular markers. Morphological characterization is conducted routinely with standardized morphological descriptors and the identification of duplicates within the Peruvian sweet potato germplasm collection has permitted its reduction from 1929 accessions to 909 (Mok *et al.*, 1998). A study conducted with 25 SSR markers to characterize and assess the diversity of a subset of the CIP germplasm (540 accessions) has shown that many genepools can be observed within *I. batatas* and that a considerable genetic distance exists among them (Gruneberg *et al.*, 2007).

Sweet potato accessions can exhibit very similar or almost identical morphotypes and be genetically distant, yet they can also present very different morphotypes, although they are clones of each other. New morphotypes can arise from two types of changes occurring in vegetative buds: the tissues may change, or only a part of a given tissue may change. The first type gives rise to a bud sport, which is an individual that arises from somatic mutation and all the tissues have a different genetic make-up from the parent, although very few genes are involved. The second type of change produces chimeras that correspond to tissues with genetic make-up different from those of adjacent tissues on the same plant. Sweet potato is a plant species particularly prone to the two types of mutations and it is not uncommon for germplasm collection curators to observe that some of their accessions may change over propagation cycles. High levels of ploidy usually increase the chances of fixing this type of mutation, and therefore one may observe a genetic drift in successive clonal generations.

CIP is distributing internationally elite cultivars *in vitro* or as seeds and an important number of cultivars are now available for testing. The distribution of true botanical seeds has practical advantages compared to *in vitro* clones, as it

presents fewer quarantine problems and reduced distribution costs and risks. It also permits the rapid distribution of allelic diversity on a broad scale and their selection for adaptation to local conditions.

On-farm conservation strategy has been identified as a complementary but necessary approach to compensate for the losses inevitable in the *ex situ* collections. Since farmers tend to grow different cultivars together, this might represent a sound basis for developing an *in situ* strategy (Rao and Campilan, 2002). It is, however, too soon to describe an appropriate strategy for on-farm conservation.

Although an impressive amount of research work has already been done, the research needs that scored highest in most developing countries are still related to germplasm conservation and plant improvement. They involve the control of viruses through genotype resistance, improvement in availability and quality of planting material and improved cultivars exhibiting high and stable yield potential. Additional priorities for sub-Saharan Africa include improved control of the sweet potato weevil and cultivars with high β-carotene content, and for China, other priority needs are the conservation and characterization of genetic resources, pre-breeding and cultivars with high starch yield (Fuglie, 2007).

11

Developmental Physiology

GROWTH CYCLE

The young seedling develops a taproot and a complete root system, as well as a complete foliage canopy, but it takes about 6 months in the lowland tropics to cover an area that a vegetatively propagated plant covers in only 3 months.

Once the stem cuttings have been planted, the growth and development of the sweet potato plant present four distinct phases:

1. An *initial phase*, characterized by rapid growth of the adventitious roots which arise from the underground stem cuttings, accompanied by a slow growth of the vines.
2. An *intermediate phase* of rapid vegetative growth of the vines, increasing the leaf area. This phase is also accompanied by an initial storage root development.
3. A *final phase* where the vegetative growth of the vines stops and rapid bulking of the storage roots occurs.
4. A *regeneration phase* where sprouts develop from the storage roots and give rise to new plants.

There are overlaps between these four phases. Their duration varies greatly, depending on cultivar and environmental conditions. In tropical warm lowlands, the initial phase occurs during the first 40 DAP, the intermediate phase occurs from 40 to 70 DAP and the final phase from 70 to 120 DAP. During the initial phase of growth, the usage of carbohydrates is dominant, during the intermediate phase, usage is less dominant until their storage becomes dominant and in the final phase, their storage is dominant over usage. During the regeneration phase, their usage is again dominant. There are no clear indicators to determine maturity in sweet potato (Fig. 11.1).

Fig. 11.1. The first three phases of growth of the sweet potato plant (Source: Edmond and Ammerman, 1971).

The Initial Phase

In this phase, there is slow growth of the vines and rapid growth of the young roots. There are three types of roots arising from a stem cutting, a plug transplant or a piece of storage root: primary fibrous, pencil and storage (fleshy) roots. From these three types of root, lateral roots may develop. The young adventitious roots can be either thin or thick roots. Usually, thin roots arise from the internodal areas and thick roots from the nodes of the underground stem. Thick roots differ from thin roots in their size and the faster growth of their apical meristems. Depending on soil texture and growing conditions, these roots may penetrate to a depth of 2 m, or even more. This deep penetration allows survival in drought by the root system absorbing water from deeper soil layers. If the environment is favourable, the young thick roots develop into storage roots.

Anatomically, the feeding roots of the sweet potato are typical of Dicotyledons, having an outer epidermis and then a cortex, endodermis and pericycle. A four-pointed primary xylem is located at the centre of the root. A few sweet potato roots have xylem with five or six points instead of four and these will develop later into storage roots. Most of them develop from the initial fibrous root system produced by the stem cuttings but, if the plants are hilled-up, some of the thick roots that are produced at the nodes of the stems will also produce storage roots. There is a rapid increase in the number of pigmented and non-pigmented roots between 1 and 4 WAP.

The storage root tissues of the plant develop from meristematic activity of the vascular cambium and the anomalous cambium. The process that leads to the formation of storage roots occurs at two major locations in the root. The vascular cambium located between the xylem and the phloem produces secondary phloem on its outside layer and secondary xylem and a great volume of storage parenchyma on the inside. While the storage tissues are being laid down in the roots, the stalk connecting them to the rest of the plant is also subject to some modification, which includes an extensive amount of secondary growth of phloem. This increase in phloem will allow the translocation of photosynthates necessary for the bulking of the storage roots. During this initial phase, the plant is consuming all the carbohydrates it produces.

The Intermediate Phase

This phase corresponds to the initiation of storage root development, a fast growth of vines and a large increase in leaf area. At the end of this stage, the vines are fully developed and present a large photosynthetic and transpiring leaf area. The absorbing roots are also fully developed and present a thoroughly ramifying root system penetrating deep into the soil. During the period between 30 and 80 DAP, there is a significant mean increase in the number of thick roots and a decline in the total root number. The period between 50 and 80 DAP is critical for the production of pencil and string roots.

The Final Phase

This phase is one of rapid bulking of the storage roots, reduced growth of the vines and their senescence. In contrast with the growth of vines and absorbing roots, the development of storage roots requires the formation of relatively few cells, while depositing large volumes of starch grains and carotene in the storage tissues. At this stage, the sweet potato plant is storing all the carbohydrates it produces. When the storage roots are developing, the sucrose produced in the leaves is translocated to the storage roots, where it is changed into glucose, and this glucose is then transformed into starch, which is stored finally in the storage root tissues (Edmond and Ammerman, 1971). In temperate countries such as the USA, where the growth cycle is slower and longer, approximately 92–100% of the final length of the storage root is reached 120 DAP, but only 49–77% of the final diameter is reached at that time (Wilson, 1982a). DM content always increases over time. The total sugar concentration (fructose + glucose + sucrose) also increases linearly over time and sucrose is the predominant sugar (Lewthwaite *et al.*, 2000).

The Regeneration Phase

In general, the senescence of the foliage is used as an indicator of the time to harvest, but sweet potato maturity is difficult to assess precisely. If the storage roots are not harvested when mature, the plant can regenerate itself. The regeneration phase can start as early as 100 DAP, depending on genotype and environment.

Very early in the storage root ontogeny, adventitious buds are produced on the thin and thick roots, either singly or in groups of four. These buds are distinguished easily from lateral root primordial buds. New vegetative buds can develop at the surface of the storage roots and regenerate the plant. As these buds develop, they require a regular supply of glucose, which comes from the starch that has been stored in the storage roots. These sprouts develop from the vascular cambium zone of the storage root. Larger sprouts are produced from larger storage root pieces, suggesting that carbohydrate mobilization plays an important role in sprout vigour and growth. Adventitious buds produced on storage roots can be stimulated into shoots with high levels of nitrogen supply. While they are still attached to the periderm of the storage root, the sprouts will draw food reserves from it, at least up to the eight-leaf stage, and sprouts will continue to use reserves of carbohydrates as long as they remain attached to the storage root (Kays *et al.*, 1982).

PHOTOPERIODISM

Sweet potato is a heliophylous, sun-loving, plant species that grows best when light intensity is high, and this is why it often performs poorly when intercropped under perennials. Sweet potato plants can grow under low light intensity (e.g. in nurseries) if they are still attached to the storage root and probably would not grow correctly without the aid of storage root nutrients.

Day length affects flowering and the plant's storage roots directly. In the tropics, flowering is promoted by a day length of 11 h and is inhibited by a day length of longer than 13.5 h. In temperate countries, above 30° latitude north or south, no flowering occurs during the long and warm summer days favourable to its cultivation. Increased day length has been assumed to be the factor responsible for higher yields in northern latitudes of temperate countries (i.e. Japan and the USA), but some experiments have shown reduced yield with a day length of 18 h (McDavid and Alamu, 1980).

However, Bonsi *et al.* (1990) conducted some experiments in environmental growth chambers to clarify the issue and studied the response of three genotypes to two different photoperiods (Table 11.1).

Continuous light seems to result in an increased number and weight of storage roots and an increased dry weight of fibrous roots and total foliage. High light intensity also seems to promote the production of a higher number

Table 11.1. Yield components of three genotypes cultivated in growth chambers under different photoperiods.

Cultivar	Photoperiod light/dark (h)	Storage roots, number	Storage roots, fresh weight (g)	Fibrous roots, dry weight (g)	Total foliage, dry weight (g)
GA Jet	12/12	1.0	11.0	4.3	25.8
	24/00	5.3	202.8	7.5	31.6
TI 155	12/12	0.3	7.5	206	14.2
	24/00	2.6	132.6	7.0	24.6
GA 120	12/12	0.3	4.0	3.0	17.0
	24/00	2.6	116.0	10.3	47.3

Source: Bonsi *et al.* (1990).

of storage roots, as well as an increase in dry weight of fibrous roots and total foliage, confirming that sweet potatoes grown under shady conditions or low light produce poor yields.

Experiments conducted in glasshouses have confirmed that long light and short dark periods during 24 h promote the development of foliage rather than storage roots. On the other hand, short light and long dark periods promote the development of storage roots rather than foliage. Field experiments also show clearly that the formation and development of storage roots is promoted by short days, while long days favour foliage development. This is not genotype-dependent and, in the lowland tropics, sweet potato yields more during the short days of the cool season than during the long and hot days of the summer season (Lebot, 1986).

Normal growth and development of the storage roots can occur only in the absence of light and, if the storage roots are exposed to light, they will not store nutrients in their flesh. Exposure to light stops enlargement, decreases starch content and increases fibre content, but this is reversed easily by restoring the roots to darkness (Onwueme and Charles, 1994). There is, however, an obvious need for further research on this subject.

TEMPERATURE

The sweet potato is essentially a warm weather crop which grows best at temperatures above 24°C, while temperatures below 10°C retard its growth seriously. The plant is damaged by frost and, in temperate countries, this restricts its distribution to areas where frost does not occur during at least 4–6 months (i.e. North Carolina, Louisiana in the USA, North Island in New Zealand).

Sweet potato plants which are subjected to an air temperature of 20°C during the period of darkness alternated with a temperature of 29°C during a light period of 16 h produce early maturing and higher yields than plants subjected to a constant temperature of 29°C (Kim, 1961). The temperature of the soil also affects the development of storage roots directly. For rooted single leaf cuttings, for example, optimum storage root development occurs when the soil temperature reaches 25°C, whereas temperatures of 15°C or 35°C inhibit their development. The sweet potato produces the greatest increase in storage root weight when it is grown over a constant soil temperature of 30°C, combined with an air temperature of 25°C during the night (Spence and Humphries, 1972).

Kays *et al.* (1982) have shown that brief periods of exposure to low temperatures have a significant effect on the carbon transport system. Prolonged exposure of very young plants to 10°C can cause death. In the field, however, it is not uncommon for sweet potatoes in the USA, New Zealand or Japan to be exposed to night temperatures of approximately 10°C or less without apparent damage and this suggests that plant age and duration of exposure are important as well.

Crop growth rate (CGR), NAR and LAI have been determined for sweet potato in Japan in an attempt to understand DM production under field conditions in relation to temperature and solar radiation. After planting, the LAI increases rapidly until 60 DAP, then decreases gradually but remains above 4.0 throughout the second half of the crop cycle (from June to November in Japan). Mean air temperature and solar radiation are considered to be the main climatic factors affecting CGR in temperate countries. Experiments conducted in Kyushu, Japan (Agata, 1982) indicate that during the first half of the cycle, DM production depends on LAI and LAI values are closely related to ambient air temperature. During the second half of the cycle, DM production and storage root growth rate depend on NAR and NAR values are closely related to solar radiation. The growth rate of the storage roots is influenced strongly by solar radiation through NAR and CGR when LAI is above the optimum value (Table 11.2).

Table 11.2. Correlation coefficients of crop growth rate (CGR), leaf area index (LAI) and net assimilation rate (NAR).

	First half of crop cycle		Second half of crop cycle	
Items	Mean air temperature	Mean solar radiation	Mean air temperature	Mean solar radiation
CGR	0.96*	0.85	0.66	1.0**
LAI	0.88	0.76	0.98**	0.71
NAR	0.75	0.92*	0.62	1.0**

Note: *Significant at 5% level, **significant at 1% level (Source: Agata, 1982).

Table 11.3. Nutrient removal for an average yield (12 t/ha) and a high yield (50 t/ha).

	Nutrient removal (kg/ha) by crop with root yield of: 12 t/ha		50 t/ha	
Nutrient	Roots only	Foliage & roots*	Roots only	Foliage & roots
Nitrogen	26	52	110	215
Phosphorus	6	9	25	38
Potassium	60	90	250	376
Calcium	3.6	16	15	65
Magnesium	3	6.5	12.5	27
Sulphur	1.8	4.3	7.5	18
Chlorine	10	18	43	75
Iron	0.06	0.16	0.25	0.67
Boron	0.02	0.07	0.1	0.31
Manganese	0.02	0.18	0.1	0.73
Zinc	0.04	0.06	0.15	0.26
Copper	0.02	0.04	0.08	0.16
Molybdenum	0.004	0.006	0.015	0.023

Note: *Assuming 70% moisture in the storage roots and 86% in the foliage and a foliage/root ratio of 0.6. Source: O'Sullivan *et al.* (1997).

NUTRITION

The amount of nutrients exported depends on the yield of the crop and if both foliage and storage roots are exported. For a given cultivar, spectacular increases in yield can result from a low increase in essential nutrients. The approximate nutrient removal for a storage root yield of 12 t/ha (average yield) and 50 t/ha (high yield), when only the storage roots are removed and when both foliage and roots are removed from the field, are presented in Table 11.3 (O'Sullivan *et al.*, 1997).

When N, P, K, S, Mg, Ca and Fe are below critical levels, there are spectacular symptoms of deficiencies. Storage root formation can occur in nitrogen (N)-deficient plants, despite restricted foliage growth. However, high supply of N favours foliage development, which competes for carbohydrate supply (Harper and Walker, 1985). It is now accepted that K is required for good development of the storage root and a high supply of N would result in an adverse effect in storage root development when K is low.

Since the foliage grows most during the first half of the growth cycle and the storage roots develop during the second half, the foliage contains the greater quantities of nitrogen, phosphorus and potassium during this first half of the growth cycle and the storage roots contain greater quantities during the second half. The uptake of potassium is generally twice that of nitrogen and five times that of phosphorus.

Potassium appears to play a critical role in sweet potato storage root starch synthesis. The K_2O/N ratio is critical for increased water content, respiration rate and storage root growth, leading to fast translocation of photosynthates from the leaves to the roots. A high K_2O/N ratio in the storage root induces higher water content and this ultimately increases the respiratory rate. High potassium supply and the K_2O/N ratio in the storage roots are thought to be associated with increased protein production, resulting in enhanced storage root growth (Kays *et al.*, 1982).

Light, dry and compact soil, waterlogged soil, high levels of nitrogen supply, gibberellins and long days are known to promote lignification and to inhibit the development of the storage root. Dark conditions, high potassium supply, well aerated soil conditions, low temperatures, short days and kinetins have been shown to encourage their development (Wilson, 1982a).

WATER DEFICIT AND STRESS

Sweet potato cannot tolerate dry conditions at planting. The amount of rainfall needed is site-specific and varies greatly with evaporation, cultivar response and number of days to maturity.

Decreasing water use efficiency under N stress is thought to be due to lower total plant DM production rather than to an increase in total water transpiration per plant. A pot experiment was conducted in a tropical mid-elevation environment (861 m altitude) to evaluate sweet potato genotypes of different origins for traits such as transpirational water-use efficiency (weight of roots produced per unit amount of water), growth and nitrogen-use efficiency as affected by different levels of N fertilization. The results regarding the response of cultivars with gathering-type canopies were revealing. Genotypes with small canopies were associated with a consistently positive response in their final storage root DM yields to increasing N supply, and with efficient allocation of DM and N in their storage roots. Genotypes with high canopy NARs had a high proportion of leaves exposed to the sun and high chlorophyll content in their leaves. Nitrogen stress provoked increased transpiration per unit leaf area and decreased water use efficiency. As these results were obtained in pots and controlled conditions, it would be interesting to see if similar responses would be obtained in field conditions (Kelm *et al.*, 2001).

Adequate water supply through rainfall or irrigation is essential for the optimum development of the storage roots, but excess water results in poor aeration. Because the storage root is displacing its volume equivalent of soil by compressing the soil next to it, it is assumed that physical resistance of the soil can also decrease storage root development. Over-irrigation reduces storage root yield in areas with high rainfall and temporary drought stress appears to stimulate root development whenever vegetative growth is stopped for a short

duration. The marketable root yield is influenced significantly by different irrigation levels. A reduction in the number of marketable size roots is responsible for lower root yields and is accompanied by an increase in root DM content (Ekanayake *et al.*, 1990).

The effects of time of irrigation on sweet potato total foliage weight, storage yield, number and size has been investigated in Taiwan. It appears that irrigation applied at a later growth stage gives better foliage growth and the trend is similar for storage root yield. Suppression of leaf growth by moisture stress has also been observed to favour the development of flower buds. The formation of sweet potato roots is stimulated when drought stress occurs sometime during the growth cycle. It has been observed that if the sweet potato is irrigated when 40% of the total available water in the soil is depleted, it will produce the highest yields. The first irrigation has to be withheld until 60 DAP in order to provide the translocation of more photosynthates and the development of storage roots. The density of the soil should also be considered. In Taiwan, loose soils, or soils with low density, enhance vegetative growth and lessen storage root development. Soils with high densities reduce both storage root yields and foliage development. The optimum density of the soil is approximately 1.5 g/cc (Sajjapongse and Roan, 1982) (Table 11.4).

When sweet potatoes are grown in waterlogged conditions or in solution culture, they fail to produce storage roots. In field conditions, yields may be improved remarkably by ridging. It appears that low storage root yield under field conditions with excess moisture are due to inadequate oxygen within the root zone. Low soil oxygen is probably more detrimental when occurring late in the growth cycle, when the storage roots have already been formed and have reached their full length just before enlarging.

Table 11.4. Effect of time of irrigation on foliage and root yield of sweet potato in Taiwan.

Time of irrigation DAP	Foliage weight t/ha	Storage root yield t/ha	Number of roots per plant	Root size, g/root
No irrigation	3.8	13.4	3.8	116.8
30	4.4	14.2	4.1	112.9
60	5.2	18.8	4.3	152.3
90	5.8	18.6	4.2	152.1
120	6.8	19.9	4.3	148.7
30, 60	5.3	18.1	3.9	164.7
30, 90	5.6	17.0	4.8	120.4
60, 120	6.9	19.6	4.4	147.2
90, 120	6.5	17.6	3.9	154.4
30, 60, 90, 120	6.5	19.2	4.3	143.2

Source: Sajjapongse and Roan (1982).

In Vanuatu, Melanesia, sweet potato production is affected by high rainfall, and high soil moisture during the wet season slows down storage root development. In wet weather, leaf growth is vigorous but no roots are produced. The ideal situation is to obtain sufficient rainfall during the period of early growth and sunny weather during the period of storage root bulking and growth (Lebot, 1986).

YIELD POTENTIAL

The yield of the sweet potato is determined by the length of the growing period. It seems that in Japan, yields of 120 t/ha can be obtained in 8 months in Kyushu and 80 t/ha in 6 months in Okinawa (Agata, 1982). In Vanuatu, yields of 60–80 t/ha can be obtained in 5 months with local cultivars and no fertilizers (Lebot, 1986). The physical components of this yield are the number and the mean size of the storage roots at harvest, which depend on the foliage characteristics, the patterns of storage root growth, their mean weight and shape.

The increase in root weight depends on leaf photosynthesis. The transport of assimilates from the leaves to the root stalk is a process influenced by storage root growth, as storage root cells must be formed and expand before they can store assimilates. The final yield depends on the rate of increase and the duration of growth. The development process of the storage roots results from characteristics such as their number, length and function of the root stalk and shape. All these characteristics vary significantly between cultivars and are under genetic control. When different genotypes are studied for the partitioning of leaf, vine and root tissues, significant variation is observed. The proportions of leaf to stem dry weights are cultivar specific and are constant throughout the harvest period (Lebot, 1986; Lewthwaite and Triggs, 2000a).

One of the most striking morphological traits of the sweet potato is its variety of foliage. Several attempts to demonstrate relationships between yield and particular morphological or physiological characteristics of the foliage have failed. However, some varieties with small canopies, short stem length and small leaves can produce higher yields than those with long stems with numerous broad leaves. Some experiments have been conducted to understand the complexity of the matter. Staking can result in LAI increase of a low-yielding variety and this is thought to be due to the vertical leaf display. It is also assumed that the low light intensity in shaded leaves of unstaked plants could also contribute to yield reduction (Wilson, 1982a).

In Japan, an experiment was carried out to conduct a quantitative analysis of two different branching patterns of two cultivars ('Shiroyutaka' and 'Beniazuma'). 'Shiroyutaka' has a gathering type of canopy architecture and 'Beniazuma' has a dispersing type. Branching ability is very high in 'Shiroyutaka' (gathering type) but the elongation of each branch is relatively limited, giving a

bushy appearance to the plant. Characteristics opposite to these are seen in 'Beniazuma' (dispersing type). This work has shown that total dry matter production (DMP) is higher in 'Shiroyutaka' than in 'Beniazuma' through the growth period. It is also observed that CGR in 'Shiroyutaka' is higher than in 'Beniazuma', especially at the middle growth period. The high CGR in 'Shiroyutaka' is thought to be due to its large NAR, instead of its LAI. It is therefore suggested that the canopy type might affect the NAR of each cultivar (Sasaki *et al.*, 2005).

This page intentionally left blank

12

Agronomy

Sweet potato is a smallholder crop grown on marginal land with limited inputs. Average yields in many developing countries are lower than average yields in temperate countries, which are in turn well below the potential of the crop. Therefore, rapid improvements in productivity can be achieved easily with suitable cultivation techniques. Sites with high sunlight, an average temperature of 25°C or more, receiving a well-distributed annual rainfall of 1000–2000 mm have the highest yield potential. Yield is also dependent on the cultivar planted, the number of plants per unit area, the length of the growing season, the management of biotic and abiotic stresses and the cultural practices used during the crop cycle.

SOIL PREPARATION

Good land preparation always enhances fast sprouting and crop establishment and reduces weed competition. Soils contaminated with diseases, nematodes or weevils should be avoided and 4-year rotations are recommended to reduce damage from scurf and fusarium wilt. Sweet potato should not be replanted on the same plot. Furthermore, new sweet potato fields should not be planted next to old or existing fields. The use of a barrier crop between plots, or leaving a gap of approximately 100 m between plots, prevents pest and disease populations from moving from an old to a new crop. When land is scarce, it is better to remove storage roots and vines from the old fields and burn them, or feed them to livestock. In the tropics, sweet potato is rarely planted at the beginning of the cropping cycle. Forest or fallow land might not be suitable if their soils are rich in organic matter as this will promote rough, cracked, over-sized roots and vegetative growth but not storage root development.

Sweet potato grows on almost any soil but performs best on deep and moderately fertile soils. Preferred soils are sandy loams that are level or slightly sloped and well drained. Heavy clay soils produce irregularly sized and shaped storage roots. Light soils are preferred as in many countries, land is prepared by

hand. Ploughing and hoeing are necessary to turn over the soil, control weeds and produce the ridges or hills on which the stem cuttings will be planted. Mounds are common on flat land, whereas ridges along the slope contours are used on sloping land. The height of the mound or ridge is important as it ensures good drainage and makes harvesting easier. Sweet potato plants established on the flat are laborious to harvest. The heights and sizes of the mounds and ridges vary greatly, depending on location and the farmer. The ploughing of the land with a tractor or bullock plough and the practice of no-till using appropriate herbicides such as Glyphosate are various techniques commonly used throughout the tropics.

PROPAGULE SELECTION AND PREPARATION

In order to ensure availability of planting materials when the rains start, dry season conservation is necessary and this requires some planning, as well as nursery preparation. Nurseries are protected from wandering livestock, which are attracted by the green tops. Some nurseries can be established in the field, in a swampy area, under the shade of a tree where moisture is preserved, or in places where water is readily available. Swamp nurseries are raised beds made in swampy areas where the soil is moist throughout the dry season. A nursery bed is prepared with loose soil mixed with compost or organic manure to favour vegetative growth. Healthy storage roots from selected plants are buried in beds established away from other sweet potato crops. When the vines are long enough (30–50 cm), they are cut at their base and planted directly into the new field (Stathers *et al.*, 2005).

In temperate countries, where planting must be seasoned, farmers have to preserve their own or purchase seed stock before the yearly establishment of seedbeds. Selected storage roots are laid on the ground for sprouting. In North Carolina, the most practical bed type is the field bed covered with clear plastic. The seed stock is usually bedded by the end of March and cuttings are ready for planting by early May. Good drainage is necessary to prevent rotting of the bedded roots. The width of the beds is often decided by the characteristics of individual machinery. Narrow beds of 1 m width are preferred because they can be covered with soil mechanically and, in some cases, a plastic cover is also placed mechanically on the beds. Each bedded seed root can produce up to 15 plants and quite often as many as six sprouts may grow on the same root at the same time. The best plants are 20–30 cm long and have eight or more leaves. The plants are then held in an upright position in the shade for 24 h to promote rooting (Wilson and Averre, 1989).

In nurseries, rapid propagation is by mini vine cuttings having one to three nodes and the whole vine can be used, including young and older parts. Sharp knives and secateurs are used to produce these mini cuttings. They are then planted at very high density (10 × 20 cm), upright with at least one node in

the soil. They should be planted deep enough so that they do not become exposed after intense watering. The beds are watered twice a day to keep the surface moist and, after 3–4 weeks, the first cuttings are long enough to be harvested. The stem cuttings are cut 5 cm above the soil level, leaving some nodes in order to ensure subsequent axillary shoot growth from the buds and new stem cutting production 4 weeks after.

Healthy cuttings can be selected visually by identifying vigorous mother plants, free of pests and diseases. It is also possible to select cuttings only from those plants giving the highest yields (positive selection) and these cuttings are likely to come from plants free of viruses. Vine cuttings taken from young plants (2–3 months) tend to produce higher yields than vine cuttings taken from old plants (4–5 months). This difference occurs because old plants are putting most of their energy into their storage root development and their vines' tips are growing slowly. The vine tips of young plants grow vigorously and rapidly. If many cuttings are taken from a young plant, yield will be reduced, but if only one or two cuttings are taken from each young plant, there is no effect on final yield (Stathers *et al.*, 2005).

Stem cuttings from the tips of the vine are the best planting material. Cuttings from the middle and base can be used but they will produce lower yields, and cuttings from the base often carry weevil pupae, larvae and eggs. Vine cuttings can be kept for a maximum of 7 days but, in order to preserve the food reserves of the stem, most of the leaves should be removed, leaving very few at the tip. Once they have been tied in bundles, with their base wrapped in a wet sack or cloth, they should be kept in a cool, moist and shady place. During the storage period, roots will develop at their base and the cuttings will have to be transplanted with great care so that they are not damaged.

Cuttings infected with leaf scab disease (*E. batatas*) or with weevil (*Cylas* spp.) pupae and eggs can be treated. Soaking cuttings in fungicide can help control leaf scab (15 min in a solution of mancozeb 80% WP, 3 g/l water). If vine cuttings are infected with leaf scab, free tuber sprouts can be used to produce healthy ones. The recently harvested storage roots are soaked for 5–20 min in a solution comprising 20% household bleach containing sodium hypochlorite, to destroy the spores on the outside of the roots. These are then established in an isolated nursery so that leaf scab does not spread. For weevils, the cuttings are soaked in insecticide solution (diazinon EC, 3.5 ml/l water) just after cutting for at least 20 min so that the insecticide can penetrate the vine.

Long cuttings tend to produce higher yields than shorter ones. Generally, cuttings 30–40 cm long are recommended. In many countries, however, smallholders use cuttings of approximately 60 cm long. If the internodes are short, shorter cuttings can be used, while longer cuttings will be used for varieties with long internodes.

Good cuttings can be collected from an established crop. In fact, 'topping' increases yield and the starch content of the roots because it minimizes competition for photosynthates between shoots and roots. Storage roots will

attract the photosynthates, instead of them going to the shoots and buds. The limitation of vegetative growth enhances the starch concentration in the roots, but late topping, at 3–4 months, after the storage roots have started to develop, is recommended. The tops collected are approximately 30–40 cm long with about seven leaves. Topping can be carried out at bi-weekly intervals, depending on cultivars. It is appropriate to collect vegetative tops for livestock feed at this time.

PLANT DENSITIES AND CROP ESTABLISHMENT

Sweet potato is planted as soon as there is sufficient moisture in the soil to secure root development. Planting is done by inserting the basal portion of the stem cutting into the soil. The insertion is sometimes done with the aid of a small forked stick, but in most cases it is done by hand. It is made in such a way that the cuttings are almost horizontal, with their basal extremity located fairly shallow in the soil. If it lies too deep, root yield may be reduced. The aim is to establish almost two-thirds of the stem cutting length under the soil. In some countries, farmers produce a loop with the cuttings before burying them by hand to make sure that a great number of nodes are actually in contact with the soil. Once the cuttings are planted, they are usually hilled-up.

Cultivars with dispersing type canopies and trailing stems are planted at wider spacing than cultivars with gathering type canopies. In traditional cropping systems, dispersing type cultivars can be left after harvesting the main crop to allow farmers to harvest a secondary crop from the vines rooting in contact with the soil. These storage roots are usually of smaller dimensions but are a valued food source.

Usually, two cuttings are established per planting hole on ridges or per mound. In some traditional systems of PNG where big mounds are used, up to 12 cuttings can be planted on a mound. Farmers always experiment to discover the optimum number of vine cuttings per mound for their different varieties. Depending on the type of weeding planned, spacing can vary from 50 cm to 1 m apart on the line, and lines can be established either in pairs (50 cm between the lines) or singly (1 m between the lines).

Sweet potato genotypes are able to compensate rapidly for variations in planting density and, as plant population per hectare increases, the number of storage roots per plant decreases, the mean weight per root decreases and the final yield per plant tends to decrease as well. The average size of the sweet potatoes produced is controlled more by spacing within the row than by the row width. A uniform stand of evenly spaced plants is important and the plants on each side of an empty space will usually produce ‘jumbos’ at the same time that properly spaced plants are producing normal sizes. Replanted plants to replace missing ones will, however, produce much smaller than acceptable storage roots. Fast and complete establishment of the clonal population is therefore essential for the harvest of a homogenous crop.

The effect of two different planting densities (35 × 100 cm and 70 × 100 cm) on the growth of two cultivars showed differences in leaf area per m^2 (LA/m^2). The LA/m^2 increases progressively up to 100 DAP, and then declines slightly until 150 DAP. Increase in plant density reduces the number of branches per plant, indicating the high adaptation of branch formation in response to changes in plant spacing and density per unit of area. Some genotypes can produce higher total and marketable yields per ha under high planting density, while others will produce higher total and marketable yields per plant and per area under low planting density (Hamid and Sasaki, 2001).

In temperate countries, drag and precision type transplanters are used to plant the crop. Precision equipment spaces the plants uniformly but it is often difficult to adjust when planting is done in light, soft or dry soil. Workers on seats mounted on a tool bar independent of the planting mechanism can minimize this problem and adjust plant spacing. Some processing-type cultivars developed at the Kyushu National Agricultural Station in Japan can be grown from seed tubers and still produce reasonable yields. The direct planting of small seed tubers (25–100 g) reduces costs and labour requirements compared to the use of rooted vine cuttings. Seed tubers cut into halves are planted horizontally or vertically. Those planted with the epidermis upwards produce higher yield than those planted with the epidermis downwards. The planting machine is self-propelled, semi-automatic and consists of a feeder and planting beak mounted on a two-wheel drive chassis. The feeder has eight cups which revolve intermittently and seed tubers are fed into the cups by hand. The planting speed is restricted by human efficiency (Hosokawa *et al.*, 1998).

INTERCROPPING

Sweet potato is always grown in pure stands. However, when population pressure on land is high, gathering-type cultivars may be intercropped with beans and maize and, to a lesser extent, with cassava. Intercropping is easier to implement when sweet potato is planted on ridges, with the intercrop, for example, maize, established between the ridges. In this case, light seems to be more important than nutrients in its effects on fresh storage root yield (Moreno, 1982). In Uganda, double rows of maize and four rows of sweet potatoes result in good yields in both crops. Furthermore, this combination produces a considerable volume of biomass per year and, in some areas, it can be cultivated twice a year, depending on rainfall (Stathers *et al.*, 2005). When sweet potato is used as a cover crop to control weeds, dispersing types are preferred.

In humid climates, when the soil is moist, roots will grow from the nodes of the stem in contact with it. If this occurs too soon in the crop cycle, nutrients supplied to these roots will result in a reduction of marketable yield. This can be prevented by lifting the vines so that the roots growing on the stem nodes are

cut off. Intercropping sweet potatoes restricts hilling-up mounds or ridges by moving extra soil up on to the sides. This technique is valuable in reducing weevil damage when the soil is dry. It is particularly important to add more soil around the base of the plant to reduce the potential points of entry for weevils.

Maize and beans is the most widely cultivated crop combination among smallholders in Central America. The intercrop of sweet potato is considered as a valuable alternative to make better use of fertilizers and other inputs applied to common beans. Sweet potatoes planted at 0.4 × 0.5 m can be intercropped in alternate rows up to 30 DAP with beans (*Phaseolus vulgaris*) planted at 0.2 × 0.5 m. This crop combination is grown only once and the field is left fallow during the rest of the year. At 60 and 90 DAP, the foliage biomass of sweet potatoes is not significantly different from the biomass of a monocrop. A reduction in storage root numbers does occur and is thought to be due to competition for nutrients during the early stages of the development of the intercropped sweet potato. However, no significant difference in the intercepted radiation is recorded between the monocrop and the intercropped sweet potatoes (Moreno, 1982).

Cassava has a slow initial growth and covers the ground usually between 90 and 120 DAP. Some cassava genotypes also have their foliage reduced considerably by leaf loss after 200–240 DAP, and it is therefore possible to plant sweet potatoes in the interspaces before the harvest of cassava. Nutrients rather than light seem to be the main limiting factor for intercropping sweet potato and cassava. Erect types of cassava cultivars provide sufficient light and cultivars that have their leaf area reduced at the end of their cycle allow a sweet potato crop to be harvested simultaneously. The proper management of Mg and K is the most critical aspect of maintaining this system (Moreno, 1982).

In certain areas of the West Indies, sweet potato is intercropped during the establishment phase of perennial crops such as bananas.

WEEDING

Vines grow slowly during the initial phase, so it is essential to make sure that the land is weed free until the crop is well established. Weeds can cause remarkable losses because they compete with sweet potato for light, water and nutrients. They may also harbour pests and diseases. Proper cultivation, field selection, rotations and timely applications can reduce the volume of herbicides used. The easiest is to ensure that weeds and their root systems are removed or buried deeply during land preparation. Herbicides can also be applied most effectively before the stem cuttings are planted. Once plants are established, weeding should be conducted before they cover the soil and that is approximately before 30 DAP, depending on the spacing. Weeding frequency is reduced if the sweet potatoes are planted on ridges. Weeds are often left in the field between ridges or mounds as green mulch.

Some weeds may be controlled by the 'flush' control technique. After the field is prepared for planting, including pre-plant fertilization, sprinkle irrigation of the field promotes the germination of weed seeds near the soil surface. The field is then treated with a contact herbicide (i.e. gramoxone) to kill the initial growth. This may be repeated a second time. The sweet potatoes may then be planted after either 15 or 30 days, depending on the number of growths which were promoted to kill the germinating weeds. Fields should be kept weed-free during the first 4–8 weeks, after which the vines will cover the field completely. Weeds are also kept in check with cultivation performed by disc hillers during the hilling operation. A traditional practice is to dig ridges or mounds 2–3 weeks prior to planting, then to spray any weeds that emerge the day before planting vines. This ensures the control of perennial weeds for the first 6 weeks or so after planting.

The sweet potato crop, once established, requires little field management, apart from hilling-up weed control. Currently, weeds are minimized by hand weeding, inter-row cultivation and the application of paraquat (100 g a.i./ha) over the crop. Alternative herbicide treatments have been examined in New Zealand and it was observed that hand weeding produced the highest marketable yield (26.7 t/ha), significantly more than all other treatments, apart from acetochlor (2.4 kg a.i./ha), which produced 21.8 t/ha. Weed numbers were reduced significantly to 3.5% with acetochlor and to 16.2% with paraquat, compared to the unweeded plots. There was a strong negative relationship between early weed count and final total root yield (Lewthwaite and Triggs, 2000b). In most tropical countries, herbicides such as Roundup® (glyphosate) provide an easy and effective control of most weeds.

FERTILIZATION AND NUTRIENT DISORDERS

Sweet potato thrives best on sandy loam soils. Heavy clay soils often produce low yields and low quality storage roots of irregular shapes because their formation is hampered by the sticky soils. Light sandy soils can, however, favour weevil infestation when the soil is washed down by rains and the roots are exposed.

Repeated cultivation of sweet potatoes on the same land increases the population of pathogens. The aim of a rotation is to control these, to restore the organic matter and fertility level of the soil and to reduce soil erosion to a minimum. Most of the nutrients absorbed by sweet potatoes are removed from the field when the crop is harvested. Depending on the nutrient reserves and deficiencies of the soil, this removal may be incurred only once before the yields of the subsequent crops express nutrient deficiencies. Accurate identification of nutritional disorders is a first step. Deficiency correction might be possible using local resources and with improved practices, including the use of leguminous species in the rotation. For sweet potato, a comprehensive and illustrated

description of nutritional disorders occurring in the field is available (O'Sullivan *et al.*, 1997). If a deficiency has been diagnosed, the most practical way of confirming it is to observe the response to a fertilizer containing that nutrient. The adequate concentration ranges for sweet potato are shown in Table 12.1.

Cultivars may differ in their expression of visible symptoms of nutrient deficiencies. Visible symptoms often take the form of spectacular chlorosis due to reduction of the chlorophyll pigment in the leaves. Chlorosis can be interveinal when the tissues present a different colour than the lamina and when they are uniform. Chemical analysis of the plant tissues is used for assessing soil characteristics. The seventh and ninth youngest leaves are considered the most appropriate for this analysis. The blades are removed without the petiole and are dried between 60 and 70°C over 48 h (O'Sullivan *et al.*, 1997).

Nitrogen (N) deficiency can cause reduction in growth but is not easily recognized in the field. The symptoms are a uniform light green chlorosis of the leaves and a slow vegetative growth. Often, there is increased anthocyanin pigmentation of the young leaves, though P and S deficiencies also result in similar symptoms. In cultivars with young pigmented leaves, the symptom is a deepened purple colour. A critical concentration of 4% of N has been determined on the basis of vine growth in solution culture (Table 12.1) and it agrees closely with the critical concentration in field-grown plants. Soil N measurements are difficult to interpret. A rough indication is that a concentration below 0.1% (Kjeldahl method) is considered to be very low and concentrations ranging from 0.5 to 1.0% N as suitable for good growth.

Table 12.1. Critical nutrient concentrations for deficiency and toxicity.

Nutrient	Critical concentration for deficiency	Adequate range	Critical concentration for toxicity
Nitrogen (%)	4.0	4.2–5.0	
Phosphorus (%)	0.2	0.26–0.45	
Potassium (%)	2.6	2.8–6.0	
Calcium (%)	0.8	0.9–1.2	
Magnesium (%)	0.1	0.2–0.4	
Sulphur (%)	0.3	0.4–0.5	
Chlorine (%)	–	–	0.9–1.5
Iron (mg/kg)	33	45–80	
Boron (mg/kg)	40	50–200	220–350
Manganese (mg/kg)	19	26–500	1600
Zinc (mg/kg)	11	30–60	70–85
Copper (mg/kg)	4–5	5–14	15.5
Molybdenum (mg/kg)	0.2	0.5–7	

Source: O'Sullivan *et al.* (1997).

The recommendation for N fertilizers is between 30 and 90 kg N/ha. Nitrogen supply can be provided by growing a leguminous crop (groundnut or beans) in rotation with sweet potato if the residues remain in the field. Low rates of N increase yields but higher rates can cause a yield decline by stimulating an exuberant foliage. N supply has a strong influence on the distribution of DM, affecting root growth relative to top growth. But, cultivars vary greatly in the level of N they require. The response to N may be poor if deficiencies of other nutrients such as K are not corrected. Applications of N also increase the protein content of the storage roots, while sweet potato plants which are N deficient have a low protein concentration in their roots (Purcell *et al.*, 1982). Fallowing seems the safest way to obtain steady sweet potato yields; with extra inputs through inorganic fertilizer or poultry litter, storage root yields may be increased or decreased greatly if there is an excess of N (Hartemink *et al.*, 2001).

Phosphorus (P) deficiency can reduce growth by 50%. Low P is associated with a darker and bluish green colour of the foliage. On the older leaves, stunting may occur. The chlorotic area appears orange or red and necrotic lesions develop, spreading the necroses as irregular patches until the leaf lamina is entirely brown and dry. Some genotypes may exhibit a purple pigmentation on the upper surface of the youngest leaves, especially on their veins, symptoms similar to those of N deficiency. However, in the case of P deficiency, there is no general chlorosis of the plant (O'Sullivan *et al.*, 1997).

Phosphorus deficiency can be corrected easily by broadcast, side (band) or spot application of soluble P, such as triple superphosphate, ammonium phosphate or mixed fertilizers including N, P and K. Rock phosphate is efficient on acidic soils and cheap, but should be incorporated into the soil. On some P-fixing soils, very high rates (up to more than 100 kg P/ha) may be needed to correct the deficiency during the first year of application. The decomposition of organic matter can supply P to sweet potatoes and it has been shown that the response of the crop to organic matter is, in fact, the result of an increased P availability (Floyd *et al.*, 1988).

Potassium (K) deficiency is frequent and sweet potato has a high requirement for K as the storage root content is high. A crop of 20 t/ha removes approximately 100 kg K/ha, and much more if both foliage and roots are removed from the field. Potassium deficiency tends to have a greater effect than N and P deficiencies on root yield rather than on foliage growth. In the field, symptoms develop when bulking of the storage roots takes place 2–3 months after planting. The oldest leaves turn yellow, while the youngest ones appear normal. The yellow chlorosis of the marginal and interveinal zones of the oldest leaves develops into brown necrotic lesions, which spread rapidly to cover the lamina. Plants which are K deficient tend to produce small and thin storage roots of poor quality and, in orange-fleshed cultivars, the tubers have lowered carotene content. Potassium may be added, either as chemical fertilizers or in organic mulches and composts. An application of between

80 and 200 kg K/ha is generally recommended. Mulches are bulky and therefore more laborious to apply, but their efficiency may be higher (Floyd *et al.*, 1988). If sweet potatoes are planted on ridges, a split application of K just before planting and 30 DAP is often used.

In China, the fertilizer level that gives the highest yield is 300 kg K_2SO_4/ha. The yield increase as a result of K application is due mainly to the increase in the root/top ratio, which leads to a greater amount of photosynthate translocation into the storage roots, producing their increase in size and weight. But, most of the quality parameters also improve with K application: root DM (%), Brix (%), carotene content and anthocyanin content. Protein levels, however, decrease with an increase in K level, though the degree of reduction varies with genotype (George *et al.*, 2002).

Magnesium (Mg) deficiency can be the consequence of either a low content of Mg in the soil or an oversupply of K and Ca, which inhibit the crop's Mg uptake (O'Sullivan *et al.*, 1997). Deficient plants present a very pale overall colour. The chlorosis appears first on the older leaves and then spreads to the younger ones and may be accompanied by curling of the leaf margins and a drooping of the lamina. The chlorosis turns into a complete yellowing and necrosis of the oldest leaves before browning. The vines of Mg-deficient plants are thin and twining, with overlong internodes. It is possible to correct Mg deficiency by incorporating 20–50 kg Mg/ha in the form of lime or magnesium oxide into acid soils or by applying magnesium sulfate (10–40 kg Mg/ha). The latter is often preferred for correcting the deficiency in an already established crop. Magnesium sulfate can also be applied as a foliar spray if the foliage is already covering the ground.

Calcium (Ca) deficiency symptoms are the development of necrotic tissues on young leaves. This deficiency inhibits root growth and root tips may die back. Newly formed leaves are affected and, finally, the apex can die. The addition of lime (40% Ca) provides the needed Ca and raises the soil pH. Agricultural lime should be applied to soils with adequate moisture and incorporated to a depth of 15 cm with a disc or rototiller 4–8 weeks before planting. Single and triple superphosphate contain 23% and 16% of Ca, respectively, and are good sources (O'Sullivan *et al.*, 1997).

Sweet potato responds reasonably well to fertilizers. Applications that are made above the required levels may result in excessive foliage growth at the expense of storage root growth, nutrient leaching into aquifers and an undesirable accumulation of salts in the soil. Sweet potato is grown extensively on highly leached acid soils and is adapted to soils of low to moderate fertility. On these soils, poor yields are most likely to be due to aluminium (Al) toxicity or, to a lesser extent, calcium (Ca) deficiency. Manganese toxicity or deficiencies in magnesium, phosphorus or molybdenum are other potential limiting factors, but these elements play a less important role than do Al or Ca (Lla'ava, 2001).

Nutrient deficiencies in acid soils are a major problem and these soils occupy approximately 40–60% of the total land area of the tropics. Preliminary

experiments have been conducted to identify sweet potato cultivars with a tolerance to acid soils, low magnesium availability and low phosphorus availability, respectively. There is considerable genetic variation in acid soil tolerance and it is unrelated to yield potential at the experiment site (O'Sullivan *et al.*, 2001).

HARVESTING

Sweet potato roots are ready for harvest between 3 and 8 months after planting, much sooner than other root crops. Most cultivars are harvested between 4 and 5 months after planting.

The plant does not mature and will continue to grow as long as it has green leaves. The storage roots may reach their regeneration phase and initiate the growth of new shoots if nothing is done. The time to harvest can be assessed by sampling and digging a couple of plants. Cultivars differ in the length of the growing season required to produce optimum yields. Plant spacing also has an effect: the closer the spacing, the longer it takes for the sweet potato to reach the desired size. Within the tropics, most varieties are harvested as soon as the roots reach marketable size. Unmarketable 'jumbos' may continue their development if the plants are left in the field longer than desirable, but they usually crack and have a poor appearance. Sweet potato weevil outbreaks or rat damage may also increase crop losses if plants are left in the field. If the crop is harvested too late, the storage roots may become fibrous.

In many countries, sweet potato is grown mainly for home consumption and staggered harvesting is the usual practice. A few large roots are harvested and taken home for cooking, while the others are left on the plants to be dug later. Cracks appearing at the surface of the mound or on the ridges are often an indication that there is a sizeable root just beneath. The soil is heaped up over the remaining roots to allow them to continue their development; the heaping of earth will also protect them from light-induced greening and will reduce weevil access. Harvesting is usually done with great care to avoid injuring the roots. Farmers do not harvest too much at once in order to avoid postharvest losses. Harvesting a large field at once is done only if the crop is destined for the market. The duration of piecemeal harvest depends on environment and location and may be up to 9 months, depending on the cultivar. When sweet potatoes are uprooted on sunny days, they must be taken out of the fields within 2–3 h to avoid sunburning.

In mechanized cropping systems, a rotary or flail-type mower is used first to mow the vines at their base. The vines are then either removed or rolled into rows before harvesting. The roots are spaded out by hand or ploughed out with a double mouldboard plough, or with a modified potato harvester. The potato digger with its rod conveyor chain does an excellent job of lifting the roots to the surface but can cause considerable skinning in light, dry soils because the soil

sifts through the conveyor very rapidly. In the USA, some potato diggers have been adapted to separate the vines from the roots, which are transferred to bulk bins and considerable skinning may also occur in this case. Roots fall to the ground at the end of the digger, where they are selected, placed in crates and transported to the packing shed, where they are washed. Oversized ones, or those damaged by weevils, nematodes, disease, or machinery are removed. Fleshy root damage is minimized when harvesting is done in dry soil. If the harvest operation is conducted in wet soil, the roots must be dried naturally in a shaded area, after which the dry soil is removed by gently rubbing with the hands (Edmond and Ammerman, 1971).

Sweet potatoes are then separated into different grades. Ideally, workers should have gloves to prevent damage from fingernail nicks. Each worker can have a sizing board to help grade roots for length and diameter. Packing minimizes deterioration of the roots within the container and cushions against impact and compression. During packing in the field, great care is taken to minimize damage that could result from bruises due to stacking or overfilling containers, or vibration bruises due to the roots moving against each other. Packages should be neither loose nor overfilled and should provide good aeration. Some physical damage is likely to occur with different transportation methods, but care should be taken to ensure quality.

In temperate countries, where most of the harvest will be stored for months, curing is an important operation. The purpose of curing is to allow rapid healing of cuts, bruises and skinned areas on storage roots, thereby preventing future infections. The rapid healing of wounds is dependent on maintaining the correct temperature, high relative humidity and aeration. Curing roots at 30°C and 80–90% humidity during 4–7 days promotes the rapid formation of toughened periderm. However, these curing conditions also favour respiratory activity and, consequently, DM loss. Therefore, curing should not be extended longer than the minimum necessary. Just after curing, the roots should be stored at 15–16°C and 80–90% of relative humidity.

13

Pests and Diseases

Sweet potatoes are often damaged, and sometimes destroyed, by various pests and diseases, which are major limiting factors in their production. The most important diseases are caused by root pathogens capable of spreading systemically through the plant and, generally, it is not possible to restore the health of an infested plant. Planting materials, whether roots or stems, provide a perfect vehicle for pathogens and the most effective control is prevention. Selection of healthy planting material is therefore important and it should be inspected thoroughly.

PESTS

Different pests feed and damage different parts of the sweet potato and have variable effects on final yields (Table 13.1).

Sweet potato weevils (SPW) are the most important pests in the world and different species prevail in different geographic areas. The South American species, *Euscepes postfasciatus* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae), occurs in South America and a few other places. The Asian species, *Cylas formicarius* (Coleoptera: Brentidae) is now extensively pantropical. The African species, *C. puncticollis* and *C. brunneus*, are restricted to sub-Saharan Africa. The sweet potato weevils are beetles with a four-stage life cycle (egg, larva, pupa and adult) and the duration of each stage is temperature dependent, the warmer the faster.

The female weevil lays eggs in holes that she has chewed in the vines or easily accessible roots. The storage root is the preferred site for laying eggs but, at the beginning of the growth cycle when the plants have not yet developed their storage roots, adults feeds on the foliage and lay eggs on the vines. The larvae then pupate in the stem. Eggs hatch after 3–7 days and the larvae, which are curved and white, tunnel through the vine and root while feeding over 10–20 days before pupating. The development of the weevil, from the egg to the adult, takes approximately 30 days. When the vines are attacked by a large number of larvae, they become thickened and cracked. The damage can

Table 13.1. Major pests of the sweet potato.

Species	Common names	Damage		
		Roots	Stems	Foliage
Cylas formicarius	Sweet potato weevil (SPW)	x	x	
C. brunneus	SPW	x	x	
C. puncticollis	SPW	x	x	
Euscepes postfasciatus	SPW	x	x	
Blosyrus spp.	Rough SPW	x	x	
Alcidodes dentipes	Striped SPW	x	x	
A. erroneus	Striped SPW	x	x	
Omphisa anastomasalis	Vine borer		x	x
Diabrotica spp.				x
Brachmia spp.				x
Ochyrotica fasciata				x
Cosmopterix spp.				x
Bemisia tabaci	Sweet potato whitefly			x
Conoderes amplicollis	Gulf wireworm		x	
Chaetocnema confinis	Fleabeetles			x
Acraea acerata	Sweet potato butterfly			x
Agrius convolvuli	Sweet potato hornworm			x

reduce the size and number of storage roots and the plants may die as a result of stem damage. Low levels of infestation reduce storage root quality as the plants produce a bitter toxin, a terpenoid, in response to *Cylas* spp. feeding. Weevils are more dangerous in dry conditions because the adults can reach the roots through the cracks in the soil. New fields are likely to be infested through plant material, residues from preceding crops, migrating weevils from fields nearby or alternative host plants (i.e. *I. aquatica*, *I. indica* and *I. pes-caprae*).

Chemical control is not highly effective because weevils are protected by their development within roots and stems. In some countries, stem cuttings are dipped in pesticides before planting and this treatment can delay infestation for several months, but pesticides are expensive and toxic. The vines are dipped in an insecticide with 0.01–0.05% active ingredients for at least 30 min and most organophosphorus or carbamate insecticides (acephate, carbaryl; dimetheoate) or all insecticides listed for post-planting are suitable. Once the plants are established, it is possible to treat them with fenthion (0.1% a.i.) using a knapsack sprayer, starting 2 WAP and repeating the application every couple of weeks until 2 weeks from harvest (Macfarlane and Jackson, 1989).

Despite intensive efforts to develop resistant cultivars, little has been achieved so far and attention is now turning to escaping weevil damage through deeper formation of storage roots and early maturing varieties which are less exposed to weevil infestation. Because weevils digest their food with the help of certain proteinases, it may be possible to block their digestion by

incorporating proteinase-inhibitor genes into the sweet potato genome using transformation and regeneration protocols.

The management of *C. formicarius* focuses on using non-infested stem cuttings as planting material and increasing the action of enemies, such as predatory ants, and the fungus *Beauvaria bassiana*, also known as *Bacillus bassiana*, which lives in the soil and can infect and kill adults.

The SWP female produces sexual pheromones which attract males for mating. Sex pheromones of *C. formicarius* have been synthesized and are produced commercially in Asian countries as baits for traps that are placed in the fields above the foliage and covered to protect them from the sun and rain. The males are attracted, fall into the trap and are collected easily and removed from the field. In Taiwan, the use of pheromone-baited traps is estimated to save one to three applications of insecticide. A successful formulation for a sex pheromone lure has been developed and experimental results indicate that the use of pheromone-baited traps placed at a density of 4 traps/0.1 ha reduces damage to storage roots by 57–65%. Use of such traps in combination with the pre-planting application of chlorpyrifos granules at 2.25 kg a.i./ha reduces damage to roots by 62–75%. The effect is comparable with two applications of chlorpyrifos (80–85%), one applied just before planting and the other when hilling-up (Hwang, 2000).

In Cuba and the Dominican Republic it has been demonstrated that the use of numerous traps is efficient in reducing weevil populations. If no traps are used, males attracted to a lure of sex pheromones are killed by spraying insecticides or a suspension of the fungus *B. bassiana*. This fungus plays an important role in controlling weevils and farmers spray the fungus spore suspension around pheromone traps instead of using insecticides. Although it is quite clear that soil moisture is important for fungus survival, researchers still need to study the conditions that favour the effectiveness of the fungus in the field.

In the highlands of PNG, where sweet potato is the main staple crop, experiments were carried out to evaluate the effect of inorganic fertilizer inputs and fallow vegetation on the incidence of sweet potato weevil, *C. formicarius*, damage under natural levels of infestation. N and P applications and fallow vegetation of *Imperata cylindrica*, *Piper aduncum* or *Gliricidia sepium* had no significant effect on weevil incidence and damage over two consecutive seasons (Powell *et al.*, 2001).

It has been observed that the African weevil (*C. puncticollis*) is having difficulties feeding on cultivars with white-fleshed roots and skins which are elongated and dispersed in formation. If the roots are located deep under the soil surface and are rich in DM, damage is greatly diminished (Alghali and Munde, 2001). The most effective way to control this weevil is removal and destruction of infested vines and root residues, removal of volunteer plants and alternative hosts and crop rotation with non-host species. These measures have to be combined with several others during cultivation, such as hilling-up the plants to prevent soil cracks and applying sufficient irrigation.

A light emitting diode (LED) colour ray has been used recently to determine the most effective light colour for capturing *E. postfasciatus*. Preference tests were conducted using four colours of LED ray (blue, green, yellow and red) at fixed light quanta in the laboratory. The weevils were found to prefer the green LED and subsequently the effectiveness of a green LED trap was compared with that of a sweet potato root trap in a field. The green LED trap was shown to be useful for monitoring the number of weevils (Nakamoto and Kuba, 2004). It is, however, too soon to conclude if this system will be adopted widely by smallholders and if it will lead to improved practical results.

Table 13.2 summarizes some cultural practices for weevil control.

The rough sweet potato weevil (*Blosyrus* spp.) can be a serious pest in East Africa. The larvae damage roots by digging grooves in the skin surface. This damage resembles those caused by millipedes or white grubs and can reduce market value drastically. Furthermore, the deep peeling necessary to remove the damage can result in yield losses but, unlike damage caused by *Cylas* spp., it seems that no terpenoids are produced as a result of the attack. The use of clean material, sanitation, timely planting and crop rotation contribute to its control (Stathers *et al.*, 2005).

The striped sweet potato weevils (*Alcidodes dentipes* and *A. erroneus*) are about 1.5 cm long and have remarkable stripes along their wings. Their larvae

Table 13.2. Cultural practices for weevil control.

Cultural practices	Geographic areas where used	Results
Hilling-up	East Africa, Taiwan, Philippines, Indonesia, Vietnam, India, Cuba, South America	Works well but should be implemented before the dry season and before the adults reach the roots and lay their eggs.
Early harvesting	East Africa, Vietnam, Cuba, Philippines, South America	Harvesting 2 weeks earlier can reduce losses from more than 30% to less than 5%.
Mulching	East Africa, Taiwan, India, South America	Use of rice straw mulches can reduce weevil damage. The soil surface should be covered soon after planting and the cover maintained until harvest.
Intercropping	Philippines, India	More than 100 intercrops have been tested and the best results were obtained with coriander.
Routine irrigation	Philippines, Taiwan, America, Vietnam, Indonesia	Prevents soil cracking and is therefore effective for farmers with reliable water supply.
Field sanitation	Taiwan, Philippines	Is efficient when practised in a large ecosystem area or community. Infested roots must be buried deep in the ground (> 15 cm).
Flooding the field	Indonesia	Flooding of the field for more than 48 h can kill the larvae present in the roots.

Source: Stathers *et al.* (2005).

are very similar to the SPW larvae when they are young but are much larger when they age. They feed inside the vines and, after pupation, the adults eat their way out. The larvae bore into the stems and sometimes into the storage roots. Cultural practices similar to those used for *Cylas* spp. are effective (Stathers *et al.*, 2005).

Other Coleoptera species, including larvae of *Diabrotica* spp. (Coleoptera: Chrysomelidae), cause extensive damage in the form of shallow holes on the outside of the storage root and some cause mining on the inside. The damaged roots have dark stained tunnels, are not marketable and are unfit for consumption or use as planting material. A bioassay technique has been developed to evaluate sweet potato germplasm by using adults of the banded cucumber beetle (*D. balteata*) and spotted cucumber beetle (*D. undecimpunctata howardi*). A single beetle is placed on a piece of sweet potato storage root skin, which is embedded periderm side up in a Petri dish. The longevity of the beetles ranges from 12 days on a resistant cultivar to 123 days on a susceptible cultivar. This bioassay appears consistent with field results, indicating that it could be useful for evaluating resistance to *Diabrotica* spp. in sweet potato genotypes (Jackson and Bohac, 2007).

The vine borer, *Omphisa anastomasalis*, is the second most important insect pest after the sweet potato weevils. The larvae of vine borers feed inside the vines. Heavy vine borer feeding results in reduced root growth by up to 50%. The larval stages normally last 30–35 days and the larvae begin to bore down the vines as soon as they hatch. They usually pupate in the vine for a period of 2 weeks. Insecticide sprays are ineffective because the borers are inside the stems. Possible controls include hilling-up and the removal of alternate weedy *Ipomoea* hosts.

Lepidoptera species have been identified as foliar pests. Their larvae feed on the foliage, causing irregular-shaped cavities. *Brachmia* sp. (Gelechiidae), *Ochyrotica fasciata* (Pterophoridae) and *Cosmopterix* sp. (Cosmopterizidae) are responsible for severe damage from larval feeding, leading to complete defoliation.

The sweet potato whitefly, *Bemisia tabaci*, can be controlled using pyriproxyfen, but resistance to it may occur rapidly. Some results suggest that growers may be able to prolong the usefulness of pyriproxyfen by applying lower toxin concentrations (Crowder *et al.*, 2006).

The gulf wireworm (*Conoderes amplicollis*) is a yellow worm about 3 cm long, which feeds on the fleshy sweet potato roots. The larvae make small, irregular, ragged holes in the skin and burrow less than 0.5 cm into the fleshy roots. Their feeding gives the roots an unmarketable appearance and allows the entry and spread of pathogens. Damage is normally greater under dry conditions. Wireworms may remain in the field for several years since the larvae may take over a year to mature to adults. Wireworms are controlled with insecticides.

Chaetocnema confinis, or fleabeetle, is a black beetle, 0.1–0.2 cm long, which jumps in all directions when disturbed. The fleabeetle larvae feed on

roots, leaving shallow tunnels below the periderm. The small tunnels enlarge as the storage roots grow and cracks develop. The fleabeetles appear to move frequently from one feeding area to another and weeds may accentuate infestations.

The sweet potato butterfly (*Acraea acerata*) is found in all production areas of East Africa. The larvae eat the entire leaf, except for the midribs, and a severe attack may result in complete defoliation. Outbreaks are sporadic and usually occur at the beginning of the dry season. Consequently, severe attacks can be avoided by early planting and harvesting.

The sweet potato hornworm (*Agrius convolvuli*) can cause heavy defoliation, which usually takes place when the crop is still young. A single larva can defoliate a plant on its own and a large population can defoliate a complete field overnight. The larvae feed on the leaf blades, producing irregular holes. Turning over the soil exposes the pupae to predators. Manual removal of small larvae can prevent the increase of a large population in small plots (Stathers *et al.*, 2005).

NEMATODES

Nematodes infect sweet potato plants by entering the roots and feeding on tissues. They lay eggs and when the juveniles hatch, they find a feeding site on fresh tissues. Root-knot nematodes represent a significant problem in sweet potato, causing reduction in yield and quality of the storage roots. When susceptible cultivars are infested with nematodes, they wilt, appear stunted and their infested fleshy roots crack and show growth deformities. Storage roots of root-knot nematode-infested plants also develop galls. Several genera of nematodes have been associated with sweet potato in the field, but only root-knot nematodes (*Meloidogyne* spp.) and reniform nematodes (*Rotylenchulus* spp.) can cause significant damage.

Several *Meloidogyne* species infest sweet potato, including *M. arenaria*, *M. hapla*, *M. incognita* and *M. javanica* (Clark and Moyer, 1988). Root-knot nematodes are distributed widely and reduce both yield and quality of storage roots. The diagnostic symptom is a round, spindle-shaped swelling on roots. Such galls occur on the infected fibrous roots and are often about 1–2 mm in diameter, but their size varies significantly between cultivars and sometimes they are too small to be observed visually. Additional symptoms are a reduction of vine growth, yellowing, wilting of foliage and abnormal production of flowers, indicating stress. Root-knot nematode damage can be severe in soils and under conditions of moderate drought. If the soil moisture is maintained at an adequate level during the growing season, the nematodes may have less effect on crop yield.

Infected propagating material is an important source of inoculum. These nematode populations are maximal 12–16 WAP. Control measures include crop

rotation based on the use of non-host species to break the reproduction cycle. Clean or weed fallow prevent feeding. The use of resistant cover crops, for example green panic (*P. maximum* var. *trichoglume*) or siratro (*Phaseolus artropurpureus*), is efficient. The selection of nematode-free propagating material is essential in reducing the population. Nematicide treatment in beds or nurseries can be effective. Several techniques are reliable, including fumigation of the soil with dichloropropene-dichloropropane or methyl bromide, incorporation into the soil of nematicides such as ethoprop or fenamiphos, and the use of systemic nematicides such as oxamyl. Carbofuran, a granular systemic nematicide, can be used before or at planting or in established crops, but is expensive for large fields.

There is significant genetic variation within the species *M. incognita*, and some populations can reproduce on cultivars known to be resistant. There is some evidence indicating that resistant cultivars ultimately may select more resistant pathotypes. Virulence of *M. incognita* populations varies, depending on the sweet potato genotype. Multiple factors might be responsible for conferring virulence in nematodes and multiple genes could be involved in the resistance to root-knot nematodes; the final outcome of root-knot nematode resistance in sweet potato depends on the specific interaction of these two factors. This would help standardize the evaluation of resistance to root-knot nematodes in breeding programmes and possibly identify reliable sources of resistance to numerous pathotypes of *Meloidogyne* spp. (Cervantes Flores, 2000).

Reniform nematodes primarily are tropical and subtropical and have drastic effects on sweet potato yields, but the symptoms are not very distinctive. The only reliable method of detecting these nematodes is to observe the presence of the nematode itself. It produces egg masses on the roots, but these are small and hardly visible. Juveniles are present in the soil surrounding the infected plant and their population density can reach as high as 100,000 individuals/500 cm^3 soil. The nematodes infest the root system at any stage, but do not produce spectacular galls or other remarkable symptoms. Late in the growing season, the fibrous roots may become necrotic. The secondary effects resulting from this necrosis are stunting of the vines, yellowing of the foliage and wilting. The storage roots are severely cracked and distorted, even though the nematode itself has not been found in the storage roots.

Control of reniform nematodes is much more difficult than for root-knot nematodes. Fields with severe infestation should be avoided. The use of a fallow period could be useful in reducing the population but its length is critical since reniform nematodes are able to survive many adversities. Hot water treatment is laborious and has not been adopted by farmers because it tends to reduce planting material vigour. The treatment of the soil with nematicides is more important than for root-knot nematodes as there are fewer alternative measures. These treatments are effective in reducing the population level by 80–90%, but they are expensive. Nematicides such as dichloropropene and methyl bromide are effective but can be applied economically to small fields only (Clark and Moyer, 1988).

Many other nematode species potentially can affect sweet potato but they have been poorly investigated. As the crop expands geographically, new nematode species are identified as pathogens. The stubby-root nematodes (*Paratrichodorus* spp.) have been identified in South Africa and the yam nematodes (*Pratylenchus* spp. and *S. bradys*) are affecting sweet potato in the yam belt of West Africa.

BACTERIA

There are four major diseases caused by bacteria and each has a very restricted geographic distribution.

Soil rot called 'pox' is caused by *Streptomyces ipomoea* and is very common in temperate areas of the USA and Japan. The disease can reduce yield significantly but does not develop further in storage. The symptoms include deformed roots, surface pits and scabby cavities, as well as black spots on the crevices. The lesions are normally smaller than 2 cm in size and usually less than 5 mm deep. Affected plants appear stunted and may die before the end of the growing season. Unfortunately, *S. ipomoea* is soilborne and can persist in the soil for years in the absence of sweet potato. The pathogen does not penetrate the periderm of healthy storage roots directly but enters the fibrous roots of the plant by penetrating the wall of the epidermal cells. Three factors influence the extent of the disease development: soil pH, soil moisture and crop rotation. The fact that this disease is not a problem in the tropics might be because many tropical soils are acid. The development of the pathogen is favoured by dry soil. Soil rot is more severe if susceptible varieties are grown continuously on the same field. Control measures include the use of resistant cultivars and soil fumigation. This organism persists by feeding on organic matter residue in the soil and does not require sweet potato residues to survive. Rotations with other crops may reduce crop losses from soil rot in sweet potato. Because dry soil conditions favour disease growth, watering throughout the growing season is recommended (Clark and Moyer, 1988).

Bacterial stem and root rot caused by *E. chrysanthemi* may appear in the field, in nurseries and during storage. The pathogen is widespread in warm climates and it has an extensive host range. Foliar symptoms are black, necrotic, water-soaked lesions. Eventually, one or two branches of the plant will collapse, resulting in wilting of terminal leaves. Lesions in the root develop more commonly in storage, with a characteristic black margin surrounding the lesions. In the USA, the cultivar 'Beauregard' is very susceptible to root rot but 'Centennial' and 'Porto Rico' are less susceptible than others. This fungus penetrates sweet potato principally through wounds created by handling or insect feeding. Controls include minimizing wounding of the roots, selection of propagating material from disease-free fields and the use of cultivars with tolerance to the disease (Clark and Moyer, 1988).

Bacterial wilt of sweet potato is caused by at least four different bacteria: *Pseudomonas batatae*, *X. batatas*, *B. kwangsinensis* and *P. solanacearum*. The latter

bacteria are also an important pathogen of other crops. Bacterial wilt is a problem in China, where quarantine measures have been enforced to prevent the movement of materials from infested areas. The symptoms appear at any stage of the growth cycle. The base of the sprouts becomes water-soaked and turns yellowish to dark brown. Infected plants fail to develop roots. The use of resistant cultivars, the use of only disease-free storage roots for propagation in nurseries, crop rotation with a flooded crop such as paddy rice and establishing the crop during a cooler period of the year are necessary control measures.

'Sweet potato little leaf disease' is characterized by an excessive proliferation of young shoots and from leaf axils. Dwarfing of subsequent growth is caused by a mycoplasma-like organism (MLO). This disease was first reported from the Ryukyu Islands of Japan but now occurs throughout the Pacific Islands and is a serious constraint in Melanesia (PNG, the Solomon Islands and Vanuatu), where the crop is an important staple. Severe outbreaks of the disease occur with low rainfall and a distinct dry season. The first symptom is a yellowing of the veins and progressively smaller leaves are formed until they are about an eighth of the size of healthy leaves. The diseased stems are short and multibranched, with a gradual shortening of internodes, which gives the plant a bushy appearance. If the plants survive until harvest, only pencil-like storage roots will be found amid the mass of an extremely branched root system.

The sweet potato black-spotted leafhopper, *Orosius lotopharogum ryukyuensis*, spreads the disease in Melanesia. A similar leafhopper, *Nesophrosyne* (*Orosius*) *ryukyuensis*, is spreading the disease in Japan. The leafhoppers suck in the MLO when they feed on the sap of diseased plants and then transmit the MLO to healthy plants. Sweet potato planting material may be infected with MLO but appear healthy because there is a long time (approximately 50–100 days) between infection and the development of symptoms. The use of cuttings with latent infection is the commonest way of spreading the disease. In the Solomon Islands and PNG, yields are reduced by 30–90% when there are disease outbreaks, especially during the dry season. Any transfers of planting material from countries where the disease occurs should be as true seed or as certified *in vitro* plantlets (Jackson *et al.*, 1984).

The destruction of diseased plants (roguing) offers a reliable and economical method of controlling little leaf disease. Several wild species of *Ipomoea* are hosts of the MLO and they should also be rogued in areas where the disease is severe and near nurseries where certified healthy stocks are maintained. Although the use of insecticides has not been investigated thoroughly, they might be efficient in nurseries to maintain healthy planting material and any of the following are likely to control leafhoppers: malathion (50%, 2 ml/l), acephate (75%, 0.75 gm/l), dimethoate (30%, 3 ml/l) or carbaryl (80%, 3 gm/l). In order to be effective, chemical control should be combined with intensive roguing of infected plants. So far, no cultivars have shown any form of resistance to this serious disease. In severely affected areas, farmers are selecting volunteer plants on a regular basis and these spontaneous seedlings offer a good source of healthy planting material.

FUNGI

Fungi cause infected sweet potato plant parts to die and rot. They occur on the leaves, stems and storage roots and produce blackened areas which are often circular because of the spread of the infection. There are various symptoms, which include the appearance of spots on healthy tissue, powdery areas or filaments. Various pathogens are implicated and infect predominantly the roots or foliage (Table 13.3).

Leaf scab is the most serious foliar disease and is widespread throughout the humid tropics. It is caused by *E. batatas* (sometimes known under the name *Sphaceloma batatas*). The symptoms are prominent on the younger parts of the vine as distorted leaves and petioles with rusty brown lesions. The vines take on a stunted and 'scabby' appearance. Characteristic symptoms are small, scabby areas and small, oval lesions, especially along the midrib and veins

Table 13.3. Major fungal diseases affecting sweet potato.

		Damage		
Species	Common names	Stems	Foliage	Roots
Elsinoe batatas	Scab	x	x	
Alternaria spp.	Alternaria leaf spot	x	x	
Cercospora bataticola	Cercospora leaf spot		x	
C. ipomoeae	Cercospora leaf spot		x	
Phyllosticta batatas	Phyllosticta leaf blight		x	
Septoria bataticola	Septoria leaf spot		x	
Coleosporium ipomoeae	Red rust		x	
Albugo ipomoeae-pandurateae	White rust		x	
Phomopsis ipomoea-batatas	Phomopsis leaf spot		x	
Sclerotium rolfsii	Sclerotial blight, circular spot		x	x
Fuligo violacea	Slime moulds			x
Physarum plumbeum	Slime moulds			x
Ceratocystis fimbriata	Black rot			x
Sclerotium bataticola	Charcoal rot			x
Rhizopus nigricans	Bread mould			x
Plenodomus destruens	Foot rot			x
Fusarium oxysporum sp. *batatas*	Fusarium wilt or surface rot			x
Fusarium solani sp. *batatas*	Fusarium fibrous root rot			x
Pythium spp.	Mottle necrosis			x
Monilochaetes infuscans	Scurf			x
Helicobadisum mompa	Violet root rot			x

Source: Clark and Moyer (1988).

of leaves. Numerous pinpoint-sized spots occur between the veins. The lesions eventually become corky, resulting in shrinkage and complete leaf deformation. On the petioles, the spots are larger and more sunken than on the leaves. The scab spots on both leaves and petioles may join together to a size of 3 cm or more. Yield losses from leaf scab can reach up to 60% in Melanesia (PNG, the Solomon Islands and Vanuatu). This fungus does not infect the storage roots.

Scab can be spread by splashing rain and by using infected cuttings for planting. Production is affected seriously if the fungus infects the crop during the growing stage. Recommended controls include crop rotation, as the fungus survives in debris, the use of clean planting material (cuttings produced from storage roots treated with a 10–20% chlorox solution for 20 min) and the use of resistant or tolerant cultivars. Breeding cultivars for resistance to scab is very efficient and several programmes have produced resistant genotypes, especially in the South Pacific (Tonga, Vanuatu and PNG).

Several fungicides can be used to control the disease but should be recommended to commercial growers only. Just before planting, stem cuttings can be dipped for 15 min in a suspension of mancozeb 80% wettable powder (3 g/l). To control the spread of the disease, as soon as the symptoms appear, the foliage should be sprayed with mancozeb with a knapsack sprayer (3 kg in 1000 l water/ha) or with a motorized mist blower (3 kg in 250 l water/ha) and the treatment should be repeated every couple of weeks during the outbreak of the disease (Jackson and McKenzie, 1991). In Australia, however, nine fungicides have been tested for control of stem and foliage scab and it has been observed that 80 DAP, copper oxychloride and mancozeb were no longer controlling stem and foliage scab and a field rating confirmed that benomyl (400 g a.i./ha) provided a significant disease control better than any other treatment throughout the season (Ramsey *et al.*, 1988).

Alternaria leaf spot is a widespread disease, which involves several species of *Alternaria* and causes characteristic brown lesions on older leaves. Very humid and cool weather (e.g. on the plateaus of Ethiopia or Uganda) is favourable for lesion enlargement, whereas drier weather reduces its incidence. The airborne spores are spread through infected planting material, wind, splashing rain and water. During the rainy season, the increased humidity leads to a high level of infection. The death of vines can occur and the ground under affected vines is covered with blackened stem and leaf debris, which are sources of inoculum. Infected material should be removed and burnt. Control involves the use of resistant cultivars and many landraces are tolerant to this pathogen. Phomopsis leaf spot occurs in the same geographical region and causes irregularly shaped lesions on the upper and lower surfaces of the leaves. The same control measures apply to prevent the spread of this fungus (Clark and Moyer, 1988).

Cercospora leaf spot is present in the warm humid tropics of Asia, South America and Africa. The lesions caused by the fungi, *S. babaticola* and

C. ipomoeae, may be circular or angular and are delimited by veins. There are no reports of control measures but selection of tolerant cultivars is the most practical approach.

Phyllosticta leaf blight is present in the Caribbean region and in southern USA and is favoured by humid climates. Septoria leaf spot also occurs in the same region and this disease is similar to Phyllosticta leaf spot but with smaller lesions. Red rust (*Coleosporium ipomoeae*) and white rust (*Albugo ipomoeae-pandurateae*) are both of minor importance and most cultivars have high levels of resistance, although susceptible seedlings are often observed and discarded in breeding programmes.

Scletorial blight caused by *Scletorium rolfsii* may be very destructive and occurs almost exclusively in beds established for plant production and is therefore a problem in temperate countries only. The symptoms are a sudden wilting of the sprouts, followed by their death. Disease development stops when the plants are established in the field. The control measures include the selection of an area that has not grown sweet potatoes for at least 3 or 4 years. The use of a fungicide such as dichloronitroaniline can reduce the incidence of scletorial blight.

F. oxysporum sp. *batatas* can be a serious pest in sweet potato. Fields are commonly infected through contaminated cuttings. Once in the field, the fungus penetrates healthy plants through open wounds. Yield losses may be up to 50% and are more likely in warm weather and in dry soils. Plants normally die within a few days of visible symptoms appearing. The vascular tissues turn dark brown or black, especially close to the soil level. Leaves of susceptible plants may also turn yellow or brown. There are resistant or tolerant cultivars in the USA, including 'Jewel', 'Redgold', 'Nemagold' and 'Centennial'. In addition to resistance, other controls include crop rotation, selection of seed roots from disease-free fields and regular fungicide treatments (Clark and Moyer, 1988).

Slime moulds occasionally grow on sweet potatoes, especially in nursery beds. Their growth is superficial and they do not appear to damage the plants, but these moulds can cover large areas of leaves, petioles and vines. They usually occur as a result of overshading of the nursery beds and disappear with the return to full light.

Black rot is caused by the fungus *C. fimbriata* and the symptoms include leaf yellowing of young plants, underground sections of the stem showing black areas and circular, greyish lesions developing on the fleshy roots and causing a bitter taste. Affected vines are stunted and shrunken. Above- and below-ground lesions are localized and do not spread to the entire plant. The fungal spores reproduce rapidly and are spread easily by mites or weevils during storage or transport to market, resulting in severe postharvest losses. Black rot can penetrate the plant through wounds or injury caused by insects, nematodes or rodents. This pathogen persists in the soil for 1–2 years in affected roots that have been left after harvest. Recommended controls include the use of disease-free propagating material, fungicide treatment, 3- or 4-year

rotations, adequate curing of roots and the sanitization of any tool that may come in contact with the roots.

Charcoal rot causes some losses during storage in tropical and subtropical countries. As the disease progresses, the pathogen crosses the vascular cambium of the storage root and the pith rots progressively. Like most storage pathogens, *S. bataticola* requires a wound to enter the storage root. Proper curing after harvest reduces the incidence of this disease.

The fungus *Rhizopus nigricans* (*R. stolonifer*) causes an important postharvest disease. Affected roots develop a grey, fuzzy mould, turn soft and later turn dry and hard. The fungus enters the roots through wounds. Recommended measures include careful postharvest handling of the roots to prevent wounds, curing to heal any wounds and disinfection of the packing shed and equipment. Spores are carried by wind and flies.

Foot rot (*Plenodomus destruens*) and surface rot (*F. oxysporum* sp. *batatas*) are of minor significance overall but may be very destructive in some fields or storage facilities. Sanitization of harvested storage roots is an efficient control measure. Root rot (*F. solani* sp. *batatas*) causes decay of the fibrous feeder root system. It has been reported in China and resistant cultivars have been developed. Scurf caused by *Monilochaetes infuscans* is primarily a cosmetic damage as dark brown spots develop on the skin of the storage roots (Clark and Moyer, 1988).

Many other fungi species can affect sweet potato and a recent review conducted in PNG recorded not less than 73 different species of pathogens, from *Alternaria* spp. to *Verticilium* spp. In this country, as elsewhere, there has been very little research on these important diseases and while the distribution of most of them appears to be widespread and increasing, their impact on cultivation is sporadic and location-specific. The importance of these fungal diseases depends on cropping systems and the final use of the crop. Cultural techniques are diverse and have a great influence on disease development and spread. In the future, it is likely that intensive cultivation of sweet potato, land shortage, increasing population pressure and improved transportation will contribute to an increase in fungal disease spread and severity (Kokoa, 2001).

VIRUSES

A recent survey conducted throughout the developing countries to assess the research needs identified as priorities by local scientists revealed that the control of viruses through varietal resistance, quality planting material and crop management was ranked first (Fuglie, 2007).

Viruses affecting sweet potato can be perpetuated and transmitted between cropping cycles by the stem cuttings used as planting material. These viruses are transmitted from one plant to another by sap-sucking insects such as aphids and whiteflies. The sweet potato feathery mottle virus (SPFMV) and the related sweet potato virus 2 (SPV2) are transmitted mostly by aphids. The

sweet potato virus G (SPVG) and the sweet potato mild virus (SPMV) are transmitted mostly by whiteflies, and especially by *B. tabaci*. These viruses may cause only mild symptoms but it has been observed that symptomless plants may still have a considerable reduction in yield.

The sweet potato feathery mottle virus (SPFMV), which causes 'internal cork', is found in many countries and many different strains have been identified. The symptoms are influenced by genotype, environment and the strain involved. The symptoms are mainly on older leaves and consist of the classic chlorotic and feather patterns associated with the leaf midrib. The virus also causes root necrosis and cross-sections of affected storage roots show dark brown, cork-like areas in the flesh. Cultivars have been developed in the USA and have shown high tolerance to 'internal cork'. For control, it is necessary to use stem cuttings from disease-free fields (Clark and Moyer, 1988).

The sweet potato chlorotic stunt virus (SPCSV, a potyvirus) can cause some dwarfing of the plants and purpling or yellowing of the leaves. When the SPCSV (a crinivirus) and the SPFMV both infect a plant, they interact synergistically to cause the sweet potato virus disease (SPVD), a serious constraint to food productivity and security in East Africa. The symptoms include stunting of the plant and small malformed leaves with chlorotic mottle or vein clearing. Plants affected by SPVD usually produce small storage roots and a severe reduction in yield. To control spread, it is necessary to make sure that cuttings are collected from healthy plants and to remove diseased plants as soon as they appear (Stathers *et al.*, 2005).

The most convenient means of controlling SPVD is to plant cultivars which have resistance to virus diseases. The genetic basis of the resistance to these viruses has been investigated in Uganda and Peru. Molecular marker (AFLP and RAPD) studies yielded two genetic markers associated with resistance to SPCSV and SPFMV. It is thought that in the presence of both of these viruses, additional genes mediate oligogenic or multigenic horizontal effects in the sweet potato progenies and breeders are now integrating this information in their schemes combining different sources of resistance (Mwanga *et al.*, 2002).

SPVD occurs at all localities around Lake Victoria, in Uganda and Tanzania. All the fields are planted with local cultivars and the most important control practices are the planting of cuttings derived from only symptomless parents and the destruction of diseased plants. SPVD-resistant cultivars seem to be available but are perceived by farmers as having poor and late yields. Farmers observe, however, that their greatest need is the availability of new genotypes. Most farmers do not know sweet potato seeds or seedlings and those who do, unfortunately ignore them. The neglect of seedlings by these farmers is likely to hinder the development of more acceptable, SPVD-resistant cultivars and is probably contributing to the establishment of SPVD as a long-term disease problem (Gibson *et al.*, 1986). In Melanesian countries, on the other hand, farmers traditionally adopt volunteer plants resulting from the spontaneous germination of the numerous seeds produced in plots where different varieties

are associated and it is likely that this approach has a positive impact on the health status of their plants.

Other viruses affect sweet potato in East Africa. The most prevalent viruses are SPFMV, sweet potato mild mottle virus (SPMMV), SPCSV and sweet potato chlorotic fleck virus (SPCFV). There is limited genetic variability among East African isolates for SPFMV and SPCSV but high variability for SPMMV. Co-infections of SPCSV with SPFMV and/or SPMMV have been found to be responsible for over 90% of field diseased plants, showing that these three viruses are the most important viruses. Severe symptoms including chlorosis, wrinkling and leaf strapping caused by the combined infection of SPMMV and SPCSV are observed. These symptoms can be differentiated from those caused by SPVD, characterized by a severe stunting of the plant, distortion and either a chlorotic mottle or vein clearing of the leaves.

The name sweet potato severe mosaic disease (SPSMD), has been proposed for the disease combining SPMMV and SPCSV infections. A comparative analysis of the interaction between the phloem-limited SPCSV and either SPFMV or SPMMV reveals more severe symptoms and higher root yield reduction as compared to singly infected plants. The immunohistochemical localization of SPMMV suggests that it could be exploiting mesophyll and epidermal cells and that there are interactions between SPFMV and SPMMV. These findings show the role of SPCSV in increasing the virulence of SPFMV and SPMMV. Efforts to control SPCSV seem to be the next step towards management strategies for sweet potato viral diseases in East Africa (Mukasa, 2004).

In Australia, sweet potato virus Y (SPVY; synonymous with SPV-2) was found to co-infect sweet potatoes with strains of SPFMV. Five SPVY and SPFMV isolates were sequence-characterized and compared with isolates from Asia, Africa, Europe and North America. Phylogenetic analysis showed that Australian SPVY isolates formed a separate clade closest to the North American isolates (Tairo, 2006).

In the future, it might be possible to test material in nurseries routinely before using it for propagation. Real-time PCR has been shown to be a more sensitive and specific detection method for these viruses compared to conventional PCR or ELISA assays (Kokkinos, 2006).

For smallholders who cannot benefit from a certified planting material supply system, the capture of seedlings is an efficient way of accessing clean propagules.

INTEGRATED PEST AND DISEASE MANAGEMENT

A successful integrated pest management (IPM) programme has been conducted in Cuba. Sweet potato is an important staple food but the potential to increase production is limited by damage from the sweet potato weevil, which causes up to 45% yield reduction. Farmers faced losses of 40–50% of

total yield and used to spray their fields 10–12 times a season. With the elimination of subsidized pesticides, CIP and INIVIT, the national institute, have implemented an IPM strategy involving the use of pheromone traps to eliminate male weevils. The naturally occurring insect-killing fungus, *Beauveria bassiana*, has also proved very effective against the larvae, pupae and weevil adults. A smallholder-level industry for producing the fungus has been established and this effective low-cost technology has been adopted by farmers. The use of ants against weevils is another component of the IPM strategy adopted in Cuba. Two species of predatory ants, *Pheidole megacephala* and *Tetramorium guineense*, are common inhabitants of banana plantations. CIP and INIVIT have devised a simple system using rolled banana leaves to transport the ants from their natural reservoir to the sweet potato fields, where they prey on weevils. It has been shown that setting up colonies in the field 30 DAP can keep weevil infestations at low levels (3–5%) (Lagnaoui *et al.*, 2000).

In the Dominican Republic, estimates made in 1991 indicated average yield losses of 39% from weevil infestation and a 40% decrease in gross income for farmers. CIP's pilot project in the Dominican Republic involves crop rotation, deep ploughing, timely weeding and the use of sex pheromone traps. For farmers, pheromone traps are an attractive option because of their effectiveness and low cost. Initial acceptance of these traps was successful and by 1993, 15% of all fields in the Dominican Republic were protected by the traps. On average, farmers who practised IPM produced higher yields. Without the traps, crop yield reduction was approximately 1.8 t/ha and with the pheromones, the damage was 0.7 t/ha.

In Okinawa, Japan, *E. postfasciatus* and *C. formicarius* are important constraints. Four strains of *B. bassiana* were isolated from farmers' fields and one of them was found to infect the two SPW species aggressively. A sex pheromone trap was designed, containing a small bottle with 0.5 g fungus and males were attracted, infected and escaped by themselves. Later, it was observed that females were infected while mating. Overall, the advantages of this IPM system were a high contamination rate at low cost (Yasuda, 1998).

14

Postharvest Quality and Marketing

CHEMICAL COMPOSITION

All parts of the sweet potato plant can be utilized as valuable foods and they contain a variety of chemical compounds. The leaves are high in proteins and rich in soluble dietary fibre and the stems have insoluble dietary fibre. Mineral content, particularly iron, polyphenols and vitamin content such as carotene, vitamins B2, C and E are high in the leaves in comparison with other vegetables (Ishida *et al.*, 2000) (Table 14.1).

On average, the DM of most cultivar storage roots is 30%, but this trait also varies according to cultivation practices. In order to be comparable, different varieties have to be planted at the same time in the same growing conditions and harvested together, but there are also significant variations that occur during the life of the plant. The average values in the composition of the DM content are presented in Table 14.2.

Approximately 80–90% of the DM of storage roots is composed of carbohydrates consisting of starch, sugars and lesser amounts of pectins, hemicelluloses and cellulose. This composition influences quality factors such as taste, texture, firmness and mouthfeel. Starch is the most important component and in countries such as China, it is extracted at home and village levels. Sweet potato starch granules are made up of amylopectin and amylose molecules. Starches isolated from three Chinese cultivars have been shown to differ in granule size and particle size distribution but the amylose contents are similar (19.3–20.0%). The pasting behaviour, swelling pattern and synergetic properties also vary. The quality of the starch noodle made from cultivar 'Sushu8' starch has been evaluated by both instrumental and sensory analysis and has been found comparable to that made from mung bean starch, a frequently used source for noodle production. It was found that the small size (< 20 μm) granule fractions of 'Sushu8' were more suitable for starch noodle making (Chen, 2003).

Variability in sugars among cultivars is very high and has been recorded as low as 5.6% in a local cultivar of the Philippines and up to 38.3% of DM in

Table 14.1. Chemical composition of sweet potato roots and leaves in the Pacific.

	Storage roots (165 samples from 5 countries)		Leaves (one sample from Hawaii)
	Means	Ranges	
Moisture %	71.1	61.2–89	87.8
Energy (kJ/100 g)	438	125–635	151
Protein %	1.43	0.46–2.93	4.0
Starch %	20.1	5.3–28.4	–
Sugars %	2.38	0.38–5.64	–
Carbohydrates %	–		6.6
Dietary fibres %	1.64	0.49–4.71	–
Crude fibres %	–	–	1.2
Lipid, fat %	0.17	0.06–0.48	0.3
Ash %	0.74	0.31–1.06	1.3
Oxalate (mg/100 g)	89		–
Calcium oxalate (mg/100 g)	32		–
Minerals (mg/100 g):			
Calcium, Ca	29	7.5–74.5	37
Phosphorus, P	51	41.0–70.0	94
Magnesium, Mg	26	18.4–35.7	62
Sodium, Na	52	13.8–84.0	9
Potassium, K	260	129–382	530
Sulphur, S	13		–
Iron, Fe	0.49	0.16–0.94	1.0
Copper, Cu	0.17	0.08–0.28	–
Zinc, Zn	0.59	0.27–1.89	–
Manganese, Mn	0.11	0.05–0.26	–
Aluminium, Al	0.82	0.24–1.14	–
Boron, B	0.10	0.07–0.14	–
Vitamins (mg/100 g):			
Vitamin A (retinol + β- caro/6)	0.01	0.008–0.014	0.18
Thiamin	0.09	0.073–0.099	0.16
Riboflavin	0.03	0.025–0.041	0.37
Niacin	0.60	0.38–0.77	1.14
Pot. Nic. Acid = trp/60	0.32		–
Vitamin C	24		11
Vitamin D	0		–
Limiting amino acids and scores:			
First	Lys 70		–
Second	Leu 80		–
Trypsin inhibitor (TIU/g)	13.4		–

Source: Bradbury and Holloway (1988).

Table 14.2. Average composition of sweet potato storage root dry matter.

Component	% in dry matter	
	Mean values	Ranges
Starch	70	30–85
Total sugars	10	5–38
Total protein (N × 6.25)	5	1.2–10
Lipids	1	1–2.5
Ash	3	0.6–4.5
Total fibre (non-starch polysaccharides and lignin)	10	?
Vitamins, organic acids and other components	< 1	?

Source: Woolfe (1992).

American cultivars. Although they have not been investigated thoroughly, the hundreds of cultivars found in PNG and island Melanesia are also low in sugars, allowing an important daily consumption. The principal taste sensation of cooked sweet potatoes is their sweetness, which is due to the presence of maltose, glucose, sucrose and fructose (Bradbury and Holloway, 1988). The sugar composition of a cultivar, especially the sucrose values, gives a reliable indication of its sweetness. Not much research has been conducted on the volatile flavours of sweet potatoes. The American cultivars have a strong, sweet aroma, whereas throughout the tropics, cultivars with a gentle aroma similar to roasted chestnuts are often preferred (Kays and Horvat, 1984).

Among the non-starch polysaccharides, hemicelluloses and cellulose, which are found in the cells walls, are grouped together as dietary fibre and play an important role in the nutritional value of sweet potato. They have an important function in the diet and give protection against colon cancers, vascular diseases and diabetes. They also probably play a role in the firmness of canned storage roots and, therefore, genotypes with high values are more appropriate for the canning industry (Woolfe, 1992).

The total protein content of the sweet potato is on average 5% on a dry weight basis and 1.5% on a fresh weight basis. There is evidence from work conducted in the USA and Taiwan that total protein is not distributed evenly throughout the root. There are higher concentrations in the proximal rather than in the distal end and higher concentrations in the outer layer of the flesh, which unfortunately is often removed when peeling. There is significant genetic variability but variations due to environmental effects and cultural practices have also been noticed.

The red, purple or blue types of pigments found in various parts of the sweet potato are due to acylated anthocyanins. The major ones are cyanidin and peonidin. They are a natural source of stable pigments for the food industry. In Japan, the purple-fleshed sweet potato cultivar 'Ayamurasaki' contains a high anthocyanin content and its extract has been shown to exhibit multiple

physiological functions such as radical-scavenging, antimutagenic and an ameliorative effect on carbon tetrachloride-induced liver injury and decreased blood glucose levels in rats, in the laboratory. In addition, their role in restoring the liver functions and blood pressure levels in volunteers with impaired hepatic function or hypertension has also been confirmed. This cultivar is now recommended as a superior source for the production of foods with health benefits (antioxidants) and some foods and beverages already use the characteristics of anthocyanin pigments (Suda *et al.*, 2003).

Other studies have been conducted to examine the possible antioxidant and antiproliferative activities of different sweet potato extracts. The antiproliferative activities of sweet potato were studied using human lymphoma NB4 cells. It has been observed that the water extract of leaf veins had the highest antiproliferative activity, followed by water extracts of storage root and leaf and ethanol extracts of storage root and leaf. The ethanol extract of leaf veins also showed strong antioxidant activity (Huang, D. *et al.*, 2004).

Carotenoid pigments are responsible for the yellow and orange flesh colours. Orange-fleshed roots contain higher total carotenoids and β-carotene content than white and cream-fleshed cultivars. Trans- and β-carotene predominate. The effect of the age of the root is significant and 80 DAP, the yield and amount of provitamin A in the storage roots of orange-fleshed varieties are high enough to provide an adequate dietary intake. However, it has been shown that boiling the roots for 30 min causes a reduction in total carotenoids (K'osambo *et al.*, 1998). In Kenya, where vitamin A deficiency is common, orange-fleshed sweet potatoes were introduced and their consumption was promoted, along with other vitamin A-rich foods. The yields of orange-fleshed sweet potatoes were at least twice those of local white-fleshed sweet potatoes and their DM content exceeded 25%. It is now accepted that in East Africa, orange-fleshed sweet potatoes produced and prepared by women farmers contribute towards reducing vitamin A deficiency (Hagenimana *et al.*, 2001).

The three most abundant acids found in sweet potato cultivars are citric, malic and succinic acids. The small quantities of soluble oxalates are similar to those in other root crops but the calcium oxalate content is very low and a tenth of what is found in aroids, for example. The lipid content of sweet potato storage roots is also very low and nutritionally insignificant.

It seems quite generally recognized that consumption of sweet potatoes can cause flatulence. It is assumed that about 85% of the hydrogen gas produced results from the ingestion of starch and the remaining 15% from dietary fibre.

In contrast to the extensive work conducted on the roots, there is insufficient information on the chemical composition of the greens (Table 14.1). The DM of tops contains higher quantities of proteins and minerals than the roots. There is considerable variation between cultivars for DM and protein contents and breeding for livestock feed is presently improving the chemical composition of the tops.

PHYSIOLOGICAL DISORDERS IN FRESHLY STORED ROOTS

Cultivars with a low DM have a higher respiration rate and therefore a shorter shelf life. Sweet potato roots may remain dormant for a very short duration and roots usually sprout very quickly after harvest if there is an adequate temperature and relative humidity. Roots frequently sprout if the soil moisture is high and the harvest delayed. There are differences between the dormancy periods among cultivars. The respiration of the storage root contributes to weight loss and alteration of internal and external aspects. Respiration is higher just after harvest and is reduced during curing and storage. Damaged sweet potatoes have an increased rate of respiration compared to non-damaged ones. There is starch degradation during sprouting and sprouting after harvest is attributed directly to temperatures that are too high (Ravi and Aked, 1996).

Hardcore is a disorder in which roots remain hard after cooking and are unpalatable. It is attributed directly to temperatures that are too low. Symptoms of chilling injury in storage also include flavour changes and flesh that remains hard after cooking. Cold temperatures modify pectic substances so that the tissues remain rigid when cooked. Hardcore develops in storage roots exposed to 1.5°C for 1 day or to 10°C for at least 3 days, but cured roots are less sensitive to chilling and recover better from injury. Several factors have been shown to increase the occurrence of hardcore, including the cultivar, chilling temperatures and length of subsequent exposure to non-chilling temperatures. In Japan or the USA, if chilling occurs in the field during harvest or during transport, rotting might occur in sweet potato roots much later during storage. When roots are held in a warm, low-humidity environment for an extended period, they may develop a white, dry, spongy internal tissue. This internal breakdown of the flesh is referred to as pithiness. Proper control of curing and good storage environment, coupled with the selection of adequate cultivars that have a good shelf life, can minimize internal breakdown (Clark and Moyer, 1988).

MARKETING AND QUALITY STANDARDS

From a marketing point of view, there are three broad groups of cultivars. There are those intended for processing (traditional or industrial), which are often very high in DM and have a white flesh, those for the fresh roots market and those to be cooked. In this latter group are the 'moist' North American types of cultivars with low DM content and high sugar and carotene contents, and those with much higher DM content and low sugars for daily consumption in developing countries. The quality standards are not the same for the three groups.

Depending on countries' requirements for fresh roots, there are different grades that are based mainly on the average length, width and individual weight of the roots. In all grades, the qualitative requirements are firm, smooth,

clean roots, free from disease, insects and cracks. In temperate countries, roots also should be free of chill injuries and internal breakdown.

The practical operations involved in the preparation of fresh roots for the market involve washing and disinfecting, polishing, waxing, inhibiting sprouting and curing immediately after packing. Washing and disinfecting consist of treating the surface of the roots with a chemical to prevent the entrance of pathogens. Much of the bruising and skinning that takes place in preparing sweet potatoes for the market can be avoided by putting them in buckets of water containing 50 ppm chlorine rather than on to hard surfaces. Polishing consists of removing dirt from the surface of the roots and brightening the natural colour of the skin. This is done by hand, either bare hands or by rubbing a soft cloth on the surface. The application of a thin layer of wax on the surface of the roots is done immediately after the roots are washed and special machinery has been developed for this purpose. The layer of wax is supposed to reduce the rate of transpiration, thus reducing losses in carbohydrates.

In general, sprouts on roots destined for the fresh market are extremely undesirable (Edmond and Ammerman, 1971). In the tropics, sprouting occurs frequently as a result of prolonged storage in conditions of high temperatures and humidity and sprouts are generally broken off as soon as they appear. Their removal exposes the roots to attack by pathogens. However, more research is necessary to identify efficient sprout inhibitors of economical and practical use.

Knowing that most roots are usually cooked (boiled or baked), several other characteristics are also important. The quality of roots after cooking is a complex combination of colour, flavour, mouthfeel, texture and fibre content. The way quality is perceived is often very variable between cultures and countries. The cooking time and carbohydrate transformation associated with cooking quality are mostly genotype-dependent. Sweetness varies significantly between cultivars and is the dominant sensory attribute characterizing flavour. Sweetness is derived from the composition of sugars (sucrose, glucose, fructose) and maltose formed via starch hydrolysis during baking. Maltose accounts for approximately 42% of the average contribution to the total sucrose equivalents. Cultivars can be grouped into categories based on the concentration and relative sweetness of individual sugars, expressed as sucrose equivalents per 100 g DM and ranging from very high to very low. It appears that all categories are present in most countries (Kays *et al.*, 2005).

STORAGE METHODS

Storage at high temperatures may result in excessive and rapid quality changes. The development of pithiness or internal cavities may occur in the roots and their severity differs with cultivars. A reduction in starch content with a corresponding increase in total sugars occurs as early as the second week of storage. High weight loss and sprouting are accompanied by a considerable

decrease in moisture and a consequent increase in DM content. Investigation has been undertaken into changes during storage in carbohydrate level, digestibility, α-amylase, trypsin inhibitor activity and pasting properties of the roots of cultivars differing in DM content. Most genotypes show a slight decrease in starch content during the first 180 days of storage. The decline of starch content is accompanied by α-amylase activity in the first 60 days of storage. Storage also reduces flour-pasting viscosities with up to 30% decline in peak viscosity (Zhang *et al.*, 2002).

Ideally, sweet potatoes should be stored at temperatures of 13–15°C with 80–90% relative humidity. In Japan or in the USA, where roots are stored for many months, this is achieved in specially designed storage houses where these requirements are controlled properly. Cured roots store better than uncured ones. Sweet potatoes can be cured and stored in bulk bins. Curing treatments in production areas where this is practised include storage at 30°C and 90–98% relative humidity for 4–7 days with good ventilation, and then storage at 13–14°C with ventilation (Edmond and Ammerman, 1971). The benefits of curing include increased sugar content and flavour, suberization of periderm tissue to protect the roots against bruises and disease attack, and improvement of shelf life by reducing respiration and water loss. Sweet potato roots lose about 3–6% of their weight during the curing process. Storage roots will not store well if wet soil conditions are prevalent just prior to harvest, if the roots are chilled below 10°C for a period of over 5 days after harvest, or if the roots are not cured properly. Significant changes in the carbohydrate fractions of cured and non-cured sweet potatoes occur after cooking. Baked cured roots have higher levels of total sugars and dextrins and less starch than non-cured roots baked just after harvest (Ravi *et al.*, 1996).

Because sweet potatoes are difficult to store, farmers tend to avoid storage and harvest them only when needed, leaving them in the ground sometimes for months after attaining an adequate size. There are significant variations between genotypes, but most of them are prone to insect or rodent attacks when stored in the ground for too long. Most cultivars are tender and their quality deteriorates rapidly soon after harvest because they lose water and weight during storage, and this subsequently alters the texture and taste. Some diseases can cause severe losses from rotting and off-flavours during storage, and weevil and other pest attacks can cause great damage.

It is, however, possible to store fresh roots and this allows farmers to harvest as soon as the roots are mature so that the field is available for other crops, or for a managed fallow. The proper storage of fresh roots enables village communities to eat fresh potatoes for a longer period after harvest. In some cases, the stored roots can be sold later in the season when fresh roots are not available and therefore generate income during the off-season. Successful storage depends on the careful selection of only good quality roots free of pests or diseases, their preservation in especially designed stores and the regular control of their status at frequent intervals (Stathers *et al.*, 2005).

Pit stores, holes dug in the ground, have long been used by farmers around the world, from Polynesia to India and Africa. There is a variety of sizes and shapes. These pits are dug in dry ground not subject to flooding. They are lined with dry grasses or ferns, which act as a cushion and protect the roots from damage, while absorbing humidity. The quality of the roots selected for storage is critical. The roots are placed carefully and the pit is then sealed with more dry grasses and covered with soil up to ground level. A ventilation system is put in place and, finally, a shed erected over the pit to protect it from the sun and rain.

Clamp stores are made on a raised mound of earth above ground level. The base of the clamp is covered with dry grass for cushioning and absorbing excessive moisture. The roots are then piled carefully and covered with more grass and soil to seal the clamp to prevent the roots from drying out and pests from entering. The mound is then covered with a roof to protect it from the sun and rain, allowing some space in between for good ventilation. Roots can be stored for up to 5 months in pits and clamps as long as there is proper routine maintenance every 2 weeks or so to avoid root rotting, rodent and insect damage (Stathers *et al.*, 2005). It is always better to make several small pits or clamps rather than a single large one because the entire content must be removed when the pit or clamp is opened. If a roofed structure cannot be built, the storage unit should be constructed in a shaded area.

Village storage structures made of coconut leaves and bamboo have been tried in the Philippines. Their slatted walling provides the stored roots with diffused light, which partly suppresses sprouting. These are much cooler than the surrounding environment. High relative humidity is maintained by placing water in bamboo troughs and sweet potatoes can be stored in these conditions for up to 3 months without much loss in quality.

TRADITIONAL PROCESSING TECHNIQUES

Sweet potato traditionally is processed into dried chips and flour to preserve the product. Drying and processing into flour aims to increase shelf life, increasing the nutritive value per unit of weight, creating income opportunities and diversifying the range of uses. Both roots and vines traditionally are also used for livestock feeding and simple processing techniques are applied to improve the quality of the feed.

Sun-drying is the simplest dehydration technique used by smallholders. The roots are washed, peeled and sliced and exposed directly to the sun. This technique has several drawbacks, including dependency on climatic conditions, high labour requirement, difficulty in maintaining hygienic conditions and lack of control of the enzymatic oxidation. Different cultivars have different properties and farmers experiment and test several varieties before selecting the best one for processing, which is often not the one they prefer to consume fresh.

In practice, the various steps involved in the process are:

1. Selection of healthy roots.
2. Cleaning and peeling: usually with a simple kitchen knife.
3. Washing: often in drum washers (200 l) with brushes fixed on a horizontal axle and allowing 40 kg of roots to be washed in 10 min using 30 l clean water.
4. Slicing: once cleaned, the roots are pre-dried for 10 min and a mechanical slicer cuts the roots in uniform slices of approximately 0.5 cm thick.
5. Soaking: the slices are soaked in water for 90 min (parboiling for 5 min or more reduces future insect infestation of the dried chips).
6. Drying: the slices are sun-dried on raised trays for approximately 6 h in good conditions, depending on the rate of turning of the chips as they dry.
7. Grinding: the dried chips are milled into flour.
8. Storing: dried chips and/or flour are stored in bags protected from pests and sunlight.

In East Africa, metal storage bins made from smooth or corrugated galvanized metal sheets traditionally are used to store dried products. They are placed on platforms to allow the air to circulate under the base and to prevent ground moisture causing corrosion. A roof provides shade and reduces overheating. These bins provide good protection against insects and rodents but can be used for well-dried products only (Stathers *et al.*, 2005).

In Uganda, farmers process the roots into dry chips, which constitute a very important off-season staple. The dried chips are dipped in water, boiled and salted. They can be eaten mixed with millet or sorghum, or ground into flour for making the local bread, known as *atap*. However, even when dried properly, these chips succumb to insect infestation (*Araecerus fasciculatus*) after 2 months of storage in bags. Salting of sliced sweet potato chips prior to drying seems to be a promising approach to control damage by *A. fasciculatus* and an application rate of salt at 2–3% (w/w) is recommended. Apparently, at this level, the culinary quality of the dried chips is not affected significantly but it is necessary to re-dry the chips periodically because the salt tends to increase their moisture content (Agona *et al.*, 1998).

Starch production is one of the major uses of sweet potato. In areas where the climatic conditions do not allow proper sun-drying of the roots, simple techniques are used by farmers (Woolfe, 1992). In China:

1. Roots are cut by hand.
2. Crushed by machine and sieved to remove waste such as peel and fibre.
3. Starch is left to settle in a tank and supernatant removed.
4. Water is added and the starch is settled and sieved once more.
5. Wet starch is transferred to jute bags to drip-dry for 1 day.
6. Starch is air-dried outside at ambient temperatures.

In some cases, an acid paste formed during the starch preparation by the action of lactic acid bacteria is added to the slurry to enhance coagulation and

separation of starch, fibre and proteins. The starch settles, leaving the other components suspended above. The supernatant is then removed. In Japan, starch extraction is kept alkaline by the addition of lime to raise the pH to 8 and this enhances yield and improves colour. Centrifuges are used increasingly in place of settling tanks.

In China and Vietnam, sweet potato starch noodles are a popular food and are made mainly by smallholders. Fresh roots first are processed into starch, which is stored in open sheds. The smallholder process used for producing noodles is as follows (Woolfe, 1992):

1. The dried starch is put into large round vessels.
2. Water at 80°C is added to gelatinize the starch.
3. Sulphite is added and stirring is done by hand or mechanically.
4. Native starch is added to make a 5% dough.
5. Stirring is done by hand or mechanically.
6. The mixture is put into a cylinder (30 × 40 cm) with holes in the bottom
7. The material is pressed through the holes and the strings are received in hot water.
8. The strings are kept separated using sticks.
9. The strings are transferred to cold water.
10. The strings are dried indoors and then outside and noodles are obtained.

There are some local adaptations or improvements of the process but the basic principle is the same (Collado and Corke, 1997).

Fried chips are homemade in many tropical countries and are available in small, snack quantities in local markets. When cultivars rich in carotenes and/or anthocyanins are used, the resulting chips are of bright colours and are very attractive to children and adults alike. They may be salted, spicy, or left natural, according to local tastes. Sweet potato chips are marketed and distributed on a large scale in the USA.

The postharvest life of storage roots can also be extended by fermenting them into silage or by sun-drying them into chips for livestock feed. The roots are grated manually or mechanically into 1 × 1 cm or 5 × 5 cm 'chips'. The cutting into regular pieces facilitates air circulation and drying. The chips are then spread in a 3 cm layer and turned regularly. Hot air-drying is possible but expensive, as the final product needs to reach 12–13% moisture content in order to store properly.

Traditionally, sweet potato leaves can be used for feeding pigs in fresh, dry and ensiled forms. In China, a very high proportion of the total annual production is used and in some areas, fresh vines and leaves are harvested for pig feed three to four times during a growing season. Good silage is brownish green in colour and has a pleasant fruity smell attractive to animals. The breeding of cultivars with high biomass, DM and protein contents may lower the price and raise sweet potato feed energy and protein levels closer to those of cereals, but more research is needed. A number of cultivars have been evaluated in central

Vietnam with respect to the biomass yield of the leaves, stems and roots under different harvesting intervals and defoliation techniques with the aim of selecting the best for forage production. The biomass yields of leaves, stems and roots vary according to cultivar, season and defoliation technique. The best options in terms of leaf and stem production is to cut at intervals of 20 days with a defoliation of 50% of the total stems, since greater defoliation can reduce root production. Sweet potato leaves have a crude protein content of 25–30% in DM, which is markedly higher than in the stems. The leaves can be preserved as feed for pigs by ensiling with either sweet potato rootmeal or sugarcane molasses as additives. They are high in protein content compared to other protein-rich forages and lysine is the first limiting amino acid (An, 2004).

In the Red River Delta area near Hanoi, Vietnam, on-farm trials have been carried out to see if using fermented vines could reduce women's labour, processing costs and improve pig growth efficiency. Different mixtures of sweet potato vines, maize and cassava meals, rice bran, sun-dried chicken manure and salt were fermented and the results were compared for their nutritional values. Vines fermented with chicken manure had higher crude protein, DM and ash contents than the other mixtures. None of the preparations contained aflatoxin or *Salmonella*, and *Escherichia coli*, although present in the original samples, disappeared after 14–21 days of fermentation. Pigs fed with the preparation containing chicken manure achieved higher growth rates than those fed with fresh sweet potato vines, and this mixture was considerably cheaper. However, while sweet potato vine fermentation addresses storage problems and increases pig growth, some farmers are concerned with the possibility of balancing the feed when the volumes to be mixed together are important (Peters *et al.*, 2002).

INDUSTRIAL PROCESSING

The production of quality dried products involves the following pre-processing operations:

1. Grading: inspection of health status, damage, cracks and size.
2. Cleaning: removal of soil by rod chains and water sprays or dry brushing.
3. Pre-heating: immersion in hot water (30 min at 70°C for dehydrated flakes, 30 min at 52°C or 8 min at 63°C for canning).
4. Peeling: hand paring, with abrasive rollers, or steam peeling and washing
5. Trimming: removal of surface blemishes and fibrous ends (root tips).

Sweet potatoes processed in this way are then dried and reduced to flakes, which can be reconstituted into mashed sweet potato or incorporated into various products. The dehydration process starts with pre-processed roots and reduces them into slices, dices, cuts or strips, before blanching and drying them through a tunnel. Another process first reduces them to a purée, which is

subjected to enzyme treatment, and then drum dried and turned into flakes ready for packaging. The steam-heated revolving drums used dry the purée to a thin film with only 2–3% moisture. The film is then dried into flakes of 0.2 to 0.6 cm and these are packed into films purged with an atmosphere containing less than 2% O_2 at closing (Woolfe, 1992).

In the USA, a considerable quantity of sweet potatoes is canned, but canning is too expensive for most developing countries. Sweet potato is canned whole, in halves or chunks, either in syrup or under vacuum without liquid. Flash sterilization followed by aseptic packaging increases storability and quality. Numerous other similar products exist, such as jams, juices, candies, sauces, catsup (sweet potato ketchup), paste, mash and purée, and are commercialized, mostly in the USA and Japan.

In many countries, industrial starch extraction is followed by conversion to a range of syrups and other derivatives that can be used as a replacement for expensive imported sucrose. Glycose syrup is produced from sweet potato starch by bacterial amylase but has only 70% of the sweetness of sucrose. Maltose is also produced from sweet potato by the action of bacterial amylase. In Asia, mostly in China, there are several industrial processing plants producing glucose and fructose syrups from sweet potato using dried chips, which are converted into starch (Woolfe, 1992). Citric acid, a flavour enhancer and preservative, is also produced from sweet potato starch in China and Japan. The process involves breakdown of the starch into sugars before they are fermented by moulds such as *Aspergillus niger*. Another important flavour enhancer in Asia, monosodium glutamate, is also produced from sweet potato starch degraded first into sugars, which are then converted to glutamic acid by microorganisms such as *Brevibacterium glutamicum* and finally into the monosodium salt.

Chinese sweet potato alcohol processing plants use mainly dried chips as raw material and this enables them to operate all year-round. Some of these plants process not less than 140,000 t dried chips into 50,000 t alcohol every year. In Japan, the production of *Shochu* involves fermentation in modern automated factories. Unpeeled sweet potatoes are trimmed by hand and unwanted parts are removed, before washing, steaming and crushing into a mash. A heavy inoculum of *A. niger* or *A. kawachii* provides the enzymes that hydrolyse starch into sugars. During fermentation of the mash, simultaneous conversion of starch to sugars and fermentation of sugars to alcohol takes place using the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. The mash is then pumped, alcohol is steam distilled off and different batches can be blended so that a homogeneous product is obtained and adjusted to 20–20% (v/v) and bottled (Woolfe, 1992).

Sweet potatoes have two types of pigments potentially interesting as natural colouring for the food industry: carotenoids and anthocyanins. Carotenes in high concentration can be used for synthetic yellow or orange colorant and are suitable for colouring margarines, for example. The most practical technique for the extraction of anthocyanins involves the hydrolysis

of starch with acid. Cooked, peeled roots are homogenized with an equal volume of water, then hydrolysed with sulphuric acid at 80°C for 2 h and neutralized with calcium oxide. In Japan, cv. 'Ayamurasaki' contains high amounts of anthocyanins in the storage roots and is used for making purple paste and flour. Anthocyanin composition influences not only the quality of the pigments but also the paste colour. Genotype differences in paste colour are due mainly to the anthocyanin concentration and the proportion of cyanidin and peonidin types of pigments (Yoshinaga *et al.*, 1998).

This page intentionally left blank

Section III

Yams

Cultivated yams (*Dioscorea* spp., Dioscoreaceae, Monocotyledons) provide the staple food for millions of people in Africa, South America, Asia and the Pacific tropical countries. Wild yams are a reliable source of food in times of famine or scarcity and they provide pharmacologically active compounds in traditional medicine. The underground storage organs are tubers. In most species, they are renewed and produced annually, while in others they are perennial. As crops, yams are harvested every season and replanted using tuber pieces to regenerate the plant. Unlike other tropical root and tuber crop species, once harvested, yams can be stored for 4–6 months in ambient tropical conditions without significant deterioration of their nutritional properties. Tubers are also often dried and later milled into flour for reconstituting as a stiff paste (*fufu*), which is highly appreciated in West Africa. In many regions, yams play a very important part in the cultural life of the people, especially in the 'yam belt' of West Africa and in the Melanesian countries.

The English term 'yam' is most likely derived from the Portuguese word, *ynhame*, found in early documents, itself being the transcription of *niam*, the word used in the Malinké language spoken widely through the Guineas, Sierra Leone and Ivory Coast (Coursey, 1967).

This page intentionally left blank

15

Origin and History

DOMESTICATION

Dioscorea spp. are found throughout the tropics and different species of edible yams have been domesticated independently in America, Africa, Madagascar, South and South-east Asia, Australia and Melanesia. Of the more than 600 *Dioscorea* species, ten are staple yams, while many of the wild yams are also important plants in times of food scarcity. *Dioscorea alata*, *D. cayenensis* and *D. rotundata* are by far the major cultivated species, while the seven others are often referred to as the minor yams (Table 15.1).

It has been suggested that yams (and aroids) were among the first plant species to be domesticated by fishing communities that depended on the sea for their food supply. Their unbalanced diets may have obliged them to forage inland for food. Tubers and corms may have been cooked on the fire in coastal settlements and pieces rejected from cooking might then have taken root and grown, indicating the possibility of vegetative propagation and cultivation (Burkill, 1960; Coursey, 1967). This hypothesis has been challenged by recent

Table 15.1. Geographic origin of the ten most important cultivated *Dioscorea* spp.

Dioscorea spp.	Common names	Geographical origin
Dioscorea alata	Greater, water, winged yam	South-east Asia, Melanesia
D. bulbifera	Aerial-, bulbil-bearing yam	South America, Africa, Asia, Melanesia
D. cayenensis	Yellow guinea yam	West Africa
D. esculenta	Lesser yam, Asiatic yam	South-east Asia, Melanesia
D. opposita-japonica	Chinese, Japanese yam	Japan, China
D. nummularia	Spiny yam, wild yam	Melanesia
D. pentaphylla	Five-leaved yam	South-east Asia, Melanesia
D. rotundata	White Guinea yam	West Africa
D. transversa	Marou, waël	Australia, Melanesia
D. trifida	Aja, aje, cush-cush, yampi	South America

multidisciplinary investigations that document an independent emergence of vegeculture during the early and mid-Holocene at Kuk Swamp in the highlands of PNG, located far away from the seashore. In this area, a detailed analysis of prehistoric use of stone tools for processing starchy food and other plants has been conducted, following comparisons between prehistoric and botanical reference specimens, which indicate that morphological diagnostics for starch granules reveal the presence of yam (*Dioscorea* sp.). Residues and starch granule analyses also indicate that this species was processed on the wetland margin during the early and mid-Holocene. It is argued that the processing of yam commenced by at least 10,200 BP, although the yam starch granules do not permit differentiation between wild or cultivated forms. However, from at least 7000 to 6500 BP, the processing of yam and other plants indicates that they are likely to have been domesticated and integrated into cultivation practices (Fullagar *et al.*, 2006).

Dioscorea alata is probably the most widely distributed cultivated yam species in the world and is likely also one of the oldest cultivated. It was not found in the wild and was thought, based on morphological affinities, to result from interspecific hybridization between two Asian species (*D. hamiltonii* and *D. persimilis*) (Burkill, 1960). However, AFLP markers indicate that *D. alata* shares a common genetic background with *D. nummularia* and *D. transversa (*Malapa *et al.*, 2005a, b). As these two species do not occur on the western, Asian side of the Wallace line, it is possible that *D. alata* was domesticated after the arrival of the Australoids, 60,000 years ago on the Sahul plate, in the present New Guinea, or in Melanesia (Lebot, 1999). This geographic region is also the centre of diversity of the species (Martin and Rhodes, 1977; Lebot, 1992; Lebot *et al.*, 1998) and hundreds of different morphotypes exist (Fig. 15.1).

Dioscorea esculenta is an ancient crop in the Pacific, as revealed by the dating of starch grains from Bourewa, south-west Viti Levu, Fiji, 3050–2500 BP (Horrocks and Nunn, 2006). The species was most likely introduced into this archipelago by *Lapita* (Austronesian) sailors, who settled the islands of Melanesia, between the Bismarck Archipelago in Eastern New Guinea and Vanuatu, from 3500 to 3000 BP, and later Fiji. *Dioscorea esculenta* was probably already being cultivated by the Australoid peoples occupying the western part of this region and the Austronesian sailors then took it into the Pacific Islands.

In West Africa, Paleolithic man, while food gathering, most likely domesticated edible yams during his wanderings. A tuber from a wild plant can be removed without fatal damage to the vine and roots and the plant will recover and produce another one in a year or so. Possibly, hunter-gatherers noticed such an interesting phenomenon and would have come back regularly to harvest edible wild forms. Selection of the most palatable genotypes would then follow naturally. It has been suggested that this process could have started c. 7000 BP for West African yams (Dumont *et al.*, 2006), although there is no accurate dating to support this hypothesis.

Fig. 15.1. Areas of origin of *Dioscorea nummularia* and *D. transversa* and area of diversity of *D. alata* (Source: Lebot, 2002).

The domestication process has been described in great detail for West African species. Called ennoblement or paraculture, it is, in practice, essentially the same phenomenon. An edible wild form is vegetatively propagated and cultivated. The aerial morphological traits are not of major importance during the domestication process. When they are used, it is to identify a familiar morphotype which is known to indicate edible underground organs. The tuber's physico-chemical characteristics are the useful traits that are selected and domesticated. Cultivated and wild forms are not very different morphologically but have chemical differences. Wild species often produce some secondary metabolites which protect them from predators. *Dioscorea hispida*, for example, which occurs throughout India, South-east Asia and the Philippines, is highly toxic. It is used in times of famine because its large tubers are easily dug and it is detoxicated by prolonged soaking to remove the toxin (dioscorine, an alkaloid). In Melanesia, wild forms of *Dioscorea nummularia* oxidize readily when cut and are very bitter and, for this species, domestication is an ongoing process in the Solomon Islands and Vanuatu. The domestication process can be summarized as:

1. The domesticator recognizes a morphotype and tests its chemotype. If it seems acceptable, after chewing the flesh of the underground organ, a propagule is collected.

2. Unlike the wild plant, the clone is planted into a considerably modified environment with the soil well prepared and this improved environment contributes to the ennobled development of the underground organs.
3. The regular vegetative propagation from a perennial wild form induces a rejuvenation process, which leads to an annual cultivar, and plants are uprooted as soon as there is a consumable yield (Lebot *et al.*, 2005).

In Benin, West Africa, the wild species most often used for domestication are *D. abyssinica*, *D. praehensilis* and *D. burkilliana*. African farmers have developed a simple test to assess the potential of the genotype they are attempting to domesticate. When they put into cultivation a propagule collected directly from the wild, an obstacle is placed in the mound under the seed-tuber. The deformed growth of the resulting tubers indicates if this particular genotype can be domesticated. Obstacles are composed of pottery pieces or flat stones and should be resistant enough to stop and modify the growth of the tubers. According to farmers from Guinea to Cameroon who use this technique, this is a fairly reliable test to decide whether or not it is worth engaging in subsequent clonal generations. The Bariba farmers of Benin argue that the purpose of the obstacle is to break the tuber's habit of deep growth. The morphological transformations induced by the domestication process may not be controlled genetically and other biological variations such as ontogeny also play an important role (Dumont *et al.*, 2006) (Fig. 15.2).

In Benin, many cultivars are clones of edible wild forms and a few putative wild forms are probably feral plants escaped from cultivation. Some cultivars are also clones of hybrids between wild forms and feral or cultivated plants. Human selection operates on the most vigorous plants and vigour is sometimes associated with heterozygosity or heterotic effect. However, rapid deterioration of the cultivar's attractive traits when it becomes feral may be observed. The physico-chemical characteristics of the underground organs, for example, deteriorate very rapidly if soil texture is not improved regularly. With a few minor changes, this process is common to different yam species cultivated in distant geographical regions. The domestication observed and documented nowadays in Melanesia and Africa is most likely very similar, if not identical, to what hunter-gatherers were doing thousands of years ago.

Molecular marker studies have confirmed this process. The traditional practice of farmers involves the introduction of naturally occurring yams, supposedly wild (*D. abyssinica* and *D. praehensilis*), in varieties of the *D. cayenensis–D. rotundata* cultivated species complex. Through domestication, farmers influence and increase genetic diversity by using sexual reproduction of wild and possibly cultivated genotypes. Many of the spontaneous yams collected by farmers for ennoblement are wild and hybrid genotypes. This practice, used in different ecological and ethnolinguistic regions, allows farmers to create varieties with new genetic combinations via sexual reproduction of wild and cultivated yams. This system ensures cultivation of the best genotypes, while preserving the potential for future adaptation (Scarcelli *et al.*, 2005a, 2006).

Fig. 15.2. Area of distribution of *Dioscorea rotundata* in West Africa (Source: Dumont *et al.*, 2006).

Dioscorea trifida is certainly the only American species to have been domesticated by the Amerindians. *Dioscorea bulbifera* is still under domestication in Melanesia, where wild, toxic forms occur spontaneously, but the species is pantropical and it is possible that it could have been domesticated elsewhere, as indicated by the different gene pools revealed by intraspecific variation of chloroplast DNA (Terauchi *et al.*, 1991).

DISCOVERY OF THE CROP BY WESTERN EXPLORERS

Columbus referred to the cultivation of what is presumably *D. trifida*, the only cultivated yam of American origin. However, it is not known to what extent Amerindians were cultivating this yam or were merely collecting it from the wild. It is possible, however, that European and African immigrants cultivated this yam soon after their arrival in this region.

When the Austronesian peoples, originating from south-east Kalimantan (Borneo), colonized the great island of Madagascar approximately 2000 years ago, it was very likely that they introduced *D. alata*, along with taro (*C. esculenta*) and bananas (*Musa* sp.), as it was already cultivated there when French explorers first visited the island. From there, it could have spread to East Africa and later to central Africa, and thence to the yam belt of West Africa. It is not clear whether this yam was already established when Portuguese explorers visited the coast of Guinea in the 1500s AD. These Portuguese explorers, on the other hand, could well be responsible for the worldwide distribution of this yam species, including its early distribution along the coast of West Africa. Yams are reported by the Portuguese explorer, Pacheco Pereira, who visited the West

African coast in 1505–1508, in a manner suggesting that they were not unfamiliar to him and his crew (Coursey, 1967). Apparently, when the Portuguese entered the Indian Ocean, they came across *D. alata* and embarked its tubers to feed their crew on their return journey to Europe.

The slave trade and the establishment of Spanish colonies in the Caribbean probably contributed to the movement of African yams (*D. cayenensis* and *D. rotundata*). Tubers were probably loaded on ships to feed the slaves during the voyage and the surplus replanted on arrival in the West Indies. At the end of the 16th century, *D. alata*, also imported from the Portuguese trading base on the island of Sáo Tomé in the Guinea Gulf, was also cultivated in the Caribbean.

When Captain James Cook discovered the Hawaiian archipelago in 1778–1779, he observed that the Polynesians, who colonized these islands more than 1500 years BP, had introduced *D. alata*, *D. bulbifera* and *D. pentaphylla* (Handy, 1985), probably from Tahiti or the Marquesas. The Polynesians, including the Hawaiians, descended from the *Lapita* people who spread eastward from the Bismarck Archipelago and took yams, along with other vegetatively propagated crops, in their sailing canoes and distributed them throughout the Pacific Islands during prehistoric times. Botanists travelling with the French explorers, Bougainville and La Pérouse, reported that not less than five distinct *Dioscorea* spp. were cultivated in the Polynesian islands they visited.

The only American cultivated species, *D. trifida*, was probably taken to Ceylon by Portuguese traders during the 16th and 17th centuries. During the 19th century, it spread with missionaries throughout Asia, without much success, and all the way to the Pacific Islands, where it is still cultivated nowadays, although it is a minor yam species there. During the 19th and 20th centuries, the most important cultivated species (*D. alata*, *D. cayenensis* and *D. rotundata*) were distributed widely in all tropical countries by colonial powers and missionaries alike.

PRESENT GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

Yams are now cultivated in about 50 tropical countries, but not all (e.g. China) provide their annual production statistics to the Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO). The world annual production is approximately 50 million t fresh tubers. More than 96% of this is being cultivated in Africa, where four countries (Nigeria, Ivory Coast, Ghana and Benin) produce 90% of this output with more than 45 millions t/year.

The greater yam, *D. alata*, is the most widely distributed species in the humid and semi-humid tropics and, together with *D. rotundata*, accounts for the greater part of world production. It is an important food in the Pacific Islands and the Caribbean, where it has considerable social and cultural significance, and it is also grown in parts of upland Asia. In South America and

in most tropical countries, it is the preferred species because of its ease of cultivation, taste and long postharvest life, but in West Africa, it is considered as inferior for the production of the national dish *fufu* (or *futu*). In Ivory Coast, however, *D. alata* is increasingly popular as a high-value crop for urban markets and it accounts for 70% of overall production nationwide.

A few temperate countries also grow yam (Japan, France, China) and this is where, thanks to the long days and maximum solar radiation, the highest yields are obtained, reaching more than 20 t/ha.

Traditionally, and in most countries, yam farmers maintain a wide range of genetic diversity but as pressures on land availability increase, so fewer varieties are grown, intensifying the effects of yam diseases. In addition, yams need to be staked, but suitable materials are often in short supply and labour costs are high. Harvesting alone can account for 20% of total production costs.

The most important producing countries in Africa, Latin America, the Caribbean and Asia are presented in Table 15.2.

Nigeria is host country to IITA, located near the federal capital in Ibadan. IITA has been conducting long-term research programmes on yams for more than four decades. Nigerian farmers have the opportunity to be early beneficiaries of the technical packages developed by IITA scientists and improved cultivation techniques are adopted quickly and widely. However, the increases in production in West Africa during the past two decades were due largely to increases in cultivated area rather than in yield per hectare.

Through the diversity of cultivated species, cultivars and adaptation to various ecological zones and maturity periods, yams bring great flexibility to the annual cycle of food supply. The long tuber dormancy (between 2 and 4 months at ambient temperatures) ensures sufficient storage life so that food is secured before the rainy season, when food is scarce. Traditionally, yams are planted by smallholders, but large-scale commercial plantings are also being established in response to demand by processors. Increases in area and production have also been driven by urban demand for fresh tubers as food and for use as raw material for flours. Yam cultivation is relatively intensive compared to other root crops and in West Africa it costs three to five times as much as an equivalent volume of cassava. However, consumers' attachment to the taste of yams is such that they are still in great demand.

Latin America and the Caribbean rank a distant second among the three producing regions. The yield levels vary substantially from close to 18 t/ha in Jamaica to as low has 5.5 t/ha in Haiti. Asia and Oceania together account for less than 1% of global production, but this region enjoys higher yields than elsewhere.

Yam production faces various technical constraints in these three regions but opportunities exist for expanding their utilization. As a result of urbanization, diets are changing rapidly and the overall trend in developing countries is towards the consumption of more processed foods, such as ready-to-use yam flours, for example.

Table 15.2. Major yam producing countries in the world in 2006.

Region	Country	Production (thousand t)	Area (thousand ha)	Average yield (t/ha)
Africa	Nigeria	34,000	2,957	11.5
	Ivory Coast	5,012	577	8.6
	Ghana	4,102	319.4	12.8
	Benin	2,084	178	11.7
	Togo	585	57.7	10.2
	Central Africa	404	63.7	6.3
	Cameroon	293	38	7.7
	Chad	231	23.9	9.6
	Ethiopia	172	25.6	6.7
	Gabon	165	22.9	7.2
	Sudan	145	61.9	2.3
	Congo, Dem. Rep.	85	19.3	4.4
	Guinea	62	4.8	12.9
America	Colombia	333	28	11.8
	Brazil	236	25.7	9.2
	Haiti	207	37.3	5.5
	Jamaica	157	8.8	17.9
	Cuba	137	18.7	7.3
	Venezuela	77	8.9	8.6
	Panama	24	3.8	6.2
	Costa Rica	20	3.6	5.7
	Dominican Rep.	16	2.5	6.4
	Guyana	4.5	0.5	9.6
	Saint Vincent	1.7	0.2	8.5
Asia	Papua New Guinea	256	15.5	16.5
	Japan	204	8.8	23.3
	Solomon Islands	30	1.3	22.3
	Fiji	5	0.3	18.7
	Samoa	3	0.7	4.6

Source: www.fao.org (2007).

The international trade in yam is fairly limited, probably because the product has a somewhat low value and is perishable. There are, however, some ethnic markets in Europe for West African countries (Ghana is the first exporter), in the USA for Central American countries (Costa Rica is the first exporter) and in Australia and New Zealand for the small Pacific Island countries.

16

Taxonomy and Botany

CLASSIFICATION

The genus *Dioscorea* is the type genus of the family Dioscoreaceae and is the largest genus within this family of about 644 species (Govaerts *et al.*, 2007). All *Dioscorea* species are dioecious twining climbers producing dry capsules, although occasionally both male and female flowers can be found on the same plant. All species of economic importance are tuberous. The genus *Dioscorea* is divided into sections which have a taxonomic status. The main food yam species belong to five different sections: Enantiophyllum (*D. alata*, *D. cayenensis*, *D. nummularia*, *D. opposita*, *D. rotundata* and *D. transversa*), Combilium (*D. esculenta*), Opsophyton (*D. bulbifera*), Macrogynodium (*D. trifida*) and Lasiophyton (*D. pentaphylla*).

The *Dioscorea* spp. produce a tuber as an annual underground storage organ, which shrivels away when regrowth commences and a new tuber can be formed simultaneously. The yam tuber, unlike the Irish potato (*Solanum tuberosum*), lacks the anatomical characteristics of a modified stem structure; it has no buds or eyes, no scale leaves and no terminal bud at the distal end of the tuber. Some species form perennial tubers, which become larger and more lignified as the plant ages. There is tremendous variation in size, form and number of tubers per plant within and between species. The Enantiophyllum species usually produce one to three large tubers, while *D. esculenta* (Combilium) and *D. trifida* (Macrogynodium) produce a greater number of smaller tubers. The shape of the tuber in species producing small tubers is generally regular and their skin usually thinner than species producing large tubers.

The roots and the stems are renewed annually. Both type of species, annual- or perennial-producing tubers, spend the dry part of the year in dormancy, which can vary from 1 to 6 months. The root system is very superficial. Several thick and long roots develop rapidly after sprouting and reach considerable distances, 3–4 m in radius around the plant, to ensure that the developing vine is anchored firmly. When plants are cultivated in mounds, this development is

somewhat constrained. Some species, including the cultivated *D. esculenta*, produce roots near the surface that are armed with spines.

The stems are unable to support the weight of the leaves and have to climb by twining, but there are no specialized organs such as tendrils. The direction of twining, anticlockwise or clockwise, is a characteristic of each taxonomic section. Species of the Enantiophyllum section twine to the right (clockwise) and those of the Combilium, Opsophyton, Macrogynodium and Lasiophyton sections twine to the left. The stems may be winged, spiny or spineless, hairy or glabrous and circular, rectangular or polygonal in section (Coursey, 1967). After sprouting, the stem can remain erect to a height of almost a metre before it reaches a support. Some species (*D. cayenensis*, *D. esculenta* and *D. nummularia*) have spiny stems, especially at their base, to protect the plant and to assist in supporting the young stem. The length of the stem varies greatly between species, from a few metres for *D. esculenta* to more than 15 m for *D. nummularia*.

Some species (*D. alata*, *D. bulbifera* and *D. pentaphylla*) produce bulbils in the axils of the leaves. These bulbils are formed when the growth of the stems and leaves is complete and just before the aerial organs start to senesce. They contribute to the vegetative propagation of the plant in natural conditions and, being less dense (lower DM content) than the underground organs, they can float on water, allowing dispersion of the species. From a morphological point of view, they correspond to a condensed stem. Depending on genotypes, some are toxic, while others are produced in great number and are appreciated for their fine texture and taste (*D. bulbifera*).

The leaves are always carried on long, not sheating, petioles and are usually simple and cordate, but can also be lobed, consisting of three leaflets (*D. trifida*). Each leaf or leaflet has three primary nerves joining at the tip of the lamina. The leaves vary in size between species, between cultivars within species and between different parts of a single plant. Their average area is in the range 50–200 cm^2. Many species, including cultivated ones, have glands on the leaves producing extrafloral nectaries attractive to ants. It is thought that ants, by their aggressive behaviour, protect the young shoot apex of the yam stem against predators (McKey *et al.*, 1998). The arrangement of leaves on the stems (phyllotaxy) is spiral, although it appears either opposite or alternate, depending on species, and quite often it can be alternate on the lower part of the stem and opposite on the upper part.

The flowers are usually unisexual. Many cultivars flower only rarely and, even more rarely, set fertile seeds. Within all species, there are more male than female plants and male flowers are usually more numerous than female ones. The individual flowers are small (2–4 mm in diameter). The male and female flowers are borne in axilliary spikes. The male flower is composed of a calyx of three sepals and a corolla of three petals. There are usually two whorls of three stamens each. The stamens are usually erect and inserted towards the centre of the receptacle. The female flower has a trilocular ovary located below the corolla and there are three stigmas. The flowers are supposedly entomophilous

(Coursey, 1967) and, being insignificant in colour but sweetly scented, are thought to be pollinated by night-flying insects which do not require visual attraction, although the species involved have not yet been identified. Each loculus of the ovary contains two ovules (Govaerts *et al.*, 2007).

The fruits are dry dehiscent trilocular capsules (1–3 cm long) and, theoretically, each fruit can produce six seeds. They are not more than three times as long as they are wide, with two ovules in each of the three locules. The seeds are usually lenticular, not ridged, with wings all round the margins or restricted to their base or apex. They are flat and light and their wings are an efficient aid to their wind dispersion. When seed germinates, the plantlet establishes itself with the emergence of a radicle outside the thin seedcoat, which is followed immediately by the emergence of the first chlorophyllous leaf. The hypocotyledon zone develops and the leaf spreads out as the petiole extends. The first radicle then produces two or three roots and, during the following weeks, a complete root system develops rapidly.

MORPHOLOGICAL DESCRIPTION OF MAJOR CULTIVATED *DIOSCOREA* SPP.

D. alata (Enantiophyllum) (Fig. 16.1a, b, Fig. 16.2)

The stem cross-section is square with the corners being under the form of wings. Tremendous intraspecific variation exists and several hundred different

Fig. 16.1a, b. *Dioscorea alata* (Enantiophyllum), stem and leaves of two different genotypes.

Fig. 16.2. *Dioscorea alata,* tubers and cross-section.

morphotypes are cultivated. The tubers can be very large (up to 40 kg in weight and 2 m long), with an average of 3–5 kg/plant in 6–9 months, and present all sorts of shapes and a vast continuum of variation. The flesh colour can vary from homogeneous white to a deep purple. The shape of the leaves is very variable in size and form, with some rounded, elongated, uplifted or sharply pointed with a deep sinus. The phyllotaxy is opposite. The female flowers are carried in spikes which are up to 30 cm long and the male flowers are borne in shorter panicles. Most of the cultivars are sterile, but those which flower are mostly males. There is, therefore, an unbalanced sex ratio within diploids where male plants are dominant (3:1) (Abraham and Nair, 1990).

Although often described as a cultigen, *D. alata* has all the attributes of a normal species. When flowering male and female plants of equivalent ploidy levels are planted together, the female cultivars produce several hundred fertile seeds every year. The seeds have no dormancy, germinate readily at a high rate and it is not uncommon to find F_1 plants which can flower as early as their seminal generation, before being cloned and propagated.

A comprehensive comparison of morphological variation in a germplasm collection of 235 accessions from different geographical origins, including the Caribbean, West Africa, India, South-east Asia and Melanesia, led Martin and

Rhodes (1977) to identify PNG as the centre of greatest variation. Isozyme markers have also shown that the area of diversification for *D. alata* is Melanesia (Lebot *et al.*, 1998). It is cultivated by the Aborigines of northern Australia and its presence on that continent is likely an ancient introduction (Yen, 1995), probably by Australoids directly from the north of the Sahul plate (PNG) before the last rise in sea levels, more than 10,000 BP. In Melanesia, the gene pool includes a particularly confusing array of local cultivars with primitive forms and more than a thousand cultivars maintained in traditional gardens and in the feral state through reproduction from aerial bulbils. Various attempts to determine the intraspecific classification of *D. alata* using a morphological description of aerial and underground organs have failed to produce a clear structure. Martin and Rhodes (1977) suggested three groups:

- *Primitive*: very vigorous foliage, coarse, often feral plants, tuber flesh with anthocyanins, bulbils and becoming gluey when cooked;
- *Feo* (from the vernacular name of one cultivar): stem containing anthocyanins, unobtrusive wings, thorns, short leaves, dark green, triangular or digitate tubers with white flesh producing an irritating exudates;
- *Selected*: pleasant aroma when cooked, few anthocyanins and phenols, no oxidation of the white tuber flesh.

The use of morphological traits for classifying cultivars seems to be rather unreliable within *D. alata* because it is extremely widespread and variable. In practice, it is more appropriate to classify the numerous cultivars in different ploidy levels as this system is meaningful for breeding purposes (Malapa, 2005).

D. bulbifera (Opsophyton) (Fig. 16.3a, b, Fig. 16.4a, b)

The stems twine anticlockwise, are cylindrical and spineless and may climb up to 8 m. The leaves are large and simple, either opposite or alternate. The flowers are larger than other *Dioscorea* spp. and have spreading perianths. The female flowers are usually paired. Fertile seeds are produced easily and, in some cases, in Melanesia for example, *D. bulbifera* can be very invasive and behave as a weed that farmers have to remove. This species is characterized by the profuse production of large bulbils located at the base of the petioles. The largest bulbils can reach a diameter of 15 cm and a weight of 2 kg, but 300–500 g is the average size. Wild forms require detoxification by soaking sliced bulbils or tubers in water before boiling. Bulbils vary in shape, colour of skin, texture of skin and flesh colour and taste. The tuber has a reduced size: the largest ones reach 5 kg, but they can be very small. It is usually bitter but some cultivars produce palatable tubers that are sold in markets. The species is found in the wild state in Africa, Asia and Oceania and is now cultivated throughout the tropics. Chloroplast DNA studies have shown that the African and Asian

Fig. 16.3a, b. *Dioscorea bulbifera* (Opsophyton), stem, leaves, flowers and capsules.

Fig. 16.4a, b. *Dioscorea bulbifera,* cross-sections of bulbils from different genotypes.

genomes have diverged from each other at very ancient times, indicating independent domestication. A genome occurring in South-east Asia appears to be the most ancient Asian genome from which others found in insular regions (Melanesia and Polynesia) have been derived (Terauchi *et al.*, 1991).

D. cayenensis (Enantiophyllum) (Fig. 16.5, Fig. 16.6)

The stems are slender, cylindrical and mostly glabrous but covered with spines on the first metre above ground. Some cultivars carry very few spines, while others are armed with numerous and remarkable spines. The stems are covered with opposite petiolated leaves with a hastate heart shape and are truncated at their base with two short auricles. The new shoots are thick, sometimes with a purplish green appearance. The leaves are glabrous and have five or seven clearly apparent veins which start from the base but of which only three join at the tip of the lamina. The leaves are usually flat, broad and acuminate. Inflorescences are produced towards the distal parts of the branches. Male spikes can be single or up to four at the axil of each leaf. They

Fig. 16.5. *Dioscorea cayenensis* (Enantiophyllum), stem, leaves and male flowers.

Fig. 16.6. *Dioscorea cayenensis,* tubers. Previous PNC (primary nodal complex) and new PNC.

can reach up to 6–8 cm in length and bear more than 40 sessile male flowers with white sepals and brownish petals. Only male *D. cayenensis* plants seem to be found. The plant matures in 8–12 months. In its natural habitat, the West African forest zone, its growth is almost continuous and a new stem arises as soon as the old one has senesced. Tubers have a short dormancy period and do not store well. This is not a highly regarded species but it is robust, hardy, anthracnose resistant and high yielding. Its great advantage is that it can be harvested at almost any time of the year by 'milking' the plant: that is by cutting one tuber from the living plant, which will form a new tuber.

Hundreds of cultivars of *D. cayenensis* exist and are highly variable in their aerial and underground traits. In most cases, the tuber flesh is yellow, or with some traces corresponding to carotenoid compounds, and the species is, for that reason, known under the name of yellow Guinea yam. Numerous studies using morphological, isozyme and DNA markers and various numerical taxonomy techniques have attempted to classify them, with somewhat disappointing results. The species is native to West Africa, where farmers have put into cultivation genotypes collected in the wild and resulting from spontaneous sexual recombinations. *Dioscorea cayenensis* bear the same chloroplast DNA as *D. rotundata* (Terauchi *et al.*, 1993; Ramser *et al.*, 1996;

Chaïr *et al.*, 2005) but other studies clearly separate cultivars belonging to the two taxa. The situation is rather confusing and there are contradicting conclusions. Because of this uncomfortable situation, it has been suggested that all the West African cultivars that are not bulbiferous and have entire leaves be pooled under the same name of *D. cayenensis-rotundata* species complex. However, this aggregate includes thousands of morphotypes and so far there is no satisfying classification tool, morphological or molecular. The species status of *D. cayenensis* is clearly debatable and corresponds most likely to a group of cultivars rather than to a true species (Dumont *et al.*, 2006).

D. rotundata (Enantiophyllum)

The stems are glabrous, fistulose and streaked. When a new stem develops, it is thick with abundant prickles and pairs of cataphylls (large, broadly ovate bracts). Stout branches develop at right angles from the axils of these cataphylls. The bracts will then give place to paired leaves. These leaves are opposite, with a long petiole and are oval or almost round in shape. The petioles are almost as long as the leaves, which are almost as long as they are wide, glabrous and poorly indented at their base. The laminas have seven veins and their lower surface is much paler than the upper surface. The male flowers are white, borne on axillary spikes always shorter than the length of the lamina, filiform and glabrous. The flowers are sessile, scattered and solitary. The male inflorescences are approximately 5–8 cm long and can carry 20–30 flowers with three yellow sepals and petals. The female flowers are borne on spikes measuring up to 15–20 cm long and resulting in capsules with a cordate apex.

The growth cycle is of approximately 6–8 months and varies, depending on the numerous cultivars. The tubers may be produced in pairs or in small groups of four or five and have a long dormancy period of up to 5 months. Tuber shapes are varied but the flesh of the white Guinea yam does not vary much in colour. The tuber skin is dark and smooth and nearly free of rootlets. Cultivars are grouped into the double-harvest or early-maturing yams and the single-harvest or late-maturing yams. Some morphotypes are bitter and bitterness is attributed to physiological immaturity and unfavourable environmental conditions, although this phenomenon is still poorly documented. Differences between *D. cayenensis* and *D. rotundata* are far from obvious (Table 16.1) and are clearly questionable, as there is often more variation within than between the two groups (Dumont *et al.*, 2006).

D. esculenta (Combilium) (Fig. 16.7a, b)

This species is distributed widely throughout the tropics but is less cultivated than *D. alata* and *D. cayenensis-rotundata* because, although it is hardy and high

Table 16.1. Differences between *Dioscorea cayenensis* and *D. rotundata*.

Characteristics	*D. cayenensis*	*D. rotundata*
Climatic adaptation	Long rainy season	Short rainy season
Earliness of production	Late	Early
Dormancy	Short	Long
Number of harvests	One	Two
Colour of tuber	Yellow	White
Shape of leaves	Orbicular	Ovate
Starch granule	Small, triangular	Large, ovoid
Smell when cooked	Strong	Delicate
Number of stems	Approx. 8	4–12

Source: Martin and Rhodes (1978).

Fig. 16.7a, b. *Dioscorea esculenta* (Combilium), male inflorescences and tubers.

yielding, its tubers have somewhat limiting physico-chemical characteristics. The stems of the vine are cylindrical and very spiny, although the size and density of spines vary between gentotypes. They twine in an anticlockwise direction. The emerging leaves are covered with small hairs and show a light brown pigmentation. The leaves are cordate, simple, alternate and have a smooth, leathery and shiny texture and a light to dark green colour, depending

on genotypes. The male flowers are borne on 10–15 cm long spikes and female flowers are, so far, unknown. Numerous cultivars exist from India, through South-east Asia, Melanesia and the Pacific Islands, where it is a very ancient crop. However, compared to other major cultivated species, morphological variation is limited.

The individual tubers are quite small compared to other species but are produced in a considerable number per plant, from 5–20 annually. The tuber flesh colour varies from pure white to a deep purple. The total yield per plant is very high and the yield per ha can reach more than 128 t in 10 months (Van Wijmeersch and Bule, 1988). The tubers are of good palatability and they are often the yams preferred by westerners as they have a soft flesh texture similar to the Irish potato (*S. tuberosum*) and are free from toxicity. However, they tend to become very fibrous if left in the ground for too long. The species is hardy, is resistant to most yam diseases and has the advantage of being well adapted to mechanized cultivation. In Hawaii, the tubers are harvested with an ordinary potato uplifter or ginger harvester. In PNG, the species is becoming so popular that it is replacing *D. alata* in traditional agroforestry systems, thus contributing directly to its genetic erosion. In West Africa, however, this species is not appreciated because its chemotype has a low DM content, which makes it unsuitable for producing a good *fufu*. The dormancy period is rather short and, in storage, tubers start to sprout after only 1–2 months, depending on the temperature.

D. opposita (Enantiophyllum)

This is the only species of economic importance grown in temperate regions. The stems are round and the vines can climb up to 3–4 m, but not as high other species. The leaves are acuminate and opposite. Aerial bulbils are produced at the axils of the leaves and are often used for propagation, although they result in a much lower tuber yield. The tubers are spindle-shaped and can reach 1 m long but are relatively thin, with an average diameter of 8–10 cm. They descend vertically into the ground and their cultivation requires intensive land preparation to ease harvest, which often involves considerable labour. There are numerous cultivars and the trend is to select those with a more compact tuber shape. The tuber surface, especially towards the head, is quite hairy because of numerous small roots.

This species is also known under the names of *D. batatas* and *D. japonica* and is cultivated throughout China, southern Japan, Korea, Taiwan and the Ryuku Islands. It tolerates much colder temperatures than other *Dioscorea* spp. It has been introduced into France, where it is cultivated in the light, sandy soil of the Loire-et-Cher around Saint Claude-Montlivault and is exported annually to urban supermarkets in the French West Indies (Guadeloupe and Martinique).

D. nummularia (Enantiophyllum) (Fig. 16.8)

This high-yielding species is still obscure and has not been studied thoroughly. It is likely that different species are, in fact, misidentified under this binomial. The stems are round in cross-section with dense and usually numerous pronounced spines at their base. The upper portion of the vines is glabrous but some cultivars (e.g. 'Lapenai' in Vanuatu) have no spines at their base. The leaves are large, cordate and elliptic, with the ones located on the lower portion of the stem being opposite, while the upper ones are alternate. The tubers have a dark, rough and thick skin and are very large and almost independent. They vary in number and shape, some being round in cross-section, others flat or oval, generally shallow placed for cultivars and deeply placed for wild forms. True wild forms tend to produce deformed tubers of 2 m long and only 2–3 cm thick. The tuber flesh varies in the numerous cultivars, is white to purple in colour and some oxidize faster than others. Male inflorescences are single or up to four and measure up to 5 cm long. The female inflorescences can measure up to 15–20 cm long and are always single or in pairs. Numerous fertile seeds are produced every year.

Dioscorea nummularia is a very polymorphic species in the Pacific and has also been reported from Indonesia. It is the most important yam species in some parts of PNG, the Solomon Islands and some islands of Polynesia, Samoa

Fig. 16.8. *Dioscorea nummularia* (Enantiophyllum), capsules (cv. 'Lapenai').

for example (Cable and Wilson, 1984). In Vanuatu, it is highly valued for the quality of its tubers and is used in wedding ceremonies in gift exchanges for the bride (Malapa *et al.*, 2005b). It is very hardy, resistant to diseases and high yielding. Annual and perennial cultivars are known and can produce between 15 and 50 kg tubers/plant.

D. pentaphylla (Lasiophyton) (Fig. 16.9a, b)

The stems are very spiny, especially on the part close to the ground. The leaf is peculiar for a *Dioscorea* sp. and, as the name suggests, is composed of five leaflets arranged in palmate form, although some occasionally may produce only three. Numerous small bulbils, too small to be eaten, are produced on the vines and contribute to its natural vegetative propagation. It is a highly polymorphic species with numerous cultivars and not less than five botanical varieties have been proposed by taxonomists (*javanica*, *malaica*, *palmata*, *papuana* and *sacerdotalis*), but their value is debatable as a vast continuum of variation exists. It is cultivated in Indonesia but it is in Melanesia that it is widespread and important. It is an important food in times of scarcity and, unlike the other Lasiophyton species, the tubers are not toxic. A plant can produce, after a growth cycle of 10 months, an average yield of 5–10 kg of only one or two tubers per plant.

Fig. 16.9a, b. *Dioscorea pentaphylla* (Lasiophyton).

D. transversa (Enantiophyllum) (Fig. 16.10, Fig. 16.11a, b)

The stems tend to be lignified and develop no wings like those of *D. nummularia*, or very discrete wings like those of *D. alata*. Leaves are alternate basally on stems and opposite distally on stems. They are similar in shape to those of *D. alata* (elongate to cordate) but with thick and shiny-leathery laminas similar to those of *D. nummularia*. Bulbils are absent. Spines are few at stem base and present on both sides of the junction between stem and petiole, as in *D. nummularia*. The aerial parts contain anthocyanins and the young leaves and stems are bronze or poppy-brown. The stems twine towards the right, with alternate, cordiform, shiny leaves with purple lamina. *Dioscorea transversa* is immune to anthracnose but is susceptible to various viruses.

The cultivars are late maturing compared to *D. alata* (9–12 months) and are greatly valued for their high DM content and good organoleptic quality, which are similar to those of *D. nummularia*. Tuber shape varies according to the cultivar, the most common ones having a long neck. There are also attractive cultivars with neckless and compact tubers, with smooth epidermis. This is probably the least cultivated of all species but its potential remains to be

Fig. 16.10. *Dioscorea transversa* (Enantiophyllum), stem and leaves.

Fig. 16.11a, b *Dioscorea transversa* (Enantiophyllum), tubers and cross-section.

investigated thoroughly. *Dioscorea nummularia* and *D. transversa* are sometimes difficult to distinguish from one another. They are not cultivated in continental Asia and, so far, *D. transversa* has been reported from Melanesia and Australia only. Confusion over the morphology of *D. alata*, *D. nummularia* and *D. transversa* has been reported in the Philippines (Cruz and Ramirez, 1999), in Indonesia (Sastrapradja, 1982) and in New Caledonia (Bourret, 1973). There are few cultivars and all have white tuber flesh. This species is cultivated in Australia and Melanesia. It has been introduced into the French West Indies without evident success, but is hardy, drought tolerant, high yielding and resistant to anthracnose.

D. trifida (Macrogynodium) (Fig. 16.12)

The stem has a square section and is spineless. Its angles frequently are extended into wings broader than those of *D. alata*. The leaves may be opposite or alternate and are divided into three to five lobes, but not into separate leaflets (as in *D. pentaphylla*). Many individual, small but uniform tubers are produced, each measuring between 20–40 cm long. Numerous cultivars exist with tuber flesh varying from white, yellow, pink to purple and all have a pleasant aroma and highly appreciated taste. This species, which originates from northern South America (probably in the Guyanas), is very popular in the West Indies (it

Fig. 16.12. *Dioscorea trifida* (Macrogynodium).

is called *cousse couche* in Guadeloupe). It has been introduced into Melanesia, where it is also appreciated for its taste but cannot become a leading crop because of its comparatively low yield and DM content. This species is highly susceptible to viruses, especially to YMV, which are responsible for the decline of its cultivation in the West Indies.

RELATED SPECIES

Dioscorea spp. are difficult to describe and, within each section, the taxonomy is fairly complex. In PNG, for example, there are several species related to *D. alata* and *D. nummularia* which are not yet identified. Confusion also exists among the wild African yams. Molecular markers provide an alternative classification of the genotypes but it is often observed that the two systems, molecular and morphological, do not necessarily produce matching groups. It is very likely that so-called different species are, in fact, conspecific and that introgressions are more frequent than suspected. Gene flows occur between wild and cultivated genotypes of the same species (Scarcelli *et al.*, 2006) and it is possible

that they also occur between distinct species within the same section if these are sympatric.

An impressive amount of research has attempted to clarify the taxonomic positions of the two Guinea yams (*D. cayenensis* and *D. rotundata*). A controversial debate is still ongoing and emphasizes the complexity of *Dioscorea* taxonomy and the endless discussion between 'splitters' and 'lumpers'. According to Miège (1982), *D. cayenensis* was described by Lamarck in 1792 and *D. rotundata* was described by Poiret in 1813 but their descriptions were not sufficient to define the two species correctly and strictly because some characters, such as phyllotaxy, were not stable (e.g. leaves may be alternate or opposite on the same plant).

If the morphological descriptions are not conclusive, the molecular markers hardly clarify the debate. Hamon and Touré (1990b) consider that the two species belong to the complex *D. cayenensis-rotundata* rather than to two well-differentiated species. In Benin, however, isozymes (leaf proteins) differentiate *D. rotundata* from *D. cayenensis* accessions, supporting the idea that the two forms of Guinea yam represent distinct genetic entities (Dansi *et al.*, 2000). DNA marker (RAPD) analyses used to investigate genetic relationships of the two Guinea yams concluded that accessions could be clearly separated into two major groups corresponding to *D. rotundata* and *D. cayenensis*. Cultivars of *D. rotundata*, however, showed a high degree of DNA polymorphism and were separated into two major groups that appeared most closely related to *D. praehensilis* and *D. liebrechtsiana* rather than to *D. cayenensis*. It was therefore proposed that cultivars classified into *D. cayenensis* should be considered as a taxon separate from *D. rotundata* (Mignouna *et al.*, 2007).

On the other hand, studies conducted using chloroplast DNA simple sequence repeats (cpSSR) show that *D. cayenensis* and *D. rotundata* share the same haplotype. The morphotype *D. abyssinica* appears to be subdivided into two haplotypes. One of these haplotypes shares the same haplotype with the *D. cayenensis-rotundata* species complex and with morphotypes of *D. praehensilis*, suggesting that the three might belong to the same species. A similar case involves the three wild species, *D. minutiflora*, *D. smilacifolia* and *D. burkilliana*, which might be considered as one single genetic group, and are thought to belong to the same species (Chaïr *et al.*, 2005).

CYTOLOGY

Various protocols have been developed to count chromosomes in root tips at meiosis. Tuber pieces are germinated in a light substrate and root tips of approximately 1.5 cm long are treated in a suspension of α-monobromo- or chloro-naphthalene. The tips are then fixed in alcohol:acetic acid (3:1) and preserved at 5°C. The samples are hydrolysed for 6 min in HCL at 60°C and stained with Feulgen (Essad, 1984). An alternative, simplified protocol involves

the fixation of root tips in alcohol:acetic acid (3:1) without any pretreatment, their storage at room temperature for 48 h and squashing in 2% acetocarmine (Abraham and Nair, 1991).

Two base numbers ($x = 9$ and $x = 10$) have been determined and the two are present in America, Europe and Africa, while only $x = 10$ is present in Asia and Oceania (Essad, 1984). However, there has since been a debate regarding the base number of major cultivated species, which could well be $x = 20$. The situation is being clarified for *D. alata*. This species has been reported as tetra-, hexa- and octoploid, based on an x number of 10 and a $2n$ complement of 40, 60 and 80 chromosomes. Abraham and Nair (1991), while studying meiosis in 61 accessions, reported that all showed 20 bivalents at diakenesis or methaphase and concluded that the $2n = 40$ males may be considered as diploidized tetraploids. When studying the genetic relationships among 269 cultivars of *D. alata* from the South Pacific, Asia, Africa and the Caribbean, Lebot *et al.* (1998) observed that the MDH (malate dehydrogenase) enzyme system patterns exhibited a typical diploid segregation with the homozygous and heterozygous states of each locus. They also noted that the existing variation was due to numerous ancient sexual recombinations and that therefore *D. alata* was probably a true species and not a putative cultigen, as previously reported. Abraham (1998) observes that the $2n = 40$ chromosome types of *D. alata* produce bivalent formation and high fertility and considers that they should be allotetraploids because previous authors have hypothesized, on very dubious grounds, that this species could have an interspecific hybrid origin (with *D. persimilis* and *D. hamiltonii* as the putative contributors). He further observes that the $2n = 60$ chromosomes are trivalent forming. The most probable explanation is that he is, in fact, referring to diploids and to triploids. The diploid nature of $2n = 40$ chromosome types of *D. alata* is also evidenced from the microsatellite marker inheritance (Arnaud and Abraham, 2007). It is now most likely that *D. alata* is, in fact, a polyploid species with di- (40), tri- (60) and tetraploid (80) cultivars with a chromosome number of $x = 20$ rather than $x = 10$, as previously reported. It is observed that higher ploidy levels tend to produce larger tubers. This is quite clear for *D. alata* tetraploids (with 80 chromosomes) which produce long and large tubers, penetrating deep into the soil, often used as gifts and for ceremonial purposes. If tetraploids with compact tuber shape could be developed, they would present a definite advantage in cultivation.

The most cultivated yam in West Africa, *D. rotundata*, has 40 chromosomes and has been assumed to be tetraploid based on the widely accepted basic chromosome number of $x = 10$. Diploid segregation of isozymes (Zoundjihékpon *et al.*, 1994) and AFLP (Mignouna *et al.*, 2002a) have been observed and Daïnou *et al.* (2002) suggested that this species could be diploid ($2n = 2x = 40$) rather than tetraploid. The segregation studies of two isozyme loci and six microsatellite markers, both co-dominant, in the progeny of a self-fertilized, monoecious plant has confirmed these previous observations. For the eight markers, segregation

patterns could be explained by only two genetic models: diploidy or tetraploidy with two null alleles. However, given the nature of studied markers, the simplest hypothesis was that the parental plant was diploid. These results, combined with data from a diversity survey and results of other authors, led to the conclusion that *D. rotundata* was a diploid species with $2n = 2x = 40$ chromosomes (Scarcelli *et al.*, 2005b).

Microsatellite marker segregations have been used and suggest that the American species *D. trifida* also has a base chromosome number of 20 rather than 10, as was previously thought (Boussalem *et al.*, 2006).

While the situation is rather conclusive for *D. alata*, *D. rotundata* and *D. trifida*, that for other species is not yet confirmed, but it is reasonable to assume that other Enantiophyllum species could also have a base number of $x = 20$ rather than $x = 10$. Numerous chromosome counts have been produced and it is therefore possible to hypothesize that most cultivars could be di-, tri- or tetraploid rather than tetra-, hexa- or octoploid, as reported in the literature. Whatever the exact chromosome number in *Dioscorea* spp. is, this information is of academic rather than practical interest and will not change the way breeders recombine and improve yam genotypes.

It appears that polyploidy operates actively and that accessions with 40 chromosomes are the most numerous, followed by accessions with 20, 60 and 80 chromosomes. Accessions with 100 chromosomes (*D. bulbifera* and *D. esculenta*), 120 (*D. hastata*, *D. minutifolia* and *D. smilacifolia*) and 140 chromosomes (*D. opposita*, *D. pentaphylla* and *D. cayenensis*) have also been encountered. It is suggested that the variation in ploidy levels observed within some species and the obvious lack of correlations between polyploidy and food value indicates that polyploidy variation has not been involved in the process of speciation (Table 16.2).

Table 16.2. Reported chromosome numbers and ploidy levels in cultivated yams.

Dioscorea spp.	2*n* chromosome numbers	Reported ploidy levels
Dioscorea alata	40, 60, 80	2*x*, 3*x*, 4*x*, 6*x*, 8*x*
D. bulbifera	40, 60, 70, 80, 100	4*x*, 6*x*, 7*x*, 8*x*, 10*x*
D. cayenensis	18, 36, 54, 60, 80, 140	2*x*, 3*x*, 6*x*, 8*x*, 14*x*
D. esculenta	40, 60, 90, 100	4*x*, 6*x*, 9*x*, 10*x*
D. opposita	40, 140	4*x*, 14*x*
D. nummularia	60, 80, 100, 120	6*x*, 8*x*, 10*x*, 12*x*
D. pentaphylla	40, 70, 80, 140	4*x*, 7*x*, 8*x*, 14*x*
D. rotundata	40,	2*x*, 4*x*
D. transversa	80	8*x*
D. trifida	54, 72	6*x*, 8*x*

Source: Essad (1984); Zoundjihékpon *et al.* (1994); Daïnou *et al.* (2002); Mignouna *et al.* (2002a, b); Scarcelli *et al.* (2005b); Boussalem *et al.* (2006).

Flow cytometry is a rapid and reliable technique that allows the quantification of DNA content in a large number of nuclei. This technique has been applied successfully to yams. Three different ploidy levels were detected using flow cytometry in Guadeloupe for *D. alata* (Gamiette *et al.*, 1999) and in Cameroon in *D. cayenensis–D. rotundata* (Dansi *et al.*, 2001). It was concluded that the use of an appropriate flow cytometry technique gave results which were in agreement with chromosome counts and offered a reliable tool for routine ploidy determination in *Dioscorea* spp. It can therefore provide the necessary data for breeding programmes where the screening of large collections is a prerequisite before sexual recombination.

17

Breeding and Genetics

Several research institutes have contributed to yam breeding, working with the most economically important species (*D. alata* and *D. cayenensis-rotundata*) in various environments (Nigeria, India, Guadeloupe and Vanuatu) and numerous hybrids are now being evaluated. The other cultivated species (*D. bulbifera*, *D. esculenta*, *D. nummularia*, *D. Opposita*, *D. pentaphylla*, *D. transversa* and *D. trifida*), however, have been neglected and their germplasm is poorly documented.

OBJECTIVES AND SELECTION CRITERIA

The productivity of yam cultivation is under increasing pressure due to the shortening of fallows and because of reduction in soil fertility and pest and disease build-up. Yam cultivation is also threatened by the expansion of cassava, a crop requiring only half of its labour inputs per hectare. These labour inputs can be reduced when selecting genotypes that do not need expensive staking and produce shallow-growing tubers that are easy to harvest. But, there are numerous pests and diseases that are increasing in importance. Nematodes (*S. bradys* and *Meloidogyne* spp.) often interact with fungi (*Botryodiplodia*, *Fusarium*) and bacteria (*Erwinia* spp.) to damage *D. cayenensis-rotundata* tubers in the field and in storage. Anthracnose (*C. gloeosporioides*) and viruses infect *D. alata* foliage and insect pests also damage it.

An international *D. alata* germplasm collection was maintained and evaluated by the US Department of Agriculture in Mayaguez, Puerto Rico, in the 1970s. Each of more than 300 varieties collected throughout the tropics have been evaluated for 100 traits in the field, at harvest and in the laboratory and kitchen. This work resulted in the selection of five elite varieties: 'Florido', 'Forastero', 'Veeven', 'Gemelos' and 'Leone Globe'. They have since been distributed in many countries (Martin *et al.*, 1975). Due to its compact size and tuber shape, the 'Florido' variety was introduced into Ivory Coast from Puerto Rico in the early 1970s for a yam production mechanization project to be developed in the northern part of the country. For various reasons, the

mechanization of the harvest was never implemented but 'Florido' was adopted widely by farmers. It has since spread throughout the country and is spreading to other countries in West Africa. The reasons for its popularity include its flexibility of planting time, good storability and postharvest life and its tolerance to the internal brown spot disease (IBS), which usually affects other *D. alata* varieties in Ivory Coast. A good yam variety with superior attributes is adopted readily by farmers and spreads rapidly, even though the multiplication rate is low (Doumbia *et al.*, 2004).

It is therefore important to create and distribute new, improved yam varieties and, in doing so, breeders have to take into consideration both the agronomic constraints and the tastes of consumers, who may be hard to please. New modern uses by urban dwellers also necessitate the improvement of the physico-chemical characteristics of the tubers to extend their storage life. Traditionally, farmers are also yam breeders. Although they do not have a clear picture of the sexual and reproductive biology of their plants, they often select volunteer seedlings and insert them into their varietal portfolio.

A significant contribution to *D. trifida* breeding was made by INRA (Institut National de Recherches Agronomiques) in the 1960s in Guadeloupe. Various selections were obtained in 1971 with yields of approximately 30 t/ha unstaked, but no progress has been made in solving the major problem of *D. trifida*'s great sensitivity to viruses. Although this programme has been slowed down by the constant decrease of the crop's importance in Guadeloupe, it is thought that a more extensive exploration of germplasm should be pursued (Degras, 1993).

The breeding and selection of yams has been carried out in IITA since the early 1970s with the objective of improving yam-based systems and with the primary focus on *D. rotundata*, the most important species throughout the yam belt (Sadik, 1976; Wilson, 1982; Mignouna *et al.*, 2007). The principal objectives include:

- High and stable yield of marketable tubers.
- Suitability to prevalent cropping systems (plant architecture).
- Good quality (DM content, texture, taste, rate of oxidation).
- Resistance to biotic stresses in the field.
- Good postharvest storage.

Harvesting being the most expensive operation (in man-days) throughout the crop cycle, the long-term objectives are to release genotypes adapted to non-staked conditions and to partial or complete mechanical harvesting. Tubers with shallow setting, oval or round and tough-skinned are an advantage and plants with several smaller tubers per plant rather than one large one are preferable.

The objectives of INRA, CIRAD and CTCRI for the genetic improvement of *D. alata* are almost identical, except for an emphasis on the major disease of this species, the anthracnose caused by *C. gloeosporioides*. The physico-chemical

characteristics of *D. alata* are a major challenge for West African breeders. This species has very desirable agronomic attributes but its suitability to traditional processing is far from good. In Nigeria, improving the food quality of *D. alata* is a priority as this species is gaining in popularity among farmers because of its ease of cultivation, a situation observed throughout the yam belt from Cameroon to Guinea. Local Nigerian accessions are being evaluated for the suitability of their tubers to preparation of boiled and pounded yam, the national dish. Mealiness, colour and taste are important in the general preference for boiled yam but the consistency, the colour and the stickiness determine the general preference of the pounded yam. Although *D. alata* is an introduced species in Nigeria with a genetic base assumed to be narrow, two-thirds of the accessions have been identified as being suitable for the preparation of boiled tubers, while only half were assessed to be good for the popular pounded yam. The challenge now is to breed varieties good for pounded yam which are also resistant to anthracnose (Egesi *et al.*, 2003).

There have been few attempts to improve the other minor, neglected *Dioscorea* species, either through evaluation and selection or breeding. Germplasm collections have been made in Asian and Pacific countries, but they have not been assessed. These collections are important and need to be evaluated as there is anecdotal evidence that genetic resources of the minor *Dioscorea* species are being lost, and this will affect any future improvement programmes where broad genetic diversity will be needed. In general, information on these crops is difficult to obtain as much of it occurs in non-published reports. The importance of *D. nummularia* in the Pacific has been greatly underestimated. It is a highly polymorphic species with high yield potential. Genetic resources are now being collected and evaluated thoroughly in Vanuatu for their agronomic and breeding characteristics.

SEXUAL REPRODUCTION AND STERILITY

There are large germplasm collections and thousands of accessions have been screened to identify, over the years, parental genotypes with breeding potential. Advances have been made in understanding the reproductive biology of yams, especially of *D. alata* and *D. cayenensis-rotundata*.

In India, clones of *D. alata* flower from mid-September to the end of November. In Vanuatu, in the southern hemisphere, they flower from mid-April to the end of June. Flowering is synchronized between clones of the same genotypes and, in large collections, this trait is an easy way to trace duplicates. After the initiation of the floral primordia, the maturation period for male flowers is about 4 weeks and for female flowers about 3 weeks. Anthesis of the male flowers occurs around noon and the pollen remains viable for about 4 h. Both male and female flowers produce a strong pleasant scent upon anthesis. The male flowers remain open for only 4 h, while the blooming duration of the

female flowers can last 10 days (Abraham and Nair, 1990). After pollination, there is usually a high percentage of fruit set, unless different ploidy levels are involved. High relative humidity usually favours high fruit set in polycross plots.

A few techniques have been developed to extend the pollination period and improve synchronization between male and female plants of *D. rotundata*. It appears that hermetic cold storage of the pollen, without pre-drying and in viable condition, at –20°C or –80°C for periods as long as 2 years or more is an efficient means of conservation. Hand pollination with *D. rotundata* frozen pollen kept at –80°C for 1 year gave more than 69% fruit set and about 50% of fruit set after 2 years of preservation. This simple technique allows the pollination of non-ovelapping male and female plants (Daniel *et al.*, 2002).

Unfortunately, quite often, the varieties which have the most desirable characteristics, either agronomic (e.g. compact tubers) or palatability (e.g. appropriate chemotype), are those which do not flower. Different flower induction techniques have been attempted, with disappointing results. In experiments in 2001–2003, 50-day-old plants of four varieties of *D. rotundata* were exposed to 10 h (short) day length for 15 days, 14 h for 30 days or constant 24 h, with natural day length as the control. Under natural day length, the male varieties flowererd earlier than the female. Short day length delays and reduces the intensity of development of inflorescences, but response to 14 h and 24 h treatments differs between varieties, some being more sensitive than others (Shiwachi *et al.*, 2005a). It is observed, however, that the plantation of large tubers and the trellising of the vines on long stakes and wires promote flowering.

CROSSING TECHNIQUES AND TRUE SEED PRODUCTION

An efficient and reliable controlled pollination technique is necessary to produce full sibs and progenies aimed at Mendelian segregation studies. Abraham and Nair (1990) compared two methods of pollination for *D. alata*: the so-called 'pencil method' and the 'brush method'. For the first, the tiny male flower is held between the fingernails of thumb and index fingers on the left hand while the anthers are scooped out of the flower using a sharpened lead pencil held in the right hand. The female flower is then held upright with the left hand and the excised anther is applied to the stigma by inserting the pencil tip between the perianths of the female flower. It is easier if two people are involved as one person can perform the pollination while the other person lifts out the anther with the pencil tip to pass it over for transfer on the stigma. The second method uses a camel-hair brush with only a few bristles whose length is reduced to only 3 mm. The pollen from dehisced anthers is taken out and deposited on the stigma with the brush. There are significant differences in fruit set rates between the two methods (Table 17.1). The pencil method proves to be more efficient but, for the two methods, productivity is improved if two persons are involved.

Table 17.1. Comparison of the two hand-pollination methods for *Dioscorea alata.*

Pollination method	Flowers pollinated by hour		Fruit set %*
	1 person	2 persons	
Pencil	98	240	74.2*
Brush	86	208	51.4*

Note: *Averages of columns 2 and 3, significant at 5% level. Source: Abraham and Nair (1990).

In Nigeria, and for *D. rotundata* which has male flowers of a comparable size, the brush method has been found superior to two other methods producing only 27.8% of fruit set (Akoroda *et al.*, 1981).

In India, the absence of efficient pollinators contributes to low seed set and, although it is time-consuming and labour-expensive, artificial pollination without bagging the female flowers is the only efficient way of producing hybrids. The rather long period of stigma receptivity of *D. alata* (Abraham and Nair, 1990) and *D. rotundata* (Akoroda, 1983a) is an advantage for breeders.

In Ivory Coast, it has been shown that for *D. cayenensis-rotundata*, polycross nurseries composed of parents selected carefully for their ploidy level and sex and established in plots isolated from pollen pollution can set fruits and produce considerable quantities of viable botanical seeds in normal conditions. This field design offers the possibility of producing substantial populations of half-sibs (only the mothers being known) and to initiate a cycle of recurrent selection (Zoundjihékpon, 1993).

In Vanuatu and New Caledonia, open and natural pollinations are very successful in *D. alata* and numerous seeds are produced in polycross nurseries in years where anthracnose damage is low. Profuse fruit set occurs naturally but plants bearing capsules tend to be burnt by the anthracnose epidemy when the weather is wet and weekly fungicide sprays are necessary in order to keep plants alive until the seeds are fully mature. Flowering ability is improved in the hybrids and flowers can be observed as soon as the first clonal generation, and occasionally as soon as the F_1, in the seminal generation.

The rate of flowering increases with the number of crossing cycles and Sadik (1976) reported an increase from 47% to 80% between cultivars and F_1 clones, with a sex ratio tending to balance and to be less favourable to the males. In most breeding programmes, the number of seed-setting cultivars is limited but, in the breeding process, it soon becomes possible to choose from clones resulting from crossings and, in fact, tremendous variation is found in the progenies because of the highly heterozygous genetic make-up of yams.

However, one should take care that dehiscing capsules do not open in the field, releasing their seeds, which will be lost. Capsules are harvested when fully mature, which is approximately 12 weeks after pollination, and can be kept in

well-aerated bags. Yam seeds are fairly easy to germinate. *Dioscorea alata* seeds do not show any form of dormancy and can be sown directly after harvest on any commercial seed-raising substrate, similar to those used for vegetable species. Seeds germinate between 2 and 3 weeks after sowing and their germination can continue for several weeks. When the seedlings have reached the 2- to 3-leaf stage, they are transplanted into small pots for 4–6 weeks before being transplanted to the field (1 × 0.50 m). In IITA, when large populations of 10,000 or more seedlings are managed, a procedure involving high-density nursery beds is giving interesting results. Seedbeds are covered with palm leaves. When seedlings reach the 2- to 3-leaf stage, they are thinned out to leave 15 cm between each plant and the extra plants are transplanted in other nursery beds. The vines are trained on strings 1.5 m high and the palm leaves are removed when the seedlings are well established. Tubers produced in this way are smaller because of the close spacing (Wilson, 1982a).

In Vanuatu, young seedlings raised in *Jiffy*® pots are transplanted directly into the field at wide spacings (1 × 1 m) and produce large tubers (from 200 g to 2 kg) after 10 months of growth when staked.

SELECTION METHODS AND PROGRAMMES

Breeding programmes start with a comprehensive characterization of the germplasm collected from farmers' fields. This is done using internationally standardized agromorphological descriptors (IPGRI/IITA, 1997). A critical step also involves the identification of genotypes with good tuber quality and equivalent ploidy levels. Parents showing traits relevant to the objectives of the breeding programme are then selected for hybridization.

The breeding process of *Dioscorea* spp. is very long, between 8 and 10 years, because of the very low multiplication rate of propagules and the existence of a juvenile phase during the seminal generation. Plants resulting from true botanical seeds cannot be evaluated properly during their first generation (F_1) and have to be propagated clonally before a reasonable assessment of their characteristics can be done during the first clonal generation (C_1). As with other root crop species, there are no means for evaluating accurately the important physico-chemical characteristics of the tubers in early screening of the progenies. Present techniques are based on the sensory evaluation of food products and cannot be applied to large numbers at the early stages of the selection process when the tubers per clone are still few and small.

In Nigeria, selection trials start with an unreplicated evaluation of the numerous hybrids with usually only one plant per genotype. The first clonal evaluation is followed by preliminary (PYT), advanced (AYT) and uniform yield trials (UYT) conducted with randomized complete block design composed of three to six replications. After 5 years of field evaluation, the selected genotypes can pass through a series of cooking and processing tests aimed at

evaluating their properties. In the meantime, field evaluation proceeds with scoring of pest and disease tolerance. Because the multiplication rate is very slow, it is necessary to go through intensive propagation over 6 years in order to obtain sufficient material for the establishment of multi-locational trials. A collaborative evaluation of IITA breeding lines conducted with the National Root Crop Research Institute of Nigeria (NRCRI) permitted the release of new varieties in 2001 and 2003 (Mignouna *et al.*, 2007).

In India, CTCRI in Trivandrum (Kerala) has developed a *D. alata* breeding programme over the past two decades and several improved varieties have been released officially to growers. Remarkable differences are observed in the performance of sexually propagated seedlings of the greater yam (*D. alata*) and their subsequent clonal derivatives. Seedlings are generally poor in field vigour, flowering and tuber yield, whereas their clonal descendants are vigorous and characterized by greater flowering and yield. In the second clonal generation (C_2), the majority of genotypes flower, facilitating hybridization, and tuber yield increases significantly, aiding selection of high yielders. Sexually propagated seedlings of *D. alata* have genetic potential which requires at least two generations of clonal propagation to be expressed fully (Abraham, 2002).

The evolution of important morphological characteristics has also been studied with *D. alata* progenies. Among the sexual progenies, oval and irregular-shaped tubers often undergo changes of shape through seedling to clonal generations, whereas the cylindrical tuber shape seems to be fairly stable across generations. In two families, approximately 56% and 67% of the seedlings, respectively, had cylindrical tubers which remained stable. Among the remaining seedlings having oval and irregular tubers, approximately 75% of the oval tubers and 47% of the irregular tubers changed their shape between the first and second clonal generations. However, after the second and subsequent clonal generations, the tuber shapes remained stable as a clonal character. Thus, in the third clonal generation, there were only 24% and 30% of the original population having oval and/or irregular tuber shapes, respectively. Since compact tuber shape is one of the most desirable attributes of a good cultivar, direct selection can be practised, starting from the second clonal harvest or later, along with other desirable attributes (Abraham *et al.*, 2006).

In Guadeloupe, *D. trifida* is highly valued for its organoleptic qualities but is too sensitive to viruses, especially to YMV (yam mosaic virus), to be cultivated widely. INRA has attempted to ascertain from 222 hybrids of seed origin whether any had a level of resistance to viruses or merely a more tardy appearance of symptoms. The field study showed that no hybrids were truly resistant but some had tolerance and could therefore be useful for future research (Arnolin and Lombion, 2005). From 1966 until 1980, INRA introduced cultivars of *D. alata* resistant to anthracnose. In 1989, new strains of the disease became virulent on the resistant cultivar 'Plimbite'. After 4 years of trials, only three cultivars were still resistant to the disease: 'Belep' (from

New Caledonia), 'Oriental' and 'Kinabayo' (from the Philippines). In 1993, INRA initiated a breeding programme to create resistant cultivars. Despite the small number of resistant females that could be used as parents, numerous resistant cultivars were obtained. Two of these new hybrids: 'Boutou' and 'INRA 15' are, at present, cultivated but their comparative advantages over others are not clear-cut.

HERITABILITY OF MAJOR TRAITS

In *D. rotundata*, heritability has been found to be high for eight agromorphological traits (Table 17.2). However, although heritability was high for leaf size, plant leafiness and tuber yield, only the latter had a corresponding high genetic advance. For this species, rapid genetic advance can be achieved for yield under uniform environment by single plant selections followed by clonal propagation (Akoroda, 1983b).

For *D. cayenensis*, various phenotypic variances, coefficients of variation, expected genetic advances and correlation coefficients have been estimated for seven agronomic traits. Plant leafiness, virus infection, number of tubers per plant and tuber yield show high expected genetic advances, while highly significant positive correlations are observed between tuber yield, plant leafiness and vine dry weight. It is also suggested that resistance to leaf virus infection, as expressed by foliage vigour, is the most important trait for selecting high-yielding genotypes (Akoroda, 1984).

In Nigeria, a study aimed at understanding the *D. rotundata* genetic control of YMV resistance has shown that it can be expressed by the action of a single

Table 17.2. Mean, phenotypic and genotypic coefficients of variation, heritability and expected genetic advance of eight characters in *Dioscorea rotundata*.

Character	Mean	Phenotypic (CV%)	Genotypic (CV%)	Heritability (%)	Expected genetic advance (% of mean)
Time to vine emergence	6.94	22.3	17.4	38.0	22.0
Leaf size	2.30	12.4	18.0	67.8	30.5
Leaf virus infection	1.66	32.2	28.2	43.4	38.2
Plant leafiness	2.86	20.6	15.5	66.8	26.0
Shoot height	2.59	17.3	15.7	45.1	21.7
Vine dry weight	74.65	41.3	39.2	47.4	55.5
No. of tubers/plant	1.24	39.8	10.6	6.6	5.6
Tuber yield/plant	2.13	40.1	47.3	58.1	74.3

Source: Akoroda (1983b).

dominant gene in simplex condition or a major recessive gene in duplex condition (Mignouna *et al.*, 2001a). In some genotypes, the recessive state of YMV resistance means that this type of resistance is difficult to trace in field screenings and necessitates molecular tools for accurate identification. Resistance of *D. alata* to a moderately virulent strain of *C. gloeosporioides* was found to be strain-specific and appeared to be controlled by a single major dominant locus (Mignouna *et al.*, 2001b). Breeding for anthracnose resistance will have to develop varieties carrying many different genes for resistance in order to provide a fairly sustainable advantage against a fungus with many different strains (Mignouna *et al.*, 2007).

GENOTYPE × ENVIRONMENT INTERACTIONS

G × E interactions are a major challenge to breeders and farmers alike because they cause serious difficulties in selecting cultivars for diverse environments. Resistance or tolerance to anthracnose is a typical example and, for a given variety, the incidence of the disease on the foliage of a clone varies greatly, depending on the environment. In some islands, for example, the performance of a particular variety will differ between the windward (wet) side and the leeward (drier) side as the fungus pressure differs according to the local climate. Sources of virus inoculum also differ from one place to another, and so does the susceptibility of a given genotype. It is therefore necessary to assess early in the selection process adaptation and yield stability across different environments of promising genotypes evaluated on research stations. There are numerous reports of varieties performing well on a station and being disappointing when distributed and, vice versa, some varieties perform surprisingly well in farmers' fields.

Significant G × E interaction for a quantitative trait reduces the usefulness of the genotype over all locations. It reduces the correlation between agronomic and genotypic values and confuses yield evaluation. As most yam cultivars are present in the field for 8–10 months, they are exposed to numerous stresses. In Nigeria, *D. alata* yield stability has been studied using six different genotypes, across five major yam growing areas and two cropping seasons. It appears that G × E interaction affects fresh tuber yields significantly. Genotype performance stability is affected by biotic and abiotic stresses (Egesi *et al.*, 2005).

In Ghana, some work has been done to assess G × E interaction on the tuber yield of 18 *D. cayenensis* varieties. Different experiments were conducted in 12 different environments and the analysis identified three *D. cayenensis* mega-environments. Two-thirds of the tested genotypes were identified as redundant (Otoo *et al.*, 2006a). Multi-locational evaluation has also involved six *D. rotundata* hybrids and one cultivar, which were evaluated across 13 environments. Highly significant G × E effects were observed on the yield of the tested genotypes. However, a high and stable yielding hybrid (89/02665) was

identified and released formally in 2005 under a variety name: 'Mankrong Pona'. It was concluded that yam genetic improvement should focus on multiple disease and pest resistance which could guarantee stability of the crop (Otoo *et al.*, 2006b).

These conclusions have obvious bearings on breeding programmes and tend to emphasize the importance of decentralizing agronomic evaluation as soon as possible in the slow improvement process. The variability required to suit different agroecological conditions and climatic changes can be obtained only by segregating populations of parents of diverse geographical origins. If crosses focus on a few traits known to be important, then progress might be rapid for these traits. Broadening the genetic base of the breeding programmes, however, needs to take account of the possible introduction of viruses or virus strains. Although guidelines exist for the safe movement of yams (Brunt *et al.*, 1989), there has been little official sharing of germplasm between countries.

USE OF RELATED SPECIES

Farmers' use of genotypes resulting from gene flows between cultivated and wild yams has been described profusely in the case of West Africa (Dumont *et al.*, 2006). Wild related species are not used yet in breeding programmes, although it is quite clear that they exhibit useful traits. For example, for the African Enantiophyllum (*D. cayenensis* and *D. rotundata*), the wild reservoir composed of *D. abyssinica* and *D. praehensilis* offer opportunities for capturing resistance to some virus strains. There are, however, some limits to doing so, such as the possible introduction of deleterious physico-chemical characteristics of tubers. It has been shown, using microsatellite markers, that many of the spontaneous yams collected by farmers in Benin for domestication are wild or hybrid genotypes. Through this capture process, farmers can create new varieties and this practice permits the cultivation of the best genotypes (Scarcelli *et al.*, 2006).

For *D. alata*, the situation is somewhat similar and interspecific hybridization with the related Enantiophyllum species, *D. nummularia* and *D. transversa*, may well produce anthracnose resistance. As many genotypes present 40 chromosomes ($2n = 2x = 40$), the two major Enantiophyllum gene pools, the African one (*D. cayenensis-rotundata*) with the Asian one (*D. alata-nummularia-transversa*), probably can be combined. Species barriers are probably less solid than initially thought. Enantiophyllum male and female plants of the same ploidy levels probably could be crossed and if diverse attempts, conducted in IITA and CTCRI, have failed so far, success is not excluded if breeders could have access to appropriate germplasm. Wide crosses with a great number of related species will give breeders access to a wide range of useful genes. It might be necessary, however, to develop some embryo rescue techniques first.

POLYPLOIDY BREEDING

Almost a decade of data recording on the harvest of the Vanuatu germplasm collection composed of more than 300 accessions of *D. alata* has shown that, on average, plants with 40 chromosomes (diploids) yield 2 kg fresh tubers/plant, while plants with 60 chromosomes (triploids) yield 2.5 kg/plant and plants with 80 chromosomes (tetraploids) can yield more than 3 kg/plant. These are low yields obtained with low inputs and the yield potential of these varieties is higher but the influence of the ploidy level on the yield seems to be confirmed. Breeders are attempting to produce round and compact cultivars with 60 or 80 chromosomes, as it is most likely that this type of genotype would be useful. Plants with 60 chromosomes are produced by crossing genotypes with 40 and 80 chromosomes. The occurrence of male and female plants having 80 chromosomes offers great perspectives for the improvement of the crop. These plants usually produce an exhuberant foliage with large leaves. This is the case, for example, for two recommended varieties in New Caledonia, 'Nouméa blanc' and 'Nouméa rouge', which both have 80 chromosomes and are very high yielding. In yams, as in other plant species (e.g. bananas and the Irish potato), an elevation of the ploidy level and chromosome number is associated with yield increase. This is also quite obvious when comparing different *Dioscorea* species with low (*D. tokoro*) and high (*D. nummularia*) chromosome numbers.

RAPID VEGETATIVE PROPAGATION

Breeding programmes depend on the efficiency of the rapid propagation technique, either to propagate recently introduced genotypes which will be used as parents in the selection cycles or to propagate a recently improved hybrid for advanced clonal evaluation or distribution. In Nigeria, IITA and NRCRI jointly have developed the mini-sett technique, which is an efficient seed tuber production system. Selected mother tubers are cut into 20–40 small pieces called mini-setts. With appropriate treatment, each of them develops into a full plant producing a seed tuber in a few months. The tubers are selected when dormancy stops, approximately 2–3 months after harvesting, depending on species and countries. The mother tuber is cut into several cylindrical pieces, each about 5 cm long. Each of these is cut again longitudinally into two, three or four pieces, each with a portion of skin, or periderm. These freshly cut mini-setts are soaked in any wide spectrum fungicide and allowed to dry in light shade for 1–2 h. In some cases, healing is improved by applying wood ash to the fresh cuts. The mini-setts are then spread in nursery beds on 2–3 cm of moist sawdust for sprouting. They can also be sprouted in baskets or boxes, or even in polyethylene bags. When they just start to sprout, the mini-setts are transplanted into the field, under natural or plastic mulch (at a density of 80,000 plants/ha, 1.00 × 0.25 m). From mini-setts as small as 20–30 g, it is

Table 17.3. Comparison of multiplication rate per hectare between the traditional seed yam method and the mini-sett technique over 3 years.

Year	Traditional (A)	Mini-sett (B)	B/A
1	10,000	60,000	6
2	50,000	1,800,000	36
3	250,000	54,000,000	216

Source: Otoo *et al.* (1987).

possible to harvest, 5–6 months after planting, seed tubers weighing up to 1 kg. In most breeding programmes, the multiplication in the field to obtain planting material is carried out routinely using mini-setts (Otoo *et al.*, 1987) (Table 17.3).

The use of rooted stem cuttings for the production of planting setts is a technique first developed in IITA (Akoroda and Okonmah, 1982; Wilson, 1982a), which not only accelerates propagation of selected clones but, if carried out with sterilized substrate, produces minitubers free of nematodes. The best results are obtained when the cuttings are taken on plants in full vegetative phase, before tuber initiation. Sections of young vine bearing four to five nodes are cut with a clean, sharp knife and the leaves from the bottom three nodes are removed. The laminas of the upper ones are reduced by half. The prepared cuttings are then planted in a slanting position in trays filled with steam-sterilized shredded coir (coco peat) or carbonized rice husk and maintained in a healthy condition by spraying fungicides at regular intervals. These vine cuttings can be used to produce minitubers within 100–120 days, which can be replanted to produce tubers large enough for planting. It is, however, observed that some genotypes perform much better than others (Acha *et al.*, 2004; Shiwachi *et al.*, 2005b).

Multiplication of yam by *in vitro* growth of nodal segments is a practical way for rapid clonal multiplication but, in tropical countries, only a few agricultural research stations can afford to do it. *In vitro* techniques are also used for the rapid propagation of virus-free clonal material (Mantell *et al.*, 1978; Mantell and Hugo, 1989). Antisera have been produced for several of the viruses infecting cultivated yams and diagnostic protocols have been developed (Phillips *et al.*, 1999). However, for all species, meristem culture techniques or antiviral compounds are needed to raise healthier planting materials. Plants are grown in quarantine glasshouses from small tuber pieces. Nodes taken from these plants are surface-sterilized and transferred to a range of tissue culture media of different composition and incubated in a controlled light and temperature (14 h light at 29°C and 10 h darkness at 25°C). Despite taking great care over the surface sterilization of nodes, several accessions can fail to be established in tissue culture. Many nodes simply fail to grow and are subsequently overgrown with what is believed to be endophytic fungi, bacteria

or yeasts. The medium that gives the most consistent regeneration rates for meristem tips is composed as follows: MS based medium, 30 g/l sucrose, 20 mg/l cysteine, 100 mg/l inositol, 80 mg/l adenine, 0.2 mg/l naphthaleneacetic acid (NAA), 0.15 mg/l 6-benzyl-aminopurine and 0.08 mg/l gibberellic acid (GA_3). Dissected meristem tips are placed either on filter paper bridges in liquid medium or on the surface of medium of the same composition but solidified with 2 g/l phytogel (SPYN, 2003).

In vitro microtuber production has been studied as an alternative for safely propagating and distributing germplasm, as microtubers have been reported as less vulnerable to transport conditions and easier to establish in the soil (Jean and Capadocia, 1991; John *et al.*, 1993). In Ghana, various attempts have been made to improve the efficiency of the technique. The effect of sequential treatment (6, 8 or 10 weeks) with tuberization medium (T-medium) followed by MS medium on the sizes and weights of microtubers in shoot cultures of *D. rotundata* has been evaluated on three local cultivars ('Puna', 'Punjo' and 'Kablete'). Culturing the plants on T-medium for 8 and 10 weeks, followed by MS medium, gave the highest induction of microtubers, the best frequency and yield and highest individual microtuber weights (Klu *et al.*, 2005). The morphogenesis, growth and *in vitro* microtuber formation have been found to be controlled by external factors. The number of shoots and nodes is increased by the addition of jasmonic acid, which also induces an increase in microtuber numbers (Ovono *et al.*, 2007). However, this technique is not being used on a routine basis and *in vitro* plantlets are still the most practical way of distributing germplasm internationally. *In vitro* conservation can be done on slow-growth medium at lower than ambient temperatures, but subculturing is required at 6–12 month intervals (Malaurie *et al.*, 1993).

USE OF MOLECULAR MARKERS

Isozymes are useful because of their low cost, which allows the screening of a large number – several hundreds – of accessions. These markers have been used successfully to characterize the genetic diversity of African yams and to clarify their traditional classification system (Hamon and Touré, 1990a, b). Four polymorphic enzyme systems also have been used for genetic relationship studies among 269 accessions of *D. alata* originating from the South Pacific, Asia, Africa and the Caribbean. However, the rather low polymorphism of these markers revealed no correlation between genetic groups, geographical origins, phenotypic traits and/or physico-chemical groups. The most widespread *D. alata* cultivars seem to present a narrow genetic base but the existing variation is obviously due also to ancient sexual recombinations, as demonstrated by the isozyme patterns (Lebot *et al.*, 1998).

DNA markers (RFLPs, AFLPs, RAPDs and SSRs) are more accurate than isozymes but are labour-intensive and expensive. These markers are useful for

demonstrating the relationships between cultivated yams (*D. cayenensis-rotundata*) and wild relatives in West Africa (Mignouna *et al.*, 2007), between yams of Jamaica (Asemota *et al.*, 1996) and varieties of *D. bulbifera* (Ramser *et al.*, 1996) and *D. alata* (Malapa *et al.*, 2005a, b). Comparison of pairwise distance averages between *D. alata* and the other species showed the decreasing genetic similarities of 54%, 26%, 15%, 9%, 8%, 6% and 5% with *D. transversa*, *D. persimilis*, *D. cayenensis-rotundata*, *D. pentaphylla*, *D. bulbifera*, *D. esculenta* and *D. trifida*, respectively (Fig. 17.1).

These results are consistent with the biosystematics of the genus *Dioscorea* in respect to the botanical sections and the geographic origins of these species. Comparison of AFLP genetic similarity between *D. alata*, *D. transversa* and *D. persimilis* did not support previous hypotheses involving *D. persimilis* in the origin of *D. alata* (Coursey, 1967; Mignouna *et al.*, 2001b). AFLP markers employed to assess intraspecific variability among 83 accessions of *D. alata* could not differentiate Asian, African and Melanesian cultivars, confirming that clones have been distributed widely but the diversification process is still ongoing, involving fixed somatic mutations, polyploidization and sexual recombination. Hence, the tremendous variation observed in *D. alata* at the morphological level could also reflect a genomic plasticity magnified by the outcrossing mating system (Malapa *et al.*, 2005a).

Fig. 17.1. Strict consensus tree from an AFLP data matrix among eight edible *Dioscorea* spp.: *D. alata* (ala), *D. bulbifera* (bulb), *D. cayenensis-rotundata* (cayen), *D. esculenta* (escu), *D. pentaphylla* (pent), *D. persimilis* (per), *D. transversa* (trans), *D. trifida* (trif) Source: Malapa *et al.* (2005a).

Another AFLP study involving 53 accessions of diverse geographic origins in West and central Africa and Puerto Rico revealed similar results. The accessions could be clustered into groups that were a mixture of accessions of different geographical origins, indicating that geography has not played a major role in the differentiation of the species. A few accessions clustered very tightly, suggesting that there may be duplicate accessions in the collection. Although *D. alata* was an introduced species in Africa, the genetic variation observed at the AFLP level was found to constitute a good basis for genetic improvement (Egesi *et al.*, 2006).

AFLP markers have been used also to investigate the genetic diversity in 48 yam accessions from Ethiopia and to assess their relatedness to commonly cultivated species in West Africa and reveal that Ethiopian accessions are significantly distinct. The groups detected by AFLP markers are, however, highly consistent with the local yam classification system and also reflect the main structure of morphological diversity (Tamiru *et al.*, 2007).

Microsatellite markers have been developed for yams (Chaïr *et al.*, 2005) for phylogenetic studies. They allow an accurate assessment of the genetic distances between parents, maximizing the chances of getting significant variation in the offspring. Microsatellite markers which have a higher resolution than other co-dominant markers, such as isozymes, have also been developed for *D. japonica* (Mizuki *et al.*, 2005) and for the Guinea yams and *D. alata*. The structure of the genetic diversity revealed with these markers in Benin appears to be the result of farmers' crop management practices, and cultivar diversity has a geographical component (Tostain *et al.*, 2006, 2007).

TRANSGENIC TECHNOLOGIES

Yam genome mapping has been initiated (Mignouna *et al.*, 2002a, b) but needs to be continued. Candidate gene identification has yet to be done to locate the genes involved in important agronomic traits. The realization of genetic transformation and the use of efficient *in vitro* techniques will have to develop reliable systems of regeneration. It is first of all necessary to improve meristem culture techniques and there are some technical problems in culturing protoplasts of *Dioscorea* spp. because of persistent contamination with bacteria. A significant amount of research was invested in the 1990s, but with limited results (Mantell and Boccon-Gibod, 1998). Cultured cells of *D. alata* have been bombarded, using a particle gun, with microprojectiles coated with DNA and histochemical assays carried out to show GUS (β-glucoronidase) expression in the bombarded cells (Tör *et al.*, 1993, 1998). No genetically modified yam has been produced so far, but this approach could be useful for transferring virus and anthracnose resistance to commercial varieties more efficiently.

GERMPLASM CONSERVATION

IITA holds in its gene bank the largest world collection, which includes eight species in more than 3000 accessions. CTCRI in Trivandrum (India), VASI in Hanoi (Vietnam), PhilRootCrops in Baybay (the Philippines), VARTC in (Santo) Vanuatu, INRA and CIRAD in Guadeloupe (West Indies) also maintain several hundred *Dioscorea* spp. accessions each in *ex situ* collections. Small collections of *D. opposita-japonica* are maintained in China and Japan.

Once established, *ex situ* collections are described morphologically using internationally standardized morphological descriptors. Important databases are then submitted to various multivariate analyses but, in many cases, this has failed to produce a useful image of the variation (Martin and Rhodes, 1977; Malapa *et al.*, 2005a). Comparisons between national collections using morphological descriptors are unreliable.

In West Africa, several national collections of *D. cayenensis-rotundata* and related species have been assembled, characterized in Ivory Coast (Hamon and Touré, 1990a), Benin (Dansi *et al.*, 1999) and other countries, but their maintenance has been difficult and numerous accessions have been lost. The core collection concept has been applied to the IITA collection in order to identify a set of genotypes representative of the global diversity maintained in the whole collection. Data on 99 descriptors were taken and the collection was stratified according to species and country of origin. The West African yam core collection includes 391 individuals (Mahalakshmi *et al.*, 2006). However, none of the traits analysed took into consideration the sex and ploidy levels of the accessions. It is therefore doubtful that all these accessions will be useful to breeders.

Dioscorea alata collections of yam were made in Fiji, New Caledonia, PNG, the Solomon Islands and Vanuatu as part of the regional root crop programmes of the 1980s (Jackson, 1994). Most have been documented using international descriptors (Guarino and Jackson, 1986). In some cases, evaluations have been made for yield and disease resistance (Jackson, 1981; Jackson and Linton, 1983, 1984; Lebot, 1997) and data from Vanuatu include information on ease of harvest (Van Wijmeersch and Bule, 1988). This region is fortunate in that considerable variation in the germplasm is present and more than 1000 cultivars are grown in the Pacific Islands. In the early 2000s, the South Pacific Yam Network (SPYN) coordinated characterization and clonal selection efforts and a core sample was assembled. These selected genotypes are maintained *in vitro* in the regional germplasm centre managed by the Secretariat of the Pacific Community in Suva, Fiji.

When combined with virus eradication and indexing, molecular technologies have the potential to rationalize collections and facilitate exchange between countries. International guidelines for the safe movement of yam exist (Brunt *et al.*, 1989) but, in reality, exchanges are very limited. Virus indexing is not only essential for plants moved internationally, but also for those conserved in active

and base gene banks. Conservation *in vitro* can be done at ambient temperatures (Malaurie *et al.*, 1993), on slow-growth medium (Ng and Ng, 1991; Nair and Chandrababu, 1994) or at lower than ambient temperatures (Ng, 1991, 1992a, b), but losses may occur and subculturing is required at 6–12 month intervals. By contrast, cryopreservation offers a more cost-effective alternative for cultivars which are not in constant use. To date, methods of encapsulation in alginate beads (Malaurie *et al.*, 1993) or vitrification have shown a 50% success rate; but this work has been carried out with only the most economically important species, *D. alata* and *D. cayenensis-rotundata*. Therapies for infected plants of the minor *Dioscorea* species have not been tested to determine if meristem culture techniques or antiviral compounds are needed to raise healthier planting materials.

Conservation of germplasm of the minor *Dioscorea* spp. (*D. bulbifera*, *D. esculenta*, *D. nummularia*, *D. trifida* and *D. transversa*) is fraught with difficulty: *ex situ* collections are expensive to maintain and methods of on-farm conservation have not been studied.

This page intentionally left blank

18

Developmental Physiology

GROWTH CYCLE

After a growth cycle of approximately 6–8 months, *D. alata* seedlings can produce tubers ranging in weight from 300 g to 2 kg, but the thinness of their stems and the limited leaf area characterize this seminal phase where plants are far less vigorous than those obtained from tubers.

The growth cycle of any of the ten cultivated food yam species follows a cycle repeating a rhythm of growth and dormancy every year. Annual cultivars are characterized by the dormancy phase of their tubers, starting at harvest. The perennial cultivated forms of *D. nummularia* go through a dormancy phase of their tubers, remaining in the ground, before they produce new stems. The growth cycle can be described, therefore, as the transfer of nutrients from tuber to stems and leaves at the beginning of the plant's development and in the reverse direction at the end of the cycle.

During the growth cycle, there are five distinct phases, which can vary according to growing conditions, species and genotype.

Phase One: Tuber Germination

This may occur from a bud or from differentiated cell masses within the cambium. A bud can develop within a few days, then another bud will appear in the vicinity of the first one, and so on. This group of buds constitutes the basal (or primary) nodal complex (PNC) from where the primorida of the roots will emerge (Degras, 1993). It consists of an apical bud with one or more axillary buds located on tissues with scattered vascular bundles in parenchymatous cells. This meristematic region has the capacity to produce roots, shoots, tubers and bulbils during seedling germination, the tuber and stem cutting sprouting as well as during the tuber and bulbil development (Wilson *et al.*, 1998). This PNC is, in fact, a corm-like structure with a very corky bark and a periderm about 1 mm thick. The size of this corm varies

greatly according to species and cultivars. It is very large in wild species but relatively small in *D. alata*.

The initial stem emerging from the corm (or PNC) does not produce true leaves at its nodes but one or two cataphylls. Very soon after that, the stems sprout and the root systems develop rapidly with vigorous growth and ramification, sometimes before field emergence. During this phase, the stem is still devoid of expanded leaves, reducing the transpiring surface as much as possible to optimize the reserves for root development. Such stems without leaves can reach impressive heights of up to 4 m for perennial forms of *D. nummularia*. As leaf growth is negligible, there is almost no photosynthesis and plant development depends almost exclusively on tuber reserves for nutrients and moisture. This phase can last about 6 weeks. Growth often starts during storage, in the absence of light, soil or water.

Phase Two: Foliage Development

This second phase of growth is characterized by a very rapid and massive increase in leaf area and ends the dependence of the yam plant on the tuber sett. The plant reaches self-sufficiency (autotrophy). Approximately 6 weeks after emergence, leaf development starts and continues up until the 14th (for *D. alata*) or 18th week (*D. nummularia*), when there is not much more growth in leaf area. Foliage development is accompanied by elongation of stems, increase in stem number, their branching, an increase in leaf initiation and, for some genotypes, the production of bulbils. The growth of the stem is very rapid and can reach 15 cm/day. It starts to grow orthotropically and, as soon as the apex touches a support, it twines around it. During this phase, root development continues but, after 12–14 weeks, it reduces. Towards the end of this phase, the plant tends to accumulate carbohydrates in excess and this triggers tuber initiation, which occurs between 10 and 12 weeks. It is also approximately at this time, or a little later, that plants initiate their flowers.

Phase Three: Tuber Bulking

During this phase, nutrients are translocated from the canopy to the tuber and the larger the leaf area, the more rapid is tuber development and the greater its final size. Early canopy development is therefore important. The increase in tuber size is due to the proliferation of new cells and their subsequent enlargement. Tuber growth is slow during the period that follows tuber initiation, is very rapid for several weeks following full development of the canopy and then slows down towards the end of the phase.

Phase Four: Foliage Senescence

Senescence of foliage starts as early as 5–6 months after planting for early-maturing genotypes. Desiccation starts with the fall of the older, basal leaves and drying of the apices. Usually, foliage senescence is synchronized with suberization of the tuber's surface. This senescence is probably initiated by photoperiod, but there is a genetic component as well. It is, of course, accelerated by foliar diseases. In most cases, however, foliar senescence starts 7 months after planting and finishes during the 10th month. At that time, the stems of the leaves are completely dry. The maturation of the tuber corresponds to the end of the photosynthate translocation, which also corresponds with foliage senescence.

Phase Five: Dormancy

The tuber is mature when the distal meristematic area at its tip changes in colour, from light to dark, and produces a cork layer and a suberized bark. Mature, freshly harvested tubers cannot sprout and they enter a dormancy phase which can last for less than a month to up to 5 months. The dormancy period varies according to temperature. Sprouting occurs between 25°C and 30°C and is delayed below 15°C and above 35°C. Moisture needed for the sprouting process is supplied endogeneously by the tuber itself. The appearance of small protuberances under the skin layer is an indication of the end of dormancy.

Field experiments have been conducted in Vanuatu, with *D. esculenta*, in order to quantify DM production relative to time and plant part (Fig. 18.1).

Dioscorea esculenta develops more than ten primary roots 11 WAP and the average number of roots per plant increases until 24 WAP and then remains stable. The roots occupy the top 7–10 cm of the soil 11 WAP and do not send secondary roots deeper into the soil. They do not explore the planting mound extensively, but radiate horizontally from the tuber seed sett. They reach an average length of 120 cm, which increases until 21 WAP, but not significantly thereafter. After reaching a maximum distance, the roots go deeper into the soil and, at 24 WAP, the root tips penetrate to a depth of approximately 30 cm. Roots reach a maximum length at 20 WAP (5 months, with the longest measured at 436 cm in a field experiment). The first tubers appear 21 WAP. The number of tubers increases significantly over the following months and can reach a maximum of 27 tubers per plant between 37 and 41 WAP. Yellowing of leaves becomes evident between 33 and 41 WAP. By 45 WAP, many leaves are shed and vine dry weight is less than half its maximum. Vines are completely dead by 50 weeks. Dry weight production is rather slow in the first 4 weeks and then increases rapidly from 24 to 33 WAP, when vine growth has ceased. Before the senescence of the vines, 60% of the final dry weight has been stored but during the senescence of the vines, 40% of the final dry weight is stored. After 45 WAP, DM content declines, probably due to tuber respiration during dormancy. CGR

Fig. 18.1. Cumulative dry matter production of *Dioscorea esculenta,* relative to time and plant part development (Source: Melteras, 2005).

reflects photosynthetic capacity. It follows a similar pattern to vine dry weight and declines rapidly during the vine senescence period. Relative growth rate is steady during the initial vegetative stage, but declines during tuber bulking. The tuber bulking rate, however, remains high after vine growth has ceased but declines rapidly only in the last stages of vine senescence (Fig. 18.2) (Melteras, 2005).

PHOTOPERIODISM

Photoperiod plays an essential role in yam tuber formation and growth. Numerous studies have attempted to understand how yam production could be de-seasonalized by planting every month or so, with the ultimate aim of producing the whole year around. All have failed. Long days promote vegetative development of the aerial parts, foliage and stems, while short days trigger senescence of the foliage and tuber bulking. Of course, different yam species differ in their reaction to photoperiod. The phenology of the temperate species, *D. opposita*, its flower induction and tuber bulking have been found to be highly influenced by photoperiodism (Yoshida *et al.*, 1999, 2000, 2001), but these results can hardly be transposed to the tropical species, which are probably influenced less, though still significantly. In the case of *D. opposita*, it is

Fig. 18.2. Growth analysis parameters for *Dioscorea esculenta (*data are averages across two sampling intervals (Source: Melteras, 2005).

also observed that more aerial bulbils are produced in plants grown in short days (10–11 h) than those in days of more than 12 h. For the pantropical *D. bulbifera*, it is likewise observed that the production of bulbils occurs in the season when days are shortening.

In the West Indies, there is a significant effect of the plantation date on the final yield (Degras, 1993). *Dioscorea alata* plantlets produced *in vitro* and subsequently established in the field in successive plantings initially do not differ in morphology. However, after a few months, the architecture and the maximum size of both the aerial and underground parts are quite different. The duration of the vegetative growth phase and of tuber dormancy also vary between planting dates, but tuber sprouting always occurs in April, as in normal cultivation. It is concluded that the problems encountered when attempting to cultivate this species out-of-season are related mostly to its sensitivity to photoperiodism (Lacointe and Zinsou, 1987).

The effect of light on the development of plants produced by stem-cutting propagation has also been investigated. During long days, there is a connection between root growth and raising the level of the cutting, while during short days the stems emerge more quickly. During short days, the tuber grows to over four times the volume of tubers developed during long days. This illustrates the superiority of tuberization during short days compared to long days (Degras, 1993) (Table 18.1).

Yam is not a shade-tolerant plant. Experiments conducted in greenhouses have shown that the plants can produce normal foliage development but very poor yield in shaded conditions. Yams growing unstaked, with a reduced leaf area, produce lower yields than staked plants and this is thought to be due also to a mutual leaf shading and, consequently, reduced light interception in unstaked plants. In PNG, field experiments were carried out to determine the effects of shading on stomatal density, leaf size, leaf DM and leaf lamina thickness of *D. esculenta*. Shading was found to decrease the stomatal density in the lower epidermis (the upper epidermis of yam being devoid of stomata). Shading generally resulted in the production of larger (in terms of surface area) but thinner leaves, with a decreased DM content. Since shading often occurs under normal growing conditions in various traditional cropping systems (for example, intercropping and alley cropping), *D. esculenta* yield is affected directly (Onwueme and Johnston, 2000).

Table 18.1. Dry matter weight of *Dioscorea alata* plantlets subjected to different photoperiodisms.

Day length	Stem	Tuber	Root	Total
11.5 h	17.0	34.9	4.3	56.2
12 h	28.2	50.6	7.4	86.2
12.5 h	48.7	9.1	24.9	82.7

Source: Degras (1993).

Field experiments conducted in Guadeloupe have shown that the light interception coefficient across the yam leaf canopy is quite high ($k = 0.64$). Radiation use efficiency (RUE) is, on the other hand, quite low, although highly variable from one genotype to the other. LAI is estimated using the relation between the lamina area and two measurements, the length and the width of the lamina. This simple technique appears to be reliable ($R^2 = 0.989$) on three different *Dioscorea* spp. (Cornet, 2005).

Most cultivated *Dioscorea* spp. seem to have a C_3 photosynthetic type. A total of 23 genotypes belonging to seven species and two wild relative species of different origins and coming from two different locations (Benin in West Africa and Guadeloupe) was analysed and the delta 13C values indicated that all species had a C_3 photosynthetic type (Cornet *et al.*, 2007).

TEMPERATURE

Temperature has a major effect on the dormancy phase. Dormancy is prolonged between 15°C and 17°C. Except for *D. opposita-japonica*, all cultivated species cannot tolerate frost conditions. Vegetative growth is affected severely by mean temperatures of less than 20°C and most species generally require temperatures of 25–30°C for normal development. For a given species, there is a decline in vigour, foliage and tuber yield when the plants are grown in regions with lower temperatures. This is often manifested in a reduction of the individual leaf area, a reduction in the total number of leaves and thinner stems growing to a lower height. Although warm temperatures promote vegetative growth, plants need a marked reduction in mean temperature to promote tuber bulking, which usually occurs during the cool season.

NUTRITION

Dioscorea spp. are demanding on soil fertility and, in traditional cropping systems, they are always placed first in the cropping cycle, just after the fallow. When human pressure increases and fallow periods reduce, yields tend to decline. Symptoms of deficiencies are not obvious but the most significant have been recorded in the field for *D. rotundata* (Table 18.2).

Some experiments have been conducted in order to study the nutritional disorders of *D. alata*. A range of nutrient deficiencies were generated in small plants grown in solutions in a greenhouse and the associated changes in leaf-nutrient concentrations in leaves of different ages were quantified. For practical purposes, it is recommended that a sample from the sixth node be used as an index leaf. This may provide a good compromise (O'Sullivan and Jenner, 2006). Table 18.3 summarizes the DM yield from each treatment at harvest.

Table 18.2. Symptoms seen in the field on leaves of *Dioscorea rotundata*.

Deficiency in	Symptoms on leaves
Nitrogen	Very small leaves, light green or yellowish at first and then drying out from the tip to the edges before falling off. The new leaves are translucent, contain anthocyanins and do not fall.
Phosphorus	Purple or violet leaves when young and dark, shiny, green leaves when mature. Senescence is marked by scattered yellow to light brown and dark brown leaf areas, then the area becomes yellow, the leaves fall, starting from the bottom to the top.
Calcium	The leaf is small and leathery, the older ones are mottled and yellow. They become necrotic at their end, along the main vein, on the underside of the leaf.
Potassium	Small, round, brownish spots appear, then the leaves roll up and turn necrotic with a yellow background.
Sulphur	Generalized yellowing, including the veins, with leaves narrower than normal.
Manganese	Internerval chlorosis of the young leaves. Adult leaves are light to yellow.

Source: Degras (1993).

These experiments have induced severe chlorotic symptoms, particularly for Mn and Cu. Most deficiencies increase the chlorosis of young leaves. Deficiencies of N, S and Ca produce symptoms on the shoots, as well as on the young leaves, which are pale green to light cream in colour. Generous N nutrition tends to promote aerial growth while causing yield decline, and Ca deficiency restricts shoot production while increasing the size of underground organs. Plants deficient in Ca produce smaller leaves with necrotic lesions and very thin vines. P-deficient plants have young leaves of a reduced size and necrotic, while older leaves are stiff and thickened. K deficiency results in overall growth reduction. Colour plates have been produced and may help further deficiency identification in the field. It appears that in well-nourished plants, mobile macronutrients follow a decline in concentration from the youngest to the oldest leaves. In deficient plants, concentrations are similar in the youngest and the oldest leaves, which have a concentration similar to those of well-nourished plants. This would indicate that, in *D. alata*, the remobilization of nutrients is inefficient (O'Sullivan and Jenner, 2006).

WATER DEFICIT AND STRESS

Dioscorea spp. are tolerant of dry conditions and, in most countries, planting occurs during the dry season. The moisture content of the tubers is sufficient to

Table 18.3. Dry matter yield of *Dioscorea alata* plants grown in full nutrient solution or in solutions omitting one nutrient.

	Dry weight in g				
Treatments	Total	Vines	Tubers	Roots	Harvest index*
All	26.3 a	17.6 a	5.9 ab	2.8 a	0.22 b
Minus N	16.7 bc	6.1 cd	8.6 a	2.0 abc	0.52 a
Minus P	14.5 bc	8.9 cd	3.4 bc	2.2 abc	0.22 b
Minus K	11.9 c	7.3 cd	3.5 bc	1.2 cd	0.30 b
Minus Ca	10.4 c	3.5 d	5.8 abc	1.2 cd	0.56 a
Minus Mg	17.7 abc	10.3 bc	5.3 abc	2.07 abc	0.32 b
Minus S	15.9 bc	8.7 bcd	4.6 abc	2.6 ab	0.30 b
Minus Fe	25.1 ab	15.2 ab	7.7 ab	2.2 abc	0.32 b
Minus B	15.6 bc	8.7 cd	5.3 abc	1.7 bcd	0.29 b
Minus Mn	8.9 d	6.4 cd	1.6 c	0.9 d	0.18 b
Minus Zn	14.9 bc	1.7 bcd	3.5 bc	1.9 bcd	0.27 b
Minus Cu	14.4 bc	9.9 bc	2.9 bc	1.6 bcd	0.18 b
Minus Mo	19.9 abc	12.4 abc	5.7 abc	1.84 abcd	0.26 b

Note: *Harvest index is the weight of the tubers divided by the total plant weight (numbers followed by the same letter are not significantly different at $P < 0.05$).
Source: O'Sullivan and Jenner (2006).

initiate root growth and it is observed that larger tuber setts have to be planted when drier conditions are expected. The young plant is relatively tolerant to drought because it can tap some of the moisture present in the seed tuber to satisfy its requirements. As the first phase of growth focuses on the development of a root system, with vigorous ramification, the young plant is able to exploit the moisture present. Drought tolerance of the young plant is also improved by the fact that the young stem is devoid of leaves and the transpiring area is consequently limited. When plants are under severe water stress, the lowest, oldest leaves turn yellow and fall off. The abscission of these leaves is a practical indicator of field water deficit. If moisture stress occurs during the first two phases of the growth cycle, tuber initiation will be delayed and final yield reduced. Yams can grow in areas with as little as 500–700 mm of rainfall (e.g. in south Madagascar), but yields are low. Well-distributed rainfall, or the irrigation amount equivalent, of 1500 mm during the total growth cycle is needed for high yields and commercial production.

YIELD POTENTIAL

Final yield is influenced by a range of physiological and environmental factors whose interactions are not well documented and their relative contribution is

therefore difficult to understand. Despite a long growing season, the size of the initial tuber sett has a great influence on the final yield: the heavier it is, the higher the yield. The way nutrients are captured and assimilated remains poorly documented and it is quite surprising that the influence of sett size on early root growth appears to have a larger and more reproducible impact on final yield than do fertilizer applications (Onwueme and Haverkort, 1991).

Yams yield more per unit area with increased plant density, although the net yield after subtracting seed tubers is highest between one and three plants per square metre, depending on cultural conditions (Enyi, 1972a, b; Ferguson, 1977). There is a limit to the average density per unit of area and it depends on species and varieties. In addition, there is tremendous variability among plants of the same clone, resulting from significant differences in sprouting time and vigour, which are influenced directly by the sett's dormancy status and which part of the tuber is used (whole or top, middle or tail) and its nutrient content. To make matters worse, virus and nematode loads undoubtedly add to variability, and staking, mounding and mulching practices are known to influence yield. Whatever the constraints, the yield potential of *Dioscorea* spp. is very high. In Vanuatu, with no fertilizers or special inputs other than normal hand weeding throughout the growth cycle, yields of more than 51 t/ha fresh tubers are obtained for *D. rotundata*, 82 t/ha for *D. alata* and up to 128 t/ha for *D. esculenta* (Van Wijmeersch and Bule, 1988).

A number of studies attempting to characterize the agronomic determinants of yield have shown that an early development of the root system occurs during the period of dependence on the planted tuber sett, followed by a period of rapid vine growth and leaf area acquisition and, finally, tuber development. For *D. alata*, there is a correlation between leaf area duration and tuber yield. For *D. esculenta*, there is a strong relationship between the final number of tubers and the leaf area at the time of tuber initiation. There is also a high correlation between final tuber yield and leaf area duration over the period from tuber initiation to harvest. The LAI is an important component of the ideotype and the yield potential is closely related to its value. Table 18.4 presents a few LAI measurements, although very little is documented on this index, which is particularly difficult to measure on yam due to the complexity of its canopy. The LAI is highly variable and differs according to genotypes within species. It is therefore possible that there is sufficient variation in the germplasm to improve earliness of canopy expansion and its total area.

Table 18.4. Leaf area index of *Dioscorea* spp.

Species	LAI	Month
D. alata	8	5th
D. esculenta	0.75	5th
D. rotundata	6	6th

Source: Suja *et al.* (2000).

19

Agronomy

High yam yields depend on good planting material and husbandry and, in particular, timely weed control to permit establishment of a sufficient leaf area. They also depend on adequate and near optimum temperatures (25–30°C) during the period of maximum growth potential between 14 and 20 WAP. The most important constraints to production are the high labour requirements, the quality of the planting material and difficulties in mechanization.

SOIL PREPARATION

Yams, being light-loving and shade-sensitive plants, require sites which are well exposed to solar radiation. If planted in traditional agroforestry systems, they need to be established in the middle of the plot and to be staked in order to benefit from maximum sunlight. Unlike cassava and sweet potato roots, which initially penetrate the soil and then expand, the yam tuber penetrates the soil while expanding. It is therefore important that the soil is light, well drained and friable. Land preparation is the most important input and necessitates almost half of the total 1800 man-hours/ha in West Africa (Hahn *et al.*, 1987; Orkwor and Adeniji, 1998). In the West Indies (Jamaica), inputs are more important but land preparation (clearing + breaking up the soil + ridging) also represents more than half of the time spent on the crop (Table 19.1).

Because yams are placed first in the cropping cycle, land preparation usually involves traditional slash-and-burn techniques. In most countries, land preparation occurs during the dry period, which often corresponds to the cool season of the year during which tubers are dormant. Farmers often have some sort of plant indicator (e.g. the blooming of *Erythrina* spp. trees) which guides them on the most appropriate time to prepare the plot. Bushy fallow and any small trees that are present are cleared with machetes and the stumps or small trunks are left on the spot until they are burnt. The surface of the soil is then cleared of debris and the soil can be worked very superficially if the plot is intended to satisfy domestic consumption. For higher yields

Table 19.1. Time spent on *Dioscorea cayenensis* production in Jamaica.

Operations	H/ha
Clearing	198
Breaking up the soil	791
Ridging	791
Preparation of planting setts	119
Weeding	791
Staking	237
Tying lianas	158
Harvesting	296
Total	3381

Source: Degras (2003).

and commercial production, however, the same plot will require further soil preparation.

The construction of mounds (also called hills) is preceded by hand digging a small pit which varies in depth according to the species involved, *D. esculenta* requiring less depth than some elongated varieties of *D. alata*. In most cases, the pits are 0.30 m deep and the mounds are 0.5–1.2 m high, sometimes higher. Mounds are made by drawing the organic rich topsoil together with the hoe. In general, large hills give the highest yields but this also depends on the characteristics of the soil (Table 19.2). In West Africa, thousands of these impressive mounds can be hand prepared by a single commercial farmer with a simple hoe.

Ridges are also used, although not as frequently as mounds, and can be between 1–1.5 m wide and 0.5 m high. In very humid areas (2–3 m rainfall), they are established in the direction of the slope to improve drainage. In areas where yams are an expensive product, for example in the West Indies or New Caledonia, land preparation can be mechanized and necessitates an average of 25–30 h/ha. A first ploughing is usually followed by a rotavator to turn the soil into a loose and fine texture. Long ridges, spaced approximately 1.2–1.5 m apart,

Table 19.2. Effect of mound size on tuber yield.

Mound size	Density plants/ha (spacing m)	*D. rotundata*			*D. alata*		
		t/ha	kg/mound	kg/tuber	t/ha	kg/mound	kg/tuber
Small	2,500 (2 × 2)	11.8	2.4	1.3	18.5	3.1	2.4
Medium	5,000 (1.4 × 1.4)	15.8	3.1	1.5	25.2	5.0	3.5
Large	10,000 (1 × 1)	24.3	4.7	1.9	30.9	7.5	5.0

Source: Akoroda (1995).

are then produced mechanically by pulling a special tool (ridger) behind a tractor. For this type of soil preparation, ploughing is often more important than ridging, which is never very high and tends to erode rapidly with the first rains.

PROPAGULE SELECTION AND PREPARATION

In traditional cropping systems, farmers usually save and separate from their harvest the planting material they plan to use for the following crop. Considering an average density of 10,000 plants/ha, the seed weight is considerable. For an average individual seed sett weighing between 100 and 500 g, between 1 and 5 t of planting material is required, which means that, depending on crop yield, the farmer has to put aside approximately 10–30% of his harvest. When farmers lose their planting material for one reason or another, they then have to purchase it and the costs can be very high compared to other inputs, especially if this occurs late in the season. In practice, small tubers are kept as planting material while larger ones are sold at markets. Unfortunately, this approach, repeated year after year, tends to favour the selection of small leftover tubers that have deteriorated and accumulated viruses and nematodes. Table 19.3 presents the effect of sett weight and plant density on yield.

In many cases, and especially for the major species, *D. alata* and *D. cayenensis-rotundata*, the tuber is fragmented and the propagule is a 200–300 g fraction of a larger tuber: the head (proximal part), the tail (distal part), or the centre. It is observed, for all species, that heads sprout faster and more

Table 19.3. Effect of sett weight and plant density on the yield of *Dioscorea alata* and *D. rotundata*.

Sett weight (kg)	1 × 1 m (10,000 plants/ha)		1 × 1.2 m (8,000 plants/ha)	
	t/ha	kg/plant	t/ha	kg/plant
D. alata				
0.2	18.1	1.8	18.9	2.4
0.5	29.3	2.9	20.3	2.5
0.9	37.1	3.7	34.1	4.3
1.8	35.6	3.6	33.0	4.2
4.0	42.1	4.2	34.5	4.3
D. rotundata				
0.2	6.7	0.7	3.2	0.4
0.5	14.1	1.4	10.1	1.3
0.9	20.6	2.1	13.5	1.7
1.5	25.3	2.5	26.5	3.4
3.4	31.9	3.2	32.9	4.1

Source: Akoroda (1995).

homogeneously than central parts and tails. The cut sections are often healed with fire ashes and can be sold as such, in baskets, at markets. They tend to loose water rapidly when cut and are therefore prepared just before planting, when the small protuberances appearing under the tuber skin indicate that germination will start soon.

The mini-sett technique is now used increasingly by commercial growers in West Africa and the mechanization of their planting and weeding, and the harvest of seed tubers resulting from them, can reduce production costs (Hahn *et al.*, 1987). One of the major constraints of this technique, however, is to make sure, before multiplication, that virus-free plants, resulting from tissue culture and virus indexing, are used.

Nursery techniques are also very important for the mini-sett technique and the use of an infected sprouting medium can have disastrous consequences. Significantly higher percentage of rot is recorded when mini-setts are planted in unsterilized sprouting media. Different methods of sterilizing sprouting media for the control of rot have been studied for *D. rotundata*. The incidence of rot is higher in unsterilized topsoil than in unsterilized sawdust. Roasting is the most effective way of sterilizing the sprouting media, followed by fumigation, while solarization is of low efficiency. There are, however, significant differences between genotyes (Asare *et al.*, 2007). So, first of all, farmers have to experiment to discover which varieties within their portfolio are the most adapted to this type of manipulation.

In Nigeria, seed tuber production of *D. rotundata* and *D. alata*, using the mini-sett technique, has been tested on-farm and on-station in different agroecological zones and a lower sprouting rate of mini-setts is observed in the southern Guinea savannah than in the tropical forest zone. When using the direct field planting technique of mini-setts, sprouting and tuber yield are influenced strongly by the cultivar of *D. rotundata*, but *D. alata* is less affected by sett size. An increase in mini-sett size in some cultivars of *D. rotundata* can enhance their sprouting potential but agroecological conditions, temperature and relative humidity also play a determining role (Ayankanmi *et al.*, 2005).

The quality of the planting material depends on the way this material has been handled during its dormancy period. When temperatures increase, farmers can remove the sprouts by hand to prolong dormancy and delay planting out. In Ivory Coast, the effect of a postharvest gibelleric acid (GA_3) treatment just after harvest and manual desprouting of seed tubers on the quality of *D. cayenensis-rotundata* setts has been investigated. Although postharvest losses were reduced slightly after 4 months of storage by both treatments, this had no effect on subsequent tuber yield. Field emergence and yield are, however, influenced significantly by sprouting state at planting and the origin of the sett with respect to its position on the mother tuber (proximal, central, distal). Also in Ivory Coast, it is recommended that farmers use apical setts and sprouted setts, which have the highest yield potential (Tschannen *et al.*, 2005).

For *D. alata* varieties producing bulbils and for *D. bulbifera*, bulbils represent an interesting planting material giving even emergence in the field. For *D. alata*, however, their weight is often quite low (30–100 g) and so is the final yield, but they are a good source of seed setts and some varieties are favoured by farmers because of this attribute. Species such as *D. trifida*, *D. esculenta* and *D. transversa* produce a large number of individual tubers, which are ideal propagules for the next crop and as easy to handle, store and replant as full tubers.

PLANT DENSITIES AND CROP ESTABLISHMENT

In most countries, yams are planted individually by hand, with one plant per mound, or spread out at regular spacing on ridges. Mechanical planting is very rare but has been developed in France for *D. opposita* and in Guadeloupe for *D. alata* and *D. cayenensis-rotundata* (Joachim *et al.*, 2003). Average density is 10,000 plants/ha when yams are planted on mounds, but it can reach 20,000 plants/ha when ridges are used. The placement depth of the sett depends on its size and weight, but farmers always make sure that the sprout is covered gently with 5–10 cm loose soil. It is safer to plant too deep than too shallow, to avoid drying out of the shoots. In Melanesia, for example, farmers plant the head end towards the bottom of the hole for the same reasons, but also because it is claimed that the elevation of temperature on the part near the surface accelerates sprouting.

The time of planting depends on the cultivar, the species, the length of their dormancy period, their tolerance to the removal of sprouting in storage, the agroecological conditions and, of course, market demands. Farmers can also speed up the sprouting process with traditional techniques aimed at raising the temperature. The main advantage of pre-sprouting the setts before planting is that variability in emergence can be reduced. If the fresh-cut setts are planted directly in the field, there is no way for unsproutable setts to be detected and discarded (Onwueme and Charles, 1994). For those that do sprout, time to sprouting may vary by several weeks.

The Tongans in Polynesia have developed a traditional method to break dormancy, called *Tanu*. Although this is not traditional in many countries, farmers might consider adopting it. It involves burying the tubers for several days in a pit covered with banana leaves and soil. The heat of their respiration breaks dormancy and heals cut surfaces. A shallow pit of approximately 4 m^2 is dug in the soil and its bottom covered with banana leaves, on which the seed tubers are placed. Location is an important factor and the pit has to be placed somewhere dry under a tree, or where rain will not make it damp. Three to four layers of tubers are placed along with a few hands of maturing bananas before all is covered with more banana leaves and a thick (15–20 cm) layer of topsoil. In some cases, a vent to allow the escape of excess hot air is added to the system in the form of a hollowed-out papaya tree trunk. After 7–15 days, the pit is opened and the tubers are found either ready to sprout or sprouting. This gives

an even emergence in the field and is used traditionally in the Pacific for *D. alata* and *D. esculenta*.

Planting dates are controlled largely by photoperiod, but other factors can influence the farmer. Anthracnose and virus diseases can have devastating impacts on yam production in many regions. The complexity of the epidemiology necessitates the use of integrated approaches to counteract their impact and the date of planting has a significant effect on incidence. In countries where the wet climate favours the development of anthracnose, in Melanesia or in the West Indies, it is generally more appropriate to plant as soon as possible during the dry season, so that the plant has a well-developed canopy before the disease strikes during the wet season.

But, this recommendation does not appear to be suitable for growers in Nigeria (northern hemisphere). A comparison of the performance of six cultivars of *D. alata*, planted on six different dates (from March to August) reveals a different trend. It confirms that the date of planting has a profound influence on anthracnose severity and, as expected, the genotype effect is more determining with respect to virus severity. But, planting late, in August, seems to produce the least anthracnose development, while early plantings, in April and May, result in the least severity of virus diseases. If the selection of planting time can be used to manage anthracnose, its application is influenced significantly by the prevailing weather conditions at a particular location (Egesi *et al.*, 2007).

Table 19.4 summarizes the months of planting and harvesting in the northern and southern hemispheres.

In West Africa, farmers mulch their mounds just after planting their setts. They place a layer of dried grass or leaves at the summit of the mound and cover it with mud, soil or stones to make sure that it will not be blown away by the wind. This mulch reduces the soil temperature in the mound. In these areas, mulching is so critical that drastic yield reduction occurs if it is not done. Mulching is of limited advantage in the wet climates of the West Indies or in the Pacific Islands, except in comparatively dry New Caledonia, where it has been shown to be very advantageous. Mulching is, however, an expensive operation as it has to be carried out carefully by hand (Lebot, 1997).

Staking is done after field emergence and represents 5% of the total man-hours. When the species providing the stakes is not cultivated, as in some countries, the use of stakes poses environmental hazards due to the effect on deforestation. Staking is a cumbersome practice, labour-intensive and costly. Various attempts to identify genotypes which are tolerant to non-staked cultivation have been conducted but the results show that, for most cultivars, there is a significant yield difference between staked and unstaked plants. In Nigeria, a few recently released hybrids seem promising, however, and trials are going ahead. In the savannah, most of the production nowadays is unstaked, or staked on cereals such as maize or sorghum, because of the scarcity of wooden stakes (Agbaje and Adegbite, 2006). As cereals grow faster than yams, they are sown when the setts are planted and harvested before the

Table 19.4. Planting and harvesting months in northern and southern hemispheres.

Species	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N
Northern hemisphere																							
D. rotundata	P						H	H	H	H			P						H	H	H	H	
D. alata	H	H	H	H	P	P	P				H	H	H	H			P	P	P				H
D. trifida	H	H	H	P	P	P							H	H	H	P	P	P					
D. esculenta		H	H	P	P									H	H	P	P						
Southern hemisphere																							
D. alata			H	H	H	H	P	P	P	P					H	H	H	H	P	P	P	P	
D. cayenensis-rotundata				H	H	P	P									H	H	P	P				
D. esculenta						H	H	H	P	P	P							H	H	H	P	P	P
D. trifida									H	H	P	P									H	H	P
D. transversa										H	P											H	P
D. nummularia											H	P											H

yam canopies fully develop. The dried stalks then collapse and the vines grow on each other. This is a popular and efficient cropping system.

Within forest areas, the plots prepared for yams are often cleared incompletely, so that a few trees and bushes can be used to support the vines. Any convenient timber, bamboo or wild cane can be used as stakes as long as they are robust enough to support a large and heavy canopy. Three or four stakes, each supporting a different plant, can be bound together near the top to form a pyramid-like structure, which is fairly resistant to high winds. Various elaborated staking and trellising techniques involving wires and poles have been experimented by researchers and transferred to growers, with mixed results as they always tend to increase labour inputs and costs.

INTERCROPPING

Dioscorea spp. are rarely intercropped, except in traditional agroforestry systems. Farmers have developed their own associations and continue to experiment with all sorts of crop combinations. Table 19.5 presents the effects of such intercrops.

When new hybrids of *D. rotundata* are evaluated for tuber yield, response to mosaic diseases and soilborne pests under three different cropping systems (yam alone; yam and maize; yam, maize and melon), the results show that tuber yields decrease under intercropping. There is a reduction of up to 22% in yam and maize and 33% in yam, maize and melon, when compared with yam alone (Agbaje *et al.*, 2002).

WEEDING

Weeding by hand using a hoe is carried out at least two or three times during the growth cycle, depending on the weeds present in the field. Unstaked plants established at high density are less demanding as the vines cover the soil and each other fairly rapidly. Staked plants established on ridges require maintenance of the interows, as well as the ridges. The growth habit of *Dioscorea* spp.

Table 19.5. Sole and intercrop yield of *Dioscorea rotundata* and intercrops.

Cropping system	Yam tuber yield (t/ha)	Sweet potato yield (t/ha)	Maize cob yield (t/ha)	Cassava (t/ha)
Yam alone	15.8	–	–	–
Yam + cassava	7.5	–	–	10.8
Yam + maize	5.5	–	7.8	–
Yam + sweet potato	5.8	14.5	–	–
Sweet potato + maize	–	56.06	4.4	–

Source: Akoroda (1995).

and their inability to shade the ground completely when staked makes them susceptible to weed competition. Fields that are not weeded properly during the first 3–4 months after planting produce lower yields than weed-free plots. Intercropped yam fields have fewer weeds and intercropping with maize during the first 3 months minimizes yield reduction due to weed competition being at the early development stage (Table 19.6).

Table 19.6. Effect of weed control method and cropping system on *Dioscorea rotundata* yield (t/ha).

Treatment	Yam alone	Yam and maize	Yam, maize, cassava	Mean
Weeding at 3 and 5 WAP	21.0	16.3	17.0	18.1
– at 3 and 8 WAP	20.3	15.0	17.4	17.5
– at 3 and 12 WAP	26.0	17.8	18.7	20.8
– at 5 and 12 WAP	21.7	17.9	18.1	19.2
– at 3, 5 and 12 WAP	26.3	18.0	17.1	20.5
Melon and weeding at 3 WAP	18.9	18.4	13.7	17.0
Melon, sweet potato with yam	23.4	16.7	17.4	19.2
Melon, herbicide, sweet potato and weeding at 3 WAP	22.2	18.8	17.9	19.7
Sweet potato and weeding at 3 WAP	18.9	13.8	16.5	16.4
Herbicide	24.4	17.4	15.7	19.2
Weed-free control	28.6	17.7	20.9	22.4
Weedy control	22.5	17.0	17.3	–
Mean	22.5	17.0	17.3	

Source: Akoroda (1995).

In the West Indies, various rates of active ingredient are used to control weeds, especially grasses, in yam fields and the following products are recommended (Table 19.7).

Table 19.7. Active ingredients used in yam fields.

Active ingredient	Type	Efficiency	Impact	Doses of a.i./ha
Glyphosate	Systemic, total	All species	Last 60 days	1.1–4.2 kg/ha
Paraquat	Contact, total	All species	Last 30 days	0.6–0.8 kg/ha
Diquat-paraquat	Contact, total	All species	Last 30 days	0.4 + 0.2 kg/ha

Source: Joachim *et al.* (2003).

In Nigeria, fluometuron mixed with metolachlor at a dose of 2 + 2 kg a.i./ha and Primextra (atrazine + metolachlor) give good results at a rate of 3.0 kg a.i./ha (Table 19.8).

Table 19.8. Effect of staking, not staking and weed control on *Dioscorea rotundata* and *D. alata* yields.

Treatment	Rate a.i. kg/ha	Time	*D. alata* Unstaked	*D. alata* Staked	*D. alata* Mean	*D. rotundata* Unstaked	*D. rotundata* Staked	*D. rotundata* Mean
Fluro + metolachlor	2.0 + 2.0	PE	4.54	18.21	11.38	14.73	13.23	13.98
Primextra	3.0	PE	7.30	17.17	12.24	14.17	13.00	18.58
Gramuron	3.0	Post	6.00	18.38	12.19	14.20	11.57	12.88
Hoe weeding	3 + 8 + 12	WAP	7.71	20.13	13.92	12.60	10.67	11.63
Weed-free control			14.17	24.34	19.25	16.23	14.33	15.28
Weedy control			3.29	15.61	9.45	4.63	7.10	5.87
Mean			7.17	18.97	–	12.76	11.65	–

Note: PE = pre-emergence, post = post-emergence, WAP = weeks after planting.
Source: Akoroda (1995).

Some pre-emergence herbicides (ametryne, atrazine and diuron) can keep weeds under control during the first 3 months of growth if close spacing and vigorous growth succeed in covering the ground rapidly. However, if applied too soon, it might not have much impact since yams take quite a long time to emerge (sometimes more than a month between planting and field emergence). A practical solution might be to apply a contact herbicide (e.g. paraquat) combined with a pre-emergence herbicide just before anticipated emergence. But, the very heterogeneous emergence rate, between heads, central parts and tails of tubers, is another factor causing difficulties. The early sprouting setts run the risk of being killed by the contact herbicide and the late sprouting ones run the risk of being invaded by weeds. It is, therefore, important to calibrate planting materials and to plant as much as possible full tubers or heads only so that emergence is quick and even.

In Nigeria, it has been found that there is no economic benefit in keeping yams weed-free during the whole cropping period. The investment is high and the return is unsatisfactory. After the critical period (4–16 WAP for commercial tubers and 6–16 WAP for seed tubers), the reduction in tuber yield due to uncontrolled weeds is not significant (Orkwor and Adeniji, 1998).

FERTILIZATION AND NUTRIENT DISORDERS

Degradation of soil fertility is the major constraint identified by growers in yam production in West Africa (Table 19.9). Although farmers perceive the decline in soil fertility as their most important difficulty in improving yield and profit, they often lack suitable and practical solutions to correct the situation.

Table 19.9. Major constraints to yam production in Nigeria (% of farmers reporting the constraint).

Constraint	High intensity areas (eastern Nigeria)	Low intensity areas (south-west Nigeria)
Weeds	9.0	6.8
Soil fertility decline	52.0	9.2
Soilborne pests and diseases	12.0	54.0
Leaf pests and diseases	5.0	11.3
Storage	1.5	10.8
Marketing of produce	0.0	0.3
Mound making	0.3	3.1
Planting materials	1.3	0.8
Staking materials	0.6	1.4

Source: IITA (2000).

Responses to fertilizers are erratic and usually much less significant than the effects of sett size or staking (Chapman, 1965; Enyi, 1972b; Obigbesan, 1981; Oyolu, 1982; Melteras, 2005). No responses to N fertilization or even depressive effects have been reported. Kang and Wilson (1981) reported no significant effect of NPK fertilizer on tuber yield at all three locations where their experiments were conducted and noticed some depression in the yield of plants grown on flats. In Puerto Rico, Lugo *et al.* (1993) showed that the response to fertilizer application on *D. alata* was significant at only one location, where low natural fertility was confirmed by a soil test conducted at the beginning of their study. According to Fox *et al.* (1980), *D. alata* yields increase with P fertilization, whereas those of *D. esculenta* and *D. rotundata* do not. To complicate the situation, yams appear to depend on an effective mycorrhizal association to meet their P requirements. Apparently, yams respond well to N and K fertilizers, while their response to P is slight. This could be due to very efficient P uptake, possibly as a result of mycorrhizal contribution (Onwueme and Charles, 1994).

In a series of 16 field experiments over three seasons, attempting to quantify soil fertility constraints in different *Dioscorea* spp. yields in Vanuatu, Melteras (2005) failed to find significant responses, despite well-characterized nutrient deficiencies in different soils and foliar nutrient concentrations indicating deficiencies. Initial pot experiments revealed that the soil samples collected had one or more nutrient deficiency and the levels of fertilizer applied were based on the results of these pot experiments. Despite this, field trials failed to respond consistently to fertilizer applications. More surprisingly, nutrient leaf analysis also did not correlate with the amount of fertilizer applied. These results are disturbing, as great care was taken to reduce variation within the planting material, including pre-sprouting tubers and weighing every single tuber sett.

Within uniform planting material, time to sprouting and number and vigour of sprouts vary greatly. It is quite clear that optimum methods of fertilizer placement for yam have not yet been established. There is an obvious need for more information on fertilizer application methods and timing. Delaying N applications until after the crop is established has already been shown to increase the chances of a yield response (Chapman, 1965).

Spot placement of fertilizers in the planting hole, or banding in the planting furrow on the ridge, may not provide efficient access. A commonly used method involves a side dressing in a furrow around the mound, but this may damage primary roots which radiate from the corm and are very close to the soil surface at the base of these mounds. Broadcasting before planting may be preferable. Lining the fertilizers between the ridges in order to avoid P fixation in P-fixing soils is another practical solution. Surface application just before rain, or at frequent intervals, may be preferable to furrows for side dressing (Melteras, 2005).

In the West Indies, it is recommended nowadays the fertilizer applications presented in Table 19.10 be applied.

Table 19.10. Fertilizer rates and time of application for solid fertilizers (S) and fertilizers diluted in the irrigation system (I).

Fertilizers	Weight kg	N	P	K	Time
19-9-28 (S)	200	38	18	56	Plantation
	400	76	36	112	45 DAP
15-12-24 (S)	400	60	48	96	Plantation
	400	60	48	96	45 DAP
8-20-20 (I)	300	24	60	60	Plantation
Potassium chloride (KCl 60%) (I)	160	0	0	96	Every 2 weeks during 4 months
Ammonium nitrate (33%) (I)	240	79	0	0	diluted in 450 l

Source: Joachim *et al.* (2003).

HARVESTING

In most countries, farmers start their harvest when foliage senesces. This is usually a little too late as a senescing foliage has already stopped functioning and does not contribute to tuber bulking. In some regions, planters start excavating before the foliage wilts but, in this case, attention is given to making sure that yams have reached maturity. Yams are usually harvested at the end of the rainy season and it is easier to uplift the tubers when the soil has dried. The soil around the tubers is removed and farmers gauge their size and look at the colour of their distal end to decide if they are sufficiently mature. Harvests are

spread over several months, depending on the early and late maturing varieties the farmer is cultivating. For a given species, the harvest period is still insufficient to cover the whole year but, in some countries, in Melanesia for example, the cultivation of different *Dioscorea* spp. allows for consumption almost the whole year-round.

The more irregular in shape is the tuber, the longer is the harvest and cracks decrease its commercial value. The tools used are the same as those for making the mounds. The dried stems and foliage are first of all removed with machetes and put aside. For compact tubers, a fork with flat blades, similar to that used to harvest potatoes, is placed under the tubers and then uplifted by pressing on it with a foot. This is quite appropriate for species producing a large number of small tubers, such as *D. esculenta* and *D. trifida*, or for *D. alata* varieties with compact shapes (e.g. 'Florido'). For larger tubers, the soil is removed gently, starting from the base of the stem and going down towards the distal end of the tuber, which is then uplifted when free.

If the tubers are immature, they tend to be very watery and have a poor taste and if they are left in the ground for too long, they are exposed to factors which can cause deterioration in quality. Local knowledge of the agroecological conditions is often the only guide for farmers. In Nigeria, the effect of the time of harvest on *D. rotundata* quality was investigated to determine when the tuber was mature. Setts were planted at the beginning of the rainy season and harvesting was done at monthly intervals from 3 to 7 months after stem emergence. Fresh and dry tuber yields increased steadily over the harvesting period until the 6th month and decreased thereafter. Varieties differed in the number of tubers they produced per plant, but time of harvest did not influence this attribute. The mean sensory evaluation of boiled and pounded yam showed little variation from 4 until 7 months. The best scores of the sensory evaluation, however, were obtained at 6 months, before final foliage senescence occurred, which coincided with the time of highest tuber yield (Akinwande *et al.*, 2007).

In some countries (West Indies, Ivory Coast, New Caledonia), mechanized harvesters have been developed for varieties with a very compact and even tuber shape. In Loir-et-Cher, France, the harvest of *D. opposita* planted at high density and producing, on ridges, tubers of an average 60 cm long is fully mechanized thanks to the very sandy and light soil where it is cultivated. Mechanization requires that the setts planted are small so that the tubers that will be harvested mechanically are also small and uplifted easily. The staking system, if any, should be removed completely so that stakes do not interfere with the machines.

Depending on species, there is generally only one harvest per year but, in West Africa, *D. cayenensis-rotundata* cultivars are harvested twice a year. In Nigeria, the first harvest is called 'milking' and consists of cautiously excavating a tuber on a live plant, which remains in the soil until it reaches full maturity. The tuber is cut just under the corm with a machete or a bush knife and the soil is pushed back into place. A new tuber will then develop and will be

harvested. This practice provides tubers as early as possible in the year but also helps to obtain seed tubers from varieties which normally produce only one tuber. The largest tubers, however, are always those obtained from plants that are not 'milked'.

The harvesting of *D. bulbifera* bulbils should be left until the foliage has disappeared completely and the stems are well dried before harvest. An early harvest deteriorates their quality.

20

Pests and Diseases

Numerous pests and diseases can cause serious yield losses in the field or in storage, but their incidence is very variable, depending on country, region, species, variety and the cropping system used. Generally, when yams are intercropped in traditional agroforestry systems, they tend to be fairly exempt from attack, whereas when they are monocropped on larger, open fields, they are much more vulnerable.

PESTS

Surveys conducted in Nigeria indicate that farmers consider insects as the most important pests in high-intensity, yam growing areas (IITA, 2000) (Table 20.1).

In Africa, yam beetles are the most important pests. They are: *Heterolligus meles*, *H. appius*, *Heteronychus licas*, *Prionoryctes rufopiceus*, *P. caniculus* (all Dynastidae spp.) and *Lepidiotica reichei* (Melolonthidae). *Heterolligus meles* is by far the most important from Sierra Leone to Angola. The eggs are laid in moist

Table 20.1. Major pests and diseases of *Dioscorea cayenensis-rotundata* in Nigeria (% of farmers reporting the case).

Pests	Farmers' responses (%)
Nematodes	1.0
Insects	6.0
Yam tuber beetles	46.0
Scale insects	18.0
Termites and ants	25.0
Anthracnose	0.0
Others	4.0

After IITA (2000).

soil and the larvae start consuming organic matter. After pupation, the adult beetles appear at the beginning of the rainy season and colonize the yam fields. They start burrowing into the soil at the base of the stem and feed on the tubers, which are still young and developing at that time of year. Their feeding causes lesions of 1–2 cm in diameter and each lesion represents the removal of approximately 4 g tissue. The appearance of the tuber, and consequently its market value, are seriously affected (Coursey, 1967). The use of any contact insecticides, applied either on the setts or on the ground at planting, is very efficient. The best results seem to be obtained with Aldrin. Not much information is available on cultural control measures against yam beetles. The effect of natural enemies in their biological control is not known, but a number of tachinid and sarcophagid flies have been bred in an attempt to initiate biological control (Kumar, 1990).

In the Pacific, the rose beetle, *Adoretus versutus*, can consume up to 50% of the leaf lamina and, in some islands (e.g. on Efaté, Vanuatu), damage is very severe due to reduction of the total photosynthetic area. Its control with insecticides is somewhat difficult as this beetle is nocturnal and hides in the litter during the day, where it is well protected. In some cases, Papuana beetles (*Papuana* spp.), which are responsible for considerable losses on taro (*C. esculenta*), also attack *Dioscorea* spp.

Scale insects and mealy bugs (Coccidae, Diaspididae) can have an important economic impact. Three species have been reported in Ivory Coast (*Gonaspidiotus hartii* or *Aspidiella hartii*, *Aspidiotus destructor* and *Planococcus citri*). Infestation occurs very early on the stored tubers and attacks result in their commercial depreciation. Their coating cannot be removed easily and necessitates hand brushing (Foua-Bi, 1982).

NEMATODES

Various species of nematode attack *Dioscorea* spp. by puncturing plant cells and causing cell breakdown and malfunction in the plant tissues. Three species are considered to be of economic importance: *Scutellonema bradys*, *P. coffeae* and *M. incognita* (Quenerhervé, 1998).

Scutellonema bradys is called the yam nematode and has been recorded in West Africa, the Pacific and the West Indies. This species is found in the soil around the yams and is an endoparasite of the roots and tubers. The eggs are laid in the plant tissues, where they hatch and produce very large populations in the tubers (as much as 62,000 nematodes/10 g fresh tuber). The nematodes cause the breakdown of cell walls, destruction of the cell contents and produce cavities within the tissues. In the field, *S. bradys* is usually found in the periderm and rarely penetrates deeper than 1 or 2 cm into the tuber. However, during tuber storage, penetration goes deeper and causes the development of small lesions, easily observed when the tuber skin is removed. They turn black and

form a dry-rot layer, which can invade the whole tuber (Bridge, 1982). This nematode does not cause reduction in yam growth, but can spoil a considerable part of the edible portion and reduce its commercial value. In West Africa, most species (*D. alata*, *D. bulbifera*, *D. cayenensis-rotundata* and *D. esculenta*) are attacked, but some varieties are much more resistant than others.

In the West Indies, several experiments have been conducted to attempt to control and reduce the incidence of *S. bradys* attacks. Nematicide treatments applied at harvest are efficient but chemicals need to be applied at each cycle as the nematodes are not eliminated completely and reproduce quickly. The use of healthy planting material, either from bulbils or from *in vitro* plantlets, is an attractive but very expensive alternative. A high proportion of nematode-free seed tubers can be produced by coating with Cadusafos. However, this toxic product should be used only to counter a serious attack of great economic impact (Cadet and Daly, 1996).

In Benin, the pathogenicity of three populations of *S. bradys* from different geographical areas was assessed on seven cultivars, one *D. rotundata* and six *D. alata*. *Scutellonema bradys* does not affect the plant vine circumference, vine dry weight or the number of tubers per plant across cultivars, but affects tuber weight. The greatest weight loss is recorded in fertilized tubers infected with *S. bradys*. Nematode multiplication rates are higher in tubers during the first 3 months of storage, but decrease in the 4th and 5th months (Baimey, 2005).

The lesion nematode, *P. coffeae*, is present in the West Indies and the Pacific Islands. The symptoms are similar to those of *S. bradys*. The nematodes are found in the tuber skin and cause severe necrosis and deep cracks in the outer tissue layers. This is associated with a subsequent deterioration of tuber quality and, finally, a significant loss in market value.

Root-knot nematodes, *Meloidogyne* spp., are present in most countries and different species (*M. arenaria*, *M. hapla*, *M. incognita* and *M. javanica*) are found. The juveniles infest the roots and tubers and establish themselves on a feeding site in vascular tissues. The feeding of the females produces galls, or so-called knots, typical of the *Meloidogyne* spp. In the south-eastern region of Nigeria, these nematodes are widespread pests on *D. rotundata* and *D. alata*. It has been shown that when setts are inoculated artificially with *Meloidogyne* spp., they geminate normally but plant yield is reduced significantly (Bridge, 1982). If young seedlings are parasitized by these nematodes, the plants become stunted and severe infestation can kill young plants. In the state of Orissa, India, the popular *D. alata* cultivar called 'Hinjilicut' is highly susceptible to the root-knot nematode. Tubers are deformed with an irregular surface, which contains many females, along with egg masses. A local screening of 27 accessions of *D. alata* germplasm has led to the identification of a highly resistant and high-yielding cultivar ('Sree Keerthi') (Mohandas and Misra, 2005).

Cultural practices directly determine the extent of nematode damage. Fallow is not sufficient as the presence of wild hosts makes at least 4 years

fallow necessary in order to have some effect on the nematode population. Intercropping with maize, ginger, cocoyam, taro and sweet potato gives some control results, but not all farmers can afford to do this. Some cover crops, such as *Tagetes* spp. (African marigold), *Aeshynomene histrix*, *M. pruriens* and *Pueraria phaseoloides* are promising. On the other hand, plots which have been cultivated recently with vegetables should be avoided. Production of nematode-free planting material by using stem cuttings is effective, but is a laborious solution and not all farmers are willing to adopt it. The treatment of planting-material prior to planting by immersion in hot water is more effective than field treatments. Hot water treatment involves immersing the tubers in preheated water for a time sufficient to kill the nematodes without damaging the tissues. The immersion of tubers at 50–53°C for 25 min is recommended. This may eliminate *S. bradys* and *Meloidogyne* spp. but it depends on numerous factors, including tuber age, species, varieties, dormancy, nematode densities and depth of infestation.

In Jamaica, household disinfectants such as Dettol, bleach and Jeyes fluid are quite effective against *M. incognita*, *R. reniformis*, *Helicotylenchys* spp. and other nematodes (Hutton, 1998).

BACTERIA

A few bacteria have been suspected of being responsible for losses due to tuber rot during strorage. A *Corynebacterium* spp. has been found to cause a dry rot of the tuber. *Serratia* spp. have been identified in tubers from Nigeria and Puerto Rico, as well as *Erwinia* spp., but it is suggested that these bacteria might be a secondary infection rather than the cause of the tuber rot (Zohouri, 1998).

FUNGI

Numerous fungi species have been isolated from the foliage and tubers of *Dioscorea* spp. (Table 20.2).

Depending on species and varieties, *Phyllosticta* spp. can cause large necrotic spots on the lamina, which enlarge and spread to all the foliage. *Rhizoctonia solani* may cause the lamina to turn completely brown but the damage varies significantly according to the weather. *Corticium rolfsii* attacks all levels of the plant and when severe, its development at the stem base can cause the whole plant to wilt. In Nigeria, *F. oxysporum* has been reported as causing serious losses in fields which have been cultivated for too long.

None of these species, however, has an economic impact comparable to the yam anthracnose, caused by the fungus *C. gloeosporioides* (incomplete state and conidean form of *G. cingualata*). Anthracnose has been reported in all yam-producing regions of the world and is characterized by blackening and dieback

Table 20.2. Fungi species isolated on *Dioscorea* spp. foliage and tubers.

Species	West Indies	Africa	Oceania
Foliage:			
Alternaria sp.	x		
Ascohyta sp.	x	x	
Botryodiplodia theobromae	x	x	
Cercospora sp.	x	x	x
Choanephora cucurbitarum	x		
Cladosporium sp.	x		x
Colletotrichum capsici	x	x	
C. gloeosporioides	x	x	x
Corticium rolfsii	x	x	
Corynespora cassiicola	x	x	
Curvularia sp.	x	x	
Diplodia sp.	x		
Fusarium sp.	x	x	
F. oxysporum	x		x
Glomerella cingulata	x	x	x
Goplana dioscoreae			x
Heminthosporium	x		
Heterospoium luci	x	x	
Illosporium sp.	x		
Lasiodiplodia theobromae			x
Macrophomina phaseoli	x		
Monochaetia sp.	x		
Mychosphaerella dioscoreicola	x		
Oidium sp.			x
Periconia sp.	x	x	
Pestalotia sp.			x
Pestalotiopsis cruenta	x	x	
Phoma sp.	x		
Phomopsis sp.	x		
Phyllosticta sp.	x	x	x
Pythium sp.	x		
Rhizoctonia sp.	x	x	x
Sphaeropsis sp.	x	x	
Sphaerostilbe repens			x
Stachybotrys sp.	x	x	
Stemphyllium sp.	x		
Vermicularia sp.	x		
Tubers:			
Aspergillus niger		x	x
A. tamarii		x	
Botryodiplodia theobromae		x	
Fusarium monoliforme		x	x
Penicillium cyclopium		x	
P. gladioli	x		
P. oxalicum		x	
P. sclerotigenum		x	
Rhizopus nodosus		x	

Source: Zohouri (1998), SPYN (2003).

of the leaves and shoots, giving a burnt appearance to the vines and foliage. In some regions, the damage done to the crop is so rapid and severe that farmers believe it is the result of thunder. *Colletorichum gloeosporioides* exudes phytotoxic products that are a water-soluble, host-selective glycoprotein-type of toxic compound composed of large polysaccharides, of which 80–85% are mannose and galactose (Alleyne, 1996). Necrotic lesions on the leaves are always associated with the area in close contact with the exuded toxin. Leaf necrosis and death of stems lead to a reduction of the photosynthetic potential of the plant foliage, which generally occurs before tuber bulking. It is extremely damaging on *D. alata*. In the Caribbean, for instance, yield losses of 50–100% are recorded on favoured varieties during epidemics (Degras *et al.*, 1984; Mignucci *et al.*, 1985; Green, 1994; Sweetmore *et al.*, 1994). The causal organism, *C. gloeosporioides*, is also found on many other crops, as well as weeds.

Incidence of the disease is related closely with rainfall and atmospheric humidity. Apparently, it is not too severe in the drier areas of India, or in the West African yam belt. In the Pacific, losses are high and control is difficult (Jackson *et al.*, 1980; Winch *et al.*, 1984; Van Wijmeersch, 1986). Fungicides have been recommended, but are unsuitable for smallholder production and even in commercial plantings, often give only temporary relief. Benlate (containing a.i. Benomyl) was an efficient systemic before being declared illegal. Dithane is effective, but has to be used regularly. Methods of cultural control have assumed that alternative hosts are the main source of inoculum for seasonal epidemics (Jackson *et al.*, 1980) and infection of setts has been overlooked or mistaken for lesions caused by the nematode, *P. coffeae* (Bridge, 1996).

Unfortunately, the most popular cultivars, or those which are particularly adapted to commercial production, are also those which are the most susceptible. In Barbados, West Indies, anthracnose severely reduced the production of 'White Lisbon' (McDonald *et al.*, 1998). In Puerto Rico, an evaluation of the marketable yield and the natural reaction to anthracnose of four *D. alata* cultivars ('Florido', 'Diamantes', 'Forastero' and 'Kabusah') reveals no significant yield differences among the last three. Their average marketable yields of 26.2, 25.6 and 24.8 t/ha, respectively, are significantly higher than that obtained for the widely used 'Florido' (2.9 t/ha). This popular cultivar shows the highest disease severity (Gonzalez, 2006).

Variation within *C. gloeosporioides* is still poorly defined and hinders breeding for resistance. In the Pacific, the South Pacific Yam Network (SPYN, 2003) has attempted to identify the numerous co-factors involved in the epidemy. In five different Melanesian countries, more than 80 isolates were collected of *Dioscorea* spp. and crop species or weeds present in the same cultivated plots. The objective was to assess the variability existing within these isolates and to attempt to locate the source of the inoculum and the origin of the epidemy using ISSR-PCR markers to fingerprint isolates of *C. gloeosporioides*. There are significant differences in pathogenicity among *C. gloeosporioides* isolates, but there is a lack of a clear association between morphological data and pathogenicity among isolates.

Although the occurrence of *G. cingulata* on yam has been reported widely, there is still a paucity of information on its importance in the epidemiology of yam anthracnose. The fact that almost half of the isolates tested by SPYN produce sexual structures on yam host tissue reveals that *G. cingulata* occurs more frequently than previously thought. There is, however, no clear link between pathogencity and the production of the teleomorph form and, hence, it is most likely that the teleomorph stage plays a role in genetic variability, as well as acting as a mean for vegetative propagation from season to season (SPYN, 2003).

Isolates of *C. gloeosporioides* from both yam and non-yam species are able to infect *D. alata*, as well as a number of other non-yam hosts. From a practical point of view, this means that *C. gloeosporioides* from yam is a potential pathogen of a number of crops. The associated natural flora found in, or around, fields acts as an inoculum reservoir posing a serious threat to yam production from one season to another. Hence, in yam growing areas, practices such as intercropping, or mixed cropping, with known *C. gloeosporioides* hosts should be minimized and the destruction of species known to host the fungus and other sanitization measures should be recommended.

Colletotrichum gloeosporioides has also been detected in yam tubers from Vanuatu and PNG, confirming that the fungus is able to infect and survive in tuber tissues from season to season. Infected tubers, used as planting material, might act as a primary source of inoculum, playing an important role in the epidemiology of the pathogen in the field. The disease has also been shown to be tuber-borne in both West Africa and the West Indies (Green and Simons, 1994). Infection starts in the field and develops in storage. Tuber-borne infections could have severe implications for production, both as a source of infection and as a means of dispersal. However, the mechanism of spread of *C. gloeosporioides* from tuber to canopy is yet to be understood fully. The pathogen has not been re-isolated or detected from shoot parts of plants raised from heavily infected tubers, ruling out any systemic spread of this fungus.

Spread might well start from the rotting seed sett once the plant has reached the autotrophic stage. The high incidence of soilborne pathogens such as *Fusarium* spp. and *R. solani*, as well as tuber-rotting agents such as *Rhizopus* spp., *Penicillium* spp. and *Aspergillus* spp., confirms that these pathogens are nuisances, both in the field and in storage. Further studies to determine whether they also play a role in predisposing tuber infection by *C. gloeosporioides* are still required. Moreover, the high degree of contamination by these fungi, particularly *Rhizopus*, *Rhizoctonia* and *Mucor*, might inhibit the growth of *C. gloeosporioides* on agar, hence underestimating its frequency in tuber tissues when detection studies are being conducted. In addition, detection of *B. theobromeae*, *Phoma* spp., *Phomopsis* spp., *C. capsici* and *Curvularia* spp., which also cause a number leaf spot diseases on yam, gives an indication of the potential risk these pathogens, including *C. gloeosporioides*, could pose on tuber quality (SPYN, 2003).

In the Pacific, the heterogeneity exhibited at the molecular level by isolates of *C. gloeosporioides* indicates the existence of a complex population structure in

which sexual recombination probably plays a major role in generating variation. In all countries, there is little or no evidence of clonality. This is due probably to the nature of yam cultivation in small plots within agroforestry systems, rather than large fields of monocrops like those of West Africa. The lack of clear relationships between molecular groups and geographical origins, coupled with the evidence that closely similar strains are present in widely separate localities, probably reflects the historic movement of clonal germplasm between the Pacific Islands.

In Nigeria also, molecular markers have shown that *C. gloeosporioides* sexual recombinations might play an important role in anthracnose epidemics (Abang *et al.*, 2006). Two distinct morphotypes are associated with anthracnose disease. Molecular differentiation clearly separates isolates of the aggressive defoliating morphotype from the moderately virulent, non-defoliating strain (Abang *et al.*, 2002, 2005).

Identification of the levels of resistance to yam anthracnose is laborious and cumbersome. A tissue culture-derived, whole-plant inoculation assay might be an alternative method, faster and more cost-efficient than conventional field techniques. The use of the spray inoculation method has been shown to be reliable. The whole plant area scoring method conducted in two assessments (5 and 7 days after inoculation) provides the best conditions for evaluating yam genotypes. The tissue culture-derived whole-plant assay has been used to test 60 *D. alata* cultivars for their reactions to three isolates of *C. gloeosporioides*. As in field conditions, a wide range of variation in cultivar resistance and the significant effects of pathogen isolate and interactions, are observed. The potential of the tissue culture-derived whole-plant assay for anthracnose resistance breeding programmes appears promising and could speed up the improvement process (Onyeka *et al.*, 2006a, b).

VIRUSES

About 15 different viruses have been described infecting members of the *Dioscorea* spp. Although the effects of the virus diseases on yield are difficult to quantify accurately, it is quite clear that infection reduces vegetative growth and tuber size (Thouvenel and Dumont, 1990).

Detection of viruses is done by different techniques ranging from serological tests (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, ELISA), electron microscopy and DNA techniques such as cDNA probes and polymerase chain reaction (PCR). ELISA tests are used on leaf or tuber samples to detect accurately the identification of the virus involved. There are no techniques available for controlling viruses in the field. One of the solutions is the development of a sanitation programme to produce virus-free *in vitro* plantlets, but more data are needed to document their re-infection rate once established in the field (Table 20.3).

Table 20.3. The main viruses known to infect yams.

Virus	Acronym	Genus
Dioscorea latent virus	DLV	Potexvirus
Dioscorea alata virus (syn. yam mild mosaic virus)	DAV (YMMV)	Potyvirus
Cucumber mosaic virus	CMV	Cucumovirus
Dioscorea dumetorum virus	DdV	Potyvirus
Dioscorea bulbifera bacilliform virus	DbBV	Badnavirus
Dioscorea alata bacilliform virus	DaBV	Badnavirus
Yam mosaic virus	YMV	Potyvirus
Chinese yam necrotic mosaic virus	ChYNMV	Macluravirus
Dioscorea esculenta virus	DEV	Potyvirus
Dioscorea dumetorum potyvirus	DDV	Potyvirus
Dioscorea latent virus	DLV	Potexvirus
Dioscorea mottle virus	DMoV	Comovirus
Dioscorea trifida virus	DTV	Potyvirus
Japanese yam mosaic virus	JYMV	Potyvirus
Yam internal brown spot virus	IBSV	–

Two viruses of the family Potyviridae (YMV and DAV = YMMV) are reported to be the most widespread and economically important viruses worldwide and are a major constraint to the international movement of germplasm, as very few laboratories have the means to produce virus-free yam germplasm (Lebas, 2002).

Yam mosaic potyvirus (YMV) is the most important virus infecting yams in the tropics. It causes symptoms ranging from mild mosaic on leaves to stunted growth. YMV is transmitted mechanically from plant to plant by *Aphis gossypii*, *A. craccivora*, *Rhipalosiphum maidis* and *Toxoptera citricidus* (Odu *et al.*, 2004a, b). In West Africa, the virus is present in all cultivated species, while in Guadeloupe, it is detected mostly from *D. trifida* and *D. cayenensis-rotundata* (Urbino *et al.*, 1998). YMV has not been demonstrated conclusively to be present in the Pacific region.

Dioscorea alata virus (syn. yam mild mosaic virus, DAV) is transmissible from *D. alata*, the host plant, only by the aphids *A. craccivora* and *R. maidis*. It induces mild mottling, veinal chlorosis, occasional vein banding, leaf distortion and, in some cases, severe chlorosis. DAV (potyvirus) is the virus detected most commonly by serology (ELISA) in *D. alata*, *D. esculenta* and *D. bulbifera*. The molecular technique, RT-PCR, is generally more sensitive than ELISA for detecting DAV. Sequence analysis suggests that there are many different strains of DAV present in the Pacific region, but there is no strong association between particular sequence types (strains) and geographic or host origin. Many samples from the Pacific also test positive by ELISA for *Dioscorea dumetorum* potyvirus (DdV), another potyvirus (SPYN, 2003).

Cucumber mosaic virus (CMV) is a widespread virus found mostly on vegetables and is transmitted both mechanically and by aphids in a non-persistent manner. It causes mild mottle-leaf chlorosis on most cultivars of *D. alata*. However, the genetic variability of CMV strains probably means that, as yet, no single antiserum can be used with certainty to detect all the strains that could be present in yams. The susceptibility of some genotypes of *D. alata* to CMV is a serious constraint to yam breeders as a great number of different sources are omnipresent in the field. In Nigeria, CMV has been reported as causing only mild vein chlorosis symptoms in *D. rotundata* (Odu *et al.*, 2004a). Studies conducted in the field under natural infection and in four locations allowed the identification of *D. cayenensis-rotundata* resistant varieties, but it will take more time to find out if they are acceptable to growers. *Dioscorea rotundata* genotypes were evaluated for their response to three mechanical and vector-transmitted viruses (DAV, DaBV and CMV). A landrace from Nigeria developed symptoms of infection with CMV and DaBV following mechanical and vector transmission (Odu *et al.*, 2004b).

The relative importance of potyviruses may be distorted by them being detected more easily than other viruses, such as badnaviruses, cucumoviruses, potexviruses and comoviruses. Badnaviruses, due to their very low virus titres and ability not to produce any clear symptoms, often go undetected. The heterogeneity of badnaviruses, combined with the fact that yam is an under-researched crop, results in very scarce knowledge of this group of viruses.

Dioscorea alata bacilliform virus (DaBV) is transmitted mechanically and by mealy bugs (*P. citri*) from *D. alata* to other *Dioscorea* spp. It causes severe leaf distortion, crinkling and mottling in infected plants. In Nigeria, YMV, DAV, CMV and DaBV can be found together infecting *D. alata* varieties, which are natural hosts of these viruses (Odu *et al.*, 2006). Badnavirus particles were first reported in yam in association with a flexuous virus, causing internal brown spot (IBS) disease in *D. alata* and *D. cayenensis* in the Caribbean. The presence of another yam bacilliform virus has been indicated by DaBV being related serologically to a badnavirus from *D. bulbifera*, named as *Dioscorea bulbifera* badnavirus (DbBV). The possible integration of badnavirus sequences in the yam host genomes, together with their high genetic variability, complicates the development of reliable indexing tests (SPYN, 2003). Badnaviruses are highly diverse and prevalent in *Dioscorea* spp. of the Pacific and have been reported in *D. alata*, *D. bulbifera*, *D. esculenta*, *D. nummularia*, *D. pentaphylla*, *D. rotundata and D. trifida* (Kenyon *et al.*, 2008).

Tissue culture and virus elimination can be done by chemotherapy and thermotherapy. Plants derived from therapy can be indexed using serological methods for several yam viruses (YMV, YMMV (DAV), DaBV, DbBV, DLV and CMV) by ELISA or immunosorbent electron microscopy (ISEM). If necessary, more sensitive, molecular methods can also be used. Degenerate, non-specific, potyvirus PCR primers have been used to detect a number of different potyviruses in yam, and primer pairs specific for YMV and YMMV (DAV) have

been developed (Mumford and Seal, 1997). Similarly, degenerate primers to the aspartic protease gene and reverse transcriptase genes of badnaviruses have been used to detect badnavirus in several yam cultivars and to develop specific primers and probes (Hull *et al.*, 1996).

All virus elimination methods are based on regenerating plantlets in tissue culture from treated nodes or meristems taken from infected plants. Thermotherapy, whereby plants are grown at an elevated temperature (> 34°C) in controlled conditions prior to young nodes or meristems being transferred to tissue culture, is an effective means of eliminating DAV from infected yam accessions. Up to 40% of nodes that regenerate in tissue culture following this treatment test negative for DAV. A procedure whereby lengths of yam vine are heated by passing an electric current through them, known as electrotherapy, has also been investigated. Some nodes reach temperatures of up to 39°C during this treatment. Preliminary results using DAV-infected plants indicate that electrotherapy also increases the rate of virus elimination. However, much more work is required to substantiate these findings, since indexing of the plantlets was done while they were still very young and it is well recognized that virus titres are often very low in newly established tissue culture plantlets. It is often only after the plantlets have been grown in soil for several months that the titre increases again to detectable levels (SPYN, 2003).

Filloux and Girard (2006) have developed an efficient elimination system for badnaviruses, potexviruses and potyviruses. After a 2 month tissue culture, about 35% of the meristems regenerate into plantlets and all the accessions regenerate at least one plantlet. Well-developed plants are then grown in glasshouses, controlled visually for viral symptoms and tested again with RT-PCR. Thermotherapy combined with meristem culture leads to the elimination of badnaviruses, potexviruses and two potyviruses (DAV and YMV). However, badnavirus elimination seems to be problematic on *D. rotundata* with the same protocol, especially if badnavirus-like sequences are integrated in the yam genome. Therefore, at present, no *D. rotundata* accession can be considered free of badnavirus. Virus-free accessions are maintained *in vitro* or in insect-proof glasshouses in the CIRAD yam germplasm transit centre in Montpellier, France. The international distribution of these accessions has been achieved *in vitro* and about 50 accessions have been sent safely to five countries in West Africa and in the Carribean (Table 20.4).

INTEGRATED PEST AND DISEASE MANAGEMENT

Intensification of yam cultivation can benefit from breeding for host plant resistance but the modification of unsuitable cultural practices also forms an important component of integrated control. In most countries, the practice of growing yam first in the rotation and avoiding continuous cultivation on the same field has much to do with avoidance of pest and pathogen pressure, as

Table 20.4. Regeneration efficiency after chemotherapy.

Species	No. of accessions	No. of meristems cultivated	No. of plantlets regenerated	Regeneration ratio (%)
D. alata	41	820	325	39.6
D. nummularia	4	140	28	20.1
D. praehensilis	1	20	17	84.6
D. rotundata	26	520	174	33.5
D. trifida	3	60	9	14.6
Total	75	1560	553	35.4

Source: Filloux and Girard (2006).

well as loss in soil fertility. Integrated management of yam pests and diseases consists of the appropriate selection of planting material and the use of control measures that provide positive impact. It starts with phytosanitary measures to prevent the introduction of pathogens into the cropping system. Ideally, this starts at harvest and plants exhibiting viral symptoms should not be harvested for use as seed setts. Unfortunately, farmers tend to bulk together their harvest and cannot tell which tubers come from which plants. In practice, tubers from diseased plants should be harvested first and put aside so that they are not kept as planting material. An accurate examination of the tubers available for propagation, fungicide treatment of their pieces and the roguing of those suspected to host a pathogen or pest is a necessary step.

Data on successful IPM projects for yams is scarce but some practical measures can slow down epidemics. For example, some weed species (e.g. *Mikania micrantha*) are a potential source of anthracnose inoculum and it is often observed that the epidemy strikes faster and more severely in plots which are not cleaned properly. In traditional agroforestry systems, farmers are generally aware of the anthracnose resistant and susceptible varieties that they have and interplant them so that when the epidemy strikes, its movement across the field is slowed down.

21

Postharvest Quality and Marketing

Yam is a crop with potential for increased commercial exploitation. Tubers are sold increasingly at local urban markets and they are also being exported, returning much-needed cash to rural communities. Yam, alone among the tropical root crops, can be stored for long periods and, because of this and its robust nature, it can be transported to processing units with relative ease. Their processing potential is strenghtened nowadays by the rapid development of small machines adapted to village level.

CHEMICAL COMPOSITION

Chemical composition depends mainly on the species, the cultivar or wild form. Considering their high moisture content, yams are comparatively less able to satisfy energy requirements than other root crop species, but their protein, mineral and vitamin content is higher. When processed into flour, yams have a nutritional value comparable to cereals (Trèche, 1998). The food value is composed of carbohydrates (starch, sugars, fibres), proteins, minerals, vitamins and a negligible amount of lipids.

Analyses have been done but not all species were represented and varietal differences were not evaluated in detail (Bradbury and Holloway, 1988). However, there is sufficient indication that the differences between varieties are important, as they are in other root crop species (Table 21.1).

The African species have been investigated thoroughly, revealing significant genetic variation within *D. cayenensis-rotundata* for the major components of their food value (Trèche, 1998). Some varieties have a chemical composition well suited to some traditional uses (e.g. *fufu*), while others do not. For *D. alata*, different cultivars from New Caledonia present highly variable characteristics of their tubers but no correlations could be connected to taste or specific palatability (Lebot *et al.*, 1998). Indigenous knowledge, however, claims that there is tremendous variation between the culinary and palatability properties

Table 21.1. Fresh weight composition of *Dioscorea* spp. (values are means of different samples).

Species: Samples (*n*):	*alata* (16)	*esculenta* (99)	*bulbifera* (25)	*nummularia* (12)	*pentaphylla* (9)	*rotundata* (3)	*trifida* (3)
Moisture %	77.3	74.2	71.9	81.7	82.5	65.7	80.7
Energy (kj/100 g)	406	443	258	266	550	284	580
Protein %	2.06	2.04	1.94	1.65	1.42	1.52	0.53
Starch %	16.7	19.3	23.2	11.7	13.9	30.2	14.2
Sugars %	1.03	0.55	0.22	0.20	0.12	0.32	0.23
Dietary fibre %	1.88	1.15	1.84	1.42	0.66	0.63	1.02
Fat %	0.08	0.06	0.06	0.05	0.03	0.09	0.04
Ash %	0.81	0.82	0.95	0.69	0.76	0.73	0.70
Minerals (mg/100 g):							
Ca	8.2	7.5	6.5	8.4	13	4.6	8
P	38	39	40	27	26	28	38
Mg	17	26	30	19	23	17	15
Na	3.3	3.1	8.6	2.7	6.1	4.7	2.9
K	318	303	448	346	374	361	350
S	12	16	15	9.0	13	12	8.2
Fe	0.60	0.75	0.38	0.56	0.44	0.60	0.54
Cu	0.15	0.17	0.34	0.21	0.25	0.12	0.13
Zn	0.39	0.46	0.50	0.31	0.36	0.30	0.35
Mn	0.04	0.24	0.04	0.13	0.05	0.03	0.03
Al	0.64	0.51	0.29	0.49	0.62	0.63	0.41
B	0.09	0.07	0.05	0.10	0.17	0.08	0.11
Vitamins (mg/100 g):							
Vitamin A	0.018	0.017	–	–	–	0.8	–
Thiamin	0.047	0.045	–	–	0.036	–	–
Riboflavin	0.030	0.028	–	–	0.018	–	–
Nicotinic acid	0.38	0.41	–	–	0.33	–	–
Total vitamin C	28	20	–	–	–	–	–
Total oxalate (Ox)	18	13	–	–	–	–	–
Malate	105	83	–	–	–	–	–
Citrate	142	123	–	–	–	–	–
Trypsin inhibitor (TIU/g)	0.56	–	–	–	–	–	–

Source: Bradbury and Holloway (1988).

of *D. alata* cultivars, some being suitable for certain types of preparation while others are not, and some being cooked much faster than others. Varieties from PNG, Vanuatu and Fiji have been analysed for their physico-chemical characteristics in an attempt to relate those characteristics with eating quality and to assess the possibility of selecting varieties according to their chemotype. Varieties with good eating quality are characterized by high DM, starch and amylose content. Chemotypes appear to be controlled genetically (Lebot *et al.*, 2006a). Sugars present are maltose, saccharose, raffinose, glucose, fructose and the most important, saccharose (Table 21.2).

The amylose (A) versus starch (S) ratio is an important palatability trait in Vanuatu. Preferred varieties seem to have a high A/S ratio (> 0.18) and all varieties that have tubers with poor eating quality are characterized by low A/S ratio < 0.16, high mineral and high protein content. The total sugar content is another important characteristic and some varieties are appreciated because of their sweet taste, which is confirmed analytically by the high sugar content (up to 5.71% for cv. 'Maligni'). However, sugar content alone cannot determine quality. Starch, amylose and total sugar content are correlated positively with DM. Mineral, lipid and protein content are correlated positively to each other, but correlated negatively with DM, starch and amylose. Total sugar content is correlated negatively with mineral and protein content (Lebot *et al.*, 2006a). Some of these correlations confirm previous results obtained with cultivars grown in New Caledonia (Lebot *et al.*, 1998). For recommended varieties, this often corresponds to a white flesh which is not susceptible to oxidation when exposed to air. Chemotypes being controlled genetically, breeding *D. alata* for improved chemical composition of the tubers might be possible.

In West Africa, *D. alata* is popular for producing boiled yam but, so far, the varieties cultivated are unsuitable for pounded yam. Considering the tremendous variation that exists, and therefore the potential for breeding chemotypes

Table 21.2. Variation in major components for 110 varieties of *Dioscorea alata* (% of dry weight, d.w.)

Country	Varieties *n*	Dry matter (%)*	Starch (% d.w.)	Amylose (% d.w.)	Proteins (% d.w.)	Minerals (% d.w.)	Sugars (% d.w.)
Papua New Guinea	43	23.5	67.5	17.5	12.0	5.1	3.3
*CV%**		*16.4*	*7.8*	*11.4*	*32*	*14.7*	*49.1*
Vanuatu	48	23.4	73.1	17.2	11.9	3.3	1.85
CV%		*17.15*	*9.1*	*11.6*	*17.8*	*15.2*	*91.3*
Fiji	19	25.2	68.5	18.6	8.03	4.25	2.46
CV%		*18.2*	*6.1*	*5.7*	*21.7*	*18.8*	*26.4*

Note: *CV% coefficient of variation; *percentage in fresh weight. Source: SPYN (2003).

adapted to the preferences of African consumers, it is very likely that suitable varieties will be released in the future. *Dioscorea esculenta* is also cultivated widely but is not popular in West Africa because the physico-chemical properties of the tubers are not well adapted to African culinary processes.

Nutritional qualities have been investigated for the major species, but there is less work on minor *Dioscorea* species. The latter are considered solely as subsistence or famine relief foods, not as vegetables for urban centres. To date, value-added product development has not been tried for the minor *Dioscorea* species, although it is considered essential.

Some wild yam species (*D. hispida*) are known to be toxic because of the presence of the alkaloid, dioscorine. A wide range of saponins and steroidal sapogenins (mostly diosgenin) have been extracted from various *Dioscorea* spp. with the aim of providing the pharmaceutical industry with compounds for oral contraceptives. Industrial production has been undertaken in India and Mexico, with mixed results due to the increasing use of synthetic steroids (Coursey, 1967; Degras, 1993).

PHYSIOLOGICAL DISORDERS IN FRESHLY STORED TUBERS

The dormancy period directly determines the number of months tubers can be stored at ambient temperatures. Once dormancy ends, sprouting starts and the tubers deteriorate rapidly due to pathogenic invasion and storage is no longer possible. Several attempts to extend the dormancy period by physical or chemical means have resulted in limited prcatical applications for producers and traders. The dormancy length depends on the species and the variety. *Dioscorea alata* and *D. rotundata* tubers can remain dormant for 3–5 months on average, while *D. cayenensis* and *D. trifida* are dormant for 1–2 months.

Tubers respire actively at harvest and during sprouting but, while they are in dormancy, their respiratory activity is reduced. Respiration accounts for a significant loss in DM weight in stored tubers which, when stored for up to 5 months at ambient temperature, may lose between 10 and 30% of weight. The reduction in DM during storage is probably caused by both the repiratory process and the activity of microorganisms within the tuber tissues. Following an injury such as a cut in the periderm, there is a rapid increase in tuber respiration rate. Reduction of storage temperature can extend dormancy and reduce storage loss but yams are susceptible to low temperature injury as soon as they reach 10–12°C (Passam, 1982; Ravi and Aked, 1996) (Table 21.3).

Several modern techniques, including cold storage, freezing, chemical treatments, wax coating and irradiation, have been applied to the major species (*D. alata* and *D. cayenensis-rotundata*), but their applicability to the minor *Dioscorea* species (*D. bulbifera*, *D. esculenta*, *D. nummularia*, *D. oppositajaponica*, *D. transversa* and *D. trifida*) is unknown. Factors that might impinge on satisfactory storage remain to be studied.

Table 21.3. Respiration and weight loss of *Dioscorea rotundata* tubers during storage.

	Total % weight loss/day		Percentage of total weight loss due to respiration	
Age of tubers	25°C	35°C	25°C	35°C
After harvest	0.22	0.36	27	30
Dormant	0.15	0.28	7	10
Sprouting	0.21	0.34	35	20

Source: Passam (1982).

MARKETING AND QUALITY STANDARDS

Throughout the world, the largest proportion of the yam harvest is marketed locally as fresh tubers, although dried chips or the resulting flours are gaining rapidly in popularity in West African urban markets. In most of these towns, the marketing of yams is very volatile, with supplies arriving from rural areas in truckloads at the convenience of the transporters. In West African countries, the most important constraints faced by yam traders are transport costs, seasonality of production, poor market infrastructure, lack of credit and damage to and rotting of tubers. Significant quality depreciation can be associated with pest and disease infestations, harvesting damage and overexposure to sunlight in the market place. All these factors combined can lead to a price discount of between 25 and 40% (Bancroft *et al.*, 1998).

Yam tubers are fragile and bruise easily. They therefore do not withstand any form of rough treatment and require careful handling to avoid skin bruising and tuber breakage. At harvest, the soil and rootlets are removed gently by hand and the small tubers are placed in wooden or plastic boxes (80 × 50 × 40 cm). These boxes should not be left in full sunlight and should be stored in cool, shaded, dry storage areas with good aeration as soon as possible. Tubers normally are cured just after harvest to heal any cuts or abrasions that harvest operations may have caused. Curing is done by spreading the tubers in the shade to allow wounds to heal, to toughen their skin (especially at the distal end) and to reduce the moisture content slightly. This operation improves their storability and extends their shelf life. Curing can last for 1–7 days with an ambient atmosphere of 90–100% relative humidity and is done at temperatures between 32 and 40°C. The most effective treatment is 24 h at 40°C (Ravi *et al.*, 1996). In practice, temperature is very difficult to control accurately, so farmers have to find the most suitable location on their farm by trial and error. If intended to be shipped to distant export markets, the tubers should be packed tightly in strong, waxed, corrugated cartons or, eventually, wooden crates. It is, however, beneficial to wrap each individual tuber in old newspaper or in coconut fibres. The packaging system depends on the quarantine requirements of the importing country.

There are lucrative ethnic markets in the USA, Europe, Australia and New Zealand. Yams are also popular in growing Asian markets. Consumer preference varies greatly, depending on cultural backgrounds, and producers must be aware of ethnocultural differences pertaining to tuber size, shape, flesh colour and skin smoothness. In the USA, the majority of imports (*D. alata*) are from Costa Rica and the Caribbean, while in the EU, the imports (*D. cayenensis-rotundata*) come mostly from Ghana and Ivory Coast. Yam supplies being seasonal, there are large price fluctuations.

There are no strict grade standards set by the importing countries but it is essential that the tubers are sent clean and in an undamaged condition. The tubers must be consistent in colour and varietal characteristics, mature (dormant, with firm skin and properly healed, corked, distal end), firm, unsprouted and free from decay, pests and diseases, mechanical injuries (cuts) and soil. The export markets usually demand smaller tubers of compact and uniform shape with an average weight of 1–3 kg. Different species should not be mixed when packed and only tubers of the same size should be packed together in the same carton. Calibration is important and traders often pay lower prices where there is none, arguing that labour is expensive in the importing countries. The geographic origin, the species and the variety should be indicated clearly on the carton. A clean, light-brown colour of the skin with a bright, non-oxidizing, white flesh is preferred by most consumers, but there are niche markets for attractive purple-fleshed varieties. Finally, in all cases, the texture has to be free of fibres when cooked.

STORAGE METHODS

There are a few basic requirements for good on-farm storage of tubers. The area must be well ventilated so that moisture does not remain on the tuber surface, where it will promote a variety of microorganism infestations. The temperature should be as low as possible, but not below 12°C. At ambient temperatures, between 25 and 35°C, tuber respiration is high and this decreases DM and accelerates sprouting. Unfortunately, in most countries, farmers do not have the financial means and technology to reduce the temperature, and shading is the only practical way of cooling down the tubers. Finally, tubers should be inspected on a regular basis and any rotting ones should be removed as soon as located. Sprouts may arise and should also be removed on a regular basis, until the planting period.

The yam barn is the most common storage system in West Africa. The tubers are tied with strings perpendicularly to vertical poles fixed in the ground and shaded by palm fronds, but the barn itself may be located under a tree. The structure remains in place only for the season and is not permanent. The main poles can be tall, live cuttings which will actually take root and sprout, giving raise to live poles which are more resistant to termite attack. The crossbars can

be made of a lighter wood, such as bamboo. Tubers can also be stored on raised platforms called 'beds' and this is the most common system in the Pacific. These structures can be fairly permanent and quite elaborate (e.g. the yam houses of the Trobriand archipelago villages in south-east PNG). Their geographical orientation is important as they have to be placed in the direction of the prevailing winds and perpendicular to the sun radiation movement for maximum shade and temperature reduction. In the same region, tubers may be hung individually from horizontal bamboo poles which are supported by forked hardwood sticks. This systems aims to prevent rodent attacks, as well as favouring excellent ventilation.

On agricultural research stations, tubers are kept in buildings of approximately $9 \times 9 \times 11$ m with a concrete floor and half walls, wooden racks and insect screens instead of windows and roofed with insulated corrugated iron. These structures can hold more than 10,000 tubers for 5 months with minimum microbial decay. The incidence of scale insects might be serious over such a long period and experiments have shown that *D. alata* tubers, buried in sand contained in wooden boxes can remain free of scale insect attacks.

Quality changes occur during storage and have been documented for *D. alata*, *D. esculenta* and *D. rotundata* stored under ambient conditions (25–33°C and 75–80% relative humidity) for up to 4 months. Starch content decreases, while sugars remain almost constant. The polyphenol content shows no variation in *D. rotundata* but increases significantly in *D. alata* and *D. esculenta*. On the other hand, a rapid loss of moisture is significant for *D. rotundata* but is slow for *D. alata* and *D. esculenta* (Ravi *et al.*, 1996). In fact, farmers are well aware that some of their varieties keep better than others. Different varieties of the same species differ markedly in their storage life and tolerance to storage pests and diseases.

At 16°C, the dormancy and storage life of *D. alata* tubers can be extended easily to 4–5 months if the tubers are cured before storage to reduce pathogen infestations (Passam, 1982). Though theoretically attractive, cold storage is not practical due to the cost and the natural bulkiness of yams. Gamma irradiation at 7.5 Krad has been applied successfully and safely to *D. alata* tubers to inhibit sprouting, but this technique also is not applied on a commercial scale. Sprout-suppressing chemicals, such as those used commercially for Irish potatoes, have been tested, as well as plant hormones applied in the form of postharvest immersion in a solution, but all have shown little application to yam storage (Table 21.4).

Natural or synthetic hormones have also been tried to extend dormancy (Table 21.5). Gibberellic acid can prolong dormancy of *D. alata* tubers but its effect is critically dependent on its time of application. When applied just after harvest, it delays sprouting, but when applied later in storage, it has virtually no effect. Gibberellic acid is a natural plant hormone manufactured on a commercial scale which might be useful, considering the low expertise needed for the treatment and the absence of toxicity (Passam, 1982). It is, however,

Table 21.4. Sprout-suppressant chemical effects on the length of yam tuber storage.

Species	Chemical	Effects on storage	Other effects
D. alata	TCNB	None	
	PCNB	None	
	IPPC	None	
	Maleic hydrazide	Reduced sprouting	Weight loss
	CIPC	Less than 1 month	Phytotoxic
D. rotundata	TCNB	None	
	Maleic hydrazide	Slightly delayed sprouting	
D. esculenta	Maleic hydrazide	None	

Note: TCNB = tetrachloronitrobenzene; PCNB = pentachloronitrobenzene; IPPC = isopropylphenylcarbamate; CIPC = isopropyl-N-(3-chlorophenyl) carbamate.
Source: Passam (1982).

Table 21.5. Growth-regulating chemical effects on yam tuber storage life.

Species	Compound	Storage life	Other effects
D. alata	Methyl-α-NAA	+ 1.5–2 months	Phytotoxic
	Chlorethanol + thiourea	Up to 3 months	
	Chlorethanol	Promoted sprouting	
	Ethylene chlorhydrin	Promoted sprouting	
	Gibberellic acid	+ 7 weeks	
	Gibberellic acid	Up to 4 weeks	
D. rotundata	Methyl-α-NAA	None	
	B-NAA	None	
	Gibberellic acid	None	
	IAA	None	
	Kinetin	None	
D. esculenta	Gibberellic acid	+ 6 weeks	

Source: Passam (1982).

somewhat expensive for smallholders and therefore its adoption is low, although the treatment is easy and efficient.

Numerous other compounds have been tried (Degras, 1993), with limited results or poor application. Waxing the tubers is not recommended as wax coating impairs oxygen circulation.

TRADITIONAL PROCESSING TECHNIQUES

Tubers of all species are consumed mostly as boiled yam. They are peeled, cut into pieces and cooked for 10–20 min, depending on species, variety and DM content. Most of the time, they are accompanied by sauces and other vegetables.

Pounded yam is prepared from pieces of boiled yam, pounded in a wooden mortar until it forms a thick paste. This paste is then eaten in the form of balls, with sauce and/or meat. The consistency is a matter of taste and, depending on the consumer, can be more or less watery, but most West Africans prefer it viscous and elastic in the mouth. The exact consistency depends on the variety and most likely on the relative proportions of amylose, starch and fibres. The pounding process has been modernized for urban dwellers and small electric machines can pound in silence in a few minutes (Onwueme and Charles, 1994).

In Vanuatu, *laplap*, the national dish, is made from finely grated fresh tubers that produce a slimy and sticky paste which is spread on and covered with *Heliconia indica* leaves and steam-cooked in a ground oven. The result is a sort of yam pudding with a very pleasant texture and aroma. Species rich in DM (*D. nummularia* and *D. transversa*) are usually preferred for this preparation.

There are many other recipes, including mashed yams (similar to mashed Irish potatoes) and fried, roasted and baked yams. Yam chips, similar to potato chips, are also produced by frying thin slices of tubers.

Yam flour is prepared from dehydrated tubers. The fresh tubers are peeled and, after a hot water treatment generally conducted in the field and aimed at surface sterilization, they are then sun-dried for several days until they are completely dried. Varieties of *D. rotundata* producing numerous smaller tubers are preferred for this market (e.g. the 'kokoro' cultivar in Benin). This raw material can be stored easily, transported and sold directly to consumers, who will process it into flour themselves or at local mills. Producers usually pay the mill owner in kind and give him a share of their flour. The dried tuber pieces are then pulverized into flour with electrical or mechanical hammer mills. The resulting flour can be stored in bags for months and is quite convenient for the growing cities of West Africa. The yam flour is stirred over boiling water and cooked for a few minutes in order to obtain a thick viscous *fufu*, which resembles the one obtained with pounded boiled yam. This product is developing very rapidly and farmers have to adapt by adopting the right varieties but are also facing new problems such as the high labour requirements for on-farm processing, as well as the control of pests in sun-dried yam (tuber borers).

The browning of fresh tubers is attributed to phenolic compounds. This is a problem as drying is the traditional process in West Africa to extend the shelf life of yam tubers. The flesh of the fresh tuber is usually white but *amala* (a popular paste in Benin) made from dried flour, turns brown during processing and the quality of the final product deteriorates. There is a relationship between the *amala* browning and the total phenol (TP) content of the flour: the higher the phenol content, the darker the product. In Benin, yams traditionally are blanched at an intermediate temperature (60–75°C) before drying. No significant variation is observed in phenol content during blanching, whereas it increases during drying. Polyphenoloxidase, peroxidase and phenolic compounds drop sharply to less than 20% of the initial activity after only 10 min of blanching at 65°C (Akissoe *et al.*, 2005).

INDUSTRIAL PROCESSING

Yam flakes are produced by drum drying cooked and mashed yam or by hot air drying diced and cooked yam. The former system produces flakes and the latter a powder form. Both are cooked in less than 5 min with boiling water. For hot air drying, just after cooking, the diced yams are dried in hot chambers and then milled into powder. Both products are packaged hermetically to extend product life. The microbial load is close to nil and the moisture content around 7%, so shelf life can be almost 1 year. The final product, sold commercially in supermarkets and urban foodstores, has all the characteristics of pounded yam and is of a creamy white colour. The level of elasticity is controlled by adding more or less water during the cooking process and depends on consumers' taste.

For export markets, frozen slices are prepared in sealed plastic bags. The portions are sliced into 1–2 cm thick pieces and dipped in a solution of 1% metabisulphite to prevent oxidation. The slices are then precooked at 40°C for 15 min and frozen at –40°C for 30 min. The frozen slices can then be stored in a freezer at –3 to –5°C. This is an acceptable product, ready to cook and eat. The use of antioxidant improves the colour greatly and avoids discoloration for up to 3 months of storage.

The varied texture characteristics of yam flours have been shown to be of industrial interest in the Philippines (Salda *et al.*, 1998). Their similarities to other commercial starches or flours are useful for product development of noodles, snacks and baby food products. In Taiwan, the incorporation of *D. alata* flour in bread has been shown to increase the antioxidant capacity of the blended bread markedly (25% yam flour/75% wheat flour). It is suggested that breads containing yam flour may be regarded as potential health-promoting foods as the incorporation of yam flour increases its antioxidant capacity markedly. Apparently, substituting yam flour in a bread formulation does not interfere with bread acceptability (Hsu *et al.*, 2004).

The shapes of the starch granules are round to oval or angular and the size of the starch granule increases with growth, ranging from 10 to 40 μm. The chemical composition, thermal and material properties of the starches vary considerably among species but yam starch has some properties useful for the food industry. It is stable at high temperatures and within a low pH and, when pregelatinized, yam starch can be combined with cassava starch to improve its functionality (Alves and Grossmann, 1998). Yam starches with low amylose content can be used to develop gels with very good acid resistance after cooking. These starches have good potential as substitutes for modified starches in acid solutions such as tomato products, dressings and sauces. *Dioscorea alata* and *D. cayenensis-rotundata* starches have a very high viscosity after cooking and a good resistance to high temperature treatments. They could be used as substitutes for chemically modified starches in UHT foods and in canned baby foods for the development of natural products (Amani *et al.*, 2002).

The starch paste shows a lower breakdown at an early harvest time and appears to be thermostable during heating, but has a high setback after cooling. Pasting behaviours show that higher amylose content is associated with a lower pasting temperature and a higher peak viscosity (Huang *et al.*, 2006). Variations between species and varieties are observed in the solubility, phosphorous content, crude fat content and gelatinization temperatures of the different yam starches. The properties of the different *D. alata* starches may prove useful in nutritional applications (Riley *et al.*, 2006).

The tablet formation properties of starches from *D. rotundata*, *D. dumetorum*, *D. opposita* and *D. alata* have been evaluated to determine their applicability as a direct compression excipient. The amylose content, size and shape of the starch granules and specific surface area appear to play a significant role in compressibility. *Dioscorea rotundata* and *D. alata* with larger granules and high amylose content exhibit poor compressibility and do not form compacts, while *D. dumetorum* and *D. opposita* with polygonal grains, small particle size and high specific surface area are more compressible and form tablets of acceptable crushing force, and could thus be useful as an excipient in direct compression (Odeku *et al.*, 2007).

The purple-fleshed tubers of some varieties of *D. alata*, *D. esculenta*, *D. nummularia* and *D. trifida* contain substantial amounts of anthocyanins. These substances are natural colorants which can be extracted from the tubers at reasonable cost, considering the average tuber yield of yam, per unit of area and time. In the Philippines, the cultivar 'Ubi' (*D. alata*) is grown to satisfy the colorant needs of the ice cream industry.

The future of yam processed products will depend on the adaptability of peeling to mechanization, as most products require peeled yams as the starting raw material. Hand peeling is labour-intensive and often wasteful, while mechanical peeling is difficult to apply to tubers irregular in shape. Lye peeling, using chemical and thermal actions on the tuber skin, may be useful and flesh losses are reduced compared to hand peeling, with insignificant free lye retention after peeling. In most species and varieties, the proximal end of the tuber shows greater resistance than the distal end (Coursey and Ferber, 1979).

This page intentionally left blank

Section IV

Aroids

Taro, *Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott (Araceae, Monocotyledons), is an ancient root crop and there are about half a billion people who include taro in their diets. In many areas of the tropics, it is closely associated with people's culture and traditions. There are four other aroid root crops: giant taro (*Alocasia macrorrhiza* (L.) Schott), swamp taro (*Cyrtosperma merkusii* (Hassk.) Schott), cocoyam (*Xanthosoma sagittifolium* (L.) Schott) and elephant foot yam (*Amorphophallus campanulatus* (Roxb.) Blume). All five species may also be grown as ornamentals (see table below).

Geographic origin of the most important aroids.

Aroid species	Common names	Geographical origin
Alocasia macrorrhiza	Giant taro	Asia, South-east Asia
Amorphophallus campanulatus	Elephant foot yam	Asia, South-east Asia, Melanesia
Colocasia esculenta	Taro, dasheen	Asia, South-east Asia, Melanesia
Cyrtosperma merkusii	Swamp taro	Northern Melanesia
Xanthosoma sagittifolium	Cocoyam, tannia	Central & South America

Cocoyam is probably the most similar to taro with relatively large sagittate leaves but the side cormels rather than the central corm are consumed. Giant taro is a large succulent perennial herb with thick elongated corms and large sagittate leaves. Swamp taro is also a large perennial herb with sagittate leaves, usually larger than those of giant taro, adapted to freshwater swamps. Elephant foot yam has complex-compound leaves and a round and flat corm.

This page intentionally left blank

22

Origin and History

DOMESTICATION

Taro is probably the oldest crop on earth and has been grown in tropical Asia for more than 10,000 years on irrigated terraces. One hypothesis is that rice may have first been noticed as a weed in flooded taro patches (Cable, 1984; Plucknett, 1984; Haudricourt and Hédin, 1987). There are four species related to taro (*C. fallax*, *C. affinis*, *C. indica* and *C. gigantea*) and because they are all confined to north-east India and South-east Asia, it has been suggested that *C. esculenta* originated in this area, although there is not enough evidence to prove it. These related species have a much narrower range of distribution than wild *C. esculenta*, which extends from India, South-east Asia, South China, Melanesia and Australia and therefore it could also be argued that they are derived locally from *C. esculenta*. The problems associated with the origin, domestication and spread of taro have been studied by different teams, who have concluded that it is not possible to determine a single centre of origin (Yen and Wheeler, 1968; Plucknett, 1984; Matthews, 1990; Lebot and Aradhya, 1991; Lebot, 1999).

Taro was most likely domesticated several times in different locations on a vast zone going from India to South China, Melanesia and northern Australia. Wild populations were isolated for a long period of time and the effect of insular isolation, combined with human and natural selection pressures, has induced genetic diversity within a single, highly polymorphic species, *C. esculenta*.

There are two different taro gene pools on each side of the Wallace line, in South-east Asia and in Melanesia. The Asian origin of taro has been well documented (Matthews, 2002a) and the question of its domestication in the Pacific has been clarified. An independent emergence of agriculture, during the early and mid-Holocene at Kuk Swamp in the highlands of PNG, has been documented. Analysis of prehistoric use of stone tools for processing starchy food has been conducted and reveals the presence of taro starch granules. Residues and starch granule analyses also indicate that taro was processed during the early and mid-Holocene. Although the taro starch granules do not

permit differentiation between wild or cultivated forms, it is argued that taro processing was active by at least 10,000 BP. However, from at least 6950 to 6440 BP, the processing of taro indicates that it is likely to have been domesticated and integrated into cultivation practices (Fullagar *et al.*, 2006).

Colocasia esculenta was cultivated in the Pacific Islands by early settlers, as revealed by the dating of starch grains from Bourewa, south-west Viti Levu, Fiji to 3050–2500 BP (Horrocks and Nunn, 2006). Taro probably was introduced by Austronesian sailors who settled the islands of Melanesia, between the Bismarck Archipelago in Eastern New Guinea and Vanuatu, from 3500 to 3000 BP, and later Fiji. It was probably already being cultivated by the indigenous people in New Guinea and the Austronesians distributed cultivars into the Pacific Islands, along with other crops (Yen, 1982b, 1991).

The study of the isozyme variation in more than 1400 cultivars and wild forms of taro collected in Asia and Oceania reveals greater variation in Asia than in Oceania, with Indonesia hosting the greatest diversity. The great genetic diversity of the Indonesian cultivars may reflect the lack of improvement made to this crop. Morphotypes often exhibit several 'wild' characters, including frequent flowering and stolon production. Oceanian cultivars have originated from a common, narrow genetic base, probably domesticated in Melanesia. The genetic (isozymic) variation is nil in Hawaii and in most islands of Polynesia, suggesting that the genetic base is extremely narrow. The variegated forms found frequently in Polynesian fields are due to a long period of vegetative propagation and accumulated somatic mutations and the cultivars existing in Polynesia are probably clones of a common Melanesian source (Lebot and Aradhya, 1991). AFLP markers have confirmed the isozyme results, and two independent domestications of taro in South-east Asia and Melanesia have been confirmed (Kreike *et al.*, 2004) (Fig. 22.1).

Diploids and triploids exist in Asia but all traditional Australian and New Guinea taros are diploids. Cytological studies indicate that Australian genotypes have chromosome numbers and karyotype identical with PNG wild forms and cultivars (Coates *et al.*, 1988). In PNG, wild taros often produce seeds and it is known that birds disperse these seeds. In Java, seeds of *C. gigantea* are eaten and spread by palm civets (Hambali, 1980). Birds could have been responsible for the spread of wild *C. esculenta* populations from Sunda to Sahul before human migrations, allowing human settlers to domesticate the local gene pool.

Another problem is the origin of wild taro in the Solomon Islands, Vanuatu and New Caledonia. If taro was brought to these countries, it was probably brought in cultivated and not wild form, it being most unlikely that the migrating people collected and distributed non-edible wild genotypes. The typical wild genotypes have a very high concentration of oxalates and extremely small corms. Many Melanesian cultivars flower naturally, insect pollinators are very active and natural hybridization occurs regularly. As a result, in PNG, the Solomons and Vanuatu, naturally set seed is not uncommon in farmers' fields. The Melanesian germplasm contains primitive types, with stolons and abundant flowering.

Fig. 22.1. Area of origin of cultivated taro, South-east Asia and Pacific gene pools.

There are no accurate archaeological records on the other aroids (*A. campanulatus*, *A. macrorrhiza* and *C. merkusii*) but the overall picture is the same: the wild population is distributed widely, so local domestication could have come from local sources. *Cyrtosperma merkusii* is unknown in the South-east Asian islands and may have been domesticated by the occupants of coastal New Guinea, where it is endemic and grows wild. The same is probably true for *A. macrorrhiza* (Lebot, 1999). The American *X. sagittifolium* is most likely to have been domesticated on the northern side of the Amazon basin.

DISCOVERY OF THE CROP BY WESTERN EXPLORERS

Colocasia esculenta was already cultivated throughout the tropics, but also in temperate latitudes, for instance, in China, Nepal, Japan, Korea, the Mediterranean and New Zealand, when the European navigators documented its presence. It was a very ancient crop in Cyprus, Turkey and Lebanon (Matthews, 1991, 2002a) and was also introduced in Africa very early, probably entering from Asia via the Nile, or most likely via Madagascar (Shaw, 1975). It reached Egypt about 2000 BP (Plucknett *et al.*, 1970).

Taro was transferred to the West Indies with the slave trade. Introduction routes to Cuba during the 18th century probably came from West Africa and the Canary Islands and Madeira (where it is still cultivated) by the slave trade.

Another source could have been from the Philippines, on Spanish galleons trading between Manila, Acapulco and Havana. It was most likely reintroduced into Cuba, after the Spaniards, with the Chinese immigrants during the 19th century and by the Japanese just before the Second World War. It has been suggested that taro was introduced into America from Asia by European shipping.

Based on isozyme and rDNA variation in eastern Asia, two different routes for the introduction of taro into Japan have been suggested. One route comes directly from China and the other from South-east Asia, via Taiwan and the Ryukyu Islands. Several distribution waves have introduced genetic material from different origins into different locations (Matsuda, 2002).

Xanthosoma was introduced to Central and West Africa, between the 16th and 17th centuries, when it was brought by Portuguese slavers into Sao Tomé and Principe, where they had important trading bases (Bown, 2000). Cocoyam introduction in Asia and Oceania occurred in the 19th century and was the result of the intervention of missionaries (Coursey, 1968; Wilson, 1984).

PRESENT GEOGRAPHICAL DISTRIBUTION

According to FAO databases (www.fao.org, 2007), taro and cocoyam (*X. sagittifolium*) produce the lowest yields of all root crops, with an average of 6.5 t/ha. World production in 2006 was approximately 11.9 million fresh tonnes from 1.8 million ha, but many countries that are significant producers do not supply their figures (India, Bangladesh, Burma, Indonesia, PNG and Cuba) (Table 22.1).

Statistics demonstrate that aroid cultivation is stable, or even growing. World production was around 4 million t in 1961, which indicates that the global trend follows the demographic growth. There is a consensual assessment that aroids are orphan crops of utmost importance to the poor, essential for food security and that they represent an untapped potential for further economic development. In most countries, taro is either a backyard or home garden crop, or is cultivated within a shifting agroforestry system with very limited input, such as machinery or fertilizers, by smallholders. Such cropping systems are prevalent in the Pacific Island countries where production is comparable to the average world yield. PNG is estimated to produce more than half of the taro produced in Oceania, but no accurate statistics are available. Taro is a staple with high market value in PNG but is not easy to grow because of its high requirements in soil nutrients and moisture.

In Africa, *X. sagittifolium* is replacing *C. esculenta* because the local cultivars are thought to be more adapted to the preparation of *fufu*. It is also more robust and drought tolerant, although taro is cultivated nowadays in Sahelian countries such as Burkina Faso.

Table 22.1. Major aroid producing countries in 2006.

Region	Country	Production (thousand t)	Area (thousand ha)	Average yield (t/ha)
Africa	Nigeria	5473	712	7.7
	Ghana	1660	260	6.4
	Cameroon	1200	220	5.5
	Ivory Coast	360	260	1.4
	Madagascar	200	30	6.7
	Rwanda	125.4	25.3	5
	Central African Rep.	100	37	2.7
	Egypt	100	3.4	29.4
	Congo	66	16	4.1
	Burundi	62	15	4.1
	Gabon	59	9.5	6.2
	Chad	38	12.5	3
	Guinea	30.5	4.9	6.2
	Sao Tomé and Principe	28	3.1	9
	Liberia	25.5	3	8.5
America	Dominica	11.2	1.2	9.7
	Trinidad and Tobago	4.9	0.5	10.2
	USA	1.8	0.2	12
Asia	China	1540	87.5	17.6
	Japan	184.6	15	12.3
	Philippines	111.9	18.2	6.2
	Thailand	78.4	7	11.2
	Solomon Islands	40	2	20
	Fiji Islands	38	3.2	11.9

Source: www.fao.org (2007).

In Cuba, annual production is around 4000 t and is fairly stable, but restrictions imposed on irrigation have reduced its importance considerably. This situation also affects *Xanthosoma*, but *Colocasia* is more sensitive to irrigation, although it is preferred and produces very high yields (36 t/ha in 8–10 months) under intensive cultivation in comparison with the 20 t/ha in 12 months for the traditional Cuban taro cropping system (Rodriguez-Manzano *et al.*, 2004).

In countries where crop management techniques are quite elaborate and sophisticated (i.e. Hawaii and Egypt for taro and Florida for cocoyam), it is observed that yields per unit of area and time are clearly too low and it is now urgent to improve the crop genetically in order to allow farmers to capture new markets and attract interest from processors. In Egypt, Thailand, China, Japan and Hawaii, cropping systems are fairly intensive and occasionally mechanized, especially on the island of Kauai, Hawaii. Taro is an important crop in South

China, in Yunnan Province. It is an important staple in the Yangtse River Valley but is scarce in northern China. Taro is cultivated extensively in the Jiaodong district in Shandong Province, where rainfall is abundant. In Laiyang and in the Jiaodong Peninsula, taro is cultivated as an export cash crop (3000 t frozen cormels/year), accounting for 50% of the total Chinese exports of frozen taro. According to Japanese statistics, however, Japan imports 100,000 t fresh corms annually from south China.

In New Zealand, the interest is in maintaining a regular supply of high quality pink taro for the large Samoan population. There is also a desire to increase the quantity of locally grown fresh taro leaves to be used as a local vegetable. Because of the temperate climate, the commercial production of introduced Japanese cultivars is likely to develop gradually. Production systems, however, have to be improved for weed control and the agronomic management of high quality corms (Bussell *et al.*, 2004).

Most Australian taro production occurs between Tully and Babinda in northern Queensland, a wet tropical region with rainfall reaching 4000 mm/year. In only 2 days, refrigerated trucks can deliver freshly harvested corms to southern cities 3000 km away.

23

Taxonomy and Botany

CLASSIFICATION

The Araceae family consists of about 110 genera with over 2500 species. It is divided into seven subfamilies: Acoroideae, Aroideae, Calloideae, Lasioideae, Monsteroideae, Pothoideae and Pistioideae (Mayo *et al.*, 1997; Bown, 2000). Members of the aroid family can be found in almost every climatic region except deserts and polar regions. Species adapted for areas with cool or dry periods are characterized by dormancy of their corms, underground rhizomes or seeds, which allows them to survive unfavourable periods. The two main centres of origin are considered to be tropical America and Asia, but some species are also endemic of the Mediterranean, Africa and Australia-PNG. The majority of aroids are climbers and epiphytes of tropical rainforests. Many of these species are associated with aquatic or semi-aquatic environments.

A common characteristic of all aroid species is the spathe and spadix type of inflorescence. The spathe is a large bract subtending and unsheathing the inflorescence (Bown, 2000). A spadix is a spike of flowers on a swollen, fleshy axis. Individual flowers are very small, bisexual or unisexual. Bisexual flowers usually have a special type of perianth consisting of tepals, floral structures which are not clearly distinguishable as being either sepals or petals. A spadix with unisexual flowers is usually divided into distinct zones. The female zone is at the base and the male zone is above. The two zones are usually separated by one of the sterile flowers. The spadix often ends with an appendix also composed of sterile flowers. The main purpose of this appendix is the dispersal of odorous substances.

The aroid family is characterized by protogyny in which the female flowers become receptive before pollen is shed. Protogyny enduces cross-pollination and most aroid inflorescences are adapted specifically to insect pollination. Some inflorescences (i.e. *C. esculenta* and *X. sagittifolium*) are characterized by a specific shape and size of the spathe. The space between the spathe and the spadix can serve as a shelter for insects during rain or at night, as a mating place or as a place for feeding and growth. The commencement of flowering is

characterized by the release of an attractive fragrance or, in some species, an unpleasant odour which attracts only certain insects. This is the case for the inflorescence of *A. campanulatus*, imitating putrefied flesh which attracts flies.

The leaf structure and shape of aroids are extremely variable. Leaves frequently are adapted to specific environments such as shade, continuous flooding or drought. The size of aroid leaves varies from species to species, from variety to variety and from very small to gigantic. Extremely large leaves are characteristic of some genotypes of giant swamp taro, *C. merkusii*.

The determination of the genera is sometimes complex. *Alocasia*, *Amorphophallus*, *Colocasia* and *Xanthosoma* species are monoecious, while *Cyrtosperma* species have hermaphrodite flowers. Further determination of the genera with hermaphrodite species may include the presence or absence of a sterile appendix on the spadix. Inflorescences of all, except *Xanthosoma*, are appendaged. The appendix on *Xanthosoma* inflorescences either is absent or cannot be distinguished clearly.

Leaf shape is a useful characteristic for determining genera. The genus *Amorphophallus* can be separated easily from others because of compound laminas. The majority of *Colocasia* species have peltate leaves, while most of *Xanthosoma* and *Alocasia* species have sagittate leaves. However, there is also great morphological variability, especially among *Alocasia* species.

MORPHOLOGICAL DESCRIPTIONS OF MAJOR AROIDS

The genus *Colocasia* belongs to the subfamily Aroideae. The main characteristics of this subfamily are unisexual flowers on inflorescences usually clustered, with rather simple spathes constricted at the interface between male and female zones on the spadix. Vegetative parts often exude a coloured sap. The leaves have a reticulate venation, simple to pedate. The genus includes herbs characterized by stout underground rhizomes bearing stolons and forming colonies in their natural habitats (Miller, 1975; Hay, 1990).

Colocasia esculenta leaves are peltate, somewhat glaucous, with blades hanging. Secondary venation is reticulate and collective veins are present. Inflorescences are appendaged. The ovules are orthotropous and are numerous in two series on three to five parietal placentae. Some authors (Purseglove, 1979) consider *C. esculenta* as one polymorphic species with two botanical varieties:

1. *C. esculenta* var. *esculenta*, named as taro or dasheen, and
2. *C. esculenta* var. *antiquorum*, named as eddoe.

The main difference between *esculenta* and *antiquorum* varieties is in the shape and size of the main corm and cormels. Var. *esculenta* genotypes are characterized by a larger main corm and smaller side cormels. Var. *antiquorum* genotypes usually have a relatively smaller central corm and well-developed side cormels. Taxonomists claim that another difference is in the length of the sterile

appendix of the spadix: that of *antiquorum* is usually much longer in comparison with that of *esculenta*. However, the differences in this character are far from obvious because of wide variation within each group (Hiromichi, 2002).

Several studies based on morphological and cytological studies (Yen and Wheeler, 1968; Kuruvilla and Singh, 1981; Tanimoto and Matsumoto, 1986; Coates *et al*., 1988) found significant genetic diversity between var. *esculenta* and var. *antiquorum*. Several authors assert that the former is diploid and the latter is triploid (Kuruvilla and Singh, 1981; Irwin *et al*., 1998). This classification is, however, controversial and it has not been demonstrated that all diploids are dasheen types and belong to var. *esculenta* and all triploids are eddoe types and belong to var. *antiquorum*. It is generally accepted that the majority of triploids are of Asian origin and that they are abundant in areas of high altitude and latitude and rare in other areas.

In practice, there are two morphological groups: dasheen (corm is consumed) and eddoe (side cormels are consumed), which do not match taxonomic and cytological groups and are not differentiated by molecular markers. From an agronomic point of view, eddoe types can be considered as genetically less improved and lower yielding than dasheen-type cultivars. Eddoe types have plant architecture similar to wild forms of taro and their non-edible corms (very fibrous) compete with cormels for photosynthates.

Colocasia esculenta is a herbaceous plant, usually 0.5–1.5 m tall. Leaves of almost all genotypes are peltate. The most typical exception is the *piko* group of cultivars from Hawaii, which have hastate leaves. Laminas can be from 30 to more than 80 cm long and from 20 to more than 50 cm wide. Leaf petioles are stout, clasping at the base. Petiole length varies, depending on genotype, from less than 30 cm to more than 1.5 m. Leaf size is influenced strongly by the environment. Maximal dimensions of taro leaves are usually associated with the beginning of flowering. With approaching maturity, leaf petioles become shorter and leaf blades smaller. Their colour varies from a very light green to a very dark purple, depending on genotype. It can be uniform or have variations such as lines, spots or blotches of different pigmentations. Leaf petioles and leaf laminas do not always have the same colour.

The fruit of *C. esculenta* is a berry and one berry can contain over 50 seeds. The actual number of seeds per berry depends on pollination efficiency, type of pollination (cross-pollination, self-pollination), self-compatibility, fertilization and environment. The berries are packed together densely and form a fruit head. The highest number of seeds per fruit head has been estimated at more than 22,000 seeds with a thousand-seed weight of 0.2 g (Ivancic *et al*., 1996). The berry is usually green in colour but may be orange or purple. When the berries are mature, the peduncula wilts and the fruit head falls to the ground. In Vanuatu, birds called *Nambilak* in Bislama ('road runners' or *Gallirallus philippensis*) eat the fruits and disperse the seeds in cultivated plots, where they germinate spontaneously and produce new taro plants, which eventually can be selected by farmers if their morphotypes are attractive.

Taro is characterized by enlarged, starchy corms. Corms vary in size and shape, depending on type of planting material and ecological factors, particularly soil characteristics. Corms of typical upland varieties are usually round or slightly elongated, while extremely elongated corms are more characteristic of paddy genotypes. The corm consists of three main parts: skin, cortex and core. The skin may be smooth, fibrous and covered with scales. The cortex is the region between the skin and the root initials. The cortex and the core consist mainly of parenchymatic tissues. The core also includes fibres. There is large variation in fibre content among genotypes and it is highly influenced by the environment and age of the plant. The pigmentation observed in corm cross-section varies from white, light yellow, dark yellow, orange to pink, red and purple. There can be combinations of white with purple or red blotches or white parenchyma with darker pigmented fibres. The root system is superficial and fibrous (Figs 23.1, 23.2 and 23.3).

Xanthosoma sagittifolium is an important food for some 400 million people and has overtaken taro as the main edible aroid in many tropical areas (Onokpise *et al.*, 1999; Matthews, 2002a). The genus, originating in northern South America (Clement, 1994; Giacometti and León, 1994), has about 40 species, grown as ornamentals and as food crops. The taxonomic position of the cultivated *Xanthosoma* spp. is unclear and there is a tendency to call all cultivated *Xanthosoma* spp., *X. sagittifolium*.

Fig. 23.1. *Colocasia esculenta,* taro.

Fig. 23.2. Inflorescences, spathe, spadix, fruits.

Fig. 23.3. Corm and cross-section.

The genus includes three important food species: *X. sagittifolium*, *X. atrovirens* and *X. violaceum*. Another species, *X. brasiliense*, is grown for its edible leaves. *Xanthosoma sagittifolium* is a robust plant reaching heights of 2 m or more. The major difference between it and taro is in leaf shape. *Xanthosoma* spp. have sagittate leaves, while *Colocasia* spp. have peltate leaves. Leaves are thick and long-petioled, with the main vein at the lower side of either basal lobe being marginal as it joins the petiole. The leaves are arrow-shaped with sharp tips and deep, wide basal lobes and a prominent marginal vein. Leaf petioles can be more than 2 m long, with blades more than 1 m long and up to 0.7 m wide.

Inflorescences are large, usually two to three together in a cluster, sometimes up to ten, and appearing one after another. They appear when the plants are well developed, generally after at least 6 months of growth. Each inflorescence consists of a spadix covered by a spathe. The spadix, which is about 15–20 cm long, is divided into the female lower part, the male upper part and the sterile part between the two. The spathe has an ovoid or oblong convolute tube and a narrow, trough-shaped blade longer than the spadix. The spathe is large, mostly light green, silver-green, yellow-green or purple. Inflorescences appear in groups or clusters, usually from two to five, depending on the genotype and the environment. Within a cluster, the youngest inflorescence is closest to the leaf petiole. Each female flower consists of a relatively small ovary, a short style and a disc-like stigma. Male flowers usually consist of four or six anthers, united into an angular column. Ovules are anatropous or semi-anatropous (Miller, 1975). Pollen is white or pale-yellow and sticky. Seed set is rare, perhaps because of the narrow genetic base of the cultivars combined with incompatibility systems and female or male sterility (Shaw, 1975; Ghani, 1984).

The main corm is usually very acrid and is not eaten. The optimal environment is not too wet, well-drained and fertile soil. The plants can tolerate a certain level of shade. Cultivars are differentiated mainly by leaf pigmentation, plant size, cormel shape and number, cormel tip shape and pigmentation, spatial arrangement of cormels and cormel flesh pigmentation. Young leaves of some cultivars can be used as a vegetable (Figs 23.4, 23.5 and 23.6).

Alocasia macrorrhiza (syn. *A. macrorrhizos*) probably originated in Sri Lanka or India, where it occurs in the wild state, particularly in the humid Western and Eastern Ghats and in the north-east. Its seeds probably were spread eastwards naturally to Melanesia, where wild forms were also found in natural habitats. The genus contains about 65 species occurring through Sri Lanka and India, through Indochina to China and southern Japan, Malaysia, Indonesia, New Guinea and Australia (Hay, 1999). The main centre of diversity of the genus is the island of Borneo, where there are 23 species (Hay, 1988, 1999). Cultivated *A. macrorrhiza* is distributed throughout the Pacific, where it is grown extensively in Western Samoa, Tonga, Wallis and Futuna, the Lau group of Fiji and parts of Vanuatu only. It is also cultivated in tropical America and in some parts of Africa, where it is a minor crop. It is presumed that the few edible cultivars have a narrow genetic base (Lebot, 1992).

Fig. 23.4. *Xanthosoma sagittifolium*, cocoyam, macabo, tannia.

Fig. 23.5. Inflorescences, spathe and spadix.

Fig. 23.6. Cormels and cross-section.

The genus *Alocasia* is characterized by herbs or short monocaulous trees with simple, mostly hastate or sagittate leaves. Leaf margins are entire to deeply lobed. Venation is reticulate with intramarginal veins. *Alocasia* spp. are monoecious. Inflorescences are two to several together, with spathes constricted and the upper part persistent or deciduous. The spadix consists of four parts: a lower or female portion, a sterile zone, a male zone and, lastly, a large sterile appendix. Female flowers are globose with button-like to stellate sessile or stalked stigmas (Hay, 1990). The ovules are few, basal and orthotropous. Male flowers consist of hexagonal or, rarely, distinctly irregular synandria (Miller, 1975).

Alocasia macrorrhiza is a large, succulent perennial herb with large, elongated stems. The height depends on plant age, genotype and environmental conditions. The plant has several broadly sagittate leaves, bluntly triangular in outline, indistinctly leathery, with the secondary venation prominent.

Inflorescences are relatively large and usually appear in clusters. It is predominantly a cross-fertilizing species. The main pollinators are insects, mostly flies and small beetles, which are attracted by a strong odour. Wind may also be a pollinating agent. Rain usually causes self-pollination and self-fertilization of self-compatible genotypes that can produce numerous seeds. Self-fertilization can be prevented by self-incompatibility, protogyny and the constriction of the spathe in the sterile region between the female and male

parts of the spadix. In optimal climate, flowering of *A. macrorrhiza* is profuse. In wild populations, it is usually synchronized, enabling cross-fertilization. The upper part of the spathe is pale yellow, membranous, oblong, hood-forming and falling soon after anthesis (Hay, 1990).

The fruits of *A. macrorrhiza* are berries which may contain several, but not many, seeds. The colour of ripe berries appears to be controlled genetically and can be red, orange or yellow. The number of seeds per fruit head varies from 10 to 50.

Corms of *A. macrorrhiza* are long, thick, woody-appearing cylinders or trunks, which are peeled and then baked or boiled. Corms sometimes can reach a length of more than 2 m, depending primarily on the length of the growth period, which can be extended over several years. Cultivars are distinguished by their corm characteristics (flesh pigmentation, quality traits, yield, corm size and corm surface shape), leaf pigmentation, variegation and leaf size (Figs 23.7, 23.8 and 23.9). Wild genotypes are characterized by an extremely high concentration of calcium oxalate (Quero-García *et al.*, 2008).

Amorphophallus spp. are deciduous herbs with large underground, usually hemispherical corms producing a single large compound, umbrella-like leaf.

Fig. 23.7. *Alocasia macrorrhiza,* giant taro.

Fig. 23.8. Inflorescences, spathe and spadix.

There are about 100 species of *Amorphophallus* in Africa, India, Malaysia and Australia. *Amorphophallus konjac* is cultivated and used in Japan and the warmer parts of China. Traditionally, it is made into noodles and is now grown for the nutraceutical industries, which use its unusual carbohydrate (mannose) in the preparation of calorie-free gels (Willis, 1955; Bown, 2000). *A. oncophyllus* and *A. variabilis* are used in Indonesia. There appears to be a high degree of endemism, with only *A. campanulatus*, *A. muelleri* and *A. abyssinicus* having a wide geographic range. The most spectacular and the largest inflorescences are produced by *A. titanum* (Sastrapradja *et al.*, 1984).

The most important species is *A. campanulatus* (syn. *A. paeoniifolius*), elephant foot yam. The cultivated form is grown as a root crop in several parts of the Pacific and Asia and is used as a vegetable for curries in Kerala, India (Hay and Wise, 1991). In Melanesia, it is still the practice to leave the plants that are found when land is cleared of forest for cultivation. It is in India where the greatest diversity of edible forms exists. In the north-eastern states, wild forms are used as vegetables and for medicine (Sivan, 1984; Jackson *et al.*, 2007). In Indonesia, two different forms are recognized: forma *sylvestris* and forma *hortensis* (Backer and Bakhuizen, 1968; Sastrapradja *et al.*, 1984). The forma *sylvestris* is characterized by very scabrous petioles, and the forma

Fig. 23.9. Corm and cross-section.

hortensis with more or less smooth petioles. The smooth petioles are considered to be associated with edible corms. Cultivars vary in corm surface shape and colour, flesh pigmentation, petiole size and pigmentation, yield and quality. The petiole is postular and maculate and has a reticulate venation.

The plants, when they flower, develop large and attractive inflorescences, produced without a leaf on thick peduncles. The spathe is large and has the shape of an elongated bell. The colour varies, depending on genotype, from purple to yellow and green, or green blotched. The spadix is thick and terminates with a large appendix. Flowers are unisexual. Female flowers have elongated styles. The female zone is not separated from the male by a sterile zone. Stamens are yellow and numerous, crowded beneath an enlarged appendix.

The complete life cycle of *A. campanulatus* usually lasts several years. The plants may be propagated vegetatively or by seed. In the tropics, the inflorescence will open fully and release pollen after 15–25 days, depending on genotype, environmental conditions and the size of the inflorescence. The plants are characterized by protogyny and are predominantly cross-pollinated. The periods of stigma receptivity and pollen shed usually overlap in the same inflorescence. Self-fertilization is prevented mainly by strong mechanisms of self-incompatibility. The release of odour is associated with the beginning of stigma receptivity, occurring in the afternoon before the spathe opens (Sastrapradja *et al.*, 1984). The strong odour attracts flies that bring pollen and distribute it on the stigmas of the female flowers, which are at that time already receptive. The odour remains intense for several days, sometimes for more than a week (Fig. 23.10).

The genus *Cyrtosperma* is characterized by robust, usually solitary herbs with underground rhizomes. Leaves are simple, hastate or sagittate, usually coriaceous with the anterior lobe never longer than the posterior one, on long, tough, stiff, blotched, spiny petioles with sharp apices. Venation is reticulate throughout and prominent on the leaf underside. Among the 11 species in the genus (Hay, 1990; Iese, 2005), the giant swamp taro or *C. merkusii* is the most important crop species, especially for some of the Pacific atolls where it is a major food.

Fig. 23.10. *Amorphophallus campanulatus*, elephant-foot yam; (a) plant, (b) corm cross-section, inflorescendces of *A. campanulatus* and of *A. konjac*.

The plants are often very tall. They can reach 3 m or more high. The large leaves are arrow-shaped, pointing upward to form a more or less straight line with the axis of the petioles, similar to *Alocasia*. The leaf blades have deep and sharply pointed basal lobes. The lower portions of the petioles are sometimes spiny. The inflorescence is a solitary spadix on a long peduncle that closely resembles a petiole. The spathe is usually hard, deep purple, often with yellowish stripes, or sometimes green to white. The spadix is sessile with hermaphrodite flowers throughout its length, each with four to five free tepals. Fruits are small and globose, orange to scarlet berries ripening from the tip of the spadix downwards. Seeds are kidney to helical shaped, often ornamented.

The growth period of *C. merkusii* or giant swamp taro can be very long, usually 4 years but sometimes as much as 10–15 years and corms may reach 40–80 kg (Plucknett *et al.*, 1970). The crop is grown mainly in atolls, freshwater swamps, or along creeks and rivers. Some of the cultivars are reasonably tolerant of salinity. Cultivars can be differentiated by leaf shape, leaf pigmentation, leaf size, spininess, spathe colour and size, quality and yield parameters, maturity period and salinity tolerance (Fig. 23.11).

Fig. 23.11. *Cyrtosperma merkusii,* swamp taro.

RELATED SPECIES

There are seven species in the genus *Colocasia*. These are *C. affinis*, *C. fallax*, *C. esculenta*, *C. gigantea*, *C. gracilis*, *C. mannii* and *C. virosa*. *Colocasia fallax* and *C. affinis* are little used. *Colocasia fallax* is used as a vegetable in Yunnan, southern China, where the species is found in dense valley forest and shrublands. *Colocasia affinis* is a rare ornamental outside Asia. *Colocasia gigantea* is distributed more widely than the other minor *Colocasia* species. It is regarded as a lesser food crop of South-east Asia, mainly as a leafy vegetable. *Colocasia gracilis*, *C. mannii* and *C. virosa* are poorly known species and it is not yet clear if they are truly distinct (Matthews, 1990).

In Yunnan Province (Yingjiang county), China, new species of *Colocasia* are being described. *Colocasia bicolor* has unisexual flowers without a perianth (Xiuzhen *et al.*, 2005). *Colocasia yunnanensis* is another new species distinguished from the morphologically fairly similar *C. bicolor* because its leaves have five to nine pairs of large purple spots, a sterile zone with white hairs in the inflorescence and a spadix without an appendix (Xiuzhen *et al.*, 2006). This type of botanical determination of new species illustrates the confusion that could be created within the *Colocasia* genus by enthusiastic taxonomists who are sometimes prone to 'discover' a new species when there is only some variation within the existing ones.

The white-fleshed *X. caracu* is grown in Florida and Puerto Rico. *Xanthosoma belophyllum* are eaten in Venezuela. The leaves of *X. undipes* cormels are boiled and fermented in Mexico to produce *chicha*, an alcoholic beverage (Bown, 2000). In Nigeria, *X. mafaffa* does not hybridize with *X. sagittifolium* and is therefore thought to be truly distinct (Okeke, 1992). Some of the species, such as *X. auriculatum*, *X. helleborifolium*, *X. mexicanum*, *X. pentaphyllum* and *X. robustum*, are used as medicinal plants (Nzietchueng, 1988a).

CYTOLOGY

For counting chromosome numbers, fresh root tips are pretreated with 0.2% colchicine or 2 mM 8-hydroxyquinoline for 4 h and fixed in a mixture of ethanol and acetic acid (3:1 v/v). The sample is then hydrolysed in 1 N HCl for 4 min at 60°C and stained with Schiff's reagent. Each stained root tip is squashed in 45% acetic acid and examined with a microscope (Coates *et al.*, 1988; Matsuda, 2002).

In Nigeria, mitotic index studies were carried out on cultivars of *Xanthosoma* and *Colocasia* using young healthy roots (about 15 mm) which were collected at 2 h intervals from 6:00 am to 8:00 pm. Root tips were fixed in 1:3 ethanol:acetic acid for 24 h and stored in 70% ethanol prior to squashing in orcein. Microscopic counts showed that the dynamics of mitosis vary

between cultivars. The peak of metaphase is between noon and 2:00 pm for most cultivars, but one has its metaphase rising to a peak between 2:00 and 4:00 pm. This suggests that the best time to harvest root samples for optimum metaphase is immediately before noon (Ekanem and Osuji, 2006).

It is generally believed that the *C. esculenta* basic chromosome number is $x = 14$. However, if $x = 14$, then there is a theoretical possibility that the basic number may also be $x = 7$. Sreekumari (1997) believes that $x = 14$ is too high to be assumed as the original basic number of chromosomes. In the absence of any established form of taro with a chromosome number $2n = 14$, the present $2n = 28$ condition may be considered as a functional diploid number of alloploid origin evolved from the ancestral $2n = 14$ taxa. Meiotic and karyomorphological data favour the contention of $x = 7$ as the original basic number of chromosomes (Krishnan and Magoon, 1977; Sreekumari, 1997). Lebot and Aradhya (1991) studied zymograms of the progenies resulting from a cross between genotypes with 28 chromosomes. They came to the conclusion that the zymograms of the offspring generation were not the zymograms of normal diploids. The segregation indicated that the individuals might be tetraploids with $4n = 28$ ($x = 7$). However, recent investigations using fluorescent *in situ* hybridization with ribosomal DNA probe (Kokubugata and Konishi, 1999) showed evidence for the basic number $x = 14$.

The genotypes with $2n = 28$ chromosomes then are diploids, $3n = 42$ are triploids and those with $4n = 56$ are tetraploids. The majority of cultivated and wild genotypes are diploids; they flower and produce seed. Triploids have been documented in Australia, India, Japan, New Caledonia, New Zealand, Nepal, the Philippines and Timor (Yen and Wheeler, 1968; Coates *et al.*, 1988; Kreike et *al.*, 2004). Triploids may have originated from sexual recombination between diploid and tetraploid individuals (fusion of haploid $n = 14$ and diploid $n = 2x = 28$ gametes). The offspring individuals theoretically will have $3n = 42$ chromosomes. Another possibility is irregularity in gametogenesis in normal diploids, resulting in one or more gametes that have an unreduced number of chromosomes. If such a gamete fuses successfully with a normal haploid one, the resulting embryo becomes triploid, although this development is extremely rare.

Tetraploids ($4n = 56$) are considered to be important for the formation of triploids ($3n = 42$) (Matthews, 1990) but it is not known whether they exist in wild populations and Yen and Wheeler (1968), Ramachandran (1978) and Coates *et al.* (1988) did not mention them. They may be produced spontaneously in nature due to the doubling of the chromosome number in a shoot tip cell, which in further cell division results in tetraploid somatic tissue and, finally, in a tetraploid individual. Tetraploids are produced artificially by treating young tissue with a solution of colchicine. Mitotic division of tetraploid tissues may result in a tetraploid plant (Sreekumari *et al.*, 2004).

The Araceae family is extremely heterogeneous and there is tremendous variation in chromosome numbers (Table 23.1).

Table 23.1. Chromosome numbers in the aroids.

Species	Reported somatic numbers of chromosomes
Acorus calamus L.	18, 24, 36, 44, 45, 48, 54
A. gramineus Aiton	18, 22, 24
Alocasia fornicata Schott	42
A. indica (Lour.) Spach	28
A. montana Schott	28
Amorphophallus bulbifer Bl.	36, 39
A. campanulatus (Roxb.) Bl.	26, 28
A. dubius Bl.	28
A. rivieri Durieu	26, 32, 39
A. titanum Becc.	26
Anaphyllum wightii Schott	26
Ariopsis peltata Nimmo.	28, 42, 80
Arisaema leschenaultii Schott	28
A. neglectum Schott	28
A. wightii Bl.	28
Arum maculatum L.	28, 56
A. italicum Miller	64, 84
Caladium bicolor (Ait.) Vent.	30, 48
Calla palustris L.	36, 72
Colocasia esculenta (L.) Schott	14, 24, 28, 42, 56
C. affinis	28
C. fallax	28
C. indica	28
C. bicolor	28
C. gigantea	28
C. yunnanensis	28
Cryptocoryne spiralis Fischer	12
Dieffenbachia picta Schott	34
Dracunculus vulgaris Schott	28
Lagenandra meeboldii Fischer	36
L. ovata Thw.	36
Lasia spinosa Thw.	26
Pistia stratiotes L.	28
Remusatia vivipara Schott	28
Steudnera discolor Hort.	56
Theriophonum indicum Engl.	16
T. minutum Engl.	16
Typhonium bulbiferum Dalz.	20
T. cuspidatum Decaisne	16
T. trilobatum Schott	18, 26, 36
Xanthosoma sagittifolium (L.) Schott	26
X. violaceum Schott	26

Source: Ivancic and Lebot (2000).

24

Breeding and Genetics

At present, all existing cultivars are the result of local selection conducted by growers. Modern aroid production is becoming intensive and oriented to the market, which requires cheap, healthy and high quality products. The aim of taro breeding is to create genotypes that are high yielding, with corms of good eating quality, resistant to diseases, tolerant to pests and well adapted to specific environments (paddy or dryland conditions).

One of the first taro breeding programmes was initiated in the Solomon Islands in the early 1970s. Its main objective was to create taro genotypes resistant to the taro leaf blight caused by *P. colocasiae* (Patel *et al.*, 1984). In the early 1980s, breeding programmes started in Hawaii and Samoa, focusing on yields. Breeders followed these footsteps in PNG, India (CTCRI in Kerala), the Philippines (PhilRootcrops in Baybay, Leyte), Fiji and Vanuatu (Ivancic and Lebot, 2000; Sreekumari *et al.*, 2004). However, not much was achieved and this was thought to be due to the narrow genetic bases involved. In some cases, it was also due to the introduction of wild stock which introduced, along with resistance to *P. colocasiae*, acridity and other deleterious traits (i.e. stolons), which required several cycles to eliminate. Progress was slow and somewhat unconvincing and, if heterosis occurred, it was far from obvious.

OBJECTIVES AND SELECTION CRITERIA

A new cultivar has to be high yielding, with good postharvest shelf life and also has to be resistant to major pests (mostly *Papuana* spp. beetles) and diseases (especially to *P. colocasiae*). Yield improvement, the goal of all taro improvement programmes, is a complex, quantitative trait which depends on genotype, environmental factors and G × E interactions. For aroids, these are, however, difficult to measure accurately. A high yielding taro variety may produce low yields because the planting material is weak. The use of different types of planting materials from the same clone generally results in significant differences in yield. Calibration of propagules is therefore a necessary preliminary step, although

time-consuming, before any evaluation process. Plant height and leaf area are associated closely with growth vigour, health and photosynthesis and are important factors influencing taro yield (Simin *et al.*, 1995; Lebot *et al.*, 2006b).

Markets require a constant supply of uniform, healthy, fresh corms of an adequate size (approximately 2 kg). This can be achieved with early maturing cultivars with a growth period of 5–7 months. Corm yield and corm quality appear to be correlated negatively. Typical high quality cultivars such as 'Akalomamale' in the Solomons, 'Numkoi' in PNG, 'Tarapatan' in Vanuatu, or 'Bunlong' in Hawaii are relatively low yielding and susceptible to leaf blight. Soft corms with high water content generally characterize very high-yielding cultivars.

SEXUAL REPRODUCTION AND STERILITY

Edible aroids have basically the same structure of inflorescences as *Colocasia*. However, there are enormous differences in size, pigmentation and proportions of the female, male and sterile parts of the spadix. In most species, however, female flowers usually are mixed with sterile ones, which can be distinguished by their light colour. Fertile female flowers are always green with well-developed stigmas. Inflorescences without sterile pistillate flowers are very rare. A higher proportion of sterile flowers does not always mean a reduction in the number of seeds. A higher proportion of fertile flowers is more usual in direct hybrid generations when the parents are not related genetically. It is probably expressing hybrid vigour or heterosis (Ivancic *et al.*, 1996). The seed productivity of the taro inflorescence depends on the number of parietal placentae and the associated number of ovules per ovary. The number of placentae per ovary varies from two to four, while the number of ovules per ovary varies from 10 to more than 80, depending on cultivar (Pardales, 1981; Shaw, 1984).

During the flowering process, the spathe opens and curves away from the opening. The whole portion of the inflorescence is then released and pollen can be spread by pollinating agents. Aroids produce heat and thermogenesis. The heat produced by the inflorescence creates a microclimate, which makes insects more active. The significant thermogenic activity of taro inflorescences (6.8°C above the ambient temperature) is synchronized with protogyny and insect pollination in order to offset variations in ambient air temperature during the most critical period of flowering and to promote cross-pollination (Ivancic *et al.*, 2004b). Studies conducted on *A. macrorrhiza* (Ivancic *et al.*, 2005) indicate that the highest temperatures are produced by the sterile appendix of the inflorescence and are more than 20°C above the ambient air temperature. For *C. gigantea*, the average maximum temperature of inflorescences is 9.8°C above the ambient temperature (Ivancic *et al.*, 2008).

One day before pollen is released, the spathe slowly starts opening and the odour becomes intense and starts attracting insects, some of which come from

inflorescences that flowered 1 day earlier and have already released pollen. In this way, they may pollinate the female flowers. Stigmas are, at this time, already receptive and pollen grains that come from a compatible genotype can start germinating. Inflorescences within the same cluster never flower at the same time. They start flowering in the order in which they developed, the time intervals between them varying from 2 days to more than a week. Fertile taro genotypes usually start flowering about 3 weeks after replanting, but small material takes much longer. In some cases, plants can start flowering immediately after replanting the head-setts or suckers. The early appearance of inflorescences is a normal and frequent event when the well-developed top parts of nearly flowering plants are used for planting. If the growth of the inflorescences has already been initiated, they will continue to develop and, in some cases, they can appear even before the first leaves. Early appearing inflorescences can be fertile and used in crossing.

Poor flowering of cultivars is the main factor limiting hybridization. Dry winds and high temperatures often cause seed set failure. To eliminate negative environmental effects, the crossing plots should be well-irrigated, fertilized and protected from dry winds with trees such as *G. sepium*. There are several possibilities for promoting flowering if plants are diploids:

- Treatment with gibberellic acid (0.3–0.5 g/l).
- Removal of leaves (very effective for *Alocasia* and *Xanthosoma*).
- Stress induced by drought and high temperature.
- Removal of cormels, suckers and stolons.

Treated plants usually start flowering 3–5 weeks after the gibberellic acid treatment, but the inflorescences remain sterile. Breeders should then combine two or more flower-inducing treatments. Environmental stress or flowering hormones used as promoters have to be followed by a period which is optimal for growth. If not, the induced flower development will be stopped or the inflorescences will be sterile.

CROSSING TECHNIQUES AND TRUE SEED PRODUCTION

The first visible indication of the approaching flowering process is the appearance of the flag leaf. Once the flag leaf is exposed, the first inflorescences usually appear within 1–3 weeks. The spathe will unfold slowly and enable pollinators to enter. The majority of insects will remain inside the inflorescence until the next morning. At that time, the inflorescence will be completely opened and the pollen released. The odour will disappear but the same attraction will come from another inflorescence, which will release pollen a day later. This mechanism is essential for efficient insect cross-pollination based on protogyny.

Pollination is done by different insects, wind or water, though insects are the main vectors. In PNG, the insects found in *Colocasia* inflorescences are

Drosophilella pisticola and *D. stamenicola*, belonging to the dipterous family, Drosophilidae. The names of these species are associated with the larval stage which occupies the pistillate or staminate portion of the taro spadix. The insects enter the fresh inflorescence when it starts opening (Carson and Okada, 1980; Matthews, 1990). In Malaysia, 30–40 dipteran flies, *Dacus dorsalis*, have been recorded per inflorescence (Ghani, 1984). Other visitors of taro inflorescences are bees, small solitary wasps, small Coleoptera insects, mosquitoes and ants.

Wind pollination is significant for genotypes with open flowering and a fully exposed male part of the spadix. Rain results mostly in self-fertilization by washing pollen grains from the male part of the spadix to the female part. However, pollination by rain is not always straightforward as drops frequently mix with pollen and result in a greasy substance around the constriction of the spathe, which prevents pollen from reaching the female portion of the spadix.

For controlled pollination, the stigma becomes receptive at the time when the inflorescence emerges from the petiole sheath; this is about 5 days before the odour is released or 6 days before pollen is shed, and remains in this condition for up to 10 days (Okpul and Ivancic, 1995). The procedure for hybridization includes four steps:

1. Preventing insect pollination before hand pollination.
2. Emasculation.
3. Pollination.
4. Preventing insect pollination after hand pollination.

To avoid undesired insect pollination and self-pollination, the female parent has to be emasculated at an early stage. Emasculation must be completed before pollen can be shed and also before insects penetrate the inflorescence. Penetration of insects can be prevented by isolation with rain-resistant paper bags. One of the best solutions, however, is to cut off the inflorescences on a 30–40 cm length of the peduncle 2 days before pollen is released and keep them in a container with some water, in an isolated, moderately cool and dry room until pollen is released.

Emasculation is conducted 2 days before the inflorescence opens and pollen is shed. The upper part of the spathe is cut, together with the male portion of the spadix. The lower part of the spathe is then removed carefully using a small knife. The spathe should not be removed completely but rather a ring of the spathe about 8–10 mm high should be left to protect the lower part of the inflorescence. The emasculation procedure for other aroids (*Alocasia*, *Amorphophallus* and *Xanthosoma*) is similar.

One of the exceptions is *C. merkusii*, which has inflorescences with dense bisexual flowers. The mechanisms of protogyny and self-incompatibility are, in most cases, sufficient for obtaining hybrid seed. Emasculation is also not needed for *A. campanulatus* because of its strong self-incompatibility system.

Pollination is done immediately after emasculation and fresh pollen is stored successfully for at least 1 week without losing its viability. Pollen can also

be stored frozen in dry conditions. One male inflorescence can pollinate several females, depending on the quantity of pollen available. There are several possible ways to distribute pollen on stigmas: by brush, fingers or directly by the male portion of the spadix.

After pollination, female flowers are protected with small bags made of paper, cloth, cotton or other material, or with the green part of the spathe that was removed during emasculation. The best and the cheapest material is probably cotton. Protection is needed for about 1 week. The cloth and paper bags have to be removed to enable normal development of fruit heads. Growing fruits may have to be protected against attacks by different insects, by small elongated bags made from fly screen or simply by cotton wool. Protection measures may not be needed if regular spraying with insecticides is done (Wilson, 1989).

In most cases, the fruit heads are ready to be harvested 30–35 days after fertilization. Seeds can be stored for at least 2 years in a desiccator inside the refrigerator. Seeds sealed in small plastic bags and stored in a moderately cool and dry room remain viable for more than 1 year (Wilson, 1989). Seeds have no specific dormancy period and can be planted soon after harvesting. Fresh seeds have to be dried and then planted.

Taro seeds are very small and have to be planted in small pots placed into 'water beds'. In such nurseries, germination is simple and cheap. They usually start to germinate 2–3 weeks after planting. Soil may be treated with a low concentration of fungicide, or sometimes with sterile water to avoid infection. The germination rate can be improved by covering the pots with transparent plastic sheets immediately after planting the seeds. Once a day, the sheet has to be removed and the pots sprayed with sterile water, using a hand sprayer. After seed germination, the emphasis has to be put on aeration. For this reason, the transparent plastic sheet has to be raised to allow the air to circulate. The relative humidity, however, has to be kept high.

Seeds start germinating about 10 days after sowing. An average germination rate between 60 and 70% is considered satisfactory. Tiny seedlings are extracted from trays with tweezers 1 month after germination and are replanted directly in *Jiffy*® pots, where the young plants can stay for 2 months before establishment in the field. Before field planting, the abundant root system and the leaves are cut back and C_1 plants are installed at high densities (20 × 20 cm) and replanted again 4 months later (C_2 at 50 × 50 cm). It is necessary to test several thousand individuals, even when the parents are the best existing genotypes. In more advanced cycles, the chances of getting superior genotypes will probably increase due to the accumulation of positive genes, but they will still remain relatively low because of highly heterozygous progenies.

The flowering ability of the taro genotypes is usually restored in the hybrids, even those resulting from crosses between two parents which had to be sprayed with gibberellic acid to force them to flower. Most of the hybrids flower profusely and this is a serious problem as the inflorescences produce

'shoulders' and deform the shape of the corms. Flowering genotypes cannot produce perfect shapes, only sterile ones can.

Xanthosoma improvement has been done in Cameroon. Hybridization resulted in the production of more than 10,000 seeds from some crosses but few viable seeds from others, perhaps due to ploidy differences (Goenaga and Hepperly, 1990; Agueguia *et al.*, 1994; Tambong *et al.*, 1997; Onokpise *et al.*, 1999) and some attempts have been made to produce new forms through *in vitro* culture (Tambong *et al.*, 1998).

No intensive and systematic breeding work has been done on *A. macrorrhiza*. The main characteristics which have to be improved are quality of corms, growth cycle (the growth period is extremely long), environmental adaptability and disease resistance (Wilson and Cable, 1984). There is relatively little information compared to the other genera.

Amorphophallus spp. is being improved in India by CTCRI. The germplasm collection has 195 accessions, selections have been made for different regions (Palaniswami and Anil, 2006) and a hybrid has been released (Abraham *et al.*, 1998). Some 1670 seeds comprising 1280 hybrids ('Sree Padma' × Am 40) and 390 inbreds ('Sree Padma') have been produced to study improvement possibilities. In addition to the normal green seedlings, a few albinos also emerged from both inbred and hybrid seeds. The frequency of albinos in the inbred population appears to be more than double that in the hybrids, 9.8 and 4.6, respectively (Sreekumari and Abraham, 2005).

SELECTION METHODS AND PROGRAMMES

It is now accepted that different taro gene pools have to be combined to broaden the base of national programmes. In the Pacific, local cultivars are the result of intense selection focusing on corm quality and yield. These cultivars produce well-shaped corms of good quality but susceptible to various pests and diseases (Claus and Lebot, 1999). In Asia, co-evolution with numerous and diverse strains of *P. colocasiae* have produced resistant genotypes but because taro is not as important as it is in the Pacific, the Asian cultivars are not as much improved and present numerous suckers and stolons. Breeders should start with cultivars from diverse and distant geographic origins. Crosses between materials originating from the same country, or from neighbouring countries, will not produce a very diverse offspring, slowing down the selection process. If taro breeding is to have a constructive future, there needs to be international exchange of germplasm (Lebot, 2005). This is particularly true for the Pacific, where recent segregation studies have confirmed narrow genetic bases (Ivancic *et al.*, 2003, 2004a, b).

Early steps in the establishment of base populations are the identification of a core sample of cultivars and the adoption of reliable quarantine procedures that can handle large numbers of cultivars. The TANSAO (Taro Network for South-east

Asia and Oceania) core sample was distributed to all participating countries and is now being recombined with local material (Kreike *et al.*, 2004; Lebot *et al.*, 2004).

Genetically variable taro populations are created mainly by hybridization, controlled or natural. The majority of taro genotypes are considered to be at least partly heterozygous and progenies are highly variable. Open pollination, within an artificial polycross population with a well-managed flowering induction system, is a simple and cheap way of producing high genetic variation for recurrent selection. Recurrent selection has been used successfully in the Solomon Islands and PNG (Ivancic *et al.*, 1996). The process is, however, fairly slow. In repeated field trials of the selected clones from the cycle-1 population, only eight clones appeared to be superior (with high yield, good eating quality of corms and resistance to Phytophthora leaf blight). This represented less than 0.008% (8 individuals out of more than 100,000 tested individuals). At the end, only one was found to be suitable for farmers. In the cycle-2 population, the number increased a little, but not much (Okpul, 1997).

One of the most efficient ways to improve breeding efficiency is to start selection at an early stage of development without waiting for the plants to be uprooted and corms characterized, which usually takes place at least 15 months after seed germination. This approach has been used for determining taro corm flesh and corm fibre colours, as these traits are important for marketing (Ivancic *et al.*, 2003).

Genotypes with a large number of suckers are not desired because generally they have a lower yield. A profuse stolon production can cause important competition effects between neighbouring plants and a deformed corm shape. Corm branching is another complex, undesired and rare trait which is expressed because of the proliferation of lateral buds. Genetic control involves the interaction of at least two loci and appears to be associated with inbreeding depression (Ivancic *et al.*, 2004a). A vegetative growth index (VGI) has been developed which takes into consideration only four vegetative traits and allows assessment at 6 months of genotypes with good yield potential. Because it takes generally 3 years from true seed before sufficient homogenized clonal material is produced for accurate evaluation, this index is useful for screening large populations (Lebot *et al.*, 2006b).

The most efficient use of backcrossing was for resistance against diseases, for example, vertical resistance to taro leaf blight, and this method was used in the Solomon Islands (Patel *et al.*, 1984).

There is no breeding programme presently working on taro leaf quality. Eating quality depends on several other components such as proteins, vitamins, aromatic substances, water and fibres. Commercial growers cultivate taro for its petioles in Thailand (around Phichit), where they are dehydrated and exported to Japan to be used in soups. These varieties present very long and tender petioles. Taro inflorescences are used as a source of food in several Pacific countries and in China (province of Yunnan). Their eating quality depends on genotype and stage of development.

The Hawaiian breeding programme has released a few ornamental varieties which are being used by commercial nurseries in Florida. In Vicosa, Minas Gerais, Brazil, several local accessions of taro have been evaluated for ornamental traits and it is suggested that some Brazilian taro accessions have characteristics which qualify them as ornamental plants, pot plants or garden plants (Pereira *et al.*, 2005).

HERITABILITY OF MAJOR TRAITS

Some investigations have been looking at the heritability of major traits in Indian taro by comparing the performance of local and introduced varieties and hybrids, followed by analysis of variance (Dwivedi and Sen, 1997). In Vanuatu, experiments have been conducted in two clonal generations with different statistical designs. It appears that both family and narrow-sense heritabilities are higher for the number of suckers and DM content than for corm weight. The family heritability values, compared to the narrow-sense heritabilities, suggest the possibility of using family selection in the first cycles (Table 24.1).

A high percentage of valuable hybrids are observed among a small number of families. Heritability trial results indicate that it is appropriate to create a few large full-sib families when working with a narrow genetic base and numerous small full-sib families when dealing with a broad genetic base. When working with large collections, only the parents showing the most valuable agronomic characteristics should be recombined so that a high frequency of good offspring genotypes can then be expected. When working with a narrow genetic base, significant heterosis effects are not likely to be apparent if large numbers of different crosses are conducted, so only the best parents should be selected to produce large progenies (Quero-García *et al.*, 2006b).

The correlation between parental genetic distance (estimated with AFLP and SSR markers) and hybrid vigour is weak (Quero-García *et al.*, 2006b), although hybrids show a significant superiority compared to parents for all

Table 24.1. Family heritabilities (H) and estimations of variance for the family (F) in first clonal generation.

	Number of suckers		Corm weight		Dry matter content	
Trial	H	F	H	F	H	F
RCB1	0.80	0.18	0.50	0.03	0.52	4.7
RCB2	0.81	0.30	0.59	0.04	0.49	4.24
RCB3	0.95	0.46	0.62	0.01	0.71	7.15
RCB4	0.45	0.03	0.78	0.03	0.96	11.74

Source: Quero-García *et al.* (2006a).

traits, with the exception of the DM content. However, for a vegetatively propagated crop like taro, hybrids might have an advantage only in their first clonal generations which result from true seeds, and the rapid accumulation of viruses and of negative mutations might induce a progressive loss of this superiority. Consequently, it will take time for hybrid superiority to be truly demonstrated in farmers' fields.

GENOTYPE × ENVIRONMENT INTERACTIONS

Some cultivars are adapted to paddy conditions, others to upland conditions, while some tolerate relatively long periods of drought. There are cultivars that grow well only in coastal areas, while others do so at higher altitudes. There are also obvious differences in adaptability to different soil pH. It is impossible to create a genotype that will perform equally well in all environments and all cropping systems. Genotypes from segregating populations have to be tested in different environments. In PNG, in 1994 and 1995, of the more than 2000 genotypes tested in paddy, none could be considered as a paddy genotype. This is an indication only and not proof that the range of environmental adaptability might be very narrow (Ivancic and Lebot, 2000).

In PNG, in order to identify genotypes characterized by general or wider adaptability, seven taro elite lines resistant to taro leaf blight and a susceptible, but highly preferred, control cultivar, 'Numkoi', have been tested in seven diverse agroecological environments. The analysis of variance indicates that there are significant differences in yield among genotypes at all sites, except one. Further pooled analysis of the sites with homogeneous variances detected significant G × E interactions with a low degree of genetic determination for corm yield (heritability in broad sense = 0.19) and a high heritability for leaf blight resistance (0.72) (Okpul, 2005) (Tables 24.2 and 24.3).

Experiments for salinity tolerance conducted in PNG in 1995 included local genotypes of *A. campanulatus*, *A. macrorrhizza*, *C. bicolor*, *C. esculenta* (about 200 hybrids), *X. sagittifolium*, *I. aquatica*, *I. batatas*, *M. esculenta*, *Oryza sativa* and *Zea mays*. These studies showed that *C. esculenta* was the most sensitive to salinity. In India, promising lines of taro evaluated for photosynthetic efficiency and yield under different levels of salinity have shown that a few responded well under salinity stress with less variation in photosynthetic efficiency and low yield reduction compared to the accession control. The effect of high salinity, however, is remarkable and the yield per plant decreased by 17 to 52% in comparison to the control. Three accessions have been identified as tolerant to salinity, showing less than 25% yield reduction (Sahoo *et al.*, 2007a).

In Nicaragua, cocoyam (*Xanthosoma* spp.) is the third most important starch food crop and is cultivated countrywide. The agronomic performance of three purple genotypes established in four locations with different climatic

Table 24.2. Adaptability of eight taro genotypes evaluated across sites.

Genotype	Corm yield	Stability	TLB resistance*	Relative culinary quality	Mean sucker number	Remarks
E1	High	Unstable	MR	Low	5	Unstable, less acceptable quality
E3	High	Stable	MR	High	3	Widely adaptable
E4	Medium	Stable	MR	High	5	Widely adaptable
E7	Medium	Unstable	MR	Low	5	Unstable, less acceptable quality
E8	Medium	Unstable	MR	High	5	Unstable
E10	Medium	Unstable	HR	Low	1	Unstable, low yield, poor quality
E11	Low	Stable	HR	High	3	Unstable, low yield
Numkoi	Low	Stable	Susceptible	High	3	Stable, low yield, susceptible to TLB

Note: *TLB resistance categories: MR = moderate resistance, HR = high resistance.
Source: Okpul (2005).

Table 24.3. Summary of analysis for corm yield (t/ha) obtained from eight genotypes tested over six sites with homogeneous variance.

Genotype	Mean corm yield (t/ha)	Mean separation†		Stability parameter	
		LSD‡	SNK§	*b*	S^2_d
E1	8.90	*	ab	0.81	2.41**
E3	10.49	**	a	1.62	–0.04
E4	7.68	*ns*	ab	0.83	–0.53
E7	8.14	*ns*	ab	1.39	1.05*
E8	7.65	*ns*	ab	0.88	4.45**
E10	7.95	*ns*	ab	0.65	2.51**
E11	5.92	*ns*	b	0.70	–0.31
Numkoi	5.89		b	1.14	0.58

Note: †Based on data from sites' means; ‡least significant difference from *Numkoi* at 5% (2.3 t/ha) and 1% (3.1 t/ha) level of probability; §student–Newman–Keul's test. Different letters indicate significant difference between genotypes;
*, ** = significance at $P < 0.05$ and $P < 0.01$, respectively, and *ns* = not significant.
Source: Okpul (2005).

conditions were evaluated over 2 years. Genotype × environment interaction exists for both phenotypic and yield traits. A differential response of the genotypes to the varying climatic conditions at the locations is suggested as one of the causes of the interaction. The genotypic differences regarding the time when the area of the largest leaf reached its maximum size and the variation in sprouts and roots on the cormels at harvest indicate differences in

optimal harvest time between varieties. It is also observed that the percentage of plants infected with dasheen mosaic virus (DMsV) differ between locations but not between varieties (Reyes *et al.*, 2005).

The environment also has an effect on the corm's chemical composition. Starch was extracted from two cocoyam (*X. sagittifolium*) cultivars planted in summer, winter and spring. The physico-chemical properties of the starch were determined in order to investigate the seasonal effect and it was observed that cocoyams planted in the summer showed higher contents of total starch than those planted in other seasons (Lu *et al.*, 2005).

USE OF RELATED SPECIES

Incompatibility and sterility represent the main barriers in crossings between non-related species.

There is speculation that *A. macrorrhiza* has hybridized with *A. portei* in the Philippines to give a form with slightly wavy leaf margins (Hay, 1999). Interestingly, a hybrid has been produced between *C. esculenta* var. *aquatilis* from Nepal and *A. brisbanensis*, but only one plant was produced (Yoshino *et al.*, 2000). In Vanuatu, all attempts to cross *A. macrorrhiza* and *C. esculenta* have failed. The most interesting species is *C. gigantea*, a vigorous plant resitant to *P. colocasiae*. It seems that when it is used as the mother plant, the pollen tubes of *C. esculenta* have difficulty in reaching the ovaries; however, when used as the pollen donor, *C. gigantea* can generate seeds in crosses, although very few (Fig. 24.1).

Wild taro genotypes cannot always be clearly distinguished from cultivated types. Extensive cross-fertilization between cultivated and wild genotypes produces hybrids in all areas where the majority of taros flower naturally (Ivancic *et al.*, 1996). Wild genotypes produce more pollen and also attract more insects. Wild genotypes have been used as the source for resistance to Phytophthora leaf blight and nematode diseases. The offspring generation results in immediate segregation because of high heterozygosity of the parents, and individuals generally will express wild characteristics. These individuals usually germinate better, grow better and faster inside the greenhouse, are less affected by diseases and generally have a better appearance. Unfortunately, they are often non-edible or of poor quality.

POLYPLOIDY BREEDING

In India, it was observed that naturally occurring triploids were significantly superior to diploids in yield. Various attempts were made to produce artificial tetraploids to be crossed with diploids for the production of improved triploids. The induction of tetraploids with colchicine, however, is not simple. The treatment is successful when 0.2% solution is applied to the emerging shoot tip

Fig. 24.1. *Colocasia gigantea.*

during 6–8 h. The occurrence of tetraploids varies from 0 to 31%, depending on the genotypes treated. Attempts to produce triploids are under way (Sreekumari, 1994; Sreekumari *et al.*, 2004).

Germinating seeds treated with relatively high concentrations of aqueous solutions (1–5%) of colchicine failed to produce tetraploids. Because the number of abnormal plants was extremely low and there were almost no dead plants, it was assumed that colchicine had not penetrated embryos due to the thick mucilage surrounding them when germinating. The addition of dimethyl sulphoxide (DMSO) did not improve the performance of the treatments (Ivancic and Lebot, 2000).

RAPID VEGETATIVE PROPAGATION

Different parts of the taro plant (corm, cormels, suckers, stolons) can be used for rapid multiplication when a clone is selected. Experiments using single node cuttings from stolons obtained from plants raised with drip irrigation give an average multiplication ratio of 1 to 24 (Pardales and Dalion, 1986).

A promising new technique has been developed in Western Samoa in which selected clones are propagated rapidly. The corms are dipped in solutions of gibberellic acid (GA) at concentrations of 500 ppm and 100 ppm during 10

min. This treatment induces the corms to produce stolons rather than suckers when untreated with GA_3. Single node cuttings from the stolon are then sprouted. By this means, a large number of plantlets can be produced from a single corm. In 11 weeks, the propagation ratio is 1 to 120. The higher concentration of gibberellic acid gives the best results (Faatonu *et al.*, 2004).

A rapid *in vitro* propagation system has been developed in Fiji and evaluated against other multiplication protocols and has proved superior (Taylor, M. *et al.*, 2004). It is based on MS medium supplemented with sucrose and 8 g/l agar and consists of three stages. This protocol has been compared with one developed by Chand *et al.* (1999) (MS medium supplemented with 150 ml deproteinized coconut water). Both methods use a temperature of 25°C and a photoperiod of 16 h but give different results after 9 weeks (Table 24.4).

Table 24.4. Sucker numbers obtained from two different multiplication systems.

Cultivar	Method	Explant no. at start of Stage 1	Sucker no. at end of Stage 1	Sucker no. at end of Stage 2	Sucker no. at end of Stage 3
CPUK	Taylor	7	19	21	212
	Chand	7	13	9	48
TNS	Taylor	7	13	20	77
	Chand	7	8	12	25
Hybrid	Taylor	7	11	11	38
	Chand	7	6	9	12

Source: Taylor, M. *et al.* (2004).

USE OF MOLECULAR MARKERS

The size of the nuclear genome of taro 4*C* = 16.3 pg is 23 times larger than *Arabidopsis thaliana*, four times larger than potato or tomato, but somewhat smaller than barley (Bennett *et al.*, 1998).

Using isozymes, it is possible to appreciate the extent of genetic variation existing between and within countries using a simple index that is nothing other than the number of distinct zymotypes divided by the number of distinct morphotypes. At the isozyme level, there is limited variation in PNG and the Philippines (0.05 and 0.11) and significant genetic variation in Indonesia and Malaysia (0.28 and 0.50). The isozyme data suggest that genotypes existing in Polynesia share zymotypes identical to those occurring in PNG and the Solomons, which are susceptible to taro leaf blight (Lebot and Aradhya, 1991). This means that if taro leaf blight is introduced in some Polynesian islands, the existing genotypes will be affected severely. The introduction of *P. colocasiae* in Western Samoa in 1993 was a sad example which confirmed the reliable prediction of isozymes (Lebot *et al.*, 2004).

Isozymes (and ribosomal DNA) have also been used to study the variation in taro from China, Taiwan, the Ryukyu Islands and the main islands of Japan. The geographical distribution suggested two different dispersal routes of triploid taro into Japan, one through Taiwan and the other directly from mainland China (Matsuda, 2002).

RAPDs have been used to characterize 44 taro accessions. Their results generally agree with cytological and isozyme groupings. They confirm high genetic diversity associated with accessions of Indonesian origin. However, just like isozymes, RAPDs are not able to distinguish among accessions of Hawaiian origin and between triploids and diploids (Irwin *et al.*, 1998).

AFLP markers have confirmed that diversity is greater in South-east Asia than in the Pacific and that the genetic diversity of the cultivars within most countries is rather low (Kreike *et al.*, 2004). Stratification of germplasm collections using AFLP analysis failed to correlate molecular markers to morphotypes but proved useful for detecting duplicates and fingerprinting accessions (Quero-García *et al.*, 2004). AFLPs were also used to study the diversity maintained in a remote village of an oceanic island, in Vanua Lava, Vanuatu. They confirmed traditional knowledge and the three sources of genetic diversity known to farmers: introductions, somatic mutations and sexual recombination (Caillon *et al.*, 2006). SSR markers used to screen taro germplasm (Noyer *et al.*, 2004) have confirmed the image revealed by isozymes, RAPDs and AFLPs. There are no correlations between isozymes, AFLP, RAPD, SSR markers and the so-called botanical varieties (var. *esculenta* or var. *antiquorum*), which today appear as an obsolete taxonomic artefact. Molecular markers cannot differentiate clearly the type of cultivar (i.e. *dasheen* or *eddoe*) and/or particular or outstanding morphotypes.

The first taro genetic maps were developed recently (Quero-García *et al.*, 2006b). Two genetic maps have been produced with 169 markers, mainly AFLPs and 8 SSRs, and are characterized by a high density of markers and a short map length. A QTL detection study conducted on two progenies revealed several putative QTLs for corm yield and corm dimensions, whereas no QTL was detected for DM content. This result is relatively unexpected since DM content is a more highly heritable trait than corm yield and dimensions. A major dominant gene, responsible for the yellow colour of the corm flesh, was also identified. Concerning qualitative traits, no QTLs have been detected for the presence of stolons. It will probably be necessary to map other progenies in order to detect QTLs (or major genes) for this highly heritable deleterious trait.

DNA analyses of *X. sagittifolium* in the cocoyam collection in Florida showed very little genetic variation (Schnell *et al.*, 1999). In Java, Indonesia, the intraspecific variation in 32 accessions of elephant foot yam was conducted using AFLP and the resulting dendrogram grouped the genotypes into six clusters, which did not correspond with clustering based on habitat and origin (Sugiyama *et al.*, 2006).

TRANSGENIC TECHNOLOGIES

Despite the various *in vitro* protocols for taro callus culture, no genetically modified cultivar has been released. Taro yields have been declining in Hawaii over the past 30 years, partly due to disease. The University of Hawaii has developed an efficient *A. tumefaciens*-mediated transformation method for taro. Compared to the particle bombardment transformation, the *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation method obtained 43-fold higher transformation efficiency. In a laboratory bioassay, six transgenic lines exhibited increased tolerance to the fungus *S. rolfsii*, ranging from 42 to 63% reduction in lesion expansion (He *et al.*, 2008). Native Hawaiian activists organized several public demonstations in Honolulu to protest against potential plans to produce genetically modified taros. This apparent controversy is rather futile, considering that the current breeding programme in Hawaii does not use transgenic techniques (Cho, 2004).

GERMPLASM CONSERVATION

Genetic resources are now distributed worldwide. Taro germplasm collections exist in many countries (FAO, 1995; Rao, 1996) and these collections often include other aroids as well. To date, close to 6000 taro accessions have been collected and described by various institutions. The existing collections are far from being complete and it is thought that there are probably more than 15,000 varieties of *C. esculenta*.

Most allelic diversity is found within the wild gene pool, but most morphological variation is found within the cultivars which present a narrow genetic base (Lebot, 1992). National cultivar collections are therefore assembling limited allelic diversity (Kreike *et al.*, 2004). If taro breeding is to have a constructive future, it is important to preserve, characterize, evaluate and exchange germplasm on an international scale.

However, exchanging taro germplasm can be dangerous since it can spread viruses, which decreases yield severely. Propagation via *in vitro* culture may produce pathogen-free taro cultivars but a certification programme and strict quarantine are required to distribute this genetic material internationally. Thanks to TANSAO (funded by the EU), 2300 accessions have been characterized using standardized descriptors in seven South-east Asian and Pacific countries. From these, a core sample of 170 elite cultivars has been selected, distributed to participating countries and a few others, including Hawaii, and is maintained *in vitro* in germplasm centres in Indonesia and Fiji.

Rationalization of the collections is essential once there are more than 100 or so accessions. To rationalize a collection, a curator has to have the exact data about the existing variation, and stratification using a dichotomous key is a practical way of doing this (Fig. 24.2).

Fig. 24.2. Dichotomous morphological key used for stratification of germplasm collection.

In vitro conservation is considered to be safer than field conservation and might be cheaper, although there are no data to confirm this. Field collections are subjected to constant genetic erosion. A problem associated with *in vitro* conservation may be the genetic stability of the conserved material. *In vitro* corm formation of taro can be achieved on MS medium, the corm-forming cultures can be preserved up to 15 months at 25°C (+ or – 2°C), whereas the shoot-forming cultures last for only 6 months. Plantlets with *in vitro*-formed corms show 100% survival in the field and develop normal uniform corm-producing plants. The genetic stability of these plants has been tested with molecular markers and the results confirm that the *in vitro* formation of corms is a cost-effective mean for germplasm conservation (Hussain and Tyagi, 2006).

The droplet vitrification cryopreservation technique is another attractive solution. The optimum protocol involves excision of ~0.8 mm shoot tips from *in vitro* plants, then 20–40 min PVS2 exposure at 0°C, followed by rapid plunge into liquid nitrogen. Thawing is then performed at room temperature (25°C) and shoot tips are inoculated on MS medium with 0.1 M sucrose to regenerate them into plantlets 4–6 weeks later (Sant *et al.*, 2006, 2008).

Another cheap way of preserving the genetic variation is true botanical seeds which, when obtained in openly pollinated and highly variable populations, can preserve genes efficiently, but not genotypes. The main problem associated with true seeds is their viability. The seeds are very small and their viability usually is no longer than 5 years, even when stored in a desiccator under low temperature. There is a need for more research into taro seed physiology and conservation constraints. A study conducted in Vanuatu indicates that a dynamic *in situ* conservation strategy favouring broadening of the genetic base might be appropriate for taro (Caillon *et al.*, 2006).

The total number of collected accessions of *X. sagittifolium*, *X. violaceum*, *X. nigrum*, *X. brasiliense* and *X. yuca* is close to 1000 (FAO, 1995). Some work has been done on their characterization, such as that in Cuba where *X. violaceum*,

X. atrovirens, *X. caracu* and *X. sagittifolium* have been described morphologically (Milián *et al.*, 2001). Major collections of *X. sagittifolium* from Cameroon, Equatorial Guinea, Gabon, Ghana and Togo were also made during the 1980s. Over 300 accessions were assembled and evaluated for yield and incidence of *Pythium* infection (Onokpise *et al.*, 1993, 1999; Tambong *et al.*, 1997). The collection maintained at the University of Ghana is composed of 70 *X. sagittifolium* accessions with sufficient diversity to interest plant breeders (Offei *et al.*, 2004). Root disease is also a problem in Brazil and a few species of the *X. maximilianii* × *X. hyleae* complex have resistance to *Pythium* spp. *In vitro* cultivation enables healthy propagation material to be exchanged and distributed (Giacometti and León, 1994).

This page intentionally left blank

25

Developmental Physiology

Taro and other aroids have a similar growth cycle, although for *Alocasia* and *Cyrtosperma* it is much longer than for *Colocasia* and *Xanthosoma*, which need to be replanted every year in order to produce good quality corms and cormels. The life cycle of *A. campanulatus* is almost identical to that of taro, except for the greater duration (at least 16 months) of the period from seed germination to flowering.

GROWTH CYCLE

There are six major growth phases in aroids: root formation, shoot development, increase in corm size, rapid DM accumulation in the aerial parts, predominant corm and cormel growth to maturity stage and, finally, corm and cormel dormancy.

Phase One: Establishment of the Plant with Root Formation and Leaf Production

When a sucker, stolon or head-sett, is planted, the propagule starts to produce new roots very rapidly, between 2 and 6 DAP, depending on the soil moisture. During this phase, the plant develops roots using the water and nutrient reserves within the propagule. The greater the weight of the propagule, the faster it will produce roots to anchor the young plant and will begin uptake of water and nutrients. This phase usually lasts from 1 to 3 WAP until a functional root system can feed the plant.

Phase Two: Rapid Root and Shoot Development with Corm Initiation

From 3 to 10 WAP, the propagule will produce new leaves rapidly, which will allow the young plant to produce a functional canopy composed of four to five well-developed leaves.

Phase Three: Maximum Root and Shoot Growth with Rapid Increase in Corm Size

From 10 to 20 WAP, the plant is producing a vigorous but shallow root system, radiating for 1–2 m around it. It is also producing new leaves regularly to replace the senescing ones. There is not much variation in the number of leaves per main stem between taro genotypes. For dasheen-type varieties, this is five to six, depending on whether the oldest leaf is senescing and if the younger leaf is fully open.

Phase Four: Rapid Dry Matter Accumulation in the Aerial Parts

Between 20 and 30 WAP, the plant reaches its greatest height and there is a significant accumulation of DM in the petioles and laminas, which become more stiff and leathery.

Phase Five: Senescence Period of Decreasing Root and Shoot Growth with Continued Increase in Corm and Cormel Size

From 25 WAP onwards, the height of the plant will decline and the main corm and side cormels will bulk and accumulate DM until the plant reaches maturity, which varies from 30 to 40 WAP according to taro genotypes.

Phase Six: Dormancy and Decreasing Corm Weight Due to New Vegetative Growth

After 40 WAP, taro plants usually enter into dormancy for a month or two, depending on the climate. Vegetative growth will then start again (Fig. 25.1). In annual cultivars (*C. esculenta* and *X. sagittifolium*), the quality of the corm and cormels deteriorates when the plant uses its own reserves to initiate new vegetative growth. It is therefore necessary to replant cultivars annually. In

Fig. 25.1. Growth cycle of taro.

temperate countries, dormancy is induced by low temperatures. Dormancy is also a significant phenomenon in some subtropical countries, such as New Caledonia, and begins in autumn (from April to May onwards) and aerial parts can disappear completely before they sprout again in November–December (Ivancic and Lebot, 1999).

In cocoyam, the first 10 WAP are characterized by low rates of DM accumulation with only the petioles and the leaves producing significant vegetative growth. From 10 to 30 WAP, roots, petioles and leaves accumulate DM rapidly. From 30 WAP onwards, there is a significant increase in DM in the corm and cormels only and the DM content reaches a maximum of 46% at 36 WAP for early maturing cultivars and at 45 WAP for late maturing. Cormel DM accumulation continues after the LAI has reached a maximum at 28 WAP. Cormel bulking during the period of declining LAI occurs because older senescing leaves contribute assimilates to the corm and cormels and because the products of current photosynthesis are being translocated to new leaves as well as to corm and cormels. Cocoyam corm is not edible and competes for assimilates with cormels. Also, a reduction in leaf area reduces corm growth and benefits cormel growth. Ultimately, cormel sprouting and, consequently, sucker development render the cormels non-marketable (Goenaga and Singh, 1991). In eddoe-type cultivars of taro, corms and cormels are competing sinks for photosynthates. The plant can be considered harvestable when DM accumulation in the cormels is greater than in the central corm (Goenaga, 1995).

When taro plants grow from true seeds, it takes about 5–9 months from germination to flowering. The growth cycle of a taro plant can be analysed from its corm surface. This surface shows several types of residuals, such as residuals of leaves, of stolons or suckers, of floral clusters and of roots. The age of the plant can be estimated from the number of leaf residuals and the time needed for the development of each new leaf. Analysis of floral cluster residuals

(the number of clusters and the number of peduncle residuals per cluster) gives an idea of the flowering ability of the plant. The changes in the corm diameter indicate changes in environmental conditions. Narrow portions usually indicate dry periods or periods of flooding when the corm was submerged.

The pattern of partitioning of taro during its growth and development is somewhat different from other root crops which present two types of partitioning:

1. Phasic partitioning occurs when early vegetative growth is characterized by shoot and fibrous development and when the storage organ growth begins later in the growth cycle.
2. Continuous partitioning occurs when the storage organ growth begins early in seedling stage and continues throughout the vegetative period of plant growth. A balance between vegetative (shoot and leaves) growth and storage organ growth is maintained throughout the growing season.

Taro and other aroids exihibit continuous partitioning with an almost linear increase in fresh and dry weights. Cassava, sweet potato and yams develop through phasic partitioning. The continuous partitioning of aroids is similar to the sugarbeet (Loomis and Rapoport, 1977).

PHOTOPERIODISM

Day length variation has a limited effect on DM corm yield (see Table 25.1). In order to study photoperiodism incidence, two popular Hawaiian varieties were planted at two different altitudes (280 m and 640 m) with two different mean temperatures and with different photoperiod treatments (natural day length, plus 0.5 h, 14 h, 17 h and 20 h). The extension of photoperiod had a noticeable effect on leaf appearance rate. Changes in photoperiod at the 640 m site (lower mean temperatures) had a significant effect on corm dry weight, which was lowest for the long photoperiod of 20 h. Leaf appearance, leaf opening and DM production were not affected by increasing the photoperiod (Prasad and Singh, 1991).

The rate of photosynthesis increases with growth and reaches a maximum 2 weeks after complete leaf expansion. It remains at this level for approximately 10 days and then declines with senescence. The maximum rate of photosynthesis of a single leaf under full light saturation is about 30–35 mg CO_2 for lower leaves but only 20 mg for upper and middle leaves (Sunell and Arditti, 1983).

The potential photosynthesis per plant is determined by plant density, which controls the sunlight area available. Aroid plants have a dominant meristem and their leaves expand to cover the area fully so that the photosynthesis rate per plant reaches a maximum value and declines. In Egypt, the growth characteristics, different physiological parameters, photosynthetic activity ($14CO_2$ fixation) and the translocation rate of photoassimilates have been studied in local genotypes in order to determine the possible use of these parameters as selection criteria for different cultivars. There is a positive correlation between

Table 25.1. Main effect of photoperiod on taro.

Photoperiod	Cormel number	Dry weight (in g/plant)		
		Corm	Cormels	Total biomass
Natural	16.9	397.3	500.4	989.8
Natural + 0.5 h	18.7	367.9	541.9	1023.6
14 h	21.0	406.4	568.0	1073.3
17 h	20.4	428.3	583.7	1098.7
20 h	22.3	361.8	572.5	1002.2

Source: Prasad and Singh (1991).

photosynthetic activity, translocation efficiency and total yield and these are found to be useful for reliable selection (Moussa and Salem, 2006).

Aroids are shade-tolerant crops. Taro plants grown at 30% of full sunlight have increased stomatal and chlorophyll density, probably increasing photosynthetic efficiency at low levels of light (Onwueme and Johnston, 2000). Results of experiments conducted under artificial shade provided by a canopy of 50% shade cloth indicate that plant height and leaf area are higher under shaded conditions compared to full sunlight. Total plant biomass is also increased by shade (Rogers and Iosefa, 1993) (Table 25.2). The corm yields are not affected by shade but the number and weight of plant suckers are increased. Corm percentage DM, which reflects quality, is higher under shade. The fact that total plant biomass is increased by shade indicates greater photosynthetic efficiency.

TEMPERATURE

The preferred temperature range for maximum photosynthesis is between 25 and 35°C, with 30°C being the optimum. Taro leaf appearance rate for taro is correlated positively with temperature, the duration of leaf appearance and leaf opening both being longer when the temperature is lower than the optimum

Table 25.2. Effect of shade on taro.

	Fresh corm Yield kg/ha	Dry corm Yield kg/ha	Corm Dry matter %	Shoot Dry weight kg/ha	Sucker Dry weight kg/ha	Total plant Dry weight kg/ha	Suckers No.
Shade	5182	1614	31.0	404	1619	3637	93
No shade	4977	1424	28.5	271	987	2862	69

Source: Rogers and Iosefa (1993).

conditions. Days to maturity increase with lower temperature. The lower the temperature, the smaller the corm and cormel yield (Prasad and Singh, 1991). Low temperatures (under 15°C) generally lead to dormancy of the corm and cormels. Taro does not tolerate freezing temperatures.

NUTRITION

Aroids can exhibit spectacular chlorosis when nutrient deficiencies occur. Taro is considered to be a heavy feeder and is often planted first in a crop rotation, just after the fallow. It is quite sensitive to mineral deficiencies and responds well to fertilizers. Tentative critical nutrient concentrations have been measured, the plant tissue selected as an index tissue being the youngest, fully expanded leaf blade (O'Sullivan *et al.*, 1996) (Table 25.3).

Experiments conducted in PNG to assess the nutrient requirements of taro have shown that when plants are fertilized with 100 kg N/ha (sulfate of ammonia), 50 kg P/ha (triple superphosphate) and 100 kg K/ha (muriate of potash), they produce twice the root biomass of unfertilized taros. Root biomass develops within 120 DAP but does not increase thereafter (Table 25.4). Taro is therefore highly responsive to nutrient uptake during phase three of its growth cycle (around 18 WAP), when the plant needs to produce a vigorous root system. Subsequent plant yield depends on its ability to develop its whole root system during this critical period.

Table 25.3. Tentative critical concentrations and adequate concentration ranges for a number of nutrition disorders.

Disorder	Critical concentration	Adequate range
Deficiency of:		
N (%)	3.7	3.9–5.0
P (%)	0.33	0.5–0.9
K (%)	4.60	5.0–6.0
Ca (%)	2.0	2.6–4.0
Mg (%)	0.15	0.17–0.25
S (%)	0.26	0.27–0.33
Fe (mg/kg)	56	68–130
B (mg/kg)	23	26–200
Mn (mg/kg)	21	26–500
Zn (mg/kg)	22	22–50
Cu (mg/kg)	3.8	5.8–35
Toxicity of:		
Mn (mg/kg)	1133	26–500
Zn (mg/kg)	400	22–250

Source: O'Sullivan *et al.* (1996).

Table 25.4. Biomass production and dry matter content of unfertilized and fertilized taro.

		Midseason (126 DAP)		At harvest (231 DAP)	
	Plant part	Unfertilized	Fertilized	Unfertilized	Fertilized
Dry weight mg/ha	Roots	0.26	0.52**	0.51	0.50
	Corms	0.82	1.21	2.53	6.99*
	Leaves	0.68	2.13*	2.00	3.64*
	Total	1.75	3.86*	5.04	11.13*
Dry matter content (%)	Roots	4	5**	12	11
	Corms	21	19	30	30
	Leaves	8	7	16	16

Note: Leaf biomass includes petioles. * and ** indicate significant differences at $P < 0.05$ and $P < 0.001$, respectively. Source: Hartemink and Johnston (1998).

In Sri Lanka, the response of *X. sagittifolium* to various K rates and times of application shows that K deficiency delays cormel initiation. Conversely, high levels of available K enhance the translocation of photosynthates during the early stage of growth, thereby increasing the availability of carbohydrates for cormel initiation. The number of cormels per plant then increases with increasing levels of K (Sangakkara, 1990) (Table 25.5).

WATER DEFICIT AND STRESS

Aroids are known for their relatively high water requirements. They produce large leaves and transpiration is related directly to leaf area. High rainfall is needed during the first 20 WAP, corresponding to the period of maximum leaf development. Drier conditions can be tolerated from then until harvest. Mean yields for irrigated taro exceed non-irrigated crops, and in some cases by as much as 50% for the same genotype. This is, however, genotype-dependent as some genotypes are typical upland types and do not tolerate flooded conditions.

Table 25.5. Effect of K on the number of cormels per plant of cocoyam 9 months after planting.

	0	175	200	225	250	275	LSD
Application	kg K_2O/ha						$p = 0.05$
Basal	0.0	5.2	5.7	7.1	10.6	9.8	0.84
Split	0.0	3.1	4.3	5.4	5.8	6.1	0.59

Note: Basal = all K at planting. Split = 100 kg K_2O/ha at 90 DAP, the remainder at planting. Source: Sangakkara (1990).

Xanthosoma sagittifolium is much more tolerant to drought and sensitive to waterlogging. In Puerto Rico, however, it was observed that yields always increased with higher irrigation, even though total rainfall during the growth cycle exceeded standard pan evaporation (SPE) (Snyder and Lugo, 1980). A severe reduction in yield is observed in cocoyam if the depth of the water table is reduced from 0 to 15 cm.

Taro leaf information can be used to determine how evapotranspiration (ET) varies with growth stage, and is also useful to predict foliage biomass production. Taro ET is estimated from the SPE and the ratio ET/SPE. This ratio is related closely to the LAI. A ratio between 0.9 and 1.0 is appropriate when LAI is less than 1.0, before canopy closure. It is between 0.73 and 0.75 when LAI is greater than 1.0, after canopy closure. It is possible to estimate the ET requirements for irrigation scheduling or for water resource planning and management in accordance with available SPE data and the ET/SPE ratio (Shih *et al.*, 1988).

Most water loss occurs during summertime, when temperatures are high. Genotypes differ in osmotic values, solute content and wilting point. Taro leaves can secrete water at the tip of their laminas through guttation, and the amount of water exuded in field conditions varies from 10 ml to 23 ml per night (Sunell and Arditti, 1983).

Drought tolerance of taro is a major objective in breeding programmes. In India, a taro hybrid, along with its parents, was evaluated for water stress tolerance under polyethelene glycol (PEG)-mediated osmotic stress conditions. The plantlets were hardened and transferred to pots for evaluation of various parameters under stress conditions. Significant variations were observed in plant height, number of leaves, leaf area, percentage relative water content, chlorophyll stability index, percentage injury by desiccation and yield. The hybrid showed more tolerance to osmotic stress with minimum yield reduction. It is thought that the development of drought-tolerant lines is therefore feasible (Sahoo *et al.*, 2006).

YIELD POTENTIAL

The most important factor limiting yield is the availability of water. With proper irrigation or abundant rainfall and good soil fertility it is not unusual to obtain fresh corms weighing between 6 and 10 kg. In traditional cropping systems, taro yields of 60–110 t/ha have been recorded (Spriggs, 1981). Cocoyams can produce between 3 and 5 kg cormels with proper solar radiation and soil fertility. Giant taro corms can reach the impressive weight of 10–15 kg but, for all these species, a reduction in plant spacings also reduces yields.

The corm yield of the taro plant is correlated to the weight of the propagule planted and genotype performance is, therefore, difficult to assess accurately if calibration is not conducted properly before planting. The potential yield is also

closely dependent on plant architecture. A vegetative growth index (VGI), which takes into consideration the leaf area of the plant, can be used. The leaf area can be estimated from the longest leaf length, there being no significant variation for the number of leaves per main stem (the one from which the corm yield is measured) between dasheen varieties. Most varieties are assumed to have at least five functional leaves per main stem, with a lamina length on average equal to 1.4 of the lamina width. The following formula is used to compute the index:

$$\text{VGI} = [((\text{leaf length}/1.4) \times \text{leaf length}) \times 5) \times \text{h}/100] - (\text{suckers} + \text{stolons})^2$$

When this index is correlated with the mean corm yield, a highly significant and positive correlation coefficient is obtained (Lebot *et al.*, 2006b). Genotypes with a high VGI at 20 WAP (at the beginning of phase four of growth) have the potential to produce a high corm yield when mature at 36–40 WAP. In fact, a high VGI translates a good aptitude of the plant to stock energy in its corm. Tall cultivars bear large leaves forming a wide canopy for maximum light interception and storage of energy. A low number of stolons and suckers avoid this energy to be translocated into useless, secondary vegetative growth. This VGI index does not take into consideration the computation of an accurate LAI for taro (Miyasaka *et al.*, 2003), but is easier to compute for screening numerous genotypes with different architectures. Maximum yield is, however, difficult to measure accurately because optimum maturity is difficult to determine precisely in all aroids. Depending on how the measurements are made, maturity of the corm and cormels is reached when:

- The average or the maximum fresh yield is achieved.
- An acceptable quality (related to DM content) is obtained.
- The corm diameter starts to decline near the petiole base.
- A certain phenological leaf stage is reached.

This page intentionally left blank

26

Agronomy

Aroids can be grown throughout the year in the wet tropics. They are best adapted to high temperatures, moist environment and a high humidity. Evenly distributed rainfall, between 200 and 300 mm/month, is ideal for optimum growth and production. Irrigation is, however, necessary for taro and swamp taro in low rainfall areas, while cocoyam, giant taro and elephant foot yam are more drought tolerant. For all species, and for a given genotype, the time needed to reach maturity varies according to temperature, sunlight and water availability.

SOIL PREPARATION

Aroids prefer well-drained soil but taro and swamp taro also thrive in soil with a tendency to waterlogging or which is saturated for long periods. Upland taro and other aroids can also be cultivated on slopes in marginal soils when rainfall is sufficient. In most countries, soil preparation is never mechanized and the field is not levelled.

Flooded taro is cultivated in low-lying areas, in valleys with alluvial soils and where the pond system is very similar to that used for irrigated rice in South-east Asia. The constant movement of water is important to keep its temperature low so as to avoid root rots (de la Peña, 1983). Taro fields are prepared by breaking the soil after the plots have been flooded completely and soaked for a few days. To control weeds during land preparation, the plot is rotavated two to three times at 1-week intervals. The water depth is maintained at 5 cm to prevent weed growth (Claus and Lebot, 1999). Farmers use water buffalo and oxen to pull instruments when tractors are not available. The plots are then left for a few days to allow the soil to settle before the propagules are planted. In northern Vietnam, on the Red River plain near Hanoi, taro is planted in winter after rice, on raised beds approximately 1 m wide and 20 cm high and the plots are flooded. In the high plateaus of Madagascar, taro is also planted after rice but in holes, the plots being drained.

For upland taro, existing weeds are first slashed by hand, burnt or kept for use as mulch. The soil is prepared in the planting spot by hand with a sharp spade or a planting stick. A hole of approximately 30 × 30 × 30 cm is dug and the propagule placed at the bottom. The holes will be filled slowly with compost or organic matter as the plant matures. The holes provide humidity and the roots grow into moist soil. The corm then develops in the upper part of the hole. Cocoyams are not planted as deep as taro and, in intensive cropping systems in Nicaragua and Costa Rica, field preparation is increasingly mechanized. The field is first ploughed, rotavated and the soil is ridged or furrowed.

PROPAGULE SELECTION AND PREPARATION

Plants with pest and disease symptoms should be avoided carefully when sourcing planting material, as they are the main cause of crop infections.

For cocoyam, corm-setts weighing 150–200 g, or suckers weighing between 200 and 400 g, are ideal for direct field planting. Taro planting materials are prepared from the suckers or the top (head) of the main corm. The head-sett consists of the upper 1–2 cm section of the corm and the first 30 cm of the petiole. Head-setts also can be prepared from the suckers but, in most cases, cormels are not cut and are planted whole. The heterogeneity of the propagules (suckers, stolons or head-setts) results in highly variable performances of the resulting individual taro plants, so planting material should be sorted before intensive cultivation. Heavy head-setts (300–700 g) are more tolerant to drought and, in case of water shortage, propagules which have not survived should be replaced to maintain an even plant density during the crop development. In good growing conditions, heavy head-setts will result in higher yields.

Variation between plants within the same genotype is considerable, however, even if the propagules have been sorted properly. This clonal variation has been computed, using calibrated head-setts of 500 g, for five major traits in Vanuatu with 96 varieties originating from different countries. Intraclonal variation is quite high for the number of stolons per plant. Asian cultivars exhibit a remarkably high intraclonal variation of the number of stolons per plant within the same variety, which indicates that this trait is not stable when present. The intraclonal variation of the number of suckers per plant is also high and not stable. The mean intraclonal variation for corm yield from different plants of the same genotype also varies significantly (Lebot *et al.*, 2006b) (Table 26.1).

In the Phichit plain, Thailand, taro growers develop and calibrate their own healthy propagating materials which are first raised in home-made nurseries in their backyards, where they have access to permanent water for generous irrigation. In Futuna, Polynesia, growers apply pig manure in their taro nurseries, maintained next to their house, in order to produce heavy propagules rapidly for transplanting in irrigated plots, to maximize crop earliness and productivity.

Table 26.1. Mean intraclonal variation measured on five traits for 96 cultivars of taro.

	Trait measured									
	Height (cm)	*cv (%)*	Leaf (cm)	*cv (%)*	Number of stolons	*cv (%)*	Number of suckers	*cv (%)*	Corm (g)	*cv (%)*
Intraclonal mean	77.6	*(17.8)*	35.0	*(16.8)*	4.9	*(118.2)*	5.6	*(69.1)*	1094	*(20.8)*

Source: Lebot *et al.* (2006b).

Taro and cocoyam can be grown from suckers split longitudinally in halves or quarters with their attached pieces of corms but, once established, these materials result in a reduced leaf area per plant. Preferably, this technique should be used for raising plants in nurseries but not for direct field planting.

In Japan and other temperate countries (northern China, Egypt, New Zealand), planting can be done when propagules start to sprout. Some studies conducted to elucidate the effect of harvesting time and low-temperature treatment on taro corm sprouting indicate that the sprouting rate is low in corms planted just after harvesting or after storage at 25°C for 60 days. Low-temperature treatment at 3°C for 15 days or at 10°C for more than 30 days promotes sprouting. In Japan, taro corms remain dormant from late September to early October, but the extent of dormancy varies with cultivar (Murakami *et al.*, 2007).

PLANT DENSITIES AND CROP ESTABLISHMENT

Overall yield of taro may be improved by increasing the number of plants per unit area. However, genotypes differ significantly in tolerance to high density and the majority of traditional cultivars are adapted to intermediate densities (i.e. 0.8 m × 0.8 m, 0.7 m × 0.8 m, 0.5 m × 1.0 m). When the density is too high (i.e. 0.3 m × 0.3 m), the leaves die earlier, the plants have fewer leaves and frequently are affected by leaf diseases. In fact, the closer the spacing, the smaller the corm and export markets usually require an average 2 kg corm, which can be obtained with intermediate spacing. In traditional cropping systems, spacing is usually wider and plants are intercropped. The average corm yield is also higher (4–6 kg/plant). In Hawaii, taro spacing ranges from a close 45 × 45 cm to a wide 1 × 1 m (10,000 plants/ha), but with wide spacing, weed control is a serious and expensive problem. In Fiji, 60 × 60 cm triangular spacing is recommended.

In the Dominican Republic, closer spacing reduces significantly the number of suckers per plant during the dry season, when moisture is a limiting factor (Robin, 2004) (Table 26.2).

In PNG, experiments have shown that the popular taro cultivar 'Numkoi', planted at a spacing of 1 × 0.25 m (40,000 plants/ha), produces a 66% yield

Table 26.2. Mean number of suckers per taro plant for different spacing during wet and dry seasons in two locations in the Dominican Republic.

	Number of suckers/plant			
	Grand Bay area		Wet area	
Spacing (cm)	Wet season	Dry season	Wet season	Dry season
55 × 55	3.4	3.5	4.0	4.3
65 × 65	3.6	4.2	4.1	4.5
75 × 75	3.9	5.1	4.4	5.7
Standard error	0.51	0.58	0.4	0.42

Source: Robin (2004).

increase from standard check (1.0 × 1.0 m) (Sar *et al.*, 1998; Gendua *et al.*, 2001) (Table 26.3).

The yield of taro increases significantly at 40,000, 80,000 and 160,000 plants/ha. The mean corm weight is reduced at all planting densities above 10,000 plants/ha. Plant densities between 20,000 and 60,000 plants/ha can give optimum yields in terms of marketable individual corm sizes (Gendua *et al.*, 2001). The proper plant spacing for a particular farm does not depend on the final yield only but also on other factors, such as the uniformity of individual corm size to meet various market demands, the weed maintenance programme, the number of propagules the farmer can afford to prepare and, finally, the time of year the plot is planted. Farmers may consider planting with a wider spacing during cooler months and with a narrower spacing during hotter months to optimize corm size and production.

Optimal density depends also on the phenotypic characteristics of genotypes. Density-tolerant plants have erect leaves with smaller laminas set vertically and supported by long and erect petioles. There is also another, less important type of

Table 26.3. Effect of planting density on taro yield in Papua New Guinea.

Spacing (m)	Plant population	Mean corm weight (g)	Yield (t/ha)	Marketable yield (t/ha)	Non-marketable yield (%)
1 × 1	10,000	839	14.85	9.33	10.2
1 × 0.5	20,000	576*	16.27 ns	9.17	13.0 ns
0.5 × 0.5	40,000	445*	23.29*	15.88	8.7 ns
1 × 0.25	40,000	479*	24.64*	16.41	13.0 ns
0.5 × 0.25	80,000	340*	26.84*	15.21	15.3 ns
0.25 × 0.25	160,000	295*	33.55*	13.75	43.3*

Note: *Significantly different from standard check ($P < 0.05$), ns = no significant difference. Source: Sar *et al.* (1998) and Gendua *et al.* (2001).

density-tolerant plant which is characterized by extremely short petioles and small laminas. Breeders prefer tall, erect plants, however, some of which have been found to be resistant to leaf blight (Ivancic *et al.*, 1996).

INTERCROPPING

In traditional agroforestry rainfed systems, intercropping of aroids is the rule. In Hawaii, taro yields measured at harvest show that intercropping does not affect the corm yields of the 'Bunlong' variety adversely. These yields range from a low 37 t/ha for the control to more than 50 t/ha with groundnut. There were no significant statistical differences between treatments but there are various other benefits from intercropping with beans and legumes (de la Peña and Melchor, 1993) (Table 26.4).

In Nigeria, taro, cocoyam and rice thrive well in similar ecologies and an efficient utilization of the land is achieved when these crops are intercropped. It has been shown that growing rice with taro as an intercrop is more profitable than rice or taro alone. The recommended planting is of two rows of taro at a spacing of 60 × 60 cm, alternating with four rows of rice. Cultivation practices such as weeding, fertilizer application and water management remain the same as for single crop management.

Table 26.4. Taro corm yield and growth measurements as affected by intercropping.

Intercrops	Corm yield (t/ha)	Growth height (cm)	Suckers per plant
Control (no intercrop)	37.04	100	7.5
Bush beans	45.57	98	8.5
Lucerne	49.80	105	9.0
Sweetcorn	39.95	102	8.7
Sweet potato	40.19	88	3.2
Groundnut	50.58	103	7.7
LSD (0.05)	*ns*	*13*	*3.2*

After de la Peña and Melchor (1993).

WEEDING

Proper weed control during the first 4 months of growth reduces competition for moisture, light and nutrients. In traditional systems, weeding is done by hand every 2–3 months and represents the only input during the whole growth cycle (8–10 months). In commercial cultivation, taros are planted in lines and the early establishment of leaf canopy cover is favoured by frequent

applications of manure or fertilizers and adequate irrigation. In this case, the methods of minimizing weeds include proper field preparation and periodic tilling of newly emerged weed seedlings with hand-drawn tillers. Weeding taro at 30, 60, 90 and 120 DAP produces higher yields than weeding or rototilling at 60 and 120 DAP.

In flooded systems, the water surface contributes efficiently to the maintenance of weed-free ponds. However, some filamentous algae species can present serious problems and necessitate weekly removal. In Futuna, Polynesia, these algae (called *limu*) are pulled out by hand and piled in a heap in the middle of the pond. If they are not removed on a regular basis, the flow of the water slows down, its temperature increases and *Pythium* rots develop (Claus and Lebot, 1999).

Contact herbicides such as gramoxone can be sprayed between the lines when side protectors are used. Systemic herbicides (glyphosate) are also very efficient but are rarely used. Taro is, in fact, very sensitive to glyphosate, which can cause interveinal chlorosis and distortion of the emerging leaves. A high dosage causes 'shoestringing' in the emerging leaves and finally kills the plant. Drift control by spraying with thickening agents during windless early mornings is a necessary measure to avoid damage.

Planting taro or cocoyam directly into a dried mulch is a convenient weed control technique. A legume (*Glycine*, *Pueraria* or *Mucuna* spp.) is used as a cover crop during the fallow and then sprayed with herbicide to produce a thick cover of dried biomass through which holes are dug to plant the propagules. In traditional cropping systems, taro is also planted through an existing sweet potato crop which acts as a ground cover to control the weeds. However, the sweet potatoes need to be harvested before the taros overshade them. If not, their yield will be diminished considerably.

Mulching with organic or artificial materials contributes greatly to weed control in upland taro, although it does not increase yields significantly. Throughout Polynesia, taro is often mulched with dried coconut leaves. In Hawaii, yields of unmulched taro are lower than mulched taro because of the combined effect of moisture conservation and weed control (de la Peña and Melchor, 1993) (Table 26.5).

FERTILIZATION AND NUTRIENT DISORDERS

The large leaf area of aroids causes partial shading of the basal leaves, which ultimately results in reduced net assimilation and corm growth rates. Profuse leaf area development may result from high N uptake but, under optimum N supply, relatively low amounts of N are apparently used for canopy development. In upland rainfed taro, the DM allocated to the corms is generally high under optimum N supply but in lowland, irrigated taro, the DM of the corms is relatively low and stable across different N regimes (Manrique, 1994). Nitrogen-

Table 26.5. Growth and yield performance of upland taro under different mulches.

Mulches	Taro height (cm)	Suckers per plant	Corm yield (t/ha)
Control, unmulched	107.6 a	6.9 a	38.2 a
Plastic	109.1 a	6.9 a	40.0 a
Rice straw	114.9 ab	7.8 a	39.7 a
Banana leaves	121.6 b	9.1 b	50.7 a
Maize stalks	116.9 ab	9.2 b	48.9 a

Note: Figures followed by the same letter are not significantly different at 5% level.
Source: de la Peña and Melchor (1993).

deficient plants are often stunted, with smaller than normal pale green leaves. The older leaves develop a pale, dry necrosis around the margins and toward the lamina tip.

Phosphorus-deficient plants show considerable reduction in growth before other symptoms are visible. Acute symptoms consist of necrotic lesions on the oldest leaves and usually follow a generalized or localized yellowing of the leaves. When this necrosis is preceded by yellowing, it is often confused with N deficiency but, in the case of P deficiency, plants are distinguished by the dark green colour of the youngest leaf, which allows its identification.

Potassium requirement is high and deficient plants exhibit necrotic lesions around the margins of the oldest leaves. These lesions are usually paired on each side of the major vein. The necrosis is usually surrounded by yellow tissue. Potassium deficiency may exacerbate water stress and if expanding leaves are affected, upward cupping occurs.

Taro has high calcium requirements. Calcium deficiency symptoms include: failure of the leaf blades to unfurl; interveinal chlorosis and necrosis; petiole collapse; root dieback and death of the shoot tip (Miyasaka and Bartholomew, 1979).

Estimation of required fertilizer rates can be based on the nutrient removal by the crop. In the case of taro, there is wide variation in nutrient concentrations in corms (Blamey, 1996) (Table 26.6).

Taro is fertilized rarely, except in Hawaii and Egypt. Cocoyam is fertilized sometimes in Central America when grown as an export cash crop. Taro responds well to potassium and phosphorus fertilization (Sunell and Arditti, 1983). In traditional cropping systems of the South Pacific, N and P deficiencies invariably are found to be increased following continuous cultivation. In field trials conducted in Tonga, it was observed that taro responded strongly to P fertilizer and that its poor response to N fertilizer was probably due to its slow establishment. In Tonga, the greatest gross margin per ha is obtained with N (75 kg/ha), P (100 kg/ha) and K (400 kg/ha) (Halavatu *et al.*, 1998).

In west Bengal, India, the performance of three upland cultivars of taro on a moderately fertile sandy loam soil was studied under varying N and K levels.

Table 26.6. Nutritional removal by a taro crop of 8 and 65 t/ha.

Nutrient	Concentration (dry matter basis) in the corm	Nutrient removal in kg/ha with fresh corm yield of: 8 t/ha	65 t/ha
N (%)	0.6–1.43	14–34	117–280
P (%)	0.17–0.47	4.0–11.2	39–91
K (%)	1.08–1.77	25–42	210–345
Ca (%)	0.04–0.13	1.0–3.0	8.5–24.7
Mg (%)	0.07–0.38	1.6–9.2	13–75
S (%)	0.03	0.68	5.5
Fe (mg/kg)	16–57	0.038–0.14	0.31–1.11
Mn (mg/kg)	11–16	0.027–0.038	0.22–0.31
Cu (mg/kg)	7–9	0.016–0.019	0.13–0.16
Zn (mg/kg)	40–120	0.096–0.29	0.78–2.34
B (mg/kg)	3.0	0.007	0.06

Source: Blamey (1996).

The petiole length showed an increasing trend up to 120 DAP, with the highest values obtained with 150 kg N + 150 kg K/ha. The dry weights of leaves and cormels were highest with 150 kg N + 150 kg K/ha, but this treatment was almost on a par with 100 kg N + 150 kg K/ha, indicating a weak response to an increase in N. The values of the other growth attributes, such as the LAI, were highest with 100 kg N + 150 kg K and 150 kg N + 150 kg K/ha (Preeti *et al.*, 2002). In Nigeria, cocoyam has been found to be responsive to split applications of 100 kg/ha of 60–50–90 (NPK) at 3 and 4 months after planting.

HARVESTING

Taro is mature when the leaf petioles become shorter, leaf blades smaller, older leaves start dying, young leaves regenerate slowly and corms are well formed (Fig. 23.3). Farmers consider taro to be mature when the corms are observed to be reduced in diameter near the petiole and form a 'bottleneck' shape. The growth period from planting to harvesting varies from 5 to more than 12 months, depending on the genotype and the environment. Very early varieties, which can be harvested 5 months after planting, are rarely grown. Their yield generally is very low, but they have several advantages. They occupy the field for a shorter period of time and they may escape drought, viral diseases and taro beetle attack. Very late varieties are also rarely grown, especially in areas close to the equator. They may have high yield and good eating quality, but they occupy the field almost all year, sometimes even longer.

Taro plants are harvested by pulling strongly on the petiole or uplifting the corm gently with a flat-bladed fork. The roots are then cut around the plant with a bushknife and trimmed off the corm gently to obtain a smooth surface. The petiole is cut approximately 30 cm above the corm to ease their handling and to prevent desiccation.

Cocoyam is ready for harvesting after 6–12 months, depending on variety, but can stay in the soil for up to 20 months and can be harvested when needed. Harvesting can be piecemeal, removing cormels of a satisfactory size while leaving others to develop further. The cormels are usually stored in traditional coconut leaf baskets in well-shaded and ventilated conditions. The influence of harvesting time on the yield, protein and ash components of cocoyam and taro has been studied in Nigeria. The per cent protein content in the leaves, cormels and corms is highest at 12 WAP, whereas ash content increases with delayed harvesting. Cormel and corm yields obtained at 24 WAP are not significantly different from those obtained at 36 WAP, when bulking is supposed to be at the optimum (Ndon *et al.*, 2003).

When labour costs are high, it is possible to mechanize the harvest of upland taro. When plants are established on loose and light soil, in lines suitably spaced, a tractor-drawn harvester of the type used for carrots is used. It consists of an adjustable flat blade, 1.2–1.5 m wide, which cuts the roots at a depth of about 20 cm. Labourers walking behind the tractor can then pull the plants up gently without effort. The plants are pruned by hand, leaving about 30 cm of the plant top, and the leaves are left in the field. This type of mechanized harvest has been tested successfully in New Caledonia and is quite efficient if the plants have not been planted too deep. Damage of the corms is minimal and the cost is offset by the reduction in labour costs (Lebot, 1997).

This page intentionally left blank

27

Pests and Diseases

Aroids are fairly robust plants with leathery leaves, which are difficult for most insects to chew. As a group, they are often left to grow without pesticides and still manage to produce significant yields. There are, however, several pests and diseases which deserve attention, especially in intensive, commercial production (Table 27.1).

PESTS

The most important taro pests are the taro beetles, the taro leafhopper, aphids, the taro hawkmoth and the apple snails.

The taro beetles (*Papuana* spp. and *Eucopidocaulus* spp., order: Coleoptera, family: Scarabaeidae) are one of the most serious production constraints to taro yield and quality throughout Melanesia. These beetles are shiny black scarab beetles with a size ranging from 1.5 to 2.5 cm. There are about 19 different species, but seven have been reported as major pests of taro. Their centre of origin is the large island of New Guinea. The most important species are *P. woodlarkiana*, *P. biroi*, *P. ininermis*, *P. huebneri*, *P. szentivanyi*, *P. trinodosa* and *P. uninodis*. The males of most of these species have horns on their heads. The beetles breed in the soil and their life cycle lasts from 19 (*P. uninodis*) to 28 weeks (*P. huebneri* and *P. woodlarkiana*). The adults burrow into corms, making smooth-sided tunnels the diameter of their body width. These species can also damage the other aroids, giant taro, cocoyam, elephant foot yam and swamp taro, as well as yam tubers and banana corms (Aloalii *et al.*, 1993).

Control methods include the application of wood ash, flooding, trap cropping, mulching, intercropping, repellent plants, time of planting and biological control. In the Solomon Islands, farmers apply wood ash at the bottom of the planting holes and observe that this simple technique reduces damage. Trapping plants such as *Saccharum spontaneum* and bananas planted around taro plots are effective in reducing the population. Direct planting into dried mulch from a ground cover in the preceding fallow of 1 or 2 years is a

Table 27.1. Major pests and diseases of aroids.

Pest or pathogen	Aroid	Africa	America	Asia–Pacific
Insects:				
Papuana spp.	Taro, cocoyam			x
Tarophagus proserpina	Taro			x
Aphis gossypii	Taro, cocoyam	x	x	x
Patchiella reaumuri	Taro			x
Hippotion celerio	Taro			x
Snails:				
Achatina fulica	Taro, cocoyam	x	x	x
Pomacea canaliculata	Taro			x
Nematodes:				
Aphelenchoides spp.	Taro			x
Helicotylenchus spp.	Taro			x
Hirschmanniella miticausa	Taro			x
Longidorus sylphus	Taro			x
Pratylenchus spp.	All	x	x	x
Rotylenchulus reniformis	All	x	x	x
Meloidogyne spp.	All	x	x	x
Longydarus sylphus	Taro			x
Tylenchorhynchus spp.	Taro			x
Bacteria:				
Erwinia carotovora	Taro, cocoyam	x	x	x
Fungi:				
Phytophthora colocasiae	Taro	x	x	x
Pythium myriotylum	Taro, cocoyam	x	x	x
Cladosporium colocasiae	Taro			x
Sclerotium rolfsii	Taro			x
Phyllosticta colocasiophila	Taro			x
Viruses:				
Dasheen mosaic virus (DsMV)	All	x	x	x
Colocasia bobone disease virus (CBDV)	Taro			PNG + Sol.
Taro bacilliform virus (TaBV)	Taro			Pacific only
Taro vein chlorosis virus (TaVCV)	Taro			Pacific only
Taro reovirus (TaRV)	Taro			Pacific only

Note: PNG = Papua New Guinea; Sol. = the Solomons. Source: Wang (1982) and Ooka (1997).

very efficient means of keeping the population at very low levels. Papuana beetles cannot live in plots shaded by thick vines (e.g. *Glycine*, *Mucuna* or *Puearia* spp.). In Vanuatu, Melanesia, farmers notice that new plots after fallows covered by the weedy vine *Merremia peltata* are usually immune to taro beetles, for the same reason. Chemical control has been reported feasible in PNG. Application of Lindane granules (6% of a.i.) is recommended, applied in

the planting hole at 1 kg/ha, just before planting and again 3 months later. For the export of fresh corms, fumigation with methyl bromide is recommended (Macfarlane, 1987) (Table 27.2).

The fungus *Metarhizium anisopliae* var. *anisopliae* has been shown to be an effective pathogen on larvae and adults, but not on the eggs. When the fungus is applied on its own, it can reduce beetle damage significantly and can remain effective for 3 years after release into the soil (Masamdu and Simbiken, 2004). However, maintaining the level of the pathogen may require constant breeding and re-inoculation of the soil. The practicalities of such a method are not yet directly transferable to growers.

Resistance to taro beetle is one of the most difficult objectives for taro breeders. So far, no resistant genotypes have been identified. Because taro beetle damage is underground, breeders in PNG are trying to solve this problem indirectly by breeding for corms which develop above ground. Taros with corms permanently above ground frequently can be found among wild taro populations. This character can be transferred easily into cultivars, but it is too soon to predict the outcome because there are also several problems associated with this trait. Plants are physically unstable, the wild blood can affect eating quality seriously and beetle response to aboveground corm is unknown. They may have no other choice but to feed on these corms.

Taro leafhopper (*Tarophagus proserpina*, order: Homoptera, family: Delphacidae) is one of the main vectors of the Alomae–Bobone virus complex. The adults and nymphs can also cause severe damage by sucking sap from leaf blades and petioles.

Aphids (*Aphis* spp., *Pemphigus* sp., order: Homoptera, family: Aphididae) are the vectors of the various viral diseases which affect taro. There are, however, significant differences in sensitivity between genotypes, and breeders are planning to breed for resistance. In Hawaii, 50 cultivars of taro, and one of cocoyam, were screened for their tolerance to *A. gossypii* Glover. The life history data for *A. gossypii* were collected by assessing survivorship and fecundity of aphids caged on taro leaves in the field. Significant differences in aphid reproductive rate and longevity were observed among the taro cultivars. A choice test where *A. gossypii* aphids were offered four leaf discs excised from different taro cultivars has also been conducted in the laboratory and field observations

Table 27.2. Methyl bromide fumigation rates for destroying papuana beetles in taro corms.

Fumigation (g/m^3)	Duration (h)	Temperature (°C)
40	3	16–20
32	3	21–26
24	3	27–32

Source: Macfarlane (1987).

of aphid abundance on taro cultivars were carried out to corroborate laboratory experiments. It appears that cultivars such as 'Iliuaua', 'Rumung Mary', 'Maria', 'Ketan 36' and 'Agaga' are the most resistant in terms of reducing aphid fecundity, whereas the 'Purple', 'TC-83001' and 'Putih 24' cultivars are least preferred in aphid choice tests. The cocoyam genotype consistently exhibited strong aphid resistance. The resistant taro cultivars may form the basis of breeding programmes seeking to combine aphid resistance with other desirable traits (Coleson and Miller, 2005).

The taro root aphid (*Patchiella reaumuri*) is a serious pest of upland taro. It sucks the sap from taro roots and greatly reduces plant vigour, yield and corm quality. This species is yellow (unlike the typical bright light-green colour of *Aphis* spp.). The first signs of infestation appear as white mould on the fibrous roots. This aphid is not a problem under wetland conditions. The aphid population is often associated with ants, which probably move them around. In Hawaii, up to 75% damage of plants has been reported and usually coincides with drought conditions. No insecticide is truly efficient and spread occurs mainly by planting infested head-setts or suckers. When infestation occurs, destruction of the crop is recommended (Sato *et al.*, 1990).

The hawkmoth (*Hippotion celerio* L., order: Lepidoptera, family: Sphingidae) is an occasional pest of taro which can cause severe defoliation.

In Hawaii, the impact of apple snails on taro yields can be a very serious problem on wetland crops. There are numerous species in the family Ampullariidae and all are freshwater snails which are found throughout the tropics. Four species have been recorded in Hawaii: *Pomacea canaliculata*, *P. bridgesii*, *P. paludosa* and *P. conica*. The first species is the most devastating apple snail. The snails cause considerable damage by feeding on all parts of the plant. Wounds from feeding provide infection points for a variety of pathogens. These snails can measure up to 7.5 cm in diameter and are vigorous feeders. Hand picking the snail from taro patches and destroying their eggs is possible but Cayuga ducks are very effective predators and can be introduced if the snail is a problem.

NEMATODES

There are several species of nematodes which may cause significant yield losses (i.e. *Aphelenchoides* spp., *Helicotylenchus* spp., *Hirschmanniella miticausa*, *Longidorus sylphus*, *M. javanica*, *M. incognita*, *Pratylenchus* spp., *R. reniformis* and *Tylenchorhynchus* spp.) (Ooka, 1997). The most serious is probably *H. miticausa*, which causes *mitimiti* disease. It is spread in the western part of the Solomon Islands and the north-eastern part of PNG. Local cultivars are highly susceptible to the disease. Resistant wild genotypes were used in the Solomon Islands' taro breeding programme in the 1980s and a number of resistant hybrids were produced (Patel *et al.*, 1984), but their level of calcium oxalate was too high for

consumption. They needed to be improved further for yield and eating quality, and to be tested in areas affected by the disease. If the resistance to corm-infecting nematodes is caused by extremely high concentrations of calcium oxalate or other undesirable chemical substances, the resistant genotypes will not be edible. Before a breeding strategy is initiated, it would be necessary to know why some of the wild genotypes are resistant, how this resistance is inherited and whether the resistance is related to low yield and poor eating quality.

Root-knot nematodes (*Meloidogyne* spp.) can damage upland taro when the crop is planted in infested soils. Their attacks are characterized by galls on the root and swelling and malformations on the corm. Severe attacks result in chlorotic and stunted taro plants.

BACTERIA

Bacterial soft rot is a disease caused by *E. carotovora* and *E. chrysanthemi*. This rot produces a strong smelling, watery soft rot, ranging in colour from white to dark blue. Wounds and bruises caused by various pests, insects or snails are the most frequent infection sites for this disease. The control measures include the careful handling of corms to minimize injuries, air-drying and storage of healthy corms at low temperatures.

FUNGI

Taro leaf blight ('Phytophthora' leaf blight) is caused by the fungus *P. colocasiae*. The disease is present in Africa, South-east Asia and the Pacific (Misra and Chowdhury, 1997; Fullerton and Tyson, 2004). 'Phytophthora' blight is considered to be the most destructive disease of taro leaves. It reduces leaf area available for photosynthesis, as well as the number of functioning leaves (Cox and Kasimani, 1990a, b). The first symptoms of infection are small, circular water-soaked spots. When conditions are favourable for the pathogen and when the plants are highly susceptible, the spots enlarge quickly and their shapes become irregular lesions with a yellow margin. The first spots can initiate secondary infections which lead to a rapid colonization and destruction of the entire leaf. The disease can also affect leaf petioles, peduncles of inflorescences, spathe and spadix.

Epidemics usually occur during rainy, overcast weather with very high relative humidity, when night temperatures are relatively low (20–24°C) and day temperatures are not high (25–28°C). Under such optimal conditions, the pathogen spreads very rapidly and within a week nearly all susceptible plants in a field may be heavily affected. The pathogen spreads more easily and quickly in densely planted plots.

Leaves are infected either through direct or indirect germination of the sporangia or zoospores. Spores are spread by wind-driven rain and dew to other parts of the same leaf, from leaf to leaf, from plant to plant and from plot to plot. Over longer distances, the pathogen is spread mainly through infected plant material (infected leaves, corms, planting material and plant debris). The disease survives as a mycelium in the soil and in affected corms and plant debris.

Leaf blight can be controlled with chemicals, by various cultural practices (e.g. use of clean planting material, crop rotation, wide spacing, interplanting with other crops, removal of affected leaves and isolation of unaffected plots) and breeding resistant genotypes, as well as preventing the spread of the disease to countries at present free of it. Sanitization is effective during the endemic phase and regular removal of the infected leaves has a marked effect on the severity of the incidence of the disease (Fullerton and Tyson, 2004). In India, the severity of infection has been shown to be reduced significantly when planting was done later in the season (in July rather than in May), but yields were higher in May, despite the severity of the disease. This was thought to be due to seasonal factors. May planting with early maturing types can escape much yield loss. When irrigation is available, planting in February or March can escape the disease, as the crop would be harvested before the climax of the epidemy (Misra and Chowdhury, 1997) (Table 27.3).

By adjusting the planting dates accordingly and by using tolerant cultivars, it appears possible to manage taro leaf blight. Among the various fungicides tested, Metalaxyl (Ridomil at 0.05% a.i.) is the most effective, followed by Mancozeb (e.g. Dithane, 0.05% a.i.), both sprayed fortnightly. The efficacy of fungicides is, of course, dependent on the severity of the disease at the time and the prevailing weather conditions.

Resistant cultivars are probably the most sustainable control measure. *Phytophthora colocasiae* is a diploid and heterothallic species. Its sexual reproduction allows genetic recombinations between complementary sexual strains, A1 and A2, and can induce high genetic variability within the species.

Table 27.3. Effect of the date of planting on the incidence of leaf blight on yield.

Plantation dates	% plants infected	% leaf area damaged	% disease severity	Corm yield (t/ha)
1 May	88.8	42.3	54.8	9.0
15 May	79.7	35.3	48.2	8.6
1 June	68.4	31.0	32.2	5.7
15 June	67.8	29.5	31.9	4.6
1 July	50.8	20.7	19.1	2.7
15 July	39.1	13.2	15.7	1.6

Source: Misra and Chowdhury (1997).

Intraspecific variability of this fungus has been studied in several South-east Asian and Pacific countries. Polymorphism of the species was assessed by using isozymes from 94 isolates collected on susceptible and resistant accessions in five countries. None of the studied isolates were present in more than one country and all had unique fingerprints, indicating tremendous genetic variation. Although differences in pathogenicity are not yet established, different *P. colocasiae* genotypes are likely to recombine and evolve rapidly since this species is heterothallic (Lebot *et al.*, 2003). Limiting its spread within countries may be important for preventing an increase in its virulence through broadening of its genetic base.

The resistance system to taro leaf blight cannot be considered as simple and uniform. Genetic studies conducted in PNG indicate that resistance reactions can be highly variable. In addition to strong and distinct resistance reactions, there are weaker, not clearly distinct ones which probably involve minor genes (Ivancic *et al.*, 1996). Breeders in PNG regularly prepare spore suspensions which are used for spraying plants. For breeding purposes, spore suspensions can be prepared in many different ways but the simplest is to collect 20–100 leaves affected by the pathogen, place them in a transparent plastic bag, together with moistened absorbent tissue paper to maintain high humidity and leave the bag in a dark room at 20–22°C. After 24–36 h, the leaves are transferred to a container of clean water (3 l water for 1 kg leaves), squeezed and filtered. Such filtered suspension is then used as inoculum for spraying taros and screening large progenies (Ivancic *et al.*, 1996).

Resistant traditional cultivars exist in the germplasm collections of several countries where leaf blight has been present for a long time; i.e. in the Philippines (PH), Vietnam (VN), Thailand (TH), Malaysia (MY), Indonesia (ID) and Papua New Guinea (PNG), but most cultivars from Vanuatu (VU), as for other Pacific Islands, are known to be susceptible (Lebot *et al.*, 2003) (Table 27.4).

Table 27.4. Geographical distribution of resistance to leaf blight caused by *Phytophthora colocasiae* (percentages of accessions).

Country	PH	VN	TH	MY	ID	PNG	VU*	Total
No. of accessions	172	350	300	135	685	278	378	2298
Very susceptible	4.1	0	0	0	0.15	0	–	0.35
Susceptible	21.5	1.7	95.7	0	65.4	100	–	45.8
Tolerant	73.8	34.9	0.3	4.4	32.3	0	–	20.8
Resistant	0.6	41.1	5	43.7	1.5	0	–	10
Immune	0	22.3	0	51.9	0	0	–	6.4
Not determined	–	–	–	–	0.7	–	100	16.7

Note: *The taro germplasm collection of Vanuatu could not be evaluated due to the absence of leaf blight. Source: Lebot *et al.* (2003).

Quite a few of these resistant cultivars have been tissue cultured, indexed for viruses and distributed by TANSAO to various countries. They are presently being used in breeding programmes to improve resistance (Lebot *et al.*, 2004). Some of the breeding lines from TANSAO have been tested in American Samoa for resistance to taro leaf blight using a detached-leaf bioassay and field trials. Mean lesion diameters from bioassays appear highly correlated with field estimates of the number of healthy leaves per plant and corm weight. Taro resistance increased with plant age and the second-oldest leaf was found to be more resistant than the third-oldest leaf. This bioassay appears to be a quick, space-saving and effective method of screening taro lines for post-penetration resistance to *P. colocasiae*. It also provides a standardized method of evaluating host–pathogen interactions under controlled conditions and this should be helpful to breeders when evaluating genotypes (Brooks, 2008).

In India, another test was evaluated. Some 172 taro accessions were screened for taro leaf blight using cell wall glucan elicitor and spore suspension cultures on leaf discs. Based on the results, 14 lines showed resistance to leaf blight. Those 14 lines, along with two susceptible lines, were then selected for further evaluation under *in vitro* conditions, when only three lines showed resistance. Three accessions, 'Duradim', 'DP-25' and 'Jhankri', have been isolated for breeding programmes (Sahoo *et al.*, 2005). Subsequently, an assessment of expression of antioxidative enzymes and their isozymes was done in 30-day-old *ex vitro* raised plants of these three resistant and one susceptible ('N-118') genotypes. Increase in antioxidative enzymes was higher (67–92%) in the resistant genotypes than in the susceptible one (21–29%). Induction and increased activity of particular isozymes against infection of *P. colocasiae* in the resistant genotypes indicates a potential linkage and these might also be useful criteria to use when breeding for resistance (Sahoo *et al.*, 2007a, b).

Pythium corm and root rot is another serious fungal disease of taro which occurs mostly in irrigated crops, but also under upland conditions. It also attacks cocoyam and giant taro. The following species have been recovered from diseased plants: *P. aphanidermatum*, *P. carolinianum*, *P. graminicolum*, *P. irregulare*, *P. middletonii*, *P. myriotylum*, *P. splendens* and *P. vexans*, but *P. myriotylum* is found most often. The first symptom is a slowing of leaf production rate due to the restriction of supply to the leaves when the roots are attacked. Infected plants are pulled out of the soil more easily than healthy ones because of the rotted roots. Root decay then leads to corm rot, especially when taro is grown in wetland conditions. If the disease develops, the main plant is killed but the suckers remain alive. Outbreaks depend on the presence of the fungus, the susceptibility of cultivars, the soil moisture and the high soil or water temperature. Yield loss can range from 10 to 100% but is always less in upland conditions (Claus and Lebot, 1999).

Once the soil has been contaminated, the control becomes difficult as the fungus can survive in plant debris. The solarization of the ponds (complete drainage and exposure to full sun) for several weeks helps to reduce the

inoculum. It is recommended that taro is not replanted in the same plot once *Pythium* has been found. Cover crops established during the fallow also contribute to its reduction. So far, no cultivars seem to be resistant to root rot. When the soil is heavily infested, the severity of attack can be reduced by incorporating Captan (50% wet product at a rate of 112 kg/ha) in the planting hole, before planting. Metalaxyl (Ridomil) may also be useful. The head-setts should be treated before planting and dipped into a solution of Captan (4 g/l) or in Ridomil (1 g/l). This precaution provides protection for a few days after planting.

P. splendens also causes postharvest corm decay. Control has been achieved when the corms were dipped in a mixture of benomyl and Ridomil (1 g/l) (Jackson, 1985).

In Cameroon, cocoyam root rot disease (CRRD) caused by *P. myriotylum* is the most serious constraint to production. High temperatures (30–40°C) favour its development with a maximum growth of the mycelia at around 33°C (Nzietchueng, 1988b). A comparative analysis of suppressive and conducive soil properties was performed around Mount Cameroon to identify soil variables that may contribute to soil suppressiveness of *P. myriotylum*. Soil chemical analysis results showed that organic matter content and Ca, K, Mg and N contents are higher in andosols than in ferralsols. These variables are correlated negatively with disease severity. By contrast, sand and clay, which are higher in ferralsols than in andosols, are related positively to disease severity. High organic matter probably mediates *P. myriotylum* suppression in andosols by improving soil structure, increasing soil nutrient content and sustaining microbial activity (Adiobo *et al.*, 2007).

Breeding for resistance to *P. myriotylum* is the approach used in Cameroon and a test has been developed to assess genotypes. After inoculation, there is an increase in peroxidase activity in the roots of tolerant genotypes. It is supposed that electrolyte leakage in infected roots can be used to assess tolerance and susceptibility in different genotypes and that tolerance to the root rot disease may be associated with an increased peroxidase activity in the roots. This might help breeders to screen large progenies and capture useful genes (Nyochembeng *et al.*, 2007).

Phyllosticta leaf spot (*P. colocasiophila*) occurs following cloudy and rainy weather for 2–3 weeks accompanied by cool temperatures. The spots on the leaves measure between 8 and 25 mm and are oval or irregular in shape. This fungus is considered not to be economically important and the spots usually disappear with warm temperature and dry weather.

Cladosporium leaf spot (*C. colocasiae*) frequently appears during the cool months of the year and can be particularly spectacular in New Caledonia during winter (May to September). The fungus attacks wetland and upland taro and occurs mostly on older leaves. The spots are yellow and round and tend to dry on the lamina edges. This disease has limited economic importance but its incidence on yields has not yet been assessed accurately.

Sclerotium or southern blight (*S. rolfsii*) is sometimes a problem in dryland taro, especially in over-mature corms. The fungus persists in the soil, causing outbreaks of the disease in warm and wet weather. Affected plants are stunted and the corms rot at their base. Sanitization by pruning or removal of old leaves is recommended.

VIRUSES

The most common viral disease of taro is dasheen mosaic virus (DsMV), which is distributed worldwide. It affects taro and several other aroid species (i.e. *Caladium bicolor*, *Alocasia*, *Xanthosoma* and *Dieffenbachia* spp.). In the Pacific and South-east Asia, DsMV is not considered a dangerous disease but it can reduce the corm yield per plant by up to 60% by reducing its photosynthetic rate. The main vectors of dispersal are various aphids but the disease can also be spread by planting materials. The leaves of affected plants are characterized by a feathery mosaic pattern along the veins. A commercially available ELISA kit exists but its cost is a constraint to growers. Roguing is the appropriate measure.

Although cocoyam is an important export crop in Nicaragua, the total planted area and yield have decreased significantly during the past few years due to diseases disseminated with planting materials. A study conducted to evaluate the re-infection of DsMV and its effect on yield has been conducted with virus-free and virus-infected *in vitro* plants from three genotypes, which were then established in a non-traditional production area. Regardless of genotype, the virus-free plants produced a larger number of cormels that were heavier and longer than those of infected plants. This resulted in a higher yield from virus-free plants (18.2 t/ha) compared with infected plants (13.6 t/ha). Between 60 and 90% of the virus-free plants, depending on genotype, were infected with DsMV 7 months after planting. *Aphis gossypii* was the only aphid observed in the field trial and was therefore probably the vector responsible for the transmission of the virus (Reyes *et al*., 2006).

The most dangerous viral taro disease is *Colocasia bobone* disease virus (CBDV), which is widespread in the Solomon Islands (Malaita, San Cristobal, Choiseul Islands) and in PNG (mainland and almost all bigger islands). When the taro bacilliform virus (TaBV) combines with CBDV, it causes Alomae disease. The symptoms are crinkling of the young leaves, which fail to develop, shortening of the petioles and thickening of veins and laminas. Plants are often stunted and then die. On *Alocasia*, the symptoms are very similar. CBDV particles are spread through planting material and transmitted from plant to plant by insect vectors. The main vectors are taro leafhopper (*T. proserpina*), aphids and mealy bugs. Fortunately, there are varied levels of tolerance to this disease. Wild taros from areas heavily affected by the virus complex appear to have higher tolerance to the disease (Ivancic *et al*., 1993). The breeding for resistance and tolerance to CBDV conducted in the Solomon Islands and in PNG has been based

on the population approach, aimed at accumulating resistance genes. The genotypes with higher tolerance (mostly wild or primitive materials) were intercrossed and their offspring generation was tested in both screenhouse and field conditions. The vectors for the virus transmission were various aphids and taro leaf hoppers. The first generations of young plants were heavily affected by the virus complex but the differences appeared in their recovery. Fully recovered plants were considered to have at least some tolerance (Ivancic *et al.*, 1993).

A putative rhabdovirus, taro vein chlorosis virus (TaVCV), causes a distinctive vein chlorosis and is found in Fiji, Vanuatu, New Guinea and the Philippines, but has no economic importance. Sensitive and reliable diagnostics for DsMV, TaBV, TaVCV and a recently identified virus of unknown etiology, the taro reovirus (TaRV), have been developed (Harding *et al.*, 2004).

INTEGRATED PEST AND DISEASE MANAGEMENT

In traditional agroforestry systems, a number of taro varieties can be found growing in the same plot and, in such situations, outbreaks of pests and diseases rarely occur. When virus symptoms appear, the only remedy is to uproot the infected plants and to destroy them. Continuous cropping is avoided by farmers as they know that it tends to develop *P. colocasiae* and *P. myriotylum* inoculums. The same is true for *Papuana* spp. population build-up (Masamdu and Simbiken, 2004). Crop rotations, fallow management with appropriate cover crops and proper planting material management are the essential compounds of IPM (Lebot, 1992). Special emphasis is given to the natural predators and parasites in traditional agrosystems, rather than the use of pesticides. As several pests and diseases are fairly limited in geographical range, strict quarantine is the rule for international exchanges and the movement of germplasm has to follow FAO guidelines and go through a lab, a transit centre, where selected genotypes are put *in vitro* and exchanged internationally, *in vitro*.

This page intentionally left blank

28

Postharvest Quality and Marketing

Taro and other aroids have much potential in terms of fresh and processed products and are, in fact, industries with considerable expansion potential. Taro is already processed and prepared into many consumable and diverse forms. Corms may be roasted, baked, boiled, steamed or fried. They may be processed into fresh or fermented paste, canned corm portions, flour, beverage, chips and flakes. The leaves, petioles, stolons and inflorescences are also consumed and are steamed or boiled.

CHEMICAL COMPOSITION

Aroid cultivars have similar corm compositions. The edible taro leaves are very nutritional and are a good source of proteins and vitamins (Bradbury and Holloway, 1988) (Table 28.1).

Aroids are acrid plants. Depending on variety, they may contain oxalic acid deposited in plant tissues as crystals of calcium oxalate (Englberger *et al.*, 2003). These crystals also occur in many other botanical families. When in sufficient quantity, calcium oxalate crystals cause mechanical abrasion of the mucous membranes. When a genotype rich in these is ingested, the mouth, tongue and throat are covered with needles and a very unpleasant burning sensation occurs. In aroids, these crystals occur as needle-shaped sharp raphides and are a virulent defence strategy against herbivores. Because the calcium oxalate content of non-acrid and acrid genotypes is often similar, it has been suggested that there is another, unknown compound causing the acridity. Some cultivars are not acrid and can be eaten almost raw. This is the case of *Lampung hitam* cultivated in Bogor, Indonesia. Others are not acrid when baked but are acrid when boiled. The problem is serious with giant taro (*A. macrorrhyza*) and although only a few varieties are edible, it is also a major concern for taro breeders. Surprisingly, when crossing two non-acrid parents, which most varieties are, one will discover an impressive proportion of acrid hybrids in the

Table 28.1. Composition of edible corms and leaves of major aroids.

	Taro leaves	Taro corm	Cocoyam cormels	Giant taro corm	Swamp taro corm	Elephant yam corm
Moisture %	85.4	69.1	67.1	70.3	75.4	77.8
Energy (kJ/100)	114	480	521	449	348	324
Protein %	4.2	1.12	1.55	2.15	0.51	2.24
Starch %	0.07	24.5	27.6	21.5	16.8	16.6
Sugar %	0.92	1.01	0.42	0.96	1.03	0.14
Dietary fibre %	5.03	1.46	0.99	1.85	2.78	1.45
Fat %	0.61	0.10	0.11	0.10	0.16	0.06
Ash %	1.58	0.87	1.04	0.92	0.67	1.36
Total oxalate (mg/100 g)	426	65	–	38	299	288
Calcium oxalate (mg/100 g)	400	43	–	–	399	382
Minerals (mg/100 g):						
Ca	182	32	8.5	38	182	127
P	61	70	53	44	16	67
Mg	90	115	27	52	21	47
Na	7.9	1.8	6.6	30	72	4.1
K	487	448	530	267	67	622
S	24	8.5	7.9	11.9	3.3	11.8
Fe	0.62	0.48	0.4	0.83	0.61	0.51
Cu	0.15	0.20	0.19	0.07	0.11	0.18
Zn	0.66	3.6	0.52	1.51	2.3	1.05
Mn	4.5	0.34	0.17	0.62	0.69	0.31
Al	1.81	0.39	0.53	0.36	1.36	0.41
B	0.36	0.09	0.09	0.10	0.09	0.17
Vitamins (mg/100 g):						
Vitamin A	–	0.007	0.005	0	0.005	0.15
Thiamin	–	0.032	0.024	0.021	0.025	0.05
Riboflavin	–	0.025	0.032	0.018	0.019	0.07
Nicotinic acid	–	0.760	0.80	0.48	0.46	0.7
Pot. nic. acid = Trp 60	1.0	0.19	0.33	0.46	0.07	–
Vitamin C	–	15	13.6	17.0	15.7	–
Limiting amino acids:						
First	Leu 57	Lys 66	Lys 57	Mys 64	Lyd 70	–
Second	Lys 62	Thr 94	Leu 81	His 91	Trp 70	–
Trypsin inhibitor (TIU/g)	0	13.6	0.3	269	2.5	–

Source: Bradbury and Holloway (1988).

progeny. This can be a constraint when breeding, especially if programme staff fail to volunteer for palatability tests. The problem is quite complex.

Chemically, there is also significant variation of the major nutritional compounds between dasheen-type taro cultivars. These differences are controlled genetically and are well known from consumers and traders. Some experiments have been conducted in order to understand the relationships between the chemical composition and consumer preference. The results of the physico-chemical analyses of 31 taro cultivars selected for their taste quality, planted and harvested the same day in the same plot, indicate that, except for the temperatures of gelatinization, all characteristics (minerals, lipids, proteins, amylose, DM and different sugars) are very variable (Lebot *et al.*, 2004) (Table 28.2).

Most cultivars rated as 'very good', have high DM, amylose and starch contents and low minerals and sugars. It is likely that selection for these traits will be effective for improving chemotypes. Suitable chemotypes determine the adoption of improved genotypes by local populations. The wrong choice of a cultivar can cause a serious constraint to the development of taro for food processing purposes. Starch content varies less than do the other compounds but, like other important compounds, starch content is determined as a percentage of the DM and is correlated to it.

For eddoe types, there is also remarkable variation between cultivars in India. The characterization of nutrient and antinutrient (trypsin inhibitor, total oxalate, soluble oxalate and calcium oxalate) composition of cormels of 20 cultivars has been determined. The fat, sugar, starch and crude protein content in fresh cormels vary from 0.08 to 0.98, 0.2 to 1.5, 7.5 to 24.8 and 1.0 to 2.8%, respectively. Cormels provide 166–519 kJ energy/100 g fresh weight. These cormels are a good source of minerals, including potassium, calcium, phosphorus and iron and a moderate source of zinc and copper. The contents of the trypsin inhibitor, total oxalate, soluble oxalate and calcium oxalate vary from 52 to 1020 trypsin inhibitory units/g, 8 to 130, 4 to 89 and 4 to 93 mg/100 g, respectively (Sen *et al.*, 2005).

Table 28.2. Physico-chemical characteristics of the corms of 31 selected taro cultivars.

	Dry matter (%)	Starch (% DM)	Amylose (% starch)	Proteins (% DM)	Minerals (% DM)	Lipids (% DM)	Glucose (% DM)	Fructose (% DM)	Sacchar. (% DM)	Maltose (% DM)
Minimum	12.5	36.6	3.4	3.7	1.6	0.5	0.1	0.1	0.8	0.0
Maximum	55.9	77.9	12	15.8	6.6	1.5	2.7	2.6	8.7	0.2
Mean	27.9	65.5	8.2	6.5	3.4	0.7	0.6	0.6	3.4	0.1
Coeff. var. %	38.8	14.2	25.0	34.9	31.2	37.1	90.9	97.6	56.7	40.5

Source: Lebot *et al.* (2004).

PHYSIOLOGICAL DISORDERS IN FRESHLY STORED CORMS

Dormancy in aroids has not been well studied and varieties from higher, temperate latitudes are known to have a longer dormancy than equatorial and tropical ones. Taro corm and cocoyam cormels have respiratory rates of approximately 22 and 41 ml CO_2, respectively, when they are stored between 27 and 32°C. These respiratory rates increase with temperature and are lower at temperatures between 10 and 15°C, which are adequate for storing fresh corms and cormels (Ravi and Aked, 1996). Internal browning may occur when fresh corms of taro are preserved over 10 days at 4°C, although this phenomenon varies greatly with varieties. Fresh corms and cormels, peeled, frozen and packed in plastic film as 100–200 g portions, or slices or French fries, show no chill injury when they are defrosted.

MARKETING AND QUALITY STANDARDS

The markets are linked strongly to cultural preferences and each country has its preferred varieties. However, there is a considerable market potential if product diversification matches the changing lifestyles of consumers. The present markets for fresh corms and cormels are mostly the ethnic markets in New Zealand, Australia, the USA and the EU. The Dominican Republic, Costa Rica, Nicaragua and others supply the US market and cocoyam production in Florida cannot satisfy demand because of the high cost of labour. The Californian market has good potential for Pacific Island countries willing to diversify their production. Taro tends to sell at a higher price than other root crops. Therefore, the quality requirements have to be enforced throughout the production chain to ensure that high quality reaches the consumer (Brown, 1995). The common grading standards for fresh corms are:

- Free from excess soil, softness and decay.
- Free from bruises and deep cuts.
- Spherical to round shape.
- Free from major abnormal deformities.
- Removal of all roots.
- Approximately 5 cm of petiole left attached to the corm.
- No double tops.

The sizes found in most markets are 1–2 kg and 2–3 kg. The best size, for packaging and for consumers, is 1–2 kg. The internal flesh colour ranges from creamy to pink and colour preference is influenced strongly by ethnic background. For example, the Samoan community in New Zealand prefers pink-fleshed taros. New Zealand imports yearly about 7000 t dasheen-type taro and the Polynesian population there is expected to double over the next 20 years.

Australia imports about 3000 t but is moving very rapidly towards self-sufficiency. China supplies about 90% of the estimated total Japanese imports, equivalent to 100,000 t fresh eddoe-type taro annually.

Because of the high moisture content of the corms, mould and disease can develop easily in improperly prepared containers and, on arrival, such containers will create quarantine problems. Some countries require fumigation treatments with methyl bromide to be conducted at the exporter's expense.

Although taro corms can take rather rough handling, improper post-harvest handling reduces shelf life by causing numerous wounds. Just after harvest, the corms are cleaned by hand or with high-pressure water sprays, or both. Excess surface water is dried before the corms are packed to minimize rots during storage. An immediate transfer to cool temperatures, between 10 and 15°C, at 80–90% relative humidity, extends shelf life. The corms are packed either in polypropylene bags or wooden crates with good aeration to reduce corm sweating. Exporters usually pack with approximately 5% extra weight to compensate for corm shrinkage during shipment.

For cocoyam, the basic requirements are the same as taro except that the cormels have to be very uniform in size and shape. Cocoyam is more robust than taro and the cormels may be kept for up to 2 months in well-ventilated warehouses at 10–15°C.

STORAGE METHODS

Aroids are not season-bound and are grown and harvested throughout the year. Cocoyam cormels have a good shelf life at room temperature and can be stored for up to 6 weeks. Taro corms can be stored after harvest in a cool, shaded place at room temperature for up to a month if undamaged and depending on the DM content of the corms. Different storage methods are used for different parts of the plant (Matthews, 2002b) (Table 28.3).

Storage in pit conditions can reduce the incidence of fungal infection but keeps the corms and cormels physiologically active. In southern China, the corms are piled in heaps and covered with soil to prevent rapid decay. The best results are obtained when corm apices are not removed.

After 2 weeks of storage under tropical ambient conditions of 24–29°C with 86–98% relative humidity, there is no significant change in the protein content of taro and cocoyam corms. There is, however, a significant reduction in starch content and an increase in total sugar content. In the Solomon Islands, experiments have shown that without any chemical treatment, taro corms survive for up to 1 month if kept in polyethylene bags, retaining acceptable taste and texture, although roots and leaves were observed to grow. Dipping corms in 1% sodium hypochlorite before their storage in polyethylene bags neutralizes the effect of fungi. Such treatment provides protection that might be practical and useful when the corms are transported to distant

Table 28.3. Storage methods for taro.

Storage method	Corms or cormels	Petioles	Leaves	Observations
Ambient temperature	x	x	–	In locations with moderate ambient temperatures (10–20°C), the fresh corms and leaves can be stored for a few weeks
Lower than ambient temperature	x	x	x	In tropical locations, pits, shade or refrigeration are used to preserve fresh corms and leaves
Above ambient temperature	x	–	–	In temperate countries, fresh corms are stored in pits or insulated mounds
Freezing	x	–	x	Apllied to raw or partially processed corms and leaf parts
Dehydration	x	x	x	Solar desiccation of peeled corms and cormel parts
Humidification	x	–	–	To prolong fresh storage by applying moisture to reduce dehydration of living corms
Aeration	x	x	x	Corms stored in pits or mounds are aerated to permit respiration
Airtight containers	x	–	–	Canned sweet dessert from corms, full corms or *poi* in bags
Clean surface	x	x	x	With hand, brush or knives, with or without water
Sterilization of surface	x	–	–	With chemicals or heat (raw corms before or after peeling)
Pickle	–	x	–	Petiole pieces, dipped in a solution with vinegar, salt and sugar
Fermentation after cooking	x	–	–	Involves yeast and lactobacilli aerobic fermentation (e.g. *poi*)
Fermentation before cooking	x	–	–	Initial semi-aerobic compression and wrapping inside pit

Source: Matthews (2002b).

markets (Jackson *et al.*, 1979). For commercial handling, when cleaned, the corms and cormels can be dipped in a fungicide solution to improve postharvest shelf life. Treatment with Captan at 10 and 20 g/l shows a reduction in decay of 30% and 40%, respectively. Benomy at 0.5 and 1 g/l shows a reduction of 20% and 35%, respectively (Ravi *et al.*, 1996).

Refrigeration is used for the commercial transport and export of taro. Corms with 5–10 cm of petioles are shipped to New Zealand from Fiji packed in wooden boxes and placed in containers cooled to approximately 5°C. Such storage reduces the incidence of corm rots to very low levels. When taro corms are sea-freighted in refrigerated containers, they are held in market stores at the same temperature. Such corms can remain in good condition for up to 6

weeks but, once removed from cold storage, they have a relatively short life and start deteriorating after only 2 days at room temperature.

TRADITIONAL PROCESSING TECHNIQUES

Poi is a purplish paste made mainly from taro corms of the cultivar 'Lehua maoli' in Hawaii and is sold nowadays in plastic bags in supermarkets. It is digested easily, is non-allergenic and is an excellent food. Its preparation involves washing, pressure cooking, peeling, trimming, straining out the fibres and mixing with 30% water. Fermentation of the *poi* is rapid, usually within the first 24 h and, during this time, acidity goes from pH 6.3 in the fresh corms to pH 4.5 in the *poi*. This is a naturally fermented product caused by lactic acid-producing bacteria (*Lactococcus lactis*, *Lactobacillus plantarum* and *Leuconostic lactis*). The shelf life of unrefregirated *poi* is only 3–4 days.

In Vanuatu, taro and other aroids are processed into *laplap*. The fresh corms are washed, peeled and grated finely to produce a fresh mass, which may be mixed thoroughly by hand with some coconut milk or left plain. The mass is spread on and wrapped in *H. indica* leaves and then steam cooked in a ground oven of hot stones. The result is a pudding, elastic in the mouth, which is highly appreciated by local consumers. Several experiments have been conducted to speed up the process and to allow the preparation of *laplap* with flours. For all aroid species, the results obtained from blind panel tasting tests show no difference between fresh and flour-based *laplap* (Bourrieau, 2000).

In Nigeria, *achicha* is made from fresh taro corms and cocoyam cormels. These are first boiled for about 3 h until they soften and change in colour, releasing a pleasant aroma. The skin is then peeled off and the flesh cut into slices about 1 cm thick and then sun-dried until they break easily between the fingers. They can be stored in a dry place and used when required (Nwana and Onochie, 1979).

In Ghana, *achu* is a paste traditionally made from taro corms by boiling, peeling and pounding in a mortar to a smooth and homogeneous consistency. Some work has been done to define alternative and rapid methods to evaluate the textural hardness of *achu* reconstituted from taro flour. The functional properties of the taro flours, the sensory analysis of hardness and the acceptability of reconstituted *achu* have been evaluated. The results show significant variation in the functional properties of the flours. The rheological properties of the *achu*, the sensory hardness and overall acceptability are influenced significantly by the variety used (Njintang *et al.*, 2007, 2008).

In Hawaii, some experiments have been conducted to assess the storability of dehydrated taro. Dehydrated slices and flour are preserved in polyethylene bags at 21°C and 38°C. These products undergo changes in acridity, degradation in anthocyanin pigments, increase in moisture content and decrease in catalase activity. After a year, the taste quality of dried samples was

unpleasant. The energy value of such products, however, is comparable to that of rice and wheat. It is therefore supposed that these intermediate products, which could be processed at the farm level, could then be used as raw materials for further processing (Moy et *al.*, 1979; Moy and Nip, 1983).

Taro flour is made from corms which are trimmed, peeled, sliced transversely to 5 mm thick and air-dried at approximately 50°C for 12 h. The dried chips are then ground into flour with a normal hammer mill and can be stored successfully for 1 year. This type of flour is a base for baby food and taro-based bread. There are various improvements depending on location and means available.

Taro is often marketed as fried chips made by women in towns. An important factor is the right choice of a variety that will lose any acridity during frying. Chips nowadays are prepared industrially to satisfy the ever-growing market for such snacks in Honolulu and on the US mainland. Taro is also used to prepare tasty French fries, which are very popular in most countries and can easily substitute frozen Irish potato fries imported by fast food outlets in Asian or African mega cities.

With the availability of microwave ovens, frozen, peeled, pre-cooked and ready-to-use portions of corm preserved under vacuum-sealed plastic films are increasingly attractive to urban dwellers.

Traditionally, *A. konjac* is grown in Japan (and now in Indonesia for export to Japan) to produce *konnyaku*, a gelatinous ingredient present in many Japanese foods. The large corms are sliced, soaked, dried and then pounded with lime and water into gelatinous grey cakes that are formed into vermicelli (*ito konnyaku*) or noodles (*shirataki*) and added to soups and stews. This species is now increasingly cultivated in China for the food industries, but other *Amorphophallus* spp. also have great potential.

Cocoyam or taro leaves are steamed or boiled and are delicacies in Samoa, where they are known as *palusami*, in Hawaii (*laulau*), in India (curry *bhaji*), in the West Indies (*calalou* stew) and in many other countries. Corms and cormels are roasted, boiled, baked, steamed or fried.

In China, taro tops, leaves and petioles, are fermented satisfactorily and ensiled with characteristics similar to other silages used for animal feed. Ensiling preserves taro forage without investing in energy for drying, and acridity is destroyed naturally during the process. The silage contains moderate levels of protein and fibre but has high levels of potassium. Its palatability is good and it meets the feed needs of brood sows that show no reproductive problems and produce good litters.

INDUSTRIAL PROCESSING

Taro starch particle size is extremely small, between 1 and 6.5 microns, compared to 50 for the Irish potato. Taro starch extraction is therefore

laborious and expensive. The starch to alcohol ratio is around 1.8 l of starch to 1 l alcohol and the estimated alcohol yield per tonne of fresh taro corms is approximately 142 l in 10 months (Griffin and Wang, 1983). There are, therefore, more efficient sources for the production of biofuels.

The production of certified allergen-free, taro-based products is constrained by the need to use white-fleshed varieties. The University of Hawaii has conducted an impressive amount of research into taro processing during the past 40 years (Table 28.4). Taro can be very versatile in food applications and is a good carbohydrate source in lactic acid bacteria fermentation. In Hawaii, the costs and sufficient supply of taro are the main constraints in developing commercial products (Huang, A. *et al.*, 2004).

For processing, dryland taro is a cheaper source of raw material than wetland taro in Hawaii and elsewhere. Many new products manufactured in Hawaii use taro paste as an intermediate product. Downstream processing has generated some attractive products, such as a taro non-dairy 'yogurt'. However, to have a pure cultured paste, taro must be pasteurized and cleaned before inoculation. The industrial process involves:

1. Pressurized washing of taro corms with tap water.
2. Peeling with a steam peeler.
3. Soaking overnight in 3% lactic acid solution.
4. Cutting into 5 cm cubes.
5. Second washing with distilled water.
6. Pressure cooking of cubes for 30 min.
7. Cooling in a clean chamber.
8. Grinding with distilled water to obtain a paste.
9. Pasteurizing to a total bacteria count under 100.
10. Cooling down in a clean chamber.

The taro paste is then ready for inoculation. Taro paste is now used to develop taro-based frozen dessert and in bakery filling to replace fat (Huang, A. *et al.*, 2004).

Table 28.4. Taro product development in Hawaii.

	Period from 1970 to 1990	From 1990 to present
Corm source	Wetland taro	Dryland taro
Intermediate form	Dehydrated powder, taro flour	Taro paste, *poi*
Process technology	Spray-drying, freeze-drying	Baking, freezing, cold processing
End products	Pancake mix, drink powder, baby food	Bakery filling, yogurt, frozen dessert
Marketing position	Exporting, distant shipping	Local and tourist market
Outcome	Too expensive to compete	Competitive in niche markets

Source: Huang, A. *et al.* (2004).

For commercial processing, *Amorphophallus* spp. and konjac corms are harvested when 3 years old and weighing about 2 kg, while the domestic markets for fresh corms usually prefer younger, smaller and sweeter corms of about 200–500 g. The corms store well around 10°C and, to prepare konjac flour, they are washed, peeled, sliced and rinsed several times before boiling. The starch settles and is then dried and sieved. To prepare calorie-free mannan (from mannose), the corms are dried quickly and the dried slices are ground and sieved, which leaves the mannan particles intact, and this yellow-grey powder is known as mannan flour (Bown, 2000).

References

Abang, M.M., Winter, S., Green, K.R., Hoffmann, P., Mignouna, H.D. and Wolf, G.A. (2002) Molecular identification of *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* causing yam anthracnose in Nigeria. *Plant Pathology* 51, 63–71.

Abang, M.M., Fagbola, O., Smalla, K. and Winter, S. (2005) Two genetically distinct populations of *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* Penz. Causing anthracnose disease of yam (*Dioscorea* spp.). *Journal of Phytopathology (Berlin)* 153(3), 137–142.

Abang, M.M., Asiedu, R., Hoffmann, P., Wolf, G.A., Mignouna, H.D. and Winters, S. (2006) Pathogenic and genetic variability among *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* isolates from different yam hosts in the agroecological zones in Nigeria. *Journal of Phytopathology (Berlin)* 154(1), 51–61.

Abidin, P., Van, E., Stam, P., Struik, P., Malosetti, M., Mwanga, R., Odongo, B., Hermann, M. and Carey, E. (2005) Adaptation and stability analysis of sweet potato varieties for low-input systems in Uganda. *Plant breeding* 124(5), 491–497.

Abraham, A., Panicker, P.K.S. and Mathew, P.M. (1964) Polyploidy in relation to breeding in tuber crops. *Journal of Indian Botanical Society* 43, 278–283.

Abraham, K. (1998) Occurrence of hexaploid males in *Dioscorea alata* L. *Euphytica* 99, 5–7.

Abraham, K. (2002) Genetic potential of sexually propagated seedlings of greater yam, *Dioscorea alata* L. *Journal of Root Crops* 28(2), 21–25.

Abraham, K. and Nair, P.G. (1990) Floral biology and artificial pollination in *Dioscorea alata* L. *Euphytica* 48, 45–51.

Abraham, K. and Nair, P.G. (1991) Polyploidy and sterility in relation to sex in *Dioscorea alata* L. (Dioscoreaceae). *Genetica* 83, 93–97.

Abraham, K., Edison, S., Unnikrishnan, M., Sheela, M.N., Vimala, B. and Sreekumari, S.K. (1998) *Tuber Crop Varieties Released by the Central Tuber Crops Research Institute.* Central Tuber Crops Research Institute, Thiruvananthapuram, India.

Abraham, K., Sreekumari, M.T. and Sheela, M.N. (2006) Breeding significance of seedling and clonal tuber shapes in greater yam. *Journal of Root Crops* 32(1), 72–77.

Acha, I.A., Shiwachi, H., Asiedu, R. and Akoroda, M.O. (2004) Efect of auxins on root development in yam (*Dioscorea rotundata*) vine. *Tropical Science* 44, 80–84.

Adiobo, A., Oumar, O., Perneel, M., Zokb, S. and Höfte, M. (2007) Variation of *Pythium*-induced cocoyam root rot severity in response to soil type. *Soil Biology & Biochemistry* 39(11), 2915–2925.

Agata, W. (1982) The characteristics of dry matter and yield production in sweet potato under field conditions. In: Villareal, R.L. and Griggs, T.D. (eds) *Sweet Potato. Proceedings of the First International Symposium*. AVRDC Publication No. 82–172, Taiwan, pp. 119–127.

Agbaje, G.O. and Adegbite, A.A. (2006) Comparison of yield performance and profitability in hybrid yam varieties cultivated under staked and unstaked production systems. *Journal of Food, Agriculture and Environment* 4(2), 183–187.

Agbaje, G.O., Adegbite, A.A., Akinlosotu, T.A. and Shoyinka, S.A. (2002) Performance of new hybrid yam (*Dioscorea rotundata* Poir.) varieties under different cropping systems. *African Journal of Root and Tuber Crops* 5(1), 8–11.

Agona, J.A., Silim Nahdy, M., Giga, D.P. and Rees, D. (1998) The effect of salting sweet potato chips prior to drying on infestation by *Araecerus fasciculatus. Tropical Agriculture* 75(1/2), 84–88.

Agueguia, A., Fatokun, C.A. and Hahn, S.K. (1994) The genetics of resistance to cocoyam root rot blight complex disease in *Xanthosoma sagittifolium* (L.) Schott. *Acta Horticulturae* 380, 438–442.

Akinwande, B.A., Asiedu, R., Adeyemi, I.A. and Maziya, D.B. (2007) Influence of time of harvest on the yield and sensory attributes of white yam (*Dioscorea rotundata*) in Southwest Nigeria. *Journal of Food, Agriculture and Environment* 5(2), 179–184.

Akissoe, N., Mestres, C., Hounhouigan, J. and Nago, M. (2005) Biochemical origin of browning during the processing of fresh yam (*Dioscorea* spp.) into dried product. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 53, 2552–2557.

Akoroda, M.O. (1983a) Floral biology in relation to hand pollination of white yam. *Euphytica* 32, 831–838.

Akoroda, M.O. (1983b) Variation, heritability and genetic advance of eight characters in white yam. *Theroretical and Applied Genetics* 66, 51–54.

Akoroda, M.O. (1984) Variability, repeatability, character correlation and path coefficient analyses in yellow yam. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 69, 217–221.

Akoroda, M.O. (1995) *Yam Research at IITA: 1971–1993*. IITA, Ibadan, Nigeria.

Akoroda, M.O. and Okonmah, L.U. (1982) Sett production and germplasm maintenance through vine cuttings in yams. *Tropical Agriculture* 59(4), 311–314.

Akoroda, M.O., Wilson, J.E. and Cheda, H.R. (1981) Artificial pollination, pollen viability and storage in white yam. In: Terry, E.R., Oduro, K.A. and Caveness, F. (eds) *Tropical Root Crops, Research Strategies for the 1980s*. IDRC, Ottawa, pp. 189–194.

Alghali, A.M. and Munde, W.W. (2001) Evaluation of sweet potato clones for resistance to *Cylas puncticollis* Boheman (Coleoptera: Apionidae) in Sierra Leone. *Tropicultura* 19(1), 5–9.

Allem, A.C. (1994) The origin of *Manihot esculenta* Crantz (Euphorbiaceae). *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 41, 133–150.

Allem, A.C. (2002) The origins and taxonomy of cassava. In: Hillocks, R.J., Thresh, J.M. and Bellotti, A.C. (eds) *Cassava, Biology, Production and Utilization*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK, pp. 1–16.

Alleyne, A.T. (1996) Analysis of yam anthracnose by isolation and partial characterization of phytotoxins of *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* and tissue culture of *Dioscorea alata*. MPhil. thesis, The University of the West Indies, St Michael, Barbados.

Aloalii, I., Masamdu, R., Theunis, W. and Thistleton, B. (1993) Prospects for biological control of taro beetles *Papuana* spp. (Coleoptera: Scarabaeidae), in the South Pacific. In: Ferentinos, L. (ed.) *Proceedings of the Sustainable Taro Culture for the Pacific*

Conference. CTAHR, University of Hawaii, Research Extensions Series 140, Honolulu, pp. 66–70.

Alves, A.A.C. (2002) Cassava botany and physiology. In: Hillocks, R.J., Thresh, J.M. and Bellotti, A.C. (eds) *Cassava, Biology, Production and Utilization*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK, pp. 67–89.

Alves, A.A.C. and Setter, T.L. (2000) Response of cassava to water deficit: leaf area and abscisic acid. *Crop Science* 40(1), 131–137.

Alves, A.A.C. and Setter, T.L. (2004) Response of cassava leaf area expansion to water deficit: cell proliferation, cell expansion and delayed development. *Annals of Botany* 94, 605–613.

Alves, R.M.L. and Grossmann, M.V.E. (1998) Functional properties of pregelatinized yam (*Dioscorea alat*a) starch. In: Berthaud, J., Bricas, N. and Marchand, J.L. (eds) *L'igname, plante séculaire et culture d'avenir. Proceedings of International Symposium*. Editions CIRAD, Montpellier, France, pp. 337–341.

Amani, N.G., Dufour, D., Mestres, C. and Kamenan, A. (2002) Native yam (*Dioscorea* spp.) starches as a functional ingredient in food products. In: Nakatani, M. and Komaki, K. (eds) *Potential of Root Crops for Food and Industrial Resources. Proceedings 12th Symposium of ISTRC*, Tsukuba, Japan. Cultio Corporation, Japan, pp. 398–400.

An, L.V. (2004) Sweet potato leaves for growing pigs: biomass yield, digestion and nutritive value. PhD. thesis, Swedish University of Agricultural Sciences, Uppsala, Sweden.

Anderson, M.D., Busk, P.K., Svendsen, I. and Moller, B.J. (2000) Cytochromes P-450 from cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) catalyzing the first steps in the biosynthesis of the cyanogenic glucosides linamarin and lotaustralin. *Journal of Biology and Chemistry* 275, 1966–1975.

Angelov, M.N., Sun, J., Byrd, G.T., Brown, R.H. and Black, C.C. (1993) Novel characteristics of cassava, *Manihot esculenta* Crantz, a reputed C_3–C_4 intermediate photosynthesis species. *Photosynthesis Research* 38, 61–72.

Arnaud, G. and Abraham, K. (2007) CEFIPRA Project No. 3000 B1: Genetic improvement of yam using DNA markers. Presentation to the CEFIPRA (India–France) annual meeting held in Marseille, France.

Arnolin, R. and Lombion, K. (2005) *Dioscorea trifida* yam species: field study of the speed at which symptoms of the virus appear (in French) L'igname cousse-couche *Dioscorea trifida* et les virus: en Guadeloupe, recherche de résistance aux virus sur hybrides d'igname cousse-couche, en génération séminale. *Phytoma* (584), 33–35.

Asare, B.E., Opoku, A.Y., Showemimo, F.A. and Tetteh, J.P. (2007) Evaluation of different methods of sterilizing sprouting media for the control of minisett rot of white yam (*Dioscorea rotundata* Poir). *American Journal of Food Technology* 2(2), 95–99.

Asemota, H.N., Ramser, J., Lopez-Peralta, C., Weising, K. and Khal, G. (1996) Genetic variation and cultivar identification of Jamaican yam germplasm by random amplified polymorphic DNA analysis. *Euphytica* 92, 341–351.

Asher, C.J., Edwards, D.G. and Howeler, R.H. (1980) *Nutritional Disorders of Cassava (*Manihot esculenta *Crantz)*. University of Queensland, St Lucia, Queensland, Australia.

Austin, D.F. (1977) Hybrid polyploids in *Ipomoea* section *batatas*. *Journal of Heridity* 68, 259–260.

Austin, D.F. (1987) The taxonomy, evolution and genetic diversity of sweet potatoes and related wild species. In: *Exploration, Maintenance, Utilization of Sweet Potato Genetic Resources. Proceedings of the First Planning Conference*, Lima, Peru, International Potato Center (CIP), pp. 27–59.

Austin, D.F. and De La Puente, F. (1991) *Ipomoea tabascana*, an endangered tropical species. *Economic Botany* 45, 435.

Ayankanmi, T., Shiwachi, H. and Asiedu, R. (2005) Sprouting and yield of yam (*Dioscorea* spp.) minisetts in relation to sett size, soil moisture and agro-ecology. *Tropical Science* 45(1), 23–27.

Backer, C.A. and Bakhuizen van den Brink Jr (1968) *Flora of Java*, Vol. 3. Wolters, Nordhoof, Groningen, the Netherlands.

Baimey, H.K. (2005) *Scutellonema bradys* as a pathogen of yam in Benin. PhD. dissertation, University of Pretoria, Pretoria, South Africa.

Balagopalan, C. (2002) Cassava utilization in food, feed and industry. In: Hillocks, R.J., Thresh, J.M. and Bellotti, A.C. (eds) *Cassava, Biology, Production and Utilization*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK, pp. 301–318.

Balagopalan, C., Padmaja, G., Nanda, S.K. and Moorthy, S.N. (1988) *Cassava in Food, Feed and Industry.* CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.

Ballard, C., Brown, P., Bourke, R.M. and Harwood, T. (eds) (2005) *The Sweet Potato in Oceania: A Reappraisal.* Ethnology Monographs 19, Oceania Monograph 56, The University of Sydney, Australia.

Bancroft, R., Gray, A., Gallat, S., Crentsil, D. and Westby, A. (1998) The marketing system for fresh yam in Techiman, Ghana, and associated post harvest losses. *Tropical Agriculture (Trinidad)* 75(1), 115–119.

Bandyopadhyay, R., Mwangi, M., Aigbe, S.O. and Leslie, J.F. (2006) *Fusarium* species from the cassava root complex in West Africa. *Phytopathology* 96(6), 673–676.

Barrau, J. (1957) L'énigme de la patate douce en Océanie. *Etudes d'Outre-Mer* 40(3/4), 83–87.

Becerra Lopez-Lavalle, L.A. and Orjeda, G. (2002) Occurrence and cytological mechanism of 2n pollen formation in a tetraploid accession of *Ipomoea batatas* (sweet potato). *Journal of Heredity* 93(3), 185–192.

Bellotti, A.C. (2002) Arthropod pests. In: Hillocks, R.J., Thresh, J.M. and Bellotti, A.C. (eds) *Cassava, Biology, Production and Utilization*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK, pp. 209–235.

Bellotti, A.C., Smith, L. and Lapointe, S.L. (1999) Recent advances in cassava pest management. *Annual Review of Entomology* 44, 343–370.

Bennett, M.D., Cox, A.V. and Leitch, I.J. (1998) Angiosperm DNA C-values database (http://www.rbgkew.org.uk/cval/database1.html, accessed 1998).

Bertram, R.B. (1993) Application of molecular techniques to genetic resources of cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz, Euphorbiaceae): interspecific evolutionary relationships and intraspecific characterisation. PhD. dissertation, University of Maryland at College Park, Maryland, USA.

Blamey, F.P.C. (1996) Correction of nutrition disorders of sweet potato and taro: fertilizers and soil amendments. In: Craswell, E.T., Asher, C.J. and O'Sullivan, J. (eds) *Mineral Nutrient Disorders of Root Crops in the Pacific*. ACIAR Proceedings No. 65, Canberra, pp. 91–95.

Böhringer, A. and Leihner, D.E. (1997) A comparison of alley cropping and block planting in subhumid Benin. *Agroforestry Systems* 35, 117–130.

Bokanga, M. (1994) Processing of cassava leaves for human consumption. *Acta Horticulturae* 375, 203–207.

Bolhuis, G.G. (1967) Intra and interspecific crosses in the genus *Manihot*. *Proceedings of the 1st International Symposium on Tropical Root Crops*. University of West Indies, St Augustine, Trinidad, 1, pp. 81–88.

Bonierbale, M., Guevara, C., Dixon, A.G.O., Ng, N.Q., Asiedu, R. and Ng, S.Y.C. (1997) Chapter 1. Cassava. In: Fucillo, D., Sears, L. and Stapleton, P. (eds) *Biodiversity in Trust*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, pp. 1–20.

Bonsi, C.K., Loretan, P.A., Hill, W.A., Ogbuehi, C.R. and Morris, C.E. (1990) Effects of photoperiod and light intensity on growth and storage root production of sweet potatoes. In: Howeler, R.H. (ed.) *Proceedings 8th Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops*, Bangok, Thailand, pp. 515–518.

Boster, J.S. (1985) Selection for perceptual distinctiveness: evidence from Aguaruna cultivars of *Manihot esculenta*. *Economic Botany* 39, 310–325.

Bourret, D. (1973) *Etude ethnobotanique des Dioscoreacées alimentaires. Ignames de Nouvelle-Calédonie*. PhD. dissertation, Paris University, France.

Bourrieau, M. (2000) *Valorisation des racines et tubercules tropicaux pour l'alimentation humaine en Océanie. Le cas du laplap au Vanuatu*. MSc. thesis, ENSIA-SIARC, Montpellier, France.

Boussalem, M., Arnau, G., Hochu, I., Arnolin, R., Viader, V., Santoni, S. and David, J. (2006) Microsatellite segregation analysis and cytogenetic evidence for tetrasomic inheritance in the American yam *Dioscorea trifida* and a new basic chromosome number in the Dioscoreae. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 113, 439–451.

Bouwkamp, J.C., Tsou, S.C.S. and Lin, S.S.M. (1985) Genotype and environment effects on the relationship between protein concentration and trypsin inhibitor levels in sweet potatoes. *HortScience* 20, 886–889.

Bown, D. (2000) *Aroids. Plants of the Arum Family*, 2nd edn. Timber Press, Portland, Oregon.

Bradbury, J.H. and Holloway, W.D. (1988) *Chemistry of Tropical Root Crops: Significance for Nutrition and Agriculture in the Pacific*. ACIAR Monograph No. 6, Canberra.

Bradbury, J.H., Hammer, B., Nguyen, T., Anders, M. and Miller, J.S. (1985) Protein quantity and quality and trypsin inhibitor content of sweet potato cultivars from the highlands of Papua New Guinea. *Journal of Agriculture and Food Chemistry* 33, 281–285.

Bridge, J. (1982) Nematodes of yams. In: Miège, J. and Lyonga, S.N. (eds) *Yams, Ignames*. Oxford University Press, International Foundation for Science, Oxford, UK, pp. 253–264.

Bridge, J. (1988) Plant parasitic problems in the Pacific Islands. *Journal of Nematology* 20, 173–183.

Bridge, J. (1996) Nematode management in sustainable and subsistence agriculture. *Annual Review of Phytopathology* 34, 201–225.

Brooks, F.E. (2008) Detached-leaf bioassay for evaluating taro resistance to *Phytophthora colocasiae*. *Plant Diseases* 92(1), 126–131.

Brown, M.W. (1995) *Quality Standards and Marketing of Selected South Pacific Root Crops*. IRETA, University of the South Pacific, Western Samoa.

Brunt, A.A., Jackson, G.V.H. and Frison, E.A. (eds) (1989) *FAO/IBPGR Technical Guidelines for the Safe Movement of Yam Germplasm*. Food and Agriculture

Organization of the United Nations, Rome/International Board for Plant Genetic Resources, Rome.

Burkill, I.H. (1960) Organography and evolution of Dioscoreaceae, the family of yams. *Journal of the Linnean Society* 56(367), 319–412.

Buschmann, H., Rodriguez, M.X., Thome, J. and Beeching, J.R. (2000) Qualitative and quantitative changes in phenolic compounds of cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) roots during postharvest physiological deterioration. In: Carvalho, L.J.C.B., Thro, A.M. and Vilarinhos, A.D. (eds) *Cassava Biotechnology: IV international Scientific Meeting*, EMBRAPA, CBN, Brazil, pp. 517–525.

Bussell, W.T., Scheffer, J.J.C. and Douglas, J.A. (2004) Recent research on taro production in New Zealand. In: Guarino, L., Taylor, M. and Osborn, T. (eds) *Proceedings of the 3rd Taro Symposium*, Nadi, Fiji. Secretariat of the Pacific Community, pp. 139–143.

Buteler, M.I., Jarret, R.L. and La Bonte, D.R. (1999) Sequence characterization of microsatellites in diploid and polyploid *Ipomoea*. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 99, 123–132.

Buteler, M.I., Labonte, D.R., Jarret, R.L. and Macchiavelli, R.E. (2002) Microsatellite-based paternity analysis in polyploidy sweet potato. *Journal of the American Society for Horticultural Science* 127(3), 392–396.

Cable, W.J. (1984) The spread of taro (*Colocasia* sp.) in the Pacific. In: Chandra, S. (ed.) *Edible Aroids*. Clarendon Press, Oxford, UK, pp. 28–33.

Cable, W.J. and Wilson, J.E. (1984) *Dioscorea nummularia* Lam.: the primary edible yam of Western Samoa. In: *Proceedings of the 6th Symposium of the ISTRC*, International Potato Centre (CIP), Lima, pp. 599–605.

Cach, N.T., Pérez, J., Lenis, J.I., Calle, F., Morante, N. and Ceballos, H. (2005) Epistasis in the expression of relevant traits in cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) for subhumid conditions. *Journal of Heredity* 96(5), 586–592.

Cadet, P. and Daly, P. (1996) Use of nematicides to produce yam planting material free of *Scutellomena bradys* in Martinique (French West Indies). *Crop Protection* 15(2), 187–195.

Caillon, S., Quero-García, J., Lescure, J.P. and Lebot, V. (2006) Nature of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott) genetic diversity prevalent in a Pacific Ocean island, Vanua Lava, Vanuatu. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 53, 1273–1289.

Calle, F., Pérez, J., Gaitan, W., Morante, N., Ceballos, H., Llano, G. and Alvarez, E. (2005) Diallel inheritance of relevant traits in cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) adapted to acid-soil savannas. *Euphytica* 144(1–2), 177–186.

Calvert, L.A. and Thresh, J.M. (2002) The viruses and virus diseases of cassava. In: Hillocks, R.J., Thresh, J.M. and Bellotti, A.C. (eds) *Cassava, Biology, Production and Utilization*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK, pp. 237–260.

Carson, H.L. and Okada, T. (1980) *Drosophilidae* associated with flowers in Papua New Guinea; I. *Colocasia esculenta*. *Kontyu, Tokyo* 48(1), 15–29.

Carter, S.E., Fresco, L.O. and Jones, P.G. (1992) *An Atlas of Cassava in Africa. Historical, Agroecological and Demographic Aspects of Crop Distribution.* CIAT, Colombia.

Ceballos, H., Iglesias, C.A., Pérez, J.C. and Dixon, A.G.O. (2004) Cassava breeding: opportunities and challenges. *Plant Molecular Biology* 56, 503–516.

Ceballos, H., Sánchez, T., Chàvez, A.L., Iglesias, C., Debouck, D., Mafla, G. and Tohme, G. (2006a) Variation in crude protein content in cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) roots. *Journal of Food Composition Analysis* 19, 589–593.

Ceballos, H., Fregene, M., Lentini, Z., Sánchez, T., Puentes, Y., Pérez, J.C., Rosero, A. and Tofiño, A.P. (2006b) Development and indentification of high-value cassava clones. *Acta Horticulturae* 703, 63–70.

Ceballos, H., Pérez, J.C., Calle, F., Jaramillo, G., Lenis, J.L., Morante, N. and López, J. (2006c) A new evaluation scheme for cassava breeding at CIAT. In: Howeler, R.H. (ed.) *Cassava Research and Development in Asia: Exploring New Opportunities for an Ancient Crop*. Proceedings of the 7th Regional Cassava Workshop, DOA-CIAT, Bangkok, Thailand, pp. 125–135.

Ceballos, H., Sánchez, T., Morante, N., Fregene, M., Dufour, D., Smith, A.M., Denyer, K., Pérez, J.C., Calle, F. and Mestres, C. (2008) Discovery of an amylose-free starch mutant in cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz). *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* ASAP Article 10.1021/jf800603p, Web release date 26 July 2008.

Cervantes Flores, J.C. (2000) Root-knot nematode resistance in sweet potato and development of sweet potato differential host genotypes for *Meloidogyne* spp. MSc. thesis, North Carolina State University, Raleigh, North Carolina.

Chaïr, H., Perrier, X., Agbangla, C., Marchand, J.L., Dainou, O. and Noyer, J.L. (2005) Use of cpSSRs for the characterisation of yam phylogeny in Benin. *Genome* 48(4), 674–684.

Chand, H., Pearson, M.N. and Lowell, P.H. (1999) Rapid multiplication in *Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott (taro). *Plant Cell, Tissue and Organ Culture* 55, 223–226.

Chandler-Ezell, K., Pearsall, D.M. and Zeidler J.A. (2006) Root and tuber phytoliths and starch grains document manioc (*Manihot esculenta*), arrowroot (*Marantha arundinacea*) and llerén (*Calathea* sp.) at the Real Alto site, Ecuador. *Economic Botany* 60(2), 103–120.

Chapman, T. (1965) Some investigations into factors limiting yields of the White Lisbon Yam (*Dioscorea alata* L.) under Trinidad conditions. *Tropical Agriculture, Trinidad* 42, 145–151.

Chavarriaga-Aguirre, P., Maya, M.M., Tohme, J., Duque, M.C., Iglesias, C., Bonierbale, M.W., Kresovich, S. and Kochert, G. (1999) Using micro-satellites, isozymes and AFLPs to evaluate genetic diversity and redundancy in the cassava core collection and to assess the usefulness of DNA-based markers to maintain germplasm collections. *Molecular Breeding* 5, 263–273.

Chavez, A., Sanchez, T., Jaramillo, G., Bedoya, J., Echerverry, J., Bolanos, E., Ceballos, H. and Iglesias, C. (2005) Variation of quality traits in cassava roots evaluated in landraces and improved clones. *Euphytica* 143(1–2), 125–133.

Chen, Z. (2003) Physicochemical properties of sweet potato starches and their application in noodle products. PhD. thesis, Wageningen Agricultural University, Wageningen, the Netherlands.

Chiwona, K.L., Brimer, L., Saka, D.J.K., Mhone, A.R., Mkumbira, J., Johansson, L., Bokanga, M., Mahungu, N.M. and Rosling, H. (2004) Bitter taste in cassava roots correlates with cyanogenic glucoside levels. *Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture* 84(6), 581–590.

Cho, J.J. (2004) Breeding Hawaiian taro for the future. In: Guarino, L., Taylor, M. and Osborn, T. (eds) *Proceedings of the 3rd Taro Symposium*. Nadi, Fiji. Secretariat of the Pacific Community, pp. 192–196.

Choi, H., Chandrasekhar, T., Lee, H. and Kim, K. (2007) Production of herbicide-resistant transgenic sweet potato plants through *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* method. *Plant Cell, Tissue and Organ Culture* 91(3), 235–242.

CIAT (1999) *Annual Report for 1998*. CIAT, Cali, Colombia.

Clark, C.A. and Moyer, J.W. (1988) *Compendium of Sweet Potato Diseases.* ASP Press, The American Phytopathological Society, St Paul, Minnesota.

Claus, J.C. and Lebot, V. (1999) Peut-on revitaliser les tarodières de Futuna? *JATBA, Journal de Botanique Tropicale Appliquée, Paris* 41(1), 157–183.

Clement, C.R. (1994) Crops of the Amazon and Orinoco regions: their origin, decline and future. In: Hernández-Bermejo, J.E. and León, J. (eds) *Neglected Crops: 1492 from a Different Perspective.* FAO Plant Production and Protection Series, Rome, pp. 195–203.

Coates, D.J., Yen, D.E. and Gaffey, P.M. (1988) Chromosome variation in taro, *Colocasia esculenta*: implications for origin in the Pacific. *Cytologia* 53, 551–560.

Cock, J.H. (1984) Cassava. In: Goldsworthy, P.R. and Fisher, N.M. (eds) *The Physiology of Tropical Field Crops.* Wiley, New York, pp. 529–549.

Cock, J.H. (1985) *Cassava – New Potential for a Neglected Crop.* Westview Press, Boulder, Colorado.

Cock, J.H., Wholey, D. and Lozano, J.C. (1976) *A Rapid Propagation System for Cassava*. Series EE-20. CIAT (Centro Internacional de Agricultura Tropical), Cali, Colombia.

Cock, J.H., Franklin, D., Sandoval, G. and Juri, P. (1979) The ideal cassava plant for maximum yield. *Crop Science* 19, 271–279.

Coleson, J.L. and Miller, R.H. (2005) Antibiosis and antixenosis to *Aphis gossypii* (Homoptera: Aphididae) in *Colocasia esculenta*. *Journal of Economic Entomology* 98(3), 996–1006.

Collado, L.S. and Corke, H. (1997) Properties of starch noodles as affected by sweet potato genotype. *Cereal-Chemistry* 74(2), 182–187.

Collins, W.W., Wilson, G.L., Arrendel, S. and Dickey, L.F. (1987) Genotype × environment interactions in sweet potato yield and quality factors. *Journal of the American Society of Horticultural Science* 112(3), 579–583.

Connor, D.J., Cock, J.H. and Para, G.E. (1981) Response of cassava to water shortage. I. Growth and yield. *Field Crops Research* 4, 297–311.

Cornet, D. (2005) Etude du fonctionnement physiologique d'un couvert végétal d'igname (*Dioscorea alata* L.). MSc. thesis, University of Gembloux, Belgium.

Cornet, D., Sierra, J. and Bonhomme, R. (2007) Characterization of the photosynthetic pathway of some tropical food yams (*Dioscorea* spp.) using leaf natural 13c abundance. *Photosynthetica* 45(2), 303–305.

Coursey, D.G. (1967) *Yams, An Account of the Nature, Origins, Cultivation and Utilisation of the Useful Members of the Dioscoreaceae*. Tropical Agriculture Series, Longmans, London.

Coursey, D.G. (1968) The edible aroids. *World Crops* 20, 25–30.

Coursey, D.G. and Ferber, C.E.M. (1979) The processing of yams. In: Plucknett, D.E. (ed.) *Small-Scale Processing and Storage of Tropical Root Crops.* Westview Tropical Agriculture Series, No. 1, Westview Press, Boulder, Colorado, pp. 189–212.

Courtney, M.W. (2007) Genotypic variability and inheritance of iron and zinc in sweet potato. MSc. thesis, Department of Horticulture, Louisiana State University, Baton Rouge, Louisiana.

Cox, P.G. and Kasimani, C. (1990a) Effect of taro leaf blight on leaf number. *Papua New Guinea Journal of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries* 35(1–4), 43–48.

Cox, P.G. and Kasimani, C. (1990b) Control of taro leaf blight using metalxyl: effect of dose rate and application frequency. *Papua New Guinea Journal of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries* 35(1–4), 49–55.

Crowder, D.W., Carriere, Y., Tabashnik, B.E., Ellsworth, P.C. and Dennehy, T.J. (2006) Modeling evolution of resistance to pyriproxy by the sweet potato whitefly (Homoptera: Aleyrodidae). *Journal of Economic Entomology* 99(4), 1396–1406.

Cruz, V.M.V. and Ramirez, D.A. (1999) Variation in morphological characters in a collection of yams (*Dioscorea* spp.). *Philippines Journal of Crop Sciences* 24, 27–35.

Daïnou, O., Agbangla, C., Berthaud, J. and Tostain, S. (2002) Le nombre chromosomique de base des espèces de *Dioscorea* constituant la section Enantiophyllum pourrait être égal à x = 20. Quelques preuves. *Annales des Sciences Agronomiques du Bénin* 3, 21–43.

Daniel, I.O., Ng, N.Q., Tayo, T.O. and Togun, A.O. (2002) Wet-cold conservation of West African yam (*Dioscorea* spp.) pollen. *Journal of Agriculture Science* 138, 57–62.

Daniell, H., Wurdack, K.J., Kanagaraj, A., Lee, S.B., Saski, C. and Jansen, K.R. (2008) The complete nucleotide sequence of cassava (*Mahihot esculenta*) chloroplast genome and the evolution of the atpF in Malpighiales: RNA editing and multiple losses of a group II intron. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 116(5), 723–737.

Dansi, A., Mignouna, H.D., Zoundjihékpon, J., Sangare, J., Asiedu, R. and Quin, M.F. (1999) Morphological diversity, cultivar groups and possible descent in the cultivated yams (*Dioscorea cayenensis-rotundata*) complex in the Benin Republic. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 46, 371–388.

Dansi, A., Mignouna, H.D., Zoundjihékpon, J., Sangare, A., Asiedu, R. and Ahoussou, N. (2000) Using isozyme polymorphism to assess genetic variation within cultivated yams (*Dioscorea cayenensis/Dioscorea rotundata* complex) of the Republic of Benin. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 47, 371–383.

Dansi, A., Mignouna, H.D., Pillay, M. and Zok, S. (2001) Ploidy variation in the cultivated yams (*Dioscorea cayenensis–Dioscorea rotundata* complex) from Cameroon as determined by flow cytometry. *Euphytica* 119, 301–307.

David, P.P., Bonsi, C.K., Mortley, D.G and Trotman, A.A. (1998) Yield stability differences among sweet potato genotypes under field and controlled environments. *Tropical Agriculture* 75(1/2), 204–207.

Degras, L.M. (1993) *The Yam, A Tropical Root Crop*. MacMillan Press Ltd, London.

Degras, L.M., Arnolin, R., Suard, C. and Poitout, R. (1984) Selection of *D. alata* cultivars of low susceptibility to anthracnose (*Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*). *Proceedings of the 6th Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops*. CIP, Peru, pp. 627–632.

Doumbia, S., Tshiunza, M., Tollens, E. and Stessens, J. (2004) Rapid spread of the *Florido* yam variety (*Dioscorea alata*) in Ivory Coast: introduced for the wrong reasons and still a success. *Outlook on Agriculture* 33(1), 49–54.

Dufour, D.L. (2007) 'Bitter' cassava: toxicity and detoxification. In: Ortiz, R. and Nassar, N.M.A. (eds) *Proceedings of the First International Meeting on Cassava Breeding, Biotechnology and Ecology.* Universidade de Brazilia, Brazil, pp. 171–184.

Dumont, R., Dansi, A., Vernier, P. and Zoundjihékpon, J. (2006) *Biodiversity and Domestication of Yams in West Africa: Traditional Practices Leading to* Dioscorea rotundata *Poir*. Editions Quae, Cirad-Ipgri, Nancy, France.

Duputié, A., David, P., Debain, C. and McKey, D. (2007) Natural hybridization between a clonally propagated crop, cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) and a wild relative in French Guiana. *Molecular Ecology* 16, 3025–3038.

Dwivedi, A.K. and Sen, H. (1997) Genetic variability, heritability and genetic advance relating some yield attributing traits in taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott). *Journal of Root Crops* 21, 51–54.

Edmond, J.B. and Ammerman, G.R. (eds) (1971) *Sweet Potatoes: Production, Processing, Marketing*. Avi Publishing, Westport, Connecticut.

Egesi, C.N., Asiedu, R., Egunjobi, J.K. and Bokanga, M. (2003) Genetic diversity of organic properties in water yam (*Dioscorea alata* L.). *Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture* 83, 858–865.

Egesi, C.N., Ogunyemi, S. and Asiedu, R. (2005) Genotype × environment interaction in water yam (*Dioscorea alata*) yield trials in five yam-growing sites in Nigeria. *Journal of Genetics and Breeding* 59, 81–88.

Egesi, C.N., Asiedu, R., Ude, G., Ogunyemi, S. and Egunjobi, J.K. (2006) AFLP marker diversity in water yam (*Dioscorea alata* L.). *Plant Genetic Resources: Characterization and Utilization* 4(3), 181–187.

Egesi, C.N., Onyela, T.J. and Asiedu, R. (2007) Severity of anthracnose and virus diseases of water yam (*Dioscorea alata* L.) in Nigeria I: effects of yam genotype and date of planting. *Crop Protection* 26(8), 1259–1265.

Ekanayake, I.J., Malagamba, P. and Midmore, D.J. (1990) Effects of water stress on yield indices of sweet potatoes. In: Howeler, R.H. (ed.) *Proceedings of 8th Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops*. CIAT, Bangkok, Thailand, pp. 520–542.

Ekanem, A.M. and Osuji, J.O. (2006) Mitotic index studies on edible cocoyams (*Xanthosoma* and *Colocasia* spp.). *African Journal of Biotechnology* 5(10), 846–849.

Elias, M., McKey, D., Panaud, O., Anstett, M.C. and Robert, T. (2001) Traditional management of cassava morphological and genetic diversity by the Makushi Amerindians (Guyana, South America) perspectives for on-farm conservation of crop genetic resources. *Euphytica* 20, 143–157.

Ellis, R.H., Hong, T.D. and Roberts, E.H. (1982) An investigation of the influence of constant and alternating temperature on the germination of cassava seed using a two-dimensional temperature gradient plate. *Annals of Botany* 49, 241–246.

El-Sharkawy, M.A. (2004) Cassava biology and physiology. *Plant Molecular Biology* 56, 481–501.

El-Sharkawy, M.A. and Cock, J.H. (1984) Water use efficiency of cassava. I. Effects of air humidity and water stress on stomatal conductance and gas exchange. *Crop Science* 24, 297–302.

El-Sharkawy, M.A. and Cock, J.H. (1987) C3–C4 intermediate photosynthetic characteristics of cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz). I. Gaz exchange. *Photosynthesis Research* 12, 219–236.

El-Sharkawy, M.A., Cock, M.A., Lynam, J.H., Hernandez, A.P. and Cadavid, L.F. (1990) Relationships between biomass, root-yield and single-leaf photosynthesis in field grown cassava. *Field Crop Research* 25, 183–201.

Engel, F. (1970) Exploration of the Chicla Canyon, Peru. *Current Anthropology* 11(1), 55–58.

Englberger, L., Aalbersberg, W., Ravi, P., Bonnin, M., Marks, G.C., Fitzgerald, M.H. and Elymore, J. (2003) Further analysis on Micronesia banana, taro, breadfruit and other foods for provitamin A carotenoids and minerals. *Journal of Food Composition and Analysis* 16, 216–236.

Enyi, B.A.A. (1972a) The effects of seed size and spacing on growth and yield of lesser yam (*Dioscorea esculenta*). *Journal of Agricultural Science* 78, 215–225.

Enyi, B.A.A. (1972b) Effect of staking, nitrogen and potassium on growth and development of lesser yam (*Dioscorea esculenta*). *Annals of Applied Biology* 72, 211–219.

Escobar, R.H., Mafla, G. and Roca, W.M. (1995) Cryopreservation for long-term conservation of cassava genetic resources. In: *Proceedings of the 2nd Scientific Meeting of the Cassava Biotechnology Network*, Vol. 1. CIAT, Cali, Colombia, pp. 190–193.

Essad, S. (1984) Variation géographique des nombres chromosomiques de base et polyploïdie dans le genre *Dioscorea* à propos du dénombrement des espèces *transversa* Brown, *pilosiuscula* Bert. et *trifida* L. *Agronomie* 4(7), 611–617.

Evans, G.A. and Castillo, J.A. (1998) Parasites of *Aleurotrachelus socialis* (Homoptera: Aleyrodidae) from Colombia including descriptions of two new species (Hymenoptera: Aphelinidae: Patygasteridae). *Florida Entomologist* 81, 171–178.

Faatonu, R., Tuivavalagi, P., Charles, W. and Peters, A. (2004) The use of direct stolon development for mass propagation of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott). In: Guarino, L., Taylor, M. and Osborn, T. (eds) *Proceedings of the 3rd Taro Symposium*, Nadi, Fiji. Secretariat of the Pacific Community, pp. 189–191.

FAO (1995) *World information and early warning system on plant genetic resources*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome, Italy.

FAO (2007) FAOSTAT database for 2007 (http://www.fao.org/corp/statistics/en/, accessed November 2007).

Fauquet, C. and Fargette, D. (1990) African cassava mosaic virus. *European Journal of Plant Pathology* 102, 645–654.

Ferguson, T.U. (1977) Tuber development in yam: physiological and agronomic implications. In: *Proceedings of the 3rd International Symposium on Tropical Roots Crops*, Ibadan, Nigeria, pp. 72–77.

Filloux, D. and Girard, J.C. (2006) Indexing and elimination of viruses infecting yams (*Dioscorea* spp.) for the safe movement of germplasm. *14th Triennal International Symposium of the ISTRC* held in CTCRI, Trivandrum, Kerala, India.

Floyd, C.N., Lefroy, R.D.B. and D'Souza, E.J. (1988) Soil fertility and sweet potato production on volcanic ash soils in the highlands of Papua New Guinea. *Field Crops Research* 19, 1–25.

Foua-Bi, K. (1982) Effet des piqûres d'*Aspidiella hartii* (Homoptère-Coccidae) sur la levée, le développement de l'appareil végétatif et la productivité de l'igname. In: Miège, J. and Lyonga, S.N. (eds) *Yams, Ignames*. Oxford University Press, International Foundation for Science, Oxford, UK, pp. 265–273.

Fox, R.L., Kwakye, P.K. and Obigbesan, G.O. (1980) The phosphorus requirement of yam (*Discorea* spp.). *Tropical Agriculture (Trinidad)* 57(2), 97–106.

Fregene, M., Vargas, J., Ikea, J., Angel, F., Tohme, J., Asiedu, R.A., Akoroda, M.O. and Roca, W.M. (1994) Variability of chloroplast DNA and nuclear ribosomal DNA in cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) and its wild relatives. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 89, 719–727.

Fregene, M.A., Angel, F., Gomez, R., Rodriguez, F., Chaavarriaga, P., Roca, W. and Tohme, J. (1997) A molecular genetic map of cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz). *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 95, 431–441.

Fregene, M.A., Roca, W., Okosbenin, E., Akano, A., Mba, C., Chavarriaga, C., Tohme, J., Ospina, B. and Ceballos, H. (2001) Cassava biotechnology research at CIAT, Colombia. In: Howeler, R. and Tan, S.L. (eds) *Cassava's Potential in Asia in the 21st Century: Present Situation and Future Research and Development Needs.* Proceedings of the Sixth Regional Workshop, 21–25 February, Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam, pp. 625–631.

Fregene, M.A., Suarez, M., Mkumbira, J., Kulembeka, H., Ndedya, E., Kulaya, A., Mitchel, S., Gullberg, U., Rosling, H., Dixon, A.G.O., Dean, R. and Kresovich, S. (2003) Simple sequence repeat marker diversity in cassava landraces: genetic diversity and differentiation in an asexually propagated crop. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 107, 1083–1093.

Freyre, R., Iwanaga, M. and Orjeda, G. (1991) Use of *Ipomoea trifida* (HBK) G. Don germplasm for sweet potato improvement. Part 2. Fertility of synthetic hexaploids and triploids with 2n gametes of *I. trifida* and their interspecific crossability with sweet potato. *Genome* 34, 209–214.

Frison, E.A. and Feliu, E. (1991) *FAO/IBPGR Technical Guidelines for the Safe Movement of Cassava Germplasm*. FAO/IBPGR, Rome.

Fuglie, K.O. (2007) Priorities for sweet potato research in developing countries: results of a survey. *HortScience* 42, 1200–1206.

Fuglie, K.O. and Hermann, M. (eds) (2004) *Sweet Potato Postharvest Research and Development in China.* Proceedings of an International Workshop, 7–8 November 2001, Chengdu, Sichuan, Republic of China.

Fullagar, R., Field, J., Denham, T. and Lentfer, C. (2006) Early and mid-Holocene tool use and processing of taro (*Colocasia esculenta*), yam (*Dioscorea* sp.) and other plants at Kuk Swamp in the highlands of Papua New Guinea. *Journal of Archaeological Science* 33(1), 595–614.

Fullerton, R.A. and Tyson, J.L. (2004) The biology of *Phytophthora colocasiae* and implications for its management and control. In: Guarino, L., Taylor, M. and Osborn, T. (eds) *Proceedings of the 3rd Taro Symposium*, Nadi, Fiji. Secretariat of the Pacific Community, pp. 107–111.

Gamiette, F., Bakry, F. and Ano, G. (1999) Ploidy determination of some yam species (*Dioscorea* spp.) by flow cytometry and conventional chromosome counting. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 46, 19–27.

Gendua, P.A., Risimeri, J.B. and Maima, J.B. (2001) The effect of planting density on the marketable corm yield of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott). In: Bourke, R.M., Allen, M.G. and Salisbury, J.G. (eds) *Food Security in Papua New Guinea*. ACIAR Proceedings, No. 99, Canberra, pp. 764–774.

George, M.S., Lu, G. and Zhou, W. (2002) Genotypic variation for potassium uptake and utilization efficiency in sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* L.). *Field Crops Research* 77(1), 7–15.

Ghani, F.D. (1984) Preliminary studies on flowering in taro cultivars in Malaysia. In: Chandra, S. (ed.) *Edible Aroids.* Clarendon Press, Oxford, UK, pp. 169–172.

Giacometti, D.C. and León, J. (1994) Tannia, yautia (*Xanthosoma sagittifolium*). In: Hernández-Bermejo, J.E. and León, J. (eds) *Neglected Crops: 1492 from a Different Perspective*. FAO Plant Protection Series No. 26, Rome, pp. 255–258.

Gibson, R.W., Jeremiah, S.C., Aritua, V., Msabaha, R.P., Mpembe, I. and Ndunguru, J. (1986) Sweet potato virus disease in sub-Saharan Africa: evidence and neglect of seedlings in the traditional farming system hinders the development of superior resistant landraces. *Journal of Phytopathology* 148, 441–447.

Gibson, R.W., Byamukama, E., Mpembe, I., Kayongo, J. and Mwanga, R.O.M. (2008) Working with farmer groups in Uganda to develop new sweet potato cultivars: decentralisation and building on traditional approaches. *Euphytica* 159(1/2), 217–228.

Gichuki, S., Berenyi, M., Zhang, D.P., Hermann, M., Schmidt, J., Glössl, J. and Burg, K. (2003) Genetic diversity in sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) in relationship to geographic sources as assessed with RAPD markers. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 50, 429–437.

Goenaga, R. (1995) Accumulation and partitioning of dry matter in taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott). *Annals of Botany* 76, 337–341.

Goenaga, R. and Hepperly, P. (1990) Flowering, pollen and seed viability and artificial hybridization of taniers (*Xanthosoma* spp.). *Journal of Agriculture of University of Puerto Rico* 74, 253–260.

Goenaga, R. and Singh, U. (1991) Accumulation and partition of dry matter in tanier (*Xanthosoma* spp.). In: Sing, U. (ed.) *Proccedings of the Workshop on Taro and Tannier Modeling*. College of Tropical Agriculture and Human Resources, Research Extension Series No. 136, University of Hawaii, Honolulu, pp. 36–43.

Golson, J. (1977) No room at the top: agricultural intensification in the New Guinea Highlands. In: Allen, J., Golson, J. and Jones, R. (eds) *Sunda and Sahul*. Academic Press, London, pp. 601–638.

Gonçalvez Fukuda, W.M. and Saad, N. (2001) *Participatory Research in Cassava Breeding with Farmers in North-eastern Brazil*. Document CNPMF No. 99, EMBRAPA, Bahia, Brazil.

Gonzalez, V.A. (2006) Yield and natural reaction to anthracnose (*Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*) of four yam cultivars planted without staking. *Journal of Agriculture of the University of Puerto Rico* 90(1/2), 75–81.

Gorecki, P.P. (1986) Human occupation and agricultural development in the Papua New Guinea Highlands. *Mountain Research and Development* 6, 159–166.

Govaerts, R., Wilkin, P. and Saunders, R.M.K. (2007) *World Checklist of Dioscoreales, Yams and their Allies.* Kew Publishing, Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, UK.

Green, K.R. (1994) Studies on the epidemiology and control of yam anthracnose. PhD. Thesis, University of Reading, Reading, UK.

Green, K.R. and Simons, S.A. (1994) 'Dead skin' on yams (*Dioscorea alata*) caused by *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*. *Plant Pathology* 43, 1062–1065.

Griffin, G.L. and Wang, J.K. (1983) Industrial uses. In: Wang, J.K. (ed.) *Taro, a Review of* Colocasia esculenta *and its Potentials.* University of Hawaii Press, Honolulu, pp. 301–312.

Gruneberg, W.J., Manrique, K., Zhang, D. and Hermann, M. (2005) Genotype × environment interactions for a diverse set of sweet potato clones evaluated across varying ecogeographic conditions in Peru. *Crop Science* 45(6), 2160–2171.

Gruneberg, W.J., Ghislain, M., Benavides, J. and Mwanga, R. (2007) Application of molecular markers for gene pool division and heterosis estimation under drought stress conditions in sweet potato. *Generation Challenge Programme Project No. SP1–3C, Final Report*, CIP, Peru.

Guarino, L. and Jackson, G.V.H. (1986) *Describing and documenting root crops in the South Pacific*. Suva, Fiji: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations in association with the South Pacific Commission, Field Document 12.

Haberle, S.G. (1998) Dating the evidence for prehistoric agricultural change in the highlands of New Guinea: the last 2000 years. *Archaeology in Oceania* 47, 1–19.

Hagenimana, V., Low, J., Anyango, M., Kurz, K., Gichuki, S.T. and Kabira, J. (2001) Enhancing vitamin A intake in young children in western Kenya: orange-fleshed sweet potatoes and women farmers can serve as entry points. *Food and Nutrition Bulletin* 22(4), 376–387.

Hahn, S.K. and Caveness, F.E. (1990) (eds) *Integrated Pest Management for Tropical Root and Tuber Crops.* Proceedings of the Workshop on the Global Status of and Prospects for Integrated Pest Management of Root and Tuber Crops in the Tropics. IITA, Ibadan, Nigeria.

Hahn, S.K., Teyer, E.R. and Leuschner, K. (1980) Cassava breeding for resistance to cassava mosaic disease. *Euphytica* 29, 673–683.

Hahn, S.K., Osiru, D.S.O., Akoroda, M.O. and Otoo, J.A. (1987) Yam production and its future prospects. *Outlook on Agriculture* 16, 105–110.

Hahn, S.K., Bai, K.V. and Asiedu, R. (1990) Tetraploids, triploids, and 2n pollen from diploid interspecific crosses with cassava. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 79, 433–439.

Halavatu, S.M., O'Sullivan, J.A., Asher, C.J. and Blamey, F.P.C. (1998) Better nutrition for the improvement of sweet potato and taro yields in the South Pacific. *Tropical Agriculture (Trinidad)* 75(1), 6–12.

Hambali, G.G. (1980) The dispersal of taro by common palm civets. *I.F.S. Provisional Report* No. 5, 29–34.

Hamid, S. and Sasaki, O. (2001) Studies on the effect of plant density on the growth and yield of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.). *Memoirs of the Faculty of Agriculture, Kagoshima University, Japan*, 37, 1–10.

Hamon, P. and Touré, B. (1990a) Characterisation of traditional yam varieties belonging to the *Dioscorea cayenensis-rotundata* complex by their isozymic patterns. *Euphytica* 46, 101–107.

Hamon, P. and Touré, B. (1990b) The classification of the cultivated yams (*Dioscorea cayenensis-rotundata* complex) of West Africa. *Euphytica* 47, 179–187.

Handy, E.S.G. (1985) *The Hawaiian Planter. Volume I. His Plants, Methods and Areas of Cultivation.* Bernice P. Bishop, Honolulu, Hawaii. First published by the Museum in 1940. Kraus Reprint, Millwood, New York.

Harding, R.M., Revil, P.A., Hafner, G.J., Yang, I., Maino, M.K., Devitt, L.C., Dowling, M.L. and Dale, J.L. (2004) Characterisation of taro viruses and the development of diagnostic tests. In: Guarino, L., Taylor, M. and Osborn, T. (eds) *Proceedings of the 3rd Taro Symposium*, Nadi, Fiji. Secretariat of the Pacific Community, pp. 98–101.

Harper, T.W. and Walker, I.R. (1985) Response of a sweet potato variety to levels of nitrogen and potassium applied at planting. *Queensland Journal of Agricultural and Animal Sciences* 42, 23–27.

Hartemink, A.E. and Johnston, M. (1998) Root biomass and nutrient uptake of taro in the lowlands of Papua New Guinea. *Tropical Agriculture (Trinidad)* 75(1), 1–5.

Hartemink, A.E., Poloma, S. and O'Sullivan, J. (2001) Integrated nutrient management research on sweet potato at Hobu, Morobe Province. In: Bourke, R.M., Allen, M.G. and Salisbury, J.G. (eds) *Food Security for Papua New Guinea: Proceedings*. Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research (ACIAR), Canberra, pp. 698–711.

Haudricourt, A.G. and Hédin, L. (1987) *L'homme et les plantes cultivées*. Editions A.M. Métailié, Paris.

Hay, A. (1988) *Cyrtosperma* (Araceae) and its old world allies. *Blumea* 33, 427–469.

Hay, A. (1990) *Aroids of Papua New Guinea.* Christensen Research Institute, Madang, Papua New Guinea.

Hay, A. (1999) The genus *Alocasia* (Araceae-Colocasieae) in the Philippines. *Gardeners' Bulletin Singapore* 51, 1–41.

Hay, A. and Wise, R. (1991) The genus *Alocasia* (Araceae) in Australasia. *Blumea* 35, 499–545.

He, G., Prakash, C.S. and Jarret, R.L. (1995) Analysis of genetic diversity in a sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas*) germplasm collection using DNA amplification fingerprinting. *Genome* 38, 938–945.

He, X.L., Miyasaka, S.C., Fitch, M.M.M., Moore, P.H. and Zhu, Y.J. (2008) *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*-mediated transformation of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott) with a rice chitinase gene for improved tolerance to a fungal pathogen *Sclerotium rolfsii*. *Plant Cell Reports* 27(5), 903–909.

Heywood, V.H. (ed.) (1985) *Flowering Plants of the World*. Croom Helm Publishers, London.

Hillis, D.M., Maple, B.K., Larson, A., Davis, S.K. and Zimmer, E.A. (1996) Nucleic acids IV: sequencing and cloning. In: Hillis, D.M., Moritz, C. and Maple, B.K. (eds) *Molecular Systematics*. Sinauer, Sutherland, Massachusetts, pp. 321–381.

Hillocks, R.J. and Wydra, K. (2002) Bacterial, fungal and nematode diseases. In: Hillocks, R.J., Thresh, J.M. and Bellotti, A.C. (eds) *Cassava, Biology, Production and Utilization*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK, pp. 261–280.

Hiromichi, Y. (2002) Morphological and genetic variation in cultivated and wild taro. In: Yoshida, S. and Matthews, P.J. (eds) *Vegeculture in Eastern Asia and Oceania.* JCAS Symposium Series, National Museum of Ethnology, Osaka, Japan, pp. 95–116.

Hoa, V.D. and Carpena, A.L. (1994) Crossability between sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) lam.) and a wild relative (*I. trifida* (H.B.K.) G. Don.) and fertility of their interspecific hybrids. *The Philippine Agriculturalist* 77(3), 339–345.

Horrocks, M. and Nunn, P.D. (2006) Evidence for introduced taro (*Colocasia esculenta*) and lesser yam (*Dioscorea esculenta*) in Lapita-era (c. 3050–2500 cal. yr. BP) deposits from Bourewa, south-west Viti Levu Island, Fiji. *Journal of Archaeological Science* 34(5), 739–748.

Hosokawa, H., Fukazawa, H. and Watanabe, T. (1998) Mechanized direct planting system for sweet potato. *Tropical Agriculture* 75(1/2), 147–149.

Howeler, R.H. (1996a) Diagnosis of nutritional disorders and soil fertility maintainance of cassava. In: Kurup, G.T., Polianiswami, M.S., Potty, V.P., Padmaja, G., Kabeerathumma, S. and Pillai, S.V. (eds) *Tropical Tuber Crops: Problems, Prospects and Future Strategies*. Oxford and IBH Publishing Co., New Delhi, pp. 181–193.

Howeler, R.H. (1996b) Mineral nutrition of cassava. In: Craswell, R.T., Asher, C.J. and O'Sullivan, J.N. (eds) *Mineral Nutrient Disorders of Root Crops in the Pacific*. Proceedings of Workshop, 17–20 April 1995, Nuku'alofa. Tonga. ACIAR Proceedings No. 5, Canberra, pp. 110–116.

Howeler, R.H. (2001) Cassava agronomy research in Asia: has it benefited cassava farmers. In: Howeler, R. and Tan, S.L. (eds) *Cassava's Potential in Asia in the 21st Century: Present Situation and Future Research and Development Needs.* Proceedings of the Sixth Regional Workshop, 21–25 February, Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam, pp. 345–382.

Howeler, R.H. (2002) Cassava mineral nutrition and fertilization. In: Hillocks, R.J., Thresh, J.M. and Bellotti, A.C. (eds) *Cassava, Biology, Production and Utilization*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK, pp. 115–147.

Howeler, R.H. (ed.) (2006) *Cassava Research and Development in Asia: Exploring New Opportunities for an Ancient Crop*. Proceedings of the 7th Regional Cassava Workshop, DOA-CIAT, Bangkok, Thailand.

Howeler, R.H. and Cadavid, L.F. (1983) Accumulation and distribution of dry matter nutrients during a 12-month's growth cycle of cassava. *Field Crops Research* 7, 123–139.

Howeler, R.H. and Tan, S.L. (eds) (2001) *Cassava's Potential in Asia in the 21st Century: Present Situation and Future Research and Development Needs.* Proceedings of the Sixth Regional Workshop, 21–25 February, Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam, CIAT Cassava Office for Asia. Love and Lip Press Co Ltd., Bangkok, Thailand.

Howeler, R.H., Kawano, K. and Ceballos, H. (2006) CIAT initiatives on cassava improvement in Asia. In: *Souvenir 14th Triennial Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops*. CTCRI, Trivandrum, India, pp. 25–31.

Hsu, C.L., Hurang, S.L., Chen, W., Weng, Y.M. and Tseng, C.Y. (2004) Qualities and antioxidant properties of bread as affected by the incorporation of yam flour in the formulation. *International Journal of Food Science and Technology* 39, 231–238.

Hu, J., Nakatani, M., Mizuno, K. and Fujimura, T. (2004) Development and characterization of microsatellite markers in sweet potato. *Breeding Science* 54(2), 177–188.

Huang, A.S., Komarasamy, K. and He, L. (2004) Recent developments in taro-based food products in Hawaii. In: Guarino, L., Taylor, M. and Osborn, T. (eds) *Proceedings of the 3rd Taro Symposium*, Nadi, Fiji. Secretariat of the Pacific Community, pp. 226–229.

Huang, C., Lin, M. and Wang, C.C.R. (2006) Changes in morphological, thermal and pasting properties of yam (*Dioscorea alata*) starch during growth. *Carbohydrate Polymers* 64(4), 524–531.

Huang, D.J., Lin, C.D., Chen, H.J. and Lin, Y.H. (2004) Antioxidant and antiproliferative activities of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam 'Tainong 57') constituents. *Botanical Bulletin of Academia Sinica* 45(3), 179–186.

Huang, J.C. and Sun, M. (2000) Genetic diversity and relationships of sweet potato and its wild relatives in *Ipomoea* series *Batatas* (Convolvulaceae) as revealed by inter-simple sequence repeat (ISSR) and restriction analysis of chloroplast DNA. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 100, 1050–1060.

Hull, R., Brunt, A.A., Briddon, R. and Phillips, S. (1996) Biodiversity of badnaviruses. *Final Technical Report, ODA Project X0220*, John Innes Institute, UK.

Hussain, Z. and Tyagi, R.K. (2006) *In vitro* corm induction and genetic stability of regenerated plants in taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott). *Indian Journal of Biotechnology* 5(4), 535–542.

Hutton, D.G. (1998) Use of household disinfectants to suppress *Pratylenchus coffeae* and dry rot of yellow yam (*Dioscorea caynensis*). *Tropical Agriculture (Trinidad)* 75(1), 49–52.

Hwang, J.S. (2000) *Integrated control of sweet potato weevil*, Cylas formicarius *Fabricius, with sex pheromone and insecticide*. Extension Bulletin – Food and Fertilizer Technology Center (FFTC), Taipei, Taiwan.

Hwang, J.S., Tseng, Y. and Lo, H.F. (2002) Application of simple sequence repeats in determining the genetic relationships of cultivars used in sweet potato polycross breeding in Taiwan. *Scientia Horticulturae* 93(3–4), 215–224.

Iese, V. (2005) Characterization of the giant swamp taro (*Cyrtosperma chamissonis* (Merr.) Schott) using morphological features, genetic fingerprinting and traditional knowledge of farmers in the Pacific. MSc. thesis, Biology Department, School of Pure and Applied Sciences, The University of the South Pacific, Suva, Fiji.

Iglesias, C.A., Mayer, J., Chavez, A.L. and Calle, F. (1997) Genetic potential and stability of carotene content in cassava roots. *Euphytica* 94, 367–373.

IITA (1998) *Rapid Multiplication of Cassava. A Colour Pocketbook*. Training program, IITA, Ibadan, Nigeria.

IITA (2000) *Project 13, Improvement of Yam-based Production Systems.* Annual Report, IITA, Ibadan, Nigeria.

IITA (2002) *Postflask Management of Cassava and Yams.* IITA Research Guide 69, Ibadan, Nigeria.

Ikotun, T. and Hahn, S.K. (1994) Screening cassava for resistance to the cassava anthracnose disease. *Acta Horticulturae* 380, 178–183.

IPGRI/IITA (1997) *Descriptors for Yam (*Dioscorea *spp.)*. International Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Ibadan, Nigeria. International Plant Genetic Resources Institute, Rome.

Irikura, Y., Cock, J.H. and Kawano, K. (1979) The physiological basis of genotype–temperature interactions in cassava. *Field Crops Research* 2, 227–239.

Irwin, S.V., Kaufusi, P., Banks, K., de la Peña, R. and Cho, J.J. (1998) Molecular characterization of taro (*Colocasia esculenta*) using RAPD markers. *Euphytica* 99(3), 183–189.

Ishida, H., Suzuno, H., Sugiyama, N., Innami, S., Tadokoro, T. and Maekawa, A. (2000) Nutritive evaluation on chemical components of leaves, stalks and stems of sweet potatoes (*Ipomoea batatas* Poir). *Food Chemistry* 68(3), 359–367.

Ivancic, A. and Lebot, V. (1999) Botany and genetics of New Caledonian wild taro, *Colocasia esculenta*. *Pacific Science* (University of Hawaii) 53(3), 273–285.

Ivancic, A. and Lebot, V. (2000) *Taro (*Colocasia esculenta*): Genetics and Breeding*. Collection '*Repères*', CIRAD, Montpellier, France.

Ivancic, A., Liloqula, R., Levela, H., Saelea, J. and Wagatora, D. (1993) Genetic resistance to Alomae–Bobone virus complex, the lethal disease of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott). In: Ferentinos, L. (ed.) *Proceedings of the Sustainable Taro Culture for the Pacific Conference*. College of Tropical Agriculture and Human Resources, University of Hawaii, Manoa, Hawaii, pp. 48–54.

Ivancic, A., Simin, A. and Tale, Y. (1996) Breeding for flowering ability and seed productivity of taro. In: Jackson, G.V.H. and Wagih, M.E. (eds) *Proceedings of the Second Taro Symposium*, 23–24 November, 1994, Faculty of Agriculture, Cenderawasih University, Manokwari, Indonesia Cenderawasih University (UNCEN) and Papua New Guinea University of Technology (UNITECH), pp. 53–57.

Ivancic A., Quero-García, J. and Lebot, V. (2003) Development of visual tools for selecting qualitative corm characteristics of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott). *Australian Journal of Agricultural Research* 54(6), 581–588.

Ivancic, A., Lebot, V., Roupsard, O., Quero-García, J. and Okpul, T. (2004a) Thermogenic flowering of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott, *Araceae*). *Canadian Journal of Botany* 82, 1557–1565.

Ivancic, A., Quero-García, J. and Lebot, V. (2004b) Genetically controlled branching corms of taro (*Colocasia esculenta*). *New Zealand Journal of Crop and Horticultural Science* 32, 167–177.

Ivancic, A., Roupsard, O., Quero-García, J., Lebot, V., Pchyla, V. and Okpul, T. (2005) Thermogenic flowering of the giant taro (*Alocasia macrorrhizos*, Araceae). *Canadian Journal of Botany* 83, 647–665.

Ivancic, A., Roupsard, O., Quero-García, J., Melteras, M., Molisale, T., Tara, S. and Lebot, V. (2008) Flowering biology and thermogenesis of *Colocasia gigantea* (Blume) Hook. f. Araceae. *Journal of Plant Research* 121, 73–82.

Jackson, D.M. and Bohac, J.R. (2007) Resistance of sweet potato genotypes to adult *Diabrotica* beetles. *Journal of Economic Entomology* 100(2), 566–572.

Jackson, G.V.H. (1980) *Diseases and Pests of Taro.* South Pacific Commission, Noumea, New Caledonia, pp. 1–51.

Jackson, G.V.H. (1981) Root crop genetic resources of Solomon Islands. In: Williams, J.T. and Creech, J.L. (eds) *Crop Genetic Resources of the Far East and the Pacific*. Funny Press, Bangkok, pp. 93–108.

Jackson, G.V.H. (1985) Storage rots of taro *Colocasia esculenta* in the British Solomon Islands. *Annals of Applied Biology* 80, 217–230.

Jackson, G.V.H. (1994) Taro and yam genetic resources in the Pacific and Asia. A report prepared for the Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research and the International Plant Genetic Research Institute, Canberra. Anutech Pty Ltd.

Jackson, G.V.H. and Linton, P.R. (1983) Evaluation (1981/82) of yam (*Dioscorea alata*) cultivars for resistance to dieback (*Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*) and studies on the collection of pana (*Dioscorea esculenta*) cultivars. Internal Report No. 12. Ministry of Agriculture, The Solomons, mimeographed.

Jackson, G.V.H. and Linton, P.R. (1984) A progress report (1982/83) on the evaluation of yam (*Dioscorea alata*) cultivars for resistance to dieback (*Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*) and studies on the collection of pana (*Dioscorea esculenta*) cultivar. Internal Report No. 15. Ministry of Agriculture, The Solomons, mimeographed.

Jackson, G.V.H. and McKenzie, E.H.C. (1991) *Sweet Potato Scab.* South Pacific Commission, Pest Advisory Leaflet No. 24, Nouméa, New Caledonia.

Jackson, G.V.H., Gollifer, D.E., Pinegar, J.A. and Newhook, F.J. (1979) The use of fungicides against postharvest decay in stored taro in the Solomon Islands. In: Plucknett, D.L. (ed.) *Small-Scale Processing and Storage of Tropical Root Crops.* Westview Tropical Agriculture Series No. 1, Boulder, Colorado, pp. 130–150.

Jackson, G.V.H., Newhook, F.J. and Winch, J. (1980) *Dieback of yam*. Advisory Leaflet No. 12. South Pacific Commission, New Caledonia.

Jackson, G.V.H., Pearson, M.N. and Zettler, F.W. (1984) *Sweet potato little leaf.* Advisory Leaflet No. 19, South Pacific Commission, Nouméa, New Caledonia.

Jackson, G.V.H., Tutua, J., Barry, I., Pitakia, T., Taro, L., Pae, S., Warita, P. and Tamasia, F. (2007) Extreme living, extreme need: a report of the 2006 Kastom Gaden assessment of the food security and livelihood potential of the weather coast of Makira, Solomon Islands. Kastom Gaden Association, Honiara, Solomon Islands (http://www.terracircle.org.au/, accessed 2008).

Janssens, M.J.J. (1984) Genotype by environment interactions of the yield components in sweet potato. In: Shideler, S.F. and Rincon, H. (eds) *Proceedings of the 6th Symposium of the International Society of Tropical Root Crops.* CIP, Lima, pp. 543–551.

Janssens, M.J.J. (1988) Achieving yield stability in sweet potato by selecting for translocation potential in adverse environments. In: Degras, L. (ed.) *Proceedings of the VIIth Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops*, Guadeloupe, French West Indies. INRA Editions, Paris, pp. 729–737.

Jaramillo, G., Morante, N., Pérez, J., Calle, F., Ceballos, H., Arias, B. and Bellotti, A.C. (2005) Diallel analysis in cassava adapted to the mid-altitude valleys environment. *Crop Science* 45(3), 1058–1063.

Jarret, R.L. and Austin, D.F. (1994) Genetic diversity and systematic relationships in sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) and related species as revealed by RAPD analysis. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 41, 165–173.

Jarrett, R.L., Salazar, S. and Fernandez, Z.R. (1984) Somatic embryogenesis in sweet potato. *Hortscience* 19, 397–398.

Jarret, R.L., Gawel, N. and Whittemore, A. (1992) Phylogenetic relationship of the sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.). *Journal of the American Society of Horticultural Science* 117, 633–637.

Jatala, P. and Bridge, J. (1990) Nematode parasites of root and tuber crops. In: Luc, M., Sikora, R.A. and Bridge, J. (eds) *Plant Parasitic Nematodes in Subtropical and Tropical Agriculture*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK, pp. 137–180.

Jean, M. and Capadocia, M. (1991) *In vitro* tuberization in *Dioscorea alata* L. 'Brazo fuerte' and 'Florido' and *D. abyssinica*. *Plant Cell, Tissue and Organ Culture* 26, 147–152.

Jennings, D.L. and Iglesias, C.A. (2002) Breeding for crop improvement. In: Hillocks, R.J., Thresh, J.M. and Bellotti, A.C. (eds) *Cassava, Biology, Production and Utilization*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK, pp. 149–166.

Joachim, R., Farant, M., Amory, R. and Osseux, J. (2003) *L'igname. Manuel du Planteur.* Chambres d'Agriculture de Guadeloupe et de Martinique, French West Indies.

John, J.L., Courtney, W.H. and Decoteau, D.R. (1993) The influence of plant growth regulators and light on microtuber induction and formation in *Dioscorea alata* L. cultures. *Plant Cell, Tissue and Organ Culture* 34, 245–252.

Jones, A. (1965) Cytological observations and fertility measurements of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.). *Proceedings of the American Society of Horticultural Science* 86, 527–537.

Jones, A. (1986) Sweet potato heritability estimates and their use in breeding. *HortScience* 21(1), 14–17.

Jones, A., Dukes, P.D. and Cuthbert, F.P. Jr (1976) Mass selection in sweet potato: breeding for resistance to insects and diseases and for horticultural characteristics. *Journal of the American Society of Horticultural Science* 101, 701–704.

Jones, O. (1969) *Manioc in Africa.* Stanford University Press, Palo Alto, California.

Jorge, V., Fregene, M., Duque, M., Bonierbale, M.W., Tohme, J. and Verdier, V. (2000) Genetic mapping of resistance to bacterial blight disease in cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz). *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 101(5/6), 865–872.

K'osambo, L.M., Carey, E.E., Misra, A.K., Wiles, J. and Hagenimana, V. (1998) Influence of age, farming site, and boiling on pro-vitamin A content in sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) storage roots. *Journal of Food Composition and Analysis* 11, 305–321.

Kang, B.T. and Wilson, J.E. (1981) Effect of mound size and fertilizer on white guinea yam (*Dioscorea rotundata*) in Southern Nigeria. *Plant and Soil* 61, 319–327.

Kartha, K.K. (1974) Regeneration of cassava plants from apical meristems. *Plant Science Letters* 2, 107–113.

Kasukabe, Y., He, L., Watake, Y., Otani, M., Shimada, T. and Tachibana, S. (2006) Improvement of environmental stress tolerance of sweet potato by introduction of genes for spermidine synthase. *Plant Biotechnology* 23(1), 75–83.

Kawano, K. (2003) Thirty years of cassava breeding for productivity – biological and social factors for success. *Crop Science* 43, 1325–1335.

Kawano, K., Alvaro, A., Daza, P. and Rios, M. (1978) Factors affecting efficiency of hybridization and selection in cassava. *Crop Science* 18(3), 373–376.

Kawano, K., Narintarapora, K., Narintarapora, P., Sarakarn, S., Limsila, A., Limsila, J., Suparhan, D., Sarawat, V. and Watananonta, W. (1998) Yield improvement in a multistage breeding program for cassava. *Crop Science* 38(2), 325–332.

Kays, S.J. and Horvat, R.J. (1984) A comparison of the volatile constituents and sugars of representative Asian, Central American and North American sweet potatoes. In: Shideler, S.F. and Rincon, H. (eds) *Proceedings of the 6th Symposium of the International Society of Tropical Root Crops.* CIP, Lima, pp. 577–586.

Kays, S.J., Magnuson, C.E. and Fares, Y. (1982) Assimilation patterns of carbon in developing sweet potates using ^{11}C and ^{14}C. In: Villareal, R.L. and Griggs, T.D. (eds) *Sweet Potato. Proceedings of the First International Symposium.* AVRDC Publication No. 82–172, Taiwan, pp. 95–118.

Kays, S.J., Wang, Y. and McLaurin, W.J. (1998) Development of alternative flavour types of sweet potato as a means of expanding consumption. *Tropical Agriculture* 75(1/2), 271–275.

Kays, S.J., Mclaurin, W.J., Wang, Y., Dukes, P.D., Thies, J., Bohac, J.R. and Jackson, D.M. (2001) GA90–16: a non-sweet, staple-type, sweet potato breeding line. *HortScience* 36(1), 175–177.

Kays, S.J., Wang, Y. and McLaurin, W.J. (2005) Chemical and geographical assessment of the sweetness of the cultivated sweet potato clones of the world. *Journal of the American Society for Horticultural Science* 130(4), 591–597.

Keating, B.A., Evenson, J.P. and Fukai, S. (1982) Environmental effects on growth and development of cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz). I. Crop development. *Field Crops Research* 5, 271–281.

Kelm, M., Bruck, H., Hermann, M. and Sattelmacher, B. (2001) Plant productivity and water use efficiency of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas*) as affected by nitrogen supply. *Program Report 1999–2000*. CIP, International Potato Centre, Lima, pp. 273–279.

Kenyon, L., Lebas, B.S.M. and Seal, S.E. (2008) Yams (*Dioscorea* spp.) from the South Pacific Islands contain many novel badnaviruses: implications for international movement of yam germplasm. *Archives of Virology* DOI 10.1007/s00705-008-0062-5.

Kim, Y.C. (1961) Effects of thermoperiodism on tuber formation in *Ipomoea batatas* under controlled conditions. *Plant Physiology* 36, 680–684.

Kimura, M., Kobori, C.M., Rodriguez-Amaya, D.B. and Nestel, P. (2007) Screening and HPLC methods in sweet potato, cassava and maize for plant breeding trials. *Food Chemistry* 100, 1734–1746.

Kimura, T., Otani, M., Noda, T., Ideta, O., Shimada, T. and Saito, A. (2001) Absence of amylose in sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) following introduction of granule-bound starch synthase I cDNA. *Plant Cell Reports* 20(7), 663–666.

Klu, G.Y.P., Asare, E.K., Blay, E.T. and Ng, S.Y.C. (2005) Effect of medium type and incubation duration on improved *in vitro* tuberization in three *Dioscorea rotundata* Poir cultivars. *Plant Genetic Resources Newsletter* (144), 24–29.

Kobayashi, M. (1984) The *Ipomoea trifida* complex closely related to sweet potato. In: Shideler, S.F. and Rincon, H. (eds) *Proceedings of the 6th Symposium of the International Society of Tropical Root Crops.* CIP, Lima, pp. 561–568.

Kokkinos, C.D. (2006) Assessment of interactions among viruses infecting sweet potato. PhD. thesis, Louisiana State University, Louisiana.

Kokoa, P. (2001) Review of sweet potato diseases in PNG. In: Bourke, R.M., Allen, M.G. and Salisbury, J.G. (eds) *Food Security for Papua New Guinea: Proceedings*. Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research (ACIAR), Canberra, pp. 730–735.

Kokubugata, G. and Konishi, T. (1999) Implication of a basic chromosome number of $x = 14$ in seven cultivars of two varieties of *Colocasia esculenta* by flourescent *in situ* hybridisation using rDNA probe. *Cytologia* 64, 77–83.

Komaki, K., Katayama, K. and Tamiya, S. (1998) Advancement of sweet potato breeding for high starch content in Japan. *Tropical Agriculture* 75(1/2), 220–223.

Kozai, T., Kubota, C., Heo, J., Chun, C., Ohyama, K., Niu, G. and Mikani, H. (1998) Towards efficient vegetative propagation and transplant production of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) under artificial light in close ecosystems. In: La Bonte, D.R., Yamashita, M. and Mochida, H. (eds) *Proceedings of International Workshop. Sweet Potato Production System Toward the 21st Century*. Kyushu National Agricultural Station, Japan, pp. 201–213.

Kreike, C.M., van Eck, H.J. and Lebot, V. (2004) Genetc diversity of taro, *Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott, in South-east Asia and the Pacific. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 109, 761–768.

Krishnan, R. and Magoon, M.L. (1977) Edible aroids – new insights into phylogeny. In: Leakey, C.L.A. (ed.) *Proceedings 3rd International Symposium on Tropical Root Crops*. IITA, Ibadan, Nigeria, pp. 58–60.

Kumagai, T., Umemura, Y., Baba, T. and Iwanaga, M. (1990) The inheritance of β-amylase null in storage roots of sweet potato, *Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 79, 369–376.

Kumar, R. (1990) Insect pests of root and tuber crops as targets for integrated pest management in tropical Africa. In: Hahn, S.K. and Caveness, F.E. (eds) *Integrated Pest Management for Tropical Root and Tuber Crops.* IITA, Nigeria, Amarin Printing Group, Bangkok, Thailand, pp. 18–23.

Kuruvilla, K.M. and Singh, A. (1981) Karyotypic and electrophoretic studies on taro and its origin. *Euphytica* 30, 405–413.

La Bonte, D.R. and Cannon, J.M. (1998) Production and utilization of sweet potato in the United States. In: La Bonte, D.R., Yamashita, M. and Mochida, H. (eds) *Proceedings of International Workshop. Sweet Potato Production System Toward the 21st Century.* Kyushu National Agricultural Station, Japan, pp. 29–32.

La Bonte, D.R., Buteler, M.I. and Villordon, A.Q. (1998) Molecular markers in sweet potato. In: La Bonte, D.R., Yamashita, M. and Mochida, H. (eds) *Proceedings of International Workshop. Sweet Potato Production System Toward the 21st Century.* Kyushu National Agricultural Station, Japan, pp. 181–191.

Lacointe, A. and Zinsou, C. (1987) Effet de la date de plantation sur la croissance et le développement de plantules d'igname (*Dioscorea alata* L.) produites par culture *in vitro*. *Agronomie* 7(7), 475–481.

Lagnaoui, A., Cisneros, F., Alcazar, J. and Morales, F. (2000) A sustainable pest management strategy for sweet potato weevil in Cuba: a success story. *Extension Bulletin, Food and Fertilizer Technology Center (FFTC)* No. 493, 1–7.

Lal, R. (1990) *Soil Erosion in the Tropics: Principles and Management*. McGraw-Hill, New York.

Larsen, A. (1984) *Notes on root crops in Vanuatu*. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations in association with the South Pacific Commission, Field Document 5, Suva, Fiji.

Lebas, B.S.M. (2002) Diversity of viruses infecting *Dioscorea* species in the South Pacific. PhD. thesis, Univerity of Greenwich, UK.

Lebot, V. (1986) Evaluation of local and introduced cultivars of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) in Vanuatu. *Journal of South Pacific Agriculture* 11(3), 25–31.

Lebot, V. (1992) Genetic vulnerability of Oceania's traditional crops. *Experimental Agriculture* 28, 309–323.

Lebot, V. (1997) Synthèse des résultats sur les plantes à tubercules en Nouvelle-Calédonie. CIRAD-Mandat, Nouméa, Nouvelle-Calédonie.

Lebot, V. (1999) Biomolecular evidence for plant domestication in Sahul. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 46, 619–628.

Lebot, V. (2002) La domestication des plantes en Océanie et les contraintes de la voie asexuée. *Journal de la Société des Océanistes* 1–2, 114–115.

Lebot, V. (2005) Taro (*Colocasia esculenta*) genetic improvement: a need for international collaboration. *Aroideana* 28, 166–173.

Lebot, V. and Aradhya, K.M. (1991) Isozyme variation in taro *Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott from Asia and Oceania. *Euphytica* 56, 55–66.

Lebot, V., Trilles, B., Noyer, J.L. and Modesto, J. (1998) Genetic relationships between *Dioscorea alata* L. cultivars. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 45, 499–509.

Lebot, V., Herail, C., Gunua, T., Pardales, J.R., Prana, M.S., Thongjiem, M. and Viet, N.V. (2003) Isozyme and RAPD variation in *Phytophthora colocasiae* Raciborski isolates from South-east Asia and Oceania. *Plant Pathology* 52, 303–313.

Lebot, V., Gunua, T., Pardales, J.R., Prana, M.S., Thongjiem, M., Viet, N.V. and Yap, T.C. (2004) Characterisation of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott) genetic resources in South-east Asia and Oceania. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 51, 381–392.

Lebot, V., Ivancic, A. and Abraham, K. (2005) The geographical distribution of allelic diversity, a practical means of preserving and using minor root crop genetic resources. *Experimental Agriculture* 41, 475–489.

Lebot, V., Malapa, R., Molisalé, T. and Marchand, J.L. (2006a) Physico-chemical characterisation of yam (*Dioscorea alata* L.) tubers from Vanuatu. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 53(6), 1199–1208.

Lebot, V., Quero-García, J. and Ivancic, A. (2006b) Comparative performance of local and introduced cultivars of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott) in Vanuatu. ISTRC Symposium, CTCRI, Trivandrum, India.

Lefèvre, F. and Charrier, A. (1993) Isozyme diversity within African *Manihot* germplasm. *Euphytica* 66, 73–80.

Leihner, D.E. (1984) Storage effects on planting material and subsequent growth and root yield of cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz). In: Shilder, F.S. and Rincón, H. (eds) *Proceedings of the Sixth Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops*, 21–26 February 1983. CIP, Lima, pp. 256–266.

Leihner, D.E. (2002) Agronomy and cropping systems. In: Hillocks, R.J., Thresh, J.M. and Bellotti, A.C. (eds) *Cassava, Biology, Production and Utilization*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK, pp. 91–113.

Leihner, D.E. and Lopez. J. (1988) Effects of different cassava cropping patterns on soil fertility, crop yields and farm income. In: Degras, L. (ed.) *Proceedings if the Seventh Symposium of the International Society of Tropical Root Crops*. Editions de l'INRA, Paris, pp. 463–474.

Léon, J. (1977) Origin, evolution and early dispersal of root and tuber crops. *4th Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops, Colombia, 1976*. Proceedings, CRDI, Ottawa, pp. 20–36.

Lewthwaite, S.L. and Triggs, C.M. (2000a) Preliminary study on sweet potato growth: I. Dry matter partitioning. *Agronomy Journal New Zealand* 30, 143–149.

Lewthwaite, S.L. and Triggs, C.M. (2000b) Weed control in sweet potatoes. *New Zealand Plant Protection* 53, 262–268.

Lewthwaite, S.L., Triggs, C.M. and Sutton, K.H. (2000) Preliminary study on sweet potato growth: II. Sugar composition of developing storage roots. *Agronomy New Zealand* 30, 151–159.

Li, L. (1982) Breeding for increased protein content in sweet potato. In: Villareal, R.L. and Griggs, T.D. (eds) *Sweet Potato. Proceedings of the First International Symposium*. AVRDC Publication No. 82-172, Taiwan, pp. 345–354.

Lin, Y.H. (1989) Relationship between trypsin-inhibitor activity and water-soluble protein and cumulative rainfall in sweetpotatoes. *Journal of the American Society of Horticultural Science* 114, 814–818.

Litz, R.E. and Concover, R.A. (1978) *In vitro* propagation of sweet potato. *HortScience* 13, 659–660.

Liu, J.R. and Cantliff, D.J. (1984) Somatic embryogenesis and plant regeneration in tissue cultures of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas*). *Plant Cell Reports* 3, 112–115.

Lla'ava, V.P. (2001) Sweet potato research in acid soils. In: Bourke, R.M., Allen, M.G. and Salisbury, J.G. (eds) *Food Security for Papua New Guinea: Proceedings*. Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research (ACIAR), Canberra, pp. 724–729.

Loomis, R.S. and Rapoport, H. (1977) Productivity of root crops. In: Cock, J., MacIntyre, R. and Graham, M. (eds) *Proceedings of the Fourth Symposium of the ISTRC*. International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, pp. 70–84.

Lozano, J.C., Toro, J.C., Castro, A., Howeler, R., Leihner, D. and Doll, J. (1981) *Field Problems in Cassava*, 2nd edn. CIAT Series No. 07EC-1. CIAT, Cali, Colombia.

Lu, G.Q. and Sh, J.L. (1990) Application of near infrared reflectance spectroscopy (NIRS) in sweet potato quality breeding. *Scientia Agricultura Sinica* 23(1), 76–81 (in Chinese with English summary).

Lu, T.J., Chen, J.C., Lin, C.L. and Chang, Y.H. (2005) Properties of starches from cocoyam (*Xanthosoma sagittifolium*) tubers planted in different seasons. *Food Chemistry* 91(1), 69–77.

Lugo, W.I., Lugo, H.M., Gonzalez, A., Rafols, N. and Almodovar, C. (1993) Tillage and fertilizer rate effects on yam yields (*D. alata*). *Journal of Agriculture of University of Puerto Rico* 77(3–4), 153–159.

Luo, H.R., Santa Maria, M., Benavides, J., Zhang, D.P., Zhang, Y.Z. and Ghislain, M. (2006) Rapid genetic transformation of sweetpotato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) via organogenesis. *African Journal of Biotechnology* 5(20), 1851–1857.

Macfarlane, R. (1987) *The* Papuana *beetles*. South Pacific Commission, Technical Bulletin No. 21, Nouméa, New Caledonia.

Macfarlane, R. and Jackson, G.V.H. (1989) *Sweet potato weevil*. Pest Advisory Leaflet 22. South Pacific Commission, Nouméa, New Caledonia.

Magoon, M.L., Krishnan, R. and Bai, K.V. (1969) Morphology of the pachytene chromosomes and meiosis in *Manihot esculenta* Crantz. *Cytologia* 34, 612–626.

Mahalakshmi, V., Ng, Q., Atolobhor, J., Ogunsola, D., Lawson, M. and Ortiz, R. (2006) Development of a West African yam *Dioscorea* spp. core collection. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* DOI 10.1007/s10722-006-9203-4.

Malapa, R. (2005) Description de la diversité de *Dioscorea alata* L. du Vanouatou à l'aide de marqueurs agro-morphologiques et moléculaires (AFLP). Relations avec les autres espèces de la section Enatiophyllum. PhD. dissertation, Ecole Nationale Supérieure Agronomique de Rennes, ENSAR, France.

Malapa, R., Arnau, G., Noyer, J.L. and Lebot, V. (2005a) Genetic diversity of the greater yam (*Dioscorea alata* L.) and relatedness to *D. nummularia* Lam. and *D. transversa* Br. as revealed with AFLP markers. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 52(7), 919–929.

Malapa R., Noyer J.L., Marchand, J.L. and Lebot, V. (2005b) Genetic relationship between *D. alata* and *D. nummularia* as revealed by AFLP. In: Motley, T.J., Zerega, N. and Cross, H. (eds) *Darwin's Harvest*. Columbia University Press, New York, pp. 239–265.

Malaurie, B., Pungu, O., Dumont, R. and Trouslot, M.F. (1993) The creation of an *in vitro* germplasm collection of yam (*Dioscorea* sp.) for genetic resources preservation. *Euphytica* 65, 113–122.

Manrique, K. and Hermann, M. (2001) Effect of G × E interaction on root yield and beta-carotene content of selected sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) varieties and breeding clones. In: *Scientist and Farmer: Partners in Research for the 21st Century. Program Report 1999–2000.* CIP, Lima, pp. 281–287.

Manrique, L.A. (1994) Nitrogen requirements of taro. *Journal of Plant Nutrition* 17(8), 1429–1441.

Mantell, S.H. and Boccon-Gibod, J. (1998) Progress towards the realisation of biotechnological tools for genetic improvement of *Dioscorea* spp. In: Berthaud, J., Bricas, N. and Marchand, J.L. (eds) *L'igname, plante séculaire et culture d'avenir.* Proceedings of the International Workshop CIRAD, INRA, IRD, CORAF held in Montpellier, France, 3–6 June 1997. Cirad Editions, France, pp. 163–180.

Mantell, S.H. and Hugo, S.A. (1989) Effect of photoperiod, minimal medium strength, inorganic ammonium, sucrose and cytokinin on root, shoot and microtuber development in shoot cultures of *Dioscorea alata* L. and *D. bulbifera* L. yams. *Plant Cell, Tissue and Organ Culture* 16, 23–37.

Mantell, S.H., Haque, S.Q. and Whitehall, A.P. (1978) Clonal multiplication of *Dioscorea alata* L. and *Dioscorea rotundata* Poir, yams by tissue culture. *Journal of Horticultural Science* 53, 95–98.

Manu, A., Lamboll, R., Dankyi, A. and Gibson, R. (2005) Cassava diversity in Ghanaian farming. *Euphytica* 144(3), 331–340.

Martin, F.W. (1982) Analysis of the incompatibility and sterility of sweet potato. In: Villareal, R.L. and Griggs, T.D. (eds) *Sweet Potato. Proceedings of the First International Symposium*. AVRDC Publication No. 82–172, Taiwan, pp. 275–284.

Martin, F.W. (1988) Genetic and physiological basis for breeding and improving the sweet potato. In: Degras, L. (ed.) *Proceedings of the VIIth Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops.* Guadeloupe, French West Indies. INRA Editions, Paris, pp. 749–762.

Martin, F.W. and Jones, A. (1971) Flowering and fertility changes in six generations of open-pollinated sweet potatoes. *American Journal of Horticultural Science* 96, 493–495.

Martin, F.W. and Jones, A. (1986) Breeding sweet potatoes. *Plant Breeding Review* 4, 313–345.

Martin, F.W. and Rhodes, A.M. (1977) Intraspecific classification of *Dioscorea alata*. *Tropical Agriculture (Trinidad)* 54, 1–13.

Martin, F.W. and Rhodes, A.M. (1978) The relationship of *Dioscorea cayenensis* and *D. rotundata*. *Tropical Agriculture (Trinidad)* 55, 193–206.

Martin, F.W., Cabanillas, E. and Guadalupe, R. (1975) Selected varieties of *Dioscorea alata* L., the Asian Greater yam. *Journal of Agriculture, University of Puerto Rico* 59(3), 165–171.

Masamdu, R.T. and Simbiken, N.A. (2004) The potential of the fungus *Metarhizium anisopliae* as a biological control agent for taro beetles. In: Guarino, L., Taylor, M. and Osborn, T. (eds) *Proceedings of the 3rd Taro Symposium*, Nadi, Fiji. Secretariat of the Pacific Community, pp. 102–106.

Mathurin, P., Vaillant, V. and Venthou-Dumaine. A. (1998) Qualitative aspects of tubers from low sugar content sweet potatoes in the West Indies. *Journal of Root Crops* 24(1), 17–24.

Matimati, I., Hungwe, E. and Murungu, F.S. (2005) Vegetative growth and tuber yields of micropropagated and farm-retained sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas*) cultivars. *Journal of Agronomy* 4(3), 156–160.

Matsuda, M. (2002) Taro, *Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott, in Eastern Asia: its geographical distribution and dispersal into Japan. Doctoral thesis, Kyoto University, Kyoto, Japan.

Matthews, P.J. (1990) The origins, dispersal and domestication of taro. PhD. thesis, Australian National University, Canberra.

Matthews, P.J. (1991) A possible tropical wildtype taro: *Colocasia esculenta* var. *aquatilis*. *Indo-Pacific Prehistory Association Bulletin* 11, 69–81.

Matthews, P.J. (2002a) *Potential of Root Crops for Food and Industrial Resources*. Twelfth Symposium of The International Society for Tropical Root Crops (ISTRC), 10–16 September 2000, Tsukuba, Japan, pp. 524–533.

Matthews, P.J. (2002b) Taro storage systems. In: Yoshida, S. and Matthews, P.J. (eds) *Vegeculture in Eastern Asia and Oceania.* JCAS Symposium Series, National Museum of Ethnology, Osaka, Japan, pp. 155–163.

Mayo, S., Bogner, J. and Boyce, P.C. (1997) *The Genera of Araceae*. Royal Botanical Gardens, Kew, UK.

McDavid, C.R. and Alamu, S. (1980) Effect of day length on the growth and development of whole plants and rooted leaves of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas*). *Tropical Agriculture* 51, 358–359.

McDonald, F.D., Alleyne, A.T., O'Garro, L.W. and Delauney, A.J. (1998) Yam anthracnose in the English speaking islands of the Eastern Caribbean: successes and research advances in disease management. *Tropical Agriculture (Trinidad)* 75(1), 53–57.

McDonald, J.A. and Austin, D.F. (1990) Changes and additions in *Ipomoea* section Batatas (Convolvulaceae). *Brittonia* 42, 116–120.

Mcharo, M., Labonte, D.R., Clark, C., Hoy, M. and Oard, J.M. (2005) Molecular marker variability for southern root-knot resistance in sweet potato. *Euphytica* 144(1/2), 125–132.

McKey, D., Digiusto, L., Pascal, L., Elias, M. and Dounias, E. (1998) Stratégies de croissance et de défense anti-herbivore des ignames sauvages: leçons pour l'agronomie. In: Berthaud, J., Bricas, N. and Marchand, J.L. (eds) *L'igname, plante séculaire et culture d'avenir. Proceedings of International Symposium*, Montpellier, France, pp. 181–188.

McMahon, J.M., White, W.L.B. and Sayre, R.T. (1995) Cyanogenesis in cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz). *Journal of Experimental Botany* 46, 731–741.

McSorley, R., Ohair, S.K. and Parrado, J.L. (1983) Nematodes of cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz). *Nematropica* 13, 261–287.

Médard, R. (1973) Morphogénèse du manioc, *Manihot esculenta* Crantz (Euphorbiaceae, Crotonoidées). Etude descriptive. *Adansonia* série 2, 13(4), 483–494.

Melteras, M.-V. (2005) Soil fertility as a factor affecting the production of yams (*Dioscorea* spp.) in Vanuatu. MPhil. thesis, School of Land and Food Sciences, University of Queensland, Brisbane, Australia.

Miano, D.W., LaBonte, D.R. and Clark, C.A. (2008) Identification of molecular markers associated with sweet potato resistance to sweet potato virus disease in Kenya. *Euphytica* 160(1), 15–24.

Miège, J. (1982) Note on the *Dioscorea cayenensis* Lam. and *D. rotundata* Poir. species. In: Miège, J. and Lyonga, S.N. (eds) *Yams. Ignames*. Oxford University Press, New York.

Miège, J. and Miège, M.N. (1954) Recherches sur la stérilité chez le manioc. *Revue de Cytologie et de Biologie Végétales* 15(3), 179–194.

Mignouna, H.D., Abang, M.M., Green, K.R. and Asiedu, R. (2001a) Inheritance of resistance in water yam (*Dioscorea alata*) to anthracnose (*Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*). *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 103, 52–55.

Mignouna, H.D., Hjukeng, P., Abang, M.M. and Asiedu, R. (2001b) Inheritance of resistance to *Yam Mosaic Virus*, genus *Potyvirus*, in white yam (*Dioscorea rotundata*). *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 103, 1196–1200.

Mignouna, H.D., Mank, R.A., Ellis, T.H.N., Bosch, N. van den, Asiedu, R., Abang, M.M. and Peleman, J. (2002a) A genetic linkage map of water yam (*Dioscorea alata*) based on AFLP markers and QTL analysis for anthracnose resistance. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 105, 726–735.

Mignouna, H.D., Mank, R.A., Ellis, T.H.N., Bosch, N. van den, Asiedu, R., Ng, S.Y.C. and Peleman, J. (2002b) A genetic linkage map of Guinea yam (*Dioscorea rotundata* Poir.) based on AFLP markers. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 105, 716–725.

Mignouna, H.D., Abang, M.M. and Asiedu, E. (2007) Yams. In: Kole, C. (ed.) *Genome Mapping and Molecular Breeding in Plants.* Vol. 3. *Pulses, Sugar and Tuber Crops.* Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg, Germany, pp. 271–296.

Mignucci, J.S., Torres-Lopez, R., Hepperly, P.R. and Ramos-Busigo, D. (1985) Field diseases of tropical yams (*Dioscorea* spp.) and their control in Puerto Rico. In: *Proceedings of the 7th Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops*. INRA, Guadeloupe, pp. 607–613.

Mihovilovich, E., Mendoza, H.A. and Salazar, L.F. (2000) Combining ability for resistance to sweet potato feathery mottle virus. *Hortscience* 35(7), 1319–1320.

Milian, M., Sanchez, I., Garcia, M., Guerra y, D. and Corrales, A. (2001) Variabilidad genética en el género *Xanthosoma* en Cuba. *Plant Genetic Resources Newsletter* 127, 11–14.

Miller, W. (1975) A synopsis of the vegetable kingdom. In: Bailey, L.H. and Miller, W. (eds) *Cyclopedia of American Horticulture* Vol. 1. Gordon Press, New York, pp. 72–73.

Misra, R.S. and Chowdhury, S.R. (1997) *Phytophthora Leaf Blight Disease of Taro*. CTCRI Technical Bulletin Series No. 21, Trivandrum, India.

Miyasaka, S.C. and Bartholomew, D.P. (1979) Calcium nutrition of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott). International Symposium on Taro and Cocoyam. Baybay, Leyte, Philippines. *International Foundation of Science (Stockholm)* 5, 239–246.

Miyasaka, S., Ogoshi, R., Tsuji, G. and Kodani, L. (2003) Site and planting date effects on taro growth: comparison with aroid model predictions. *Agronomy Journal* 95, 545–557.

Mizuki, I., Tani, N., Ishida, K. and Tsumura, Y. (2005) Development and characterization of microsatellite markers in a clonal plant, *Dioscorea japonica*, Thunb. *Molecular Ecology Notes* 5, 721–723.

Mohan, M., Nair, S., Bhagwat, A., Krishna, T., Yano, M., Bhatia, C. and Sasaki, T. (1997) Genome mapping, molecular markers and marker assisted selections in crop plants. *Molecular Breeding* 3, 87–103.

Mohandas, C. and Misra, R.E. (2005) Susceptibility of *Dioscorea alata* to root-knot nematodes. *Journal of Root Crops* 31(1), 68–69.

Mok, I.G., Zhang, D. and Carey, E.E. (1998) Sweet potato breeding strategy of CIP. In: La Bonte, D.R., Yamashita, M. and Mochida, H. (eds) *Proceedings of International Workshop. Sweet Potato Production System Toward the 21st Century.* Kyushu National Agricultural Station, Japan, pp. 9–27.

Molina, J.L. and El-Sharkawy, M.A. (1995) Increasing crop productivity in cassava by fertilizing production of planting material. *Field Crops Research* 44, 151–157.

Montenegro, Á, Avis, C. and Weaver, A. (2007) Modelling the prehistoric arrival of the sweet potato in Polynesia. *Journal of Archaeological Science* 35(2), 355–367.

Moreno, R.A. (1982) Intercropping with sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas*) in Central America. In: Villareal, R.L. and Griggs, T.D. (eds) *Sweet Potato. Proceedings of the First International Symposium*. AVRDC Publication No. 82-172, Taiwan, pp. 243–254.

Moussa, H. and Salem, A.A.E. (2006) 4CO2 fixation and translocation of photoassimilates as selection criteria of Egyptian taro genotypes. *Journal of Integrative Plant Biology* 48(5), 563–566.

Moy, J.H. and Nip, W.K. (1983) Processed food. In: Wang, J.K. (ed.) *Taro, A Review of* Colocasia esculenta *and Its Potentials.* University of Hawaii Press, Honolulu, pp. 263–268

Moy, J.H., Wang, N.T.S. and Nakayama, T.O.M. (1979) Processing of taro into dehydrated, stable intermediate products. In: Plucknett, D.L. (ed.) *Small-Scale Processing and Storage of Tropical Root Crops.* Westview Tropical Agriculture Series No. 1, Boulder, Colorado, pp. 223–248.

Mukasa, S. (2004) Genetic variability and interactions of three sweet potato viruses. PhD. thesis, Swedish University of Agricultural Sciences, Uppsala, Sweden.

Mumford, R.A. and Seal, S.E. (1997) Rapid single-tube immunocapture RT-PCR for the detection of two yam potyviruses. *Journal of Virological Methods* 69, 73–79.

Murakami, K., Kumabe, H. and Kimura, M. (2007) Effect of harvesting time and low-temperature treatment on germination of corm in taro (*Colocasia esculenta* Schott). *Horticultural Research Japan* 6(1), 125–129.

Murashige, T. and Skoog, F. (1962) A revised medium for rapid growth and bioassays with tobacco tissue culture. *Physiologia Plantarum* 15, 473–497.

Murata, T., Okada, Y., Saito, A., Kimura, T., Mori, M., Nishiguchi, M., Hanada, K., Skai, J. and Fukuoka, H. (1998) Transformation by direct gene transfer in sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.). In: La Bonte, D.R., Yamashita, M. and Mochida, H. (eds) *Proceedings of International Workshop. Sweet Potato Production System Toward the 21st Century.* Kyushu National Agricultural Station, Japan, pp. 159–181.

Mwanga, R.O., Kriegner, A., Cervantes-Flores, J.C., Zhang, D.P., Moyer, J.W. and Yencho, G.C. (2002) Resistance to sweet potato chlorotic stunt virus and sweet potato feathery mottle virus is mediated by two separate recessive genes in sweet potato. *Journal of the American Society for Horticultural Science* 127(5), 798–806.

N'Zue, B., Doumbia, S., Sangaré, A., Zohouri, P.G. and Kouame, C. (2007) An innovative ratooning technique for rapid propagation of cassava in Côte d'Ivoire. In: Ortiz, R. and Nassar, N.M.A. (eds) *Proceedings of the First International Meeting on Cassava Breeding, Biotechnology and Ecology.* Universidade de Brazilia, Brazil, pp. 143–150.

Nair, N.G. and Chandrababu, S. (1994) A slow growth medium for *in vitro* conservation of edible yams. *Journal of Root Crops* 20, 68–69.

Nair, S.G. and Unnikrishnan, M. (2007) Recent trends in cassava breeding in India. In: Ortiz, R. and Nassar, N.M.A. (eds) *Proceedings of the First International Meeting on Cassava Breeding, Biotechnology and Ecology.* Universidade de Brazilia, Brazil, pp. 37–53.

Nakamoto, Y. and Kuba, H. (2004) The effectiveness of a green light emitting diode (LED) trap at capturing the West Indian sweet potato weevil, *Euscepes postfasciatus* (Fairmaire) (Coleoptera: Cucurlionidae) in sweet potato field. *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 39(3), 491–495.

Nassar, N.M.A. (1989) Broadening the genetic base of cassava, *Manihot esculenta* Crantz by interspecific hybridization. *Canadian Journal of Plant Science* 69, 1071–1073.

Nassar, N.M.A. and Dorea, G. (1982) Protein contents of cassava cultivars and its hybrids with *Manihot* species. *Turrialba* 32, 429–432.

Ndon, B., Ndulaka, N.H. and Ndaeyo, N.U. (2003) Stabilization of yield parameters and some nutrient components in cocoyam cultivars with time in Uyo, Southeastern Nigeria. *Global Journal of Agricultural Sciences* 2(2), 74–78.

Newell, C.A., Lowe, J.M., Merryweather, A., Rooke, L.M. and Hamilton, W.D.O. (1995) Transformation of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) with *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* and regeneration of plants expressing cowpea trypsin inhibitor and snowdrop lectin. *Plant Science* 107, 215–227.

Ng, S.Y.C. (1991) *In vitro* conservation and distribution of root and tuber crop germplasm. In: Ng, N.Q., Perrino, P., Attere, F. and Zedan, H. (eds) *Crop Genetic Resources of Africa.* Vol. II. Proceedings of an International Conference, 17–20 October 1988, Ibadan, Nigeria, pp. 95–106.

Ng, S.Y.C. (1992a) Tissue culture of root and tuber crops at IITA. In: Thottappilly, G., Monti, L.M., Mohan Raj, D.R. and Moore, A.W. (eds) *Biotechnology: Enhancing Research on Tropical Crops in Africa*. CTA/IITA Co-publication. IITA, Ibadan, Nigeria, pp. 135–141.

Ng, S.Y.C. (1992b) Micropropagation of white yam (*Dioscorea rotundata* Poir.). In: Bajaj, Y.P.S. (ed.) *Biotechnology in Agriculture and Forestry*, Vol. 19. *High-Tech and Micropropagation III*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, pp. 135–159.

Ng, S.Y.C. and Ng, N.Q. (1991) Reduced-growth storage of germplasm. In: Dodds, J.D. (ed.) In vitro *Methods for Conservation of Plant Genetic Resources.* Chapman and Hall, London, pp. 11–39.

Ng, S.Y.C., Mantel, S.H. and Ng, N.Q. (1999) Biotechnology in germplasm management of cassava and yams. In: Benson, E.E. (ed.) *Plant Conservation Biotechnology*. Taylor and Francis, London, pp. 179–202.

Nishiyama, I. (1971) Evaluation and domestication of sweet potato. *Botanical Magazine (Tokyo)* 84, 377–387.

Nishiyama, I. (1975) Evolutionary autoploidy in the sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam) and its wild progenitors. *Euphytica* 24, 197–208.

Nishiyama, I. (1982) Autohexaploid evolution of the sweet potato. In: Villareal, R.L. and Griggs, T.D. (eds) *Sweet Potato. Proceedings of the First International Symposium.* AVRDC Publication No. 82–172, Taiwan, pp. 263–274.

Njintang, Y.N., Mbofung, C.M.F., Moates, G.K., Parker, M.L., Craig, F., Smith, A.C. and Waldron, W.K. (2007) Functional properties of five varieties of taro flour, and relationship to creep recovery and sensory characteristics of achu (taro-based paste). *Journal of Food Engineering* 82(2), 114–120.

Njintang, Y.N., Kesteloot, R., Blancher, G., Aboubakar, Scher, J. and Mbofung, C.M.F. (2008) Puncture and stress relaxation behaviour of taro paste as affected by moisture content and puncture rate and depth. *Journal of Food Engineering* 86(3), 349–357.

Noyer, J.L., Billot, C., Weber, P., Brottier, P., Quero-Garcia, J. and Lebot, V. (2004) Genetic diversity of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott) assessed by SSR markers. In:

Guarino, L., Taylor, M. and Osborn, T. (eds) *Third Taro Symposium*, 21–23 May 2003. Secretariat of the Pacific Community, Fiji, pp. 174–180.

Nwana, I.E. and Onochie, B.E. (1979) The technical and social problems of taro processing and storage in Nigeria. In: Plucknett, D.L. (ed.) *Small-Scale Processing and Storage of Tropical Root Crops.* Westview Tropical Agriculture Series No. 1, Boulder, Colorado, pp. 100–109.

Nweke, F.I., Okorji, E.C., Njoku, J.E. and King, D.J. (1994) Expenditures elasticities of demand for major food items in south-east Nigeria. *Tropical Agriculture* 71(3), 229–234.

Nyochembeng, L.M., Beyl, C.A. and Pacumbapa, R.P. (2007) Peroxidase activity, isozyme patterns and electrolyte leakage in roots of cocoyam infected with *Pythium myriotylum*. *Journal of Phytopathology* 155(7–8), 454–461.

Nzietchueng, S. (1988a) Le point sur le genre *Xanthosoma* (macabo): Systématique botanique et ethnobotanique. In: Degras, L. (ed.) *VIIth Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops* (Gosier – Guadeloupe, 1–6 July 1985). Proceedings. INRA, Paris, pp. 85–104.

Nzietchueng, S. (1988b) Quelques caractéristiques physiologiques de *Pythium myriotylum*, agent pathogène de la pourriture racinaire du macabo (*Xanthosoma sagittifolium*) au Cameroun. In: Degras, L. (ed.) *VIIth Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops* (Gosier – Guadeloupe, 1–6 July 1985). Proceedings. INRA, Paris, pp. 117–131.

Obigbesan, G.O. (1981) *Nutrient Requirements of Yams (*Dioscorea *species)*. Agricultural Research Bulletin 2 (1). Faculty of Agriculture and Forestry, University of Ibadan, Nigeria.

Odeku, O.A., Picker, A. and Freyer, K.M. (2007) Analysis of the material and tablet formation properties of four *Dioscorea* starches. *Starch/Starke* 59(9), 430–444.

Odu, B.O., Hughes, J.d'A., Asiedu, R., Ng, Q., Shoyinka, S.A. and Oladiran, O.A. (2004a) Responses of white yam (*Dioscorea rotundata*) cultivars to inoculation with three viruses. *Plant Pathology* 53, 141–147.

Odu, B.O., Asiedu, R., Hughes, J.,d'A., Shoyinka, S.A. and Oladiran, O.A. (2004b) Identification of resistance to yam mosaic virus (YMV), genus potyvirus in white Guinea yam (*Dioscorea rotundata* Poir.). *Field Crops Research* 89, 97–105.

Odu, B.O., Asiedu, R., Shoyinka, S.A. and Hughes, J.D'A. (2006) Screening of water yam (*Dioscorea alata* L.) genotypes for reaction to viruses in Nigeria. *Journal of Phytopathology* 154, 716–724.

Offei, S.K., Asante, I.K. and Danquah, E.Y. (2004) Genetic structure of seventy cocoyam (*Xanthosoma sagittifolium* (L.), Schott) accessions in Ghana based on RAPD. *Hereditas* 140, 123–128.

Ogburia, M.N. and Okele, K. (2001) Hybrid seed production (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) after natural and artificial pollination in a humid agroecological zone. *Acta Agronomica Hungarica* 49(4), 361–367.

Okada, Y., Saito, A., Nishiguchi, M., Kimura, T., Mori, M., Hanada, K., Sakai, J., Miyazaki, C., Matsuda, Y. and Murata, T. (2001) Virus resistance in transgenic sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) expressing the coat protein gene of sweet potato. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 103(5), 743–751.

Okada, Y., Saito, A., Nishiguchi, M., Kimura, T., Mori, M., Matsuda, Y. and Murata, T. (2002) Microprojectile bombardment-mediated transformation of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.). *SABRAO Journal of Breeding and Genetics* 34(1), 1–8.

Okeke, S.E. (1992) The correct nomenclature of the Nigerian species of *Xanthosoma* Schott (Araceae). *Botanical Journal of the Linnean Society* 110(3), 267–275.

Okogbenin, E., Porto, M.C.M., Egesi, C., Mba, C., Espinosa, E., Santos, L.G., Ospina, C., Marin, J., Barrera, E., Gutierrez, J., Ekanayake, I., Iglesias, C. and Fregene, M.A. (2007) Marker-assisted introgression of resistance to cassava mosaic disease into Latin American germplasm for the genetic improvement of cassava in Africa. *Crop Science* 47(5), 1895–1904.

Okoli, P.S.O. and Wilson, G.F. (1986) Response of cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) to shade under field conditions. *Field Crops Research* 14, 349–360.

Okpul, T. (1997) Report on taro breeding for 1996. Internal report, Bubia Agricultural Research Centre, Papua New Guinea.

Okpul, T. (2005) Effect of variety × site on corm yield, leaf blight resistance and culinary quality of seven taro, *Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott, varieties in Papua New Guinea. MSc. thesis, University of Technology, Lae, Papua New Guinea.

Okpul, T. and Ivancic, A. (1995) Study of stigma receptivity in intraspecific hybridization of taro. Paper presented at the Taro Seminar held 26–30 June 1995 at the Papua New Guinea University of Technology, Lae.

Olsen, K.M. (2004) SNPs, SSRs and inferences on cassava's origin. *Plant Molecular Biology* 56(4), 517–526.

Olsen, K.M. and Schaal, B.A. (1999) Evidence on the origin of cassava: phylogeography of *Manihot esculenta*. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences* (USA) 96, 5586–5591.

Olsen, K.M. and Schaal, B.A. (2001) Microsatellite variation in cassava and its wild relatives: further evidence for a southern Amazonian origin of domestication. *American Journal of Botany* 88, 131–142.

Onokpise, O.U., Meboka, M.M. and Eyango, A.S. (1993) Germplasm collection of macabo cocoyams in Cameroon. *African Technology Forum* 6, 28–31.

Onokpise, O.U., Wutoh, J.G., Ndzana, X., Tambong, J.T., Meboka, M.M., Sama, A.E., Nyochembeng, L., Aguegia, A., Nzietchueng, S., Wilson, J.G. and Burns, M. (1999) Evaluation of Macabo cocoyam germplasm in Cameroon. In: Janick, J. (ed.) *Perspectives on New Crops and New Uses*. ASHS Press, Alexandria, Virginia, pp. 394–396.

Onwueme, I.C. and Charles, W.B. (1994) *Tropical Root and Tuber Crops: Production, Perspectives and Future Prospects.* FAO Plant Production and Protection Paper No. 126, FAO, Rome.

Onwueme, I.C. and Haverkort, A.J. (1991) Modelling growth and productivity of yams (*Dioscorea* spp): prospects and problems. *Agricultural Systems* 36, 351–367.

Onwueme, I.C. and Johnston, M. (2000) Influence of shade on stomatal density, leaf size and other leaf characteristics in the major tropical root crops, tannia, sweet potato, yam, cassava, and taro. *Experimental Agriculture* 36, 509–516.

Onyeka, T.J., Petro, D., Etienne, S., Jacqua, G. and Ano, G. (2006a) Optimizing controlled environment assessment of levels of resistance to yam anthracnose disease using tissue culture-derived whole plants. *Journal of Phytopathology* 154(5), 286–292.

Onyeka, T.J., Petro, D., Ano, G., Etienne, S. and Rubens, S. (2006b) Resistance in water yam (*Dioscorea alata*) cultivars in the French West Indies to anthracnose disease based on tissue culture-derived whole-plant assay. *Plant Pathology* 55(5), 671–678.

Ooka, J.J. (1997) *Taro Diseases: A Guide for Field Identification*. CTAHR, University of Hawaii, Research Extension Series 148, Honolulu, Hawaii.

Ooststroom, S.J. van (1953) Convolvulaceae. In: van Steenis, C.G.G.J. (ed.) *Flora Malesiana*, Ser. 1(4). Noordhoff International Publishing, the Netherlands, pp. 388–512.

Oracion, M.Z.K., Niwa, K. and Shiotani, I. (1990) Cytological analysis of tetraploid hybrids between sweet potato and diploid *Ipomoea trifida* (H.B.K.) Don. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 80, 617–624.

Orjeda, J., Freyre, M. and Iwanaga, M. (1990) Production of 2n pollen in diploid *Ipomoea trifida*, a putative ancestor of sweet potato. *Journal of Heredity* 81(6), 462–467.

Orkwor, G.C. and Adeniji, A.A. (1998) Production constraints and available technologies for food yam (*Dioscorea* spp.) production in Nigeria. In: Berthaud, J., Bricas, N. and Marchand, J.L. (eds) *L'igname, plante séculaire et culture d'avenir. Proceedings of International Symposium*, Montpellier, France, pp. 409–414.

O'Sullivan, J. and Jenner, R. (2006) Nutrient deficiencies in greater yam and their effects on leaf nutrient concentrations. *Journal of Plant Nutrition* 29, 1663–1674.

O'Sullivan, J., Asher, C.J. and Blamey, F.P.C. (1996) Diagnostic criteria for nutrition disorders of taro. In: Craswell, E.T., Asher, C.J. and O'Sullivan, J. (eds) *Mineral Nutrient Disorders of Root Crops in the Pacific.* ACIAR Proceedings No. 65, Canberra, pp. 83–90.

O'Sullivan, J., Asher, C.J. and Blamey, F.P.C. (1997) *Nutrient Disorders of Sweet Potato*. ACIAR Monograph No. 48, Canberra.

O'Sullivan, J., Humphey, B. and Igua, P. (2001) Selecting sweet potato genotypes tolerant of specific environmental conditions. In: Bourke, R.M., Allen, M.G. and Salisbury, J.G. (eds) *Food Security for Papua New Guinea: Proceedings*. Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research (ACIAR), Canberra, pp. 689–697.

Otani, M., Wakita, Y. and Shimada, T. (2001) Genetic transformation of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) by *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*. *Acta Horticultura* 560, 193–196.

Otoo, E., Okonkwo, C.C. and Asiedu, R. (2006a) Cultivar evaluation and mega-environment investigation of *Dioscorea cayenensis* cultivars in Ghana based on the GGE biplot analysis. *Journal of Food, Agriculture and Environment* 4(3/4), 162–166.

Otoo, E., Okonkwo, C.C. and Asiedu, R. (2006b) Stability studies of hybrid yam (*Dioscorea rotundata* Poir.) genotypes in Ghana. *Journal of Food, Agriculture and Environment* 4(1), 234–238.

Otoo, J.A., Osiru, D.S.O., Ng, S.Y. and Hahn, S.K. (1987) *Improved Technology for Seed Yam Production.* International Institute of Tropical Agriculture, Ibadan, Nigeria.

Ovono, P., Kevers, C. and Dommes, J. (2007) Axillary proliferation and tuberisation of *Dioscorea cayenensis–D. rotundata* complex. *Plant Cell, Tissue and Organ Culture* 91(2), 107–114.

Oyolu, C. (1982) Inherent constraints to high productivity and low production cost in yam (*Dioscorea* spp.) with special reference to *Dioscorea rotundata* Poir. In: Miège, J. and Lyonga, S.N. (eds) *Yams, Ignames*. Oxford University Press, International Foundation for Science, Oxford, UK, pp. 147–160.

Pardales, J.R. Jr (1981) Floral morphology and biology, fruit and seed germination and seedling development of taro. *Annals of Tropical Research* 3,169–176.

Pardales, J.R. and Dalion, S.S. (1986) Methods for rapid vegetative propagation of taro. *Tropical Agriculure (Trinidad)* 63, 278–280.

Passam, H.C. (1982) Dormancy in yams in relation to storage. In: Miège, J. and Lyonga, S.N. (eds) *Yams, Ignames*. Oxford University Press, International Foundation for Science, Oxford, UK, pp. 285–293.

Patel, M.Z., Saelea, J. and Jackson, G.V.H. (1984) Breeding strategies for controlling diseases of taro in Solomon Islands. In: *Proceedings of the Sixth Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops*, 21–26 February 1983. CIP, Lima, pp. 143–149.

Peña, R.S. de la (1983) Agronomy. In: Wang, J.K. (ed.) *Taro, A Review of* Colocasia esculenta *and Its Potentials.* University of Hawaii Press, Honolulu, Hawaii, pp. 167–179.

Peña, R.S. de la and Melchor, F.M. (1993) Effects of mulching and intercropping on upland taro. In: Ferentinos, L. (ed.) *Proceedings of the Sustainable Taro Culture for the Pacific Conference*. HITAHR, University of Hawaii Research Extension Series 140, Honolulu, Hawaii, pp. 46–47.

Pereira, F.H.F., Puiatti, M. and Finger, F.L. (2005) Ornamental potential of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott) accessions. *Acta Horticulturae* 683, 307–312.

Pérez, J., Ceballos, H., Calle, F., Morante, N., Gaitan, W., Llano, G. and Alvarez, E. (2005a) Within-family genetic variation and epistasis in cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) adapted to the acid-soils environment. *Euphytica* 145 (1–2) : 77–85.

Pérez, J.C., Ceballos, H., Jaramillo, G., Morante, N., Calle, F., Arias, B. and Bellotti, A.C. (2005b) Epistasis in cassava adapted to midaltitude valley environments. *Crop Science* 45(4), 1491–1496.

Perry, L. (2002) Starch granule size and the domestication of manioc (*Manihot esculenta*) and sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas*). *Economic Botany* 56, 335–349.

Peters, D., Nguyen, T.T. and Pham, N.T. (2002) Sweet potato root silage for efficient and labor-saving pig raising in Vietnam. *AGRIPPA Peer Reviewed Journal*, FAO, June, 1–12.

Phillips, S., Briddon, R.W., Brunt, A.A. and Hull, R. (1999) The partial characterisation of badnavirus infecting the greater Asiatic or water yam (*Dioscorea alata*). *Journal of Phytopathology* 147, 265–269.

Piperno, D.R. and Holst, I. (1998) The presence of starch grains on prehistoric stone tools from the neotropics: indications of early tuber use and agriculture in Panama. *Journal of Archaeological Science* 25(8), 765–776.

Piperno, D.R. and Pearsall, D.M. (1998) *Origins of Agriculture in the Lowland Neotropics*. Academic Press, San Diego, California.

Pires, J.R., Vizzotto, C.S., Schwartz, C.A. and Nassar, N. (2007) Indigenous cassava clones as a new source of lycopene. In: Ortiz, R. and Nassar, N.M.A. (eds) *Proceedings of the First International Meeting on Cassava Breeding, Biotechnology and Ecology.* Universidade de Brazilia, Brazil, pp. 31–36.

Plucknett, D.L. (1984) Edible aroids. In: Simmonds, N.W. (ed.) *Evolution of Crop Plants*. Longman, London and New York, pp. 10–12.

Plucknett, D.L., Peña, R.S. de la and Obrero, F. (1970) Taro (*Colocasia esculenta*). *Field Crop Abstracts* 23, 413–426.

Powell, K.S., Hartemink, A.E., Egenae, J.F., Walo, C. and Poloma, S. (2001) Sweet potato weevil (*Cylas formicarius*) incidence in the humid lowlands of PNG. In: Bourke, R.M., Allen, M.G. and Salisbury, J.G. (eds) *Food Security for Papua New Guinea: Proceedings*. Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research (ACIAR), Canberra, pp. 736–745.

Prakash, C.S., He, G. and Jarret, R.L. (1996) DNA marker-based study of genetic relatedness in United States sweet potato cultivars. *Journal of the American Society of Horticultural Science* 121, 1059–1096.

Prasad, H.K. and Singh, U. (1991) Effect of photoperiod and temperature on growth and development of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott. In: Sing, U. (ed.) *Proceedings of the Workshop on Taro and Tannier Modeling.* College of Tropical Agriculture and Human Resources, Research Extension Series No. 136, University of Hawaii, Honolulu, Hawaii, pp. 29–35.

Preeti, S., Mukherjee, A. and Satapathy, M.R. (2002) Response of taro (*Colocasia esculenta*) cultivars to NK nutrition. *Journal of Root Crops* 28(1), 69–73.

Pujol, B., David, P. and McKey, D. (2005) Microevolution in agricultural environments: how a traditional Amerindian farming practice favours heterozygosity in cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz, Euphorbiaceae). *Ecology Letters* 8(2), 138–147.

Purcell, A.E., Walter, W.M., Nicholaides, J.J., Collins, W.W. and Chancy, H. (1982) Nitrogen, potassium, sulphur fertilization and protein content of sweet potato roots. *Journal of the American Society for Horticultural Science* 107, 425–427.

Purseglove, J.W. (1979) *Tropical Crops – Monocotyledons*. Longman, London.

Quenehervé, P. (1998) Les nématodes de l'igname. In: Berthaud, J., Bricas, N. and Marchand, J.L. (eds) *L'igname, plante séculaire et culture d'avenir. Proceedings of International Symposium*, Montpellier, France, pp. 193–204.

Quero-García, J., Noyer, J.L., Perrier, X., Marchand, J.L. and Lebot, V. (2004) A germplasm stratification of taro (*Colocasia esculenta*) based on agro-morphological descriptors, validation by AFLP markers. *Euphytica* 137, 387–395.

Quero-García, J., Courtois, B., Ivancic, A., Letourmy, P., Risterucci, A.M., Noyer, J.L., Feldmann, Ph. and Lebot, V. (2006a) First genetic maps and QTL studies of yield traits on taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott). *Euphytica* 151, 187–199.

Quero-García, J., Ivancic, A., Letourmy, P., Feldmann, Ph., Molisale, T. and Lebot, V. (2006b) Heritability of the main agronomic traits of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott). *Crop Science* 46, 2368–2375.

Quero-García, J., Ivancic, A. and Lebot, V. (2008) A preliminary study of the genetic diversity and sexual reproduction of the giant taro (*Alocasia macrorrhizos* (L.) G. Don, Araceae). *New Zealand Journal of Botany* 46, 189–203.

Raffaillac, J.P. (1992) Enracinement de la bouture de manioc (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) au cours des premières semaines de croissance. *L'Agronomie Tropicale* 46, 273–281.

Rajapakse, S., Nilmagoda, D.S., Molnar, M., Ballard, E.R., Austin, R.J. and Bohac, R.J. (2004) Phylogenetic relationships of the sweet potato in *Ipomoea* series Batatas (Convolvulaceae) based on β-amylase gene sequences. *Molecular Phylogenetic and Evolution* 30, 623–632.

Rajendran, P.G., Ravindran, C.S., Nair, S.G. and Nayar, T.V.R. (2000) *True Cassava Seeds (TCS) for Rapid Spread of the Crop in Non-traditional Areas.* Central Tuber Crops Research Institute, CTCRI, Trivandrum, Kerala, India.

Rajendran, P., Mohan, C. and Sreekumar, J. (2005) Standardisation of true cassava seed (TCS) programme with special emphasis on more homogeneous, CMD resistant progenies. *Euphytica* 142(1–2), 13–22.

Ramachandran, K. (1978) Cytological studies on South Indian Araceae. *Cytologia* 43, 289–303.

Ramirez, H., Hussain, A., Roca, W. and Bushuk, W. (1987) Isozyme electrophoregrams of sixteen enzymes in five tissues of cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) varieties. *Euphytica* 36, 39–48.

Ramser, J., Lopez-Peralta, C., Wetzel, R., Weising, K. and Kahl, G. (1996) Genomic variation and relationships in aerial yam (*Dioscorea bulbifera* L.) detected by random amplified polymorphic DNA. *Genome* 39, 17–25.

Ramsey, M.D., Vawdrey, L.L. and Hardy, J. (1988) Scab (*Sphaceloma batatas*) a new disease of sweet potato in Australia: fungicide and cultivar evaluation. *Australian Journal of Experimental Agriculture* 28, 137–141.

Rao, R. and Campilan, D. (eds) (2002) *Exploring the Complementarities of* Ex Situ *and* In Situ *Conservation Strategies for Asian Sweet Potato Genetic Resources.* Proceedings of the 3rd International Workshop of the Asian Network of Sweet Potato Genetic Resources (ANSWER). IPGRI-APO, Serdang, Malaysia.

Rao, V.R. (1996) Taro genetic resources. In: Jackson, G.V.H. and Wagih, M.E. (eds) *Proceedings of the Second Taro Symposium*, 23–24 November 1994, Faculty of Agriculture, Cenderawasih University, Manokwari, Indonesia. Cenderawasih University (UNCEN) and Papua New Guinea University of Technology (UNITECH), pp. 19–28.

Ravi, V. and Aked, J. (1996) Review on tropical root and tuber crops. II. Physiological disorders in freshly stored roots and tubers. *Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition* 36(7), 711–731.

Ravi, V. and Suryakumari, S. (2005) Novel technique to increase the shelf life of cassava (*Manihot esculenta*) stems stored for propagation. *Advances in Horticultural Science* 19(3), 123–129.

Ravi, V., Aked, J. and Balagopalan, C. (1996) Review on tropical root and tuber crops. I. Storage methods and quality changes. *Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition* 36(7), 661–709.

Rees, D., Kapinga, R., Rwiza, E., Mohammed, R., van Oirschot, Q., Carey, E. and Westby, A. (1998) The potential for extending the shelf-life of sweet potato in East Africa through cultivar selection. *Tropical Agriculture* 75(1/2), 208–211.

Resende, A.G., Filho, P.S.V. and Machado, M.F.P.S. (2000) Isozyme diversity of cassava cultivars (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz). *Biochemical Genetics* 38, 203–216.

Reyes, C.G., Nyman, M. and Rönneberg-Wästljung, W. (2005) Agronomic performance of three cocoyam (*Xanthosoma violaceum* Schott) genotypes grown in Nicaragua. *Euphytica* 142(3), 265–272.

Reyes, C.G., Rönneberg-Wästljung, A.C. and Nyman, M. (2006) Comparison of field performance between dasheen mosaic virus-free and virus-infected *in vitro* plants of cocoyam (*Xanthosoma* spp.) in Nicaragua. *Experimental Agriculture* 42, 301–310.

Richard, J.E. (1985) Physiological deterioration of cassava roots. *Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture* 36, 167–176.

Richard, J.E. and Coursey, D.G. (1981) Cassava storage, part 1: storage of fresh cassava roots. *Tropical Science* 23, 1–32.

Richard, J.E., Asaoke, M. and Blanshard, J.M.V. (1991) The physico-chemical properties of cassava starch. *Tropical Science* 31, 189–207.

Riley, C.K., Wheatley, A.O. and Asemota, H.N. (2006) Isolation and characterization of starches from eight *Dioscorea alata* cultivars grown in Jamaica. *African Journal of Biotechnology* 5(17), 1528–1536.

Roa, A.C., Maya, M.M., Duque, M.C., Tohme, J., Allem, A.C. and Bonierbale, M.W. (1997) AFLP analysis of relationships among cassava and other *Manihot* species. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 95, 741–750.

Robin, G.C. (2004) Taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott var. *esculenta*): production, constraints and research in Dominica and other Caribbean countries. In: Guarino, L., Taylor, M. and Osborn, T. (eds) *Proceedings of the 3rd Taro Symposium*, Nadi, Fiji. Secretariat of the Pacific Community, pp. 163–169.

Rodiguez-Manzano, A., Rodriguez-Nodals, A.A., Castiñeiras-Alfonso, L., Fundora-Mayor, Z. and Rodriguez-Manzano, A. (2004) Taro production, constraints and research in Cuba. In: Guarino, L., Taylor, M. and Osborn, T. (eds) *Proceedings of the 3rd Taro Symposium*, Nadi, Fiji. Secretariat of the Pacific Community, pp. 155–162.

Rogers, D.J. (1965) Some botanical and ethnological considerations on *Manihot esculenta*. *Economic Botany* 19(4), 369–377.

Rogers, D.J. and Appan, S.G. (1973) *Manihot* and *Manihotoides* (Euphorbiaceae), a computer-assisted study. *Flora Neotropica. Monograph No. 13.* Hafner Press, New York.

Rogers, S. and Iosefa, T. (1993) Potentials for shade management in agroforestry systems for taro cropping. In: Ferentinos, L. (ed.) *Proceedings of the Sustainable Taro Culture for the Pacific Conference*. HITAHR, University of Hawaii, Research Extension Series No. 140, pp. 62–65.

Rossel, G., Kriegner, A. and Zhang, D.P. (2001) From Latin America to Oceania: the historic dispersal of sweet potato re-examined using AFLP. In: *Scientist and Farmer: Partners in Research for the 21st Century.* Program Report 1999–2000. CIP, Lima, pp. 315–321.

Rousselle, P., Robert, Y. and Crosnier, J.C. (eds) (1996) *La pomme de terre: production, amélioration, ennemis et maladies, utilisations.* INRA Editions, Paris.

Sadik, S. (1976) Methods of seed germination and seedling establishment of yam *Dioscorea rotundata* Poir. *Technical Report No. 1*. IITA, Ibadan, Nigeria,

Sahoo, M.R., Dasgupta, M., Mukherjee, A., Sahu, A.K. and Kole, P.C. (2005) *In vitro* screening and characterization of taro for *Phytophthora* leaf blight disease. *Journal of Mycopathological Research* 43(1), 87–90.

Sahoo, M.R., Madhumita, D. and Mukherjee, A. (2006) Effect of *in vitro* and *in vivo* induction of polyethelene glycol-mediated osmotic stress on hybrid taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott). *Annals of Tropical Research* 28(2), 1–11.

Sahoo, M.R., Kole, P., Madhumita, D. and Archana, M. (2007a) Photosynthetic response of taro (*Colocasia esculenta* (L.) Schott) to salinity stress. *Orissa Journal of Horticulture* 35(1), 86–91.

Sahoo, M.R., Dasgupta, M., Kole, P.C., Bhat, J.S. and Mukherjee, A. (2007b) Antioxidative enzymes and isozymes analysis of taro genotypes and their implications in *Phytophthora* blight disease resistance. *Mycopathologia* 163(4), 241–248.

Saifu Islam, A.F.M., Kubota, C., Takagaki, M. and Kozai, T. (2002) Sweet potato growth and yield from plug transplants of different volumes, planted intact or without roots. *Crop Science* 42(3), 822–826.

Sajjapongse, A. and Roan, Y.C. (1982) Physical factors affecting root yield of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.). In: Villareal, R.L. and Griggs, T.D. (eds) *Sweet Potato. Proceedings of the First International Symposium*. AVRDC Publication No. 82–172, Taiwan, pp. 203–208.

Salda, V.B., Ramsden, L., Sun, M. and Corke, H. (1998) Genetic variation in physical properties of flour from selected Asian yams (*Dioscorea* spp.). *Tropical Agriculture (Trinidad)* 75(2), 212–216.

Sangakkara, U.R. (1990) Response of cocoyam (*Xanthosoma sagittifolium*) to rate and time of application of potassium fertilizer. In: *Proceedings of the Eighth Symposium of the ISTRC*, Bangkok, Thailand, pp. 654–660.

Sangaré, A., Deng, D., Fauquet, C.M. and Beachy, R.N. (1999) Resistance to African cassava mosaic virus conferred by mutant putative NTP-binding domain of the Rep gene (AC1) in *Nicotiana bethamiana*. *Molecular Biology Reports* 5, 95–102.

Sanni, L.O., Adelaja, M.A., Okechukwu, R.U., Ezedinma, C., Patino, M., Akoroda, M.O., Maziya-Dixon, B., Lemchi, J., Ilona, P., Okoro, E., Tarawali, G., Awodeyi, T., Bamkefa, B., Nnaji, N., Ogbe, F., Dixon, A.G.O. and Ozigi, A. (2006) *Catalogue of postharvest equipment for cassava processing*. IITA, Ibadan, Nigeria.

Sant, R., Taylor, M. and Tyagi, A. (2006) Cryopreservation of *in vitro*-grown shoot-tips of tropical taro (*Colocasia esculenta* var. *esculenta*) by vitrification. *Cryoletters* 27, 133–142.

Sant, R., Panis, B., Taylor, M. and Tyagi, A. (2008) Cryopreservation of shoot-tips by droplet vitrification applicable to all taro (*Colocasia esculenta* var. *esculenta*) accessions. *Plant Cell, Tissue and Organ Culture* 92(1), 107–111.

Sar, S.A., Wayi, B.M. and Ghodake, R.D. (1998) Review of research in Papua New Guinea for sustainable production of taro (*Colocasia esculenta*). *Tropical Agriculture (Trinidad)* 75(1), 134–139.

Sardos, J., Malapa, R., McKey, D., Noyer, J.L. and Lebot, V. (2006) Genetic diversity of cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) introduced in the oceanic islands of Vanuatu, Melanesia, South Pacific. *14th Triennal Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops* (ISTRC), November 2006, CTCRI, Kerala, India.

Sasaki, O., Moriyama, H., Yoshida, K. and Tedaka, J. (2005) The morphology of the sweet potato canopy and its varietal differences. *Bulletin of the Faculty of Agriculture, Kagoshima University* 55, 1–6.

Sastrapradja, S. (1982) *Dioscorea alata*: its variation and importance in Java, Indonesia. In: Miège, J. and Lyonga, S.N. (eds) *Yams, Ignames*. Clarendon Press, Oxford, UK, pp. 45–49.

Sastrapradja, S., Hambali, G.G. and Prana, T.K. (1984) Edible *Amorphophallus* and its related species in Indonesia. In: Chandra, S. (ed.) *Edible Aroids.* Clarendon Press, Oxford, UK, pp. 17–23.

Sato, D.M., Beardsley, J. and Hara, A. (1990) Taro root aphid. In: Hollyer, J.R. and Sato, D.M. (eds) *Proceedings of Taking Taro Into the 1990s: A Taro Conference.* CTAHR, University of Hawaii, Research Extension Series No. 114. Honolulu, Hawaii, pp. 49–50.

Scarcelli, N., Tostain, S., Mariac, C., Agbangla, D., Berthaud, J. and Pham, J.L. (2005a) Genetic nature of yams (*Dioscorea* sp.) domesticated by farmers in Benin (West Africa). *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 53(1), 121–130.

Scarcelli, N., Dainou, O., Agbangla, C., Tostain, S. and Pham, J.L. (2005b) Segregation patterns of isozyme loci and microsatellite markers show the diploidy of African yam *Dioscorea rotundata* (2n=40). *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 111(2), 226–233.

Scarcelli, N., Tostain, S., Vigouroux, Y., Agbangla, C., Dainou, O. and Pham, J.L. (2006) Farmers' use of wild relative and sexual reproduction in a vegetatively propagated crop: the case of yam in Benin. *Molecular Ecology* 15(9), 2421–2431.

Schaal, B.A., Olsen, K.M. and Carvalho, L.J.C.B. (2006) Evolution, domestication and agrobiodiversity in the tropical cassava. In: Motley, T.J., Zerega, N. and Cross, H.

(eds) *Darwin's Harvest, New Approaches to the Origins, Evolution and Conservation of Crops*. Columbia University Press, New York, pp. 269–284.

Schnell, R.J., Goenaga, R. and Olano, C.T. (1999) Genetic similarities among cocoyam cultivars based on random amplified polymorphic DNA (RAPD) analysis. *Scientific Horticulturae* 80, 267–276.

Scott, G.J., Rosegrant, M.W. and Ringler, C. (2000) *Roots and Tubers for the 21st Century: Trends, Projections and Policy Options.* Food, Agriculture and the Environment. Discussion Paper 31. IFPRI-CIP, Washington, DC.

Sen, S., Bhattacharya, A., Mazumdar, D., Sen, H., Das, A.K. and Pal, S. (2005) Nutrient and antinutrient composition of cormels of *Colocasia esculenta* var. *antiquorum*. *Journal of Vegetable Science* 11(4), 17–33.

Shaw, D.E. (1975) Illustrated notes on flowering, flowers, seed and germination in taro *Colocasia esculenta*. *Papua New Guinea Department of Agriculture Stock and Fisheries Research Bulletin* 13, 39–59.

Shaw, D.E. (1984) *Microorganisms in Papua New Guinea*. Research Bulletin, No. 33. Department of Primary Industry, Port Moresby.

Shih, S.F., O'Hair, S.K. and Snyder, G.H. (1988) Using leaf dry biomass to improve taro (*Colocasia esculenta*) production system. In: Degras, L. (ed.) *Proceedings of the VIIth Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops*. INRA, Paris, pp. 69–84.

Shiotani, I. (1987) Genomic structure and the gene flow in sweet potato and related species. In: Gregory, P. (ed.) *Exploration, Maintenance and Utilization of Sweet Potato Genetic Resources.* Report of the 1st Sweet Potato Planning Conference, CIP, Lima, pp. 61–73.

Shiotani, I. and Kawase, T. (1987) Synthetic hexaploids derived from wild species related in *Ipomoea trifida*. *Japan Journal of Breeding* 39, 57–66.

Shiotani, I., Huang, Z.Z., Sakamoto, S. and Miyazaki, T. (1991) The role of the wild *Ipomoea trifida* germplasm in sweet potato breeding. In: Ofori, F. and Hahn, S.K. (eds) *Tropical Root Crops in A Developing Economy*. Proceedings of the 9th Symposium of the ISTRC, 20–26 October 1991, Accra, Ghana, pp. 368–398.

Shiwachi, H., Ayankanmi, T. and Asiedu, R. (2005a) Effect of photoperiod on the development of inflorescences in white Guinea yam (*Dioscorea rotundata*). *Tropical Science* 45(3), 126–130.

Shiwachi, H., Kikuno, H. and Asiedu, R. (2005b) Mini tuber production using yam (*Dioscorea rotundata*) vines. *Tropical Science* 45(4), 163–169.

Shreen, K.E. and Pace, R.D. (2002) Nutritional assessment of transgenic sweet potato on body weight, lipid and protein status in hamsters. *Journal of Environmental Science and Health*, B, 37(1), 93–101.

Silvestre, P. (1987) *Manuel pratique de la culture du manioc.* Editions Maisonneuve et Larose, Paris.

Silvestre, P. and Arraudeau, M. (1983) *Le Manioc.* Editions Maisonneuve et Larose, Paris.

Simin, A., Ivancic, A., Okpul, T., Ososo, E.K. and Maima, J. (1995) Relationship between yield components and other important plant characteristics of taro (*Colocasia esculenta*). Paper presented at the Taro Seminar, 26–30 June 1995, Papua New Guinea University of Technology, Lae, Papua New Guinea.

Siritunga, D., Arias-Garzón, D., White, W. and Sayre, R. (2004) Over-expression of hydroxunitrile lyase in transgenic cassava roots accelerates cyanogenesis and food detoxification. *Plant Biotechnology Journal* 2, 37–43.

Sivan, P. (1984) Review of taro research and production in Fiji. In: Chandra, S. (ed.) *Edible Aroids.* Clarendon Press, Oxford, UK, pp. 52–63.

Snyder, V.A. and Lugo, W.I. (1980) Soil moisture related stresses affecting aroid development. In: Sing, U. (ed.) *Proccedings of the Workshop on Taro and Tannier Modeling.* College of Tropical Agriculture and Human Resources, Research Extension Series No. 136, University of Hawaii, Honolulu, Hawaii, pp. 21–28.

Spath, C.D. (1973) Plant domestication: a case of *Manihot esculenta*. *Journal of the Steward Anthropological Society* 5, 45–67.

Spriggs, M. (1981) Vegetable kingdoms: taro irrigation and Pacific prehistory. PhD. thesis, Australian National University, Canberra.

SPYN (2003) *Yam: Cultivar Selection for Disease Resistance and Commercial Potential in the Pacific Islands.* EU-INCO-DC Project Final Report, Cirad, Montpellier, France.

Sreekumari, M.T. (1994) Evaluation of teraploids (short report). In: *Annual Report 1993–94*. Central Tuber Crops Research Institute, Thiruvananthapuram, Kerala, India, p. 41.

Sreekumari, M.T. (1997) Cytological studies in taro – a review. *Journal of Root Crops* 23(1), 1–7.

Sreekumari, M.T. and Abraham, K. (2005) Occurrence of albino seedlings in elephant foot yam. *Journal of Root Crops* 31(1), 61–62.

Sreekumari, M.T., Jos, J.S. and Nair, S.G. (1999) '*Sree Harsha*': a superior triploid hybrid in cassava. *Euphytica* 106, 1–6.

Sreekumari, M.T., Abraham, K. and Nair, S.G. (2000) *Triploidy Breeding in Cassava*. CTCRI, Technical Bulletin Series 30, Trivandrum, India.

Sreekumari, M.T., Abraham, K., Edison, S. and Unnikrishnan, M. (2004) Taro breeding in India. In: Guarino, L., Taylor, M. and Osborn, T. (eds) *Proceedings of the 3rd Taro Symposium*, Nadi, Fiji. Secretariat of the Pacific Community, pp. 202–207.

Sriroth, K., Piyachomkwan, K., Santisopasri, V. and Oates, C.G. (2001) Environmental conditions during root development: drought constraint on cassava starch quality. *Euphytica* 120(1), 95–101.

Srisuwan, S., Sihachakr, D. and Siljak-Yakovlev, S. (2006) The origin and evolution of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* Lam.) and its wild relatives through the cytogenetic approaches. *Plant Science* 171, 424–433.

Stathers, T., Namanda, S., Mwanga, R.O.M., Khisa, G. and Kapinga, R. (2005) *Manual for Sweet Potato Integrated Production and Pest Management for Farmer Field Schools in Sub-Saharan Africa.* International Potato Centre, CIP, Kampala.

Suda, I., Oki, T., Masuda, M., Kobayashi, M., Nishiba, Y. and Furuta, S. (2003) Physiological functionality of purple-fleshed sweet potatoes containing anthocyanins and their utilization in foods. *Japan Agricultural Research Quaterly* 37(3), 167–173.

Sugiyama, N., Santosa, E., Lee, O.N., Hikosaka, S. and Nakata, M. (2006) Classification of elephant foot yam (*Amorphophallus paeoniifolius*) cultivars in Java using AFLP markers. *Japanese Journal of Tropical Agriculture* 50(4), 215–218.

Suja, G., Nayar, T.V.R. and Sreekumar, J. (2000) Dry matter accumulation and partitioning in certain *Dioscorea* species. *Journal of Root Crops* 26, 50–56.

Sunell, L.A. and Arditti, J. (1983) Physiology and phytochemistry. In: Wang, J.K. (ed.) *Taro, A Review of* Colocasia esculenta *and Its Potentials.* University of Hawaii Press, Honolulu, Hawaii, pp. 34–139.

Susan John, K., Suja, G., Edison, S. and Ravindran, C.S. (2006) *Nutritional Disorders in Tropical Tuber Crops*. Technical Bulletin Series 48. CTCRI, Trivandrum, India.

Sweetmore, A., Simons, S.A. and Kenwards, M. (1994) Comparison of disease progress curves for yam anthracnose (*Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*). *Plant Pathology* 43, 206–215.

Szabados, L., Hoyos, R. and Roca, W.M. (1987) *In vitro* somatic embryogenesis and plant regeneration of cassava. *Plant Cell Report* 6, 248–251.

Tairo, F. (2006) Molecular resolution of genetic variability of major sweet potato viruses and improved diagnosis of potyviruses co-infecting sweet potato. PhD. thesis, Swedish University of Agricultural Sciences, Uppsala, Sweden.

Tambong, J.T., Ndzana, J.G., Wutoh, J.G. and Dadson, R. (1997) Variability and germplasm loss in the Cameroon national collection of cocoyam (*Xanthosoma sagittifolium* Schott (L.)). *Plant Genetic Resources Newsletter* 112, 49–54.

Tambong, J.T., Sapra, V.T. and Garton, S. (1998) *In vitro* induction of tetraploids in colchicine treated cocoyam plantlets. *Euphytica* 104, 191–197.

Tamiru, M., Becker, H.C. and Maass, B.L. (2007) Genetic diversity in yam germplasm from Ethiopia and their relatedness to the main cultivated *Dioscorea* species assessed by AFLP markers. *Crop Science* 47(4), 1744–1750.

Tanimoto, T. and Matsumoto, T. (1986) Variations of morphological characters and isozyme patterns in Japanese cultivars of *Colocasia esculenta* Schott and *C. gigantea* Hook. *Japan Journal of Breeding* 36, 100–111.

Taylor, M., Tuia, V., Sant, R., Lesione, E., Prasad, R., Prasad, R.L. and Vosaki, A. (2004) Using *in vitro* techniques for the conservation and utilization of *Colocasia esculenta* var. *esculenta* (taro) in a regional genebank. In: Guarino, L., Taylor, M. and Osborn, T. (eds) *Proceedings of the 3rd Taro Symposium*, Nadi, Fiji. Secretariat of the Pacific Community, pp. 69–73.

Taylor, N., Chavarriaga, P., Raemakers, K., Siritunga, D. and Zhang, P. (2004) Development and application of transgenic technologies in cassava. *Plant Molecular Biology* 56, 671–688.

Tekalign, T. (2007) Genotype × environment interaction for root yield of elite sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L) lam.) genotypes. *South African Journal of Plant and Soil* 24(3), 144–146.

Templeton-Somers, K.M. and Collins, W.W. (1988) *In vitro* growth and regeneration characteristics of diverse populations of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.). In: Degras, L. (ed.) *Proceedings of the VIIth Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops*, Guadeloupe, French West Indies. INRA Editions, Paris, pp. 781–796.

Terauchi, R., Terachi, T. and Tsunewaki, K. (1991) Intraspecific variation of chloroplast DNA in *Dioscorea bulbifera* L. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 81, 461–470.

Terauchi, R., Chikaleke, V.A., Thottappilly, G. and Hahn, S.K. (1993) Origin and phylogeny of Guinea yams as revealed by RFLP analysis of chloroplast DNA. *IITA Research* 6, 1–6.

Thouvenel, J.C. and Dumont, R. (1990) Perte de rendement de l'igname infectée par le virus de la mosaique en Côte d'Ivoire. *L'Agronomie Tropicale* 45, 125–129.

Thung, M. and Cock, J.H. (1979) Multiple cropping cassava and field beans: status of present work at the International Center of Tropical Agriculture (CIAT). In: Weber, C.J., Toro, J.C. and Graham, M. (eds) *Proceedings of a Workshop on Cassava Cultural Practices*, Salvador, Bahia, Brazil. IDRC Series No. 151, Ottawa, pp. 7–16.

Ting, C.Y. and Kehr, E.A. (1953) Meiotic studies in the sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* Lam.). *Journal of Heredity* 34, 207–211.

Tongglum, A., Suriyapan, P. and Howeler, R.H. (2001) Cassava agronomy research and adoption of improved practices in Thailand. In: *Cassava's Potential in Asia in the 21st Century: Present Situation and Future Research and Development Needs.* Proceedings of the Sixth Regional Workshop, 21–25 February, Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam. CIAT, Bangkok, pp. 228–258.

Tör, M., Ainsworth, C. and Mantell, S.H. (1993) Stable transformation of the food yam *Dioscorea alata* L. by particle bombardment. *Plant Cell Reports* 12, 468–473.

Tör, M., Twyford, C.T., Funes, I., Boccon-Gibod, J., Ainsworth, C.C. and Mantell, S.H. (1998) Isolation and culture of protoplasts from immature leaves and embryogenic cell suspensions of *Dioscorea* yams: tools for transient gene expression studies. *Plant Cell Tissue and Organ Culture* 53, 113–126.

Toro, J.C. and Atlee, C. (1980) Agronomic practice for cassava production. In: Weber, C.J., Toro, J.C. and Graham, M. (eds) *Proceedings of a Workshop on Cassava Cultural Practices*, Salvador, Bahia, Brazil. IDRC Series No. 151, Ottawa, pp. 138–152.

Tostain, S., Scarcelli, N., Brottier, P., Marchand, J.L., Pham, J.L. and Noyer, J.L. (2006) Development of DNA microsatellite markers in tropical yam (*Dioscorea* sp.). *Molecular Ecology Notes* 6, 173–175.

Tostain, S., Agbangla, C., Scarcelli, N., Mariac, C., Dainou, O., Berthaud, J. and Pham, J.L. (2007) Genetic diversity analysis of yam cultivars (*Dioscorea rotundata* Poir.) in Benin using simple sequence repeat (SSR) markers. *Plant Genetic Resources: Characterization and Utilization* 5(2), 71–81.

Trèche, S. (1998) Valeur nutritionnelle des ignames. In: Berthaud, J., Bricas, N. and Marchand, J.L. (eds) *L'igname, plante séculaire et culture d'avenir. Proceedings of International Symposium*. Editions CIRAD, Montpellier, France, pp. 305–331.

Tschannen, A.B., Escher, F. and Stamp, P. (2005) Postharvest treatment of seed tubers with gibberellic acid and field performance of yam (*Dioscorea cayenensis-rotundata*) in Ivory Coast. *Experimental Agriculture* 41, 175–186.

Ugent, D., Pozorski, S. and Pozorski, T. (1981) Prehistoric remains of the sweet potato from the Casma Valley of Peru. *Phytologia* 49(5), 401–415.

Ugent, D., Pozorski, S. and Pozorski, T. (1986) Archaeological manioc (*Manihot*) from coastal Peru. *Economic Botany* 40(1), 78–102.

Ukoskit, K. and Thompson, P.G. (1997) Autoploidy vs. allopolyploidy and low density randomly amplified polymorphic DNA linkage maps of sweetpotato. *Journal of the American Society of Horticultural Science* 122, 822–828.

Ukoskit, K., Thompson, P.G. and Watson, C.E. (1997) Identifying a randomly amplified polymorphic DNA (RAPD) marker linked to a gene for root-knot resistance in sweet potato. *Journal of the American Society of Horticultural Science* 122, 818–821.

Umanah, E.E. and Hartmann, R.W. (1973) Chromosome numbers and karyotypes of some *Manihot* species. *Journal of the American Society of Horticulture Science* 98, 272–274.

Urbino, C., Boussalem, M., Pinel, A., Fargette, D. and Dubern, J. (1998) Les virus de l'igname: caractérisation immunologique et moléculaire du virus de la mosaïque de l'igname. In: Berthaud, J., Bricas, N. and Marchand, J.L. (eds) *L'igname, plante séculaire et culture d'avenir. Proceedings of International Symposium*. Editions CIRAD, Montpellier, France, pp. 205–211.

Van Wijmeersch, P. (1986) *Root crops production in Tonga*. Field Document 13. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations in association with the South Pacific Commission, Suva, Fiji.

Van Wijmeersch, P. (2001) The status of sweet potato variety evaluation in PNG and recommendations for further research. In: Bourke, R.M., Allen, M.G. and Salisbury, J.G. (eds) *Food Security for Papua New Guinea: Proceedings*. Australian Centre for International Agricultural Research (ACIAR), Canberra, pp. 674–682.

Van Wijmeersch, P. and Bule, F. (1988) *Research and development of root crops in Vanuatu*. TCP/VAN/4403 and 6652. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Santo, Vanuatu.

Verdier, V., Dongo, P. and Boher, B. (1993) Assessment of genetic diversity among strains of *Xanthomonas campestris* pv. *manihotis*. *Journal of General Microbiology* 169, 2591–2601.

Villordon, A.Q. and La Bonte, D.R. (1995) Variation in random amplified DNA markers and storage root yield in sweet potato cv. *Jewel* clones. *Journal of the American Society of Horticultural Science* 120, 734–740.

Villordon, A.Q. and La Bonte, D.R. (1996) Genetic variation among sweet potatoes propagated through nodal and adventitious sprouts. *Journal of the American Society of Horticultural Science* 121, 170–174.

Wang, H. (1982) The breeding of sweet potatoes for human consumption. In: Villareal, R.L. and Griggs, T.D. (eds) *Sweet Potato. Proceedings of the First International Symposium*. AVRDC Publication No. 82–172, Taiwan, pp. 297–311.

Wenham, J.E. (1995) *Postharvest deterioration of Cassava, A Biotechnology Perspective.* FAO Plant Production and Protection Paper 130, FAO, Rome.

Westby, A. (2002) Cassava utilization, storage and small-scale processing. In: Hillocks, R.J., Thresh, J.M. and Bellotti, A.C. (eds) *Cassava, Biology, Production and Utilization*. CAB International, Wallingford, UK, pp. 281–300.

Willis, J.C. (1955) *A Dictionary of the Flowering Plants and Ferns.* University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Wilson, G.L. and Averre, C.W. (1989) *Growing and Marketing Quality Sweet Potatoes*. North Carolina Agricultural Extension Service, Publication No. AG-09, North Carolina State University, Raleigh, North Carolina.

Wilson, J.E. (1982) Progress in the breeding of yam, *Dioscorea* spp. In: Miège, J. and Lyonga, S.N. (eds) *Yams, Ignames*. Oxford University Press, International Foundation for Science, Oxford, UK, pp. 17–22.

Wilson, J.E. (1984) Cocoyam. In: *The Physiology of Tropical Field Crops*. John Wiley and Sons, pp. 589–605.

Wilson, J.E. (1989) *Taro Breeding*. IRETA Agro-Facts Publication No. 3/89, Western Samoa.

Wilson, J.E. and Cable, W.J. (1984) Promotion of flowering, seed production and seedling screening in minor edible aroids. In: *Proceeedings of the 6th Symposium of the International Society for Tropical Root Crops*, 21–26 February 1983. CIP, Lima, pp. 151–156.

Wilson, J.E., Pole, F.S., Smith, N.E.J.M. and Taufatofua, P. (1989) *Sweet Potato Breeding*. IRETA-USP Agro-Facts Publication, Western Samoa.

Wilson, L.A. (1982a) Tuberization in sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.). In: Villareal, R.L. and Griggs, T.D. (eds) *Sweet Potato. Proceedings of the First International Symposium*. AVRDC Publication No. 82-172, Taiwan, pp. 79–94.

Wilson, L.A., Wickham, L.D. and Ferguson, T. (1998) Alternative manifestations in origin, form, and function of the primary nodal complex of yams (*Dioscorea* spp.): a review. *Tropical Agriculture (Trinidad)* 75(1), 77–83.

Wilson, W.M. and Dufour, D.L. (2002) Why 'bitter' cassava? Productivity of 'bitter' and 'sweet' cassava in a Tukanoan Indian settlement in the North-west Amazon. *Economic Botany* 56(1), 29–57.

Winch, J.E., Newhook, F.J., Jackson, G.V.H. and Cole, J.S. (1984) Studies of *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* disease on yam, *Dioscorea alata*, in Solomon Islands. *Plant Pathology* 33, 467–477.

Woolfe, J.A. (1992) *Sweet Potato, An Untapped Food Resource.* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK.

Wydra, K., Fanou, A. and Rudolph, K. (2001) Effect of cassava bacterial blight on cassava growth parameters and root yield in different ecozones and influence of the environment on symptom development. In: Akoroda, M.O. and Ngeve, J.M. (eds) *Proceedings 7th International Symposium of International Society of Tropical Root Crops*. ISTRC-AB, Benin, pp. 562–569.

Xiuzhen, C., Chunlin, L. and Keming, L. (2005) Floral organogenesis of *Colocasia bicolor* (Araceae). *Acta Botanica Yunnanica* 27(2), 193–203.

Xiuzhen, C., Chunlin, L. and Keming, L. (2006) *Colocasia yunnanensis* (Araceae), a new species from Yunnan, China. *Annales Botanici Fennici* 43(2), 139–142.

Yamakawa, O. (1998) Development of sweet potato cultivars for new processing use in Japan. *Tropical Agriculture* 75(1/2), 284–287.

Yanineck, J.S., Mégev, B., de Moraes, G.J., Bakker, F., Braun, A. and Herren, H.R. (1992) Establishment of the Neotropical predator *Amblyseius idaeus* (Acari: Phytoseiidae) in Benin, West Africa. *Biocontrol Science and Technology* 1, 323–330.

Yanineck, J.S., Onzo, A. and Ojo, J.B. (1993) Continent-wide releases of Neotropical phytoseiids against the exotic green mite in Africa. *Experimental Applied Acarology* 17, 145–160.

Yasuda, K. (1998) Integrated control of sweet potato weevils, *Euscepes postfasciatus* and *Cylas formicarius* (Coleoptera, Curculionidae). In: La Bonte, D.R., Yamashita, M. and Mochida, H. (eds) *Proceedings of International Workshop. Sweet Potato Production System Toward the 21st Century.* Kyushu National Agricultural Station, Japan, pp. 317–322.

Yen, D.E. (1974) *The Sweet Potato in Oceania: An Essay in Ethnobotany.* Bishop Museum Press, Honolulu, Hawaii.

Yen, D.E. (1982a) Sweet potato in historical perspective. In: Villareal, R.L. and Griggs, T.D. (eds) *Sweet Potato. Proceedings of the First International Symposium*. AVRDC Publication No. 82-172, Taiwan, pp. 17–30.

Yen, D.E. (1982b) The history of cultivated plants. In: May, R.J. and Nelson, H. (eds) *Melanesia: Beyond Diversity*. Australian University, Canberra, pp. 281–295.

Yen, D.E. (1991) Domestication: the lessons from New Guinea. In: Pawley, A. (ed.) *Man and a Half*. Polynesian Society, Auckland, pp. 558–569.

Yen, D.E. (1995) The development of Sahul agriculture with Australia as bystander. In: Allen, J. and O'Connell, J.F. (eds) *Transitions, Pleistocene to Holocene in Australia and Papua New Guinea. Antiquity* 69(265), 831–847.

Yen, D.E. and Wheeler, J.M. (1968) Induction of taro into the Pacific: the indications of chromosome numbers. *Ethnology* 7, 259–267.

Yoshida, Y., Seino, T. and Kanahama, K. (1999) Combination effects of temperature and photoperiod on the development of flowering spikes and tubers in Chinese yams (*Dioscorea opposita* cv. Ichoimo). *Journal of the Japanese Society of Horticultural Science* 68, 603–607.

Yoshida, Y., Takahashi, H., Kanda, H. and Kanahama, K. (2000) Interactive effects between photoperiod and seed tuber weight on the development of flowering spikes and tubers in Chinese yams (*Dioscorea opposita* cv. Ichoimo). *Journal of the Japanese Society of Horticultural Science* 69, 472–476.

Yoshida, Y., Takahashi, H., Kanda, H. and Kanahama, K. (2001) Interactive effects of photoperiods and plant growth regulators on the development of flowering spikes and tubers in Chinese yams (*Dioscorea opposita* cv. Ichoimo). *Journal of the Japanese Society of Horticultural Science* 70, 304–309.

Yoshinaga, M. (1998) Breeding of purple-fleshed sweet potato. In: La Bonte, D.R., Yamashita, M. and Mochida, H. (eds) *Proceedings of International Workshop. Sweet Potato Production System Toward the 21st Century.* Kyushu National Agricultural Station, Japan, pp. 193–199.

Yoshinaga, M., Nakatani, M. and Yamakawa, O. (1998) Relationship between anthocyanin composition and paste colour in purple-fleshed sweet potato. *Tropical Agriculture* 75(1/2), 186–188.

Yoshinaga, M., Tanaka, M. and Nakatani, M. (1999) Changes in anthocyanin content and composition of developing storage root of purple fleshed sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.). *Breeding Science* 50, 59–64.

Yoshino, H., Ochiai, T. and Tahara, M. (2000) Phylogenetic relationship between *Colocasia* and *Alocasia* based on molecular techniques. In: Zhu, D., Eyzaguirre, P.V., Zhou, M., Sears, L. and Liu, G. (eds) *Ethnobotany and Genetic Diversity of Asian Taro: Focus on China.* IPGRI Office for East Asia, Beijing, pp. 66–73.

Zaldivar, M.E., Rocha, O.J., Aguilar, G., Castro, L., Castro, E. and Barrantes, R. (2004) Genetic variation of cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz) cultivated by Chibchan Amerindians of Costa Rica. *Economic Botany* 58(2), 204–213.

Zhang, D.P. and Li, X.Q. (2004) Sweet potato as animal feed: the perspective of crop improvement for nutrition quality. In: Fuglie, K.O. and Hermann, M. (eds) *Sweet Potato Postharvest Research and Development in China.* CIP, ESAP Region, Bogor, Indonesia, pp. 47–56.

Zhang, D.P., Ghislain, M., Huamán, Z., Golmirzaie, A. and Hijmans, R. (1998a) RAPD variation in sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) cultivars from South America and Papua New Guinea. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 45, 271–277.

Zhang, D.P., Collins, W.W. and Andrade, M. (1998b) Genotype and fertilization effects on trypsin inhibitor activity in sweet potato. *HortScience* 33, 225–228.

Zhang, D.P., Cervantes, J., Huaman, Z., Carey, E. and Ghislain, M. (2000) Assessing genetic diversity of sweet potato (*Ipomoea batatas* (L.) Lam.) cultivars from tropical America using AFLP. *Genetic Resources and Crop Evolution* 47(6), 659–665.

Zhang, D.P., Carbajulca, D., Ojeda, L., Rossel, G., Milla, S., Herrera, C. and Ghislain, M. (2001) Microsatellite analysis of genetic diversity in sweet potato varieties from Latin America. In: *Scientist and Farmer: Partners in Research for the 21st Century.* Program Report 1999–2000. CIP, Lima, pp. 295–301.

Zhang, P., Jaynes, J., Potrykus, I., Gruissem, W. and Pounti-Kaerlas, J. (2003) Transfer and expression of an artificial storage protein (ASP1) gene in cassava (*Manihot esculenta* Crantz). *Transgenic Research* 12, 243–250.

Zhang, Z., Wheatley, C.C. and Corke, H. (2002) Biochemical changes during storage of sweet potato roots differing in dry matter content. *Postharvest Biology and Technology* 24(3), 317–325.

Zinsou, V., Wydra, K., Ahohuendo, B. and Hau, B. (2005) Genotype × environment interactions in symptom development and yield of cassava genotypes with artificial and natural cassava bacterial blight infections. *European Journal of Plant Pathology* 111(3), 217–233.

Zohouri, G.P. (1998) Les maladies de l'igname (*Dioscorea* spp.) In: Berthaud, J., Bricas, N. and Marchand, J.L. (eds) *L'igname, plante séculaire et culture d'avenir. Proceedings of International Symposium*. Editions CIRAD, Montpellier, France, pp. 223–230.

Zoundjihékpon, J. (1993) Biologie de la reproduction et génétique des ignames cultivées de l'Afrique de l'Ouest, *Dioscorea cayenensis-rotundata*. Doctoral thesis, Faculté des Sciences et Techniques, Université Nationale de Côte d'Ivoire, Abidjan, Côte d'Ivoire.

Zoundjihékpon, J., Hamon, S., Tio-Ouré, B. and Hamon, S. (1994) First controlled progenies checked by isozymic markers in cultivated yams, *Dioscorea cayenensis-rotundata*. *Theoretical and Applied Genetics* 88, 1011–1016.

Index

Acephate 152, 159
Acerophafus diversicornis 65
Acerophagus coccois 65
Achatina fulica 340
Achicha 357
Achu 357
Acorus calamus 300
Acraea acerata 152, 156
Acromyrmex spp. 64
Adoretus versutus 254
Aenasius vexans 65
Aeshynomene histrix 256
Aflatoxin 177
Agbelima 83
Agrius convolvuli 152, 156
Agrobacterium sp. 66, 315
  Agrobacterium tumefaciens 123–124, 315
Akpu 84
Albugo ipomoeae-pandurateae 160, 162
Alcidodes dentipes 152, 154
  A. erroneous 152, 154
Alcohol 113, 359
Aleurodicus dispersus 64
Aleurothrixus aepim 64
Aleurotrachelus socialis 64
Alocasia fornicata 300
Alocasia macrrorhiza 277, 290
Alternaria spp. 160, 161, 163, 257
Amala 273
Amorphophallus bulbifer 300
  A. campanulatus 277, 294, 300
  A. dubius 300
  A. gramineus 300
  A. indica 300
  A. italicum 300
  A. konjac 294, 358
  A. montana 300
  A. neglectum 300
  A. rivieri 300
  A. titanum 300
  A. wightii 300
Amphystomatous (stomata) 16
Amylose 85, 86, 124, 167, 353
Anaphyllum wightii 300
Anastrepha manihoti 64
  A. pickeli 64
Andropogon 56
Angola 9, 97
Anthocyanins 169, 178, 179, 275
Ants 191
Aonidomytilus albus 64
Aphelenchoides spp. 340, 342
Aphis gossypii 340, 341
Aplha-amylase 173
Apoanagyrus lopezi 65
Arabidopsis thaliana 313
Arachis pintoi 55
Araecerus fasciculatus 175
Archaeology
    aroids 279–280
    cassava 3
    sweet potato 91, 94
    yams 184
Argentina 9, 97
Ariopsis peltata 300
Arisaema leschenaultii 300
Armillariella mellea 69
Arum maculatum 300
Ascohyta sp. 257
Aspergillus sp. 66
  A. niger 178, 257
  A. tamarii 257
  A. kawachii 178
Aspidiella hartii 254

Aspidiotus destructor 254
Atap 175
AtpF intron 37
Atta spp. 64
Attiéké 83

Bacillus bassiana (or *Beauvaria bassiana*) 153, 166
B. thurigiensis 66
B. kwangsinensis 158
Bangladesh 97
Bariba (farmers) 186
Batatas section 102
Bâton de manioc 84
Bemisia afer 64
B. tabaci 64, 65, 152
Benin 9, 188, 190, 273
Benomyl 347
Beta-amylase 104
Biodegradable plastic 87
Biopesticides 75
Blosyrus spp. 152, 154
Bolivia 9
Botryodiplodia spp. 211
B. theobromae 69, 71, 257, 259
Bourewa (Fiji) 184, 280
Brachmia spp. 152–155
Brazil 9, 97, 190
Brevibacterium glutamicum 178
Burundi 97, 283

C3 pathway (photosynthetic type) 44, 235
Caladium bicolor 300
Calla palustris 300
Calopogonium sp. 56
Cambodia 9
Cameroon
aroids in 210, 283, 317, 347
cassava in 9, 71
sweet potato in 190
Canary Islands 281
Carbamate 152
Carbaryl 152, 159
Carbofuran 157
Carotene
in cassava 29, 77
in sweet potato 113, 115, 116, 118, 126, 167, 170, 178
Casavi (or cazabi), casabe (or casabi) 1, 84
Casma valley 91
Cassava 'Q' virus 72
Cassava American latent virus 72
Cassava bacterial blight (CBB) 67–68
Cassava brown streak virus disease (CBSD) 22, 72
Cassava Colombian symptomless virus 72
Cassava common mosaic virus 72
Cassava frogskin virus 72
Cassava green mottle virus 72
Cassava Ivorian Bacilliform virus 72
Cassava Kumi viruses 72
Cassava vein mosaic virus 72
Cassava virus X 72
Central African Rep. 190, 283
Ceratocystis fimbriata 120, 160, 162
C. puncticollis 151, 152, 153
Cercospora sp. 257
C. henningsii 69, 71
C. caribaea 69, 71
C. ipomoeae 160, 162
C. vicosae 69, 71
CFSD 72
Chad 190, 283
Chaetocnema confinis 152, 155
Chikwangue 84
Chilca Canyon 91
Chilling (injury) 171
Chilomima spp. 64
C. clarkei 37, 66
China
aroids in 279, 283, 307, 331
cassava in 9, 51, 53, 59, 60
sweet potato in 97, 117, 148, 167, 176, 178
Chinese yam necrotic mosaic virus (ChYNMV) 261
Chips 175, 358
Chlorox 161
Chlorpyrifos 153
Choanephora cucurbitarum 257
CIAT 11, 21, 27, 28, 30, 34, 35, 37, 68
CIP 93, 107, 108, 119, 123, 125, 166
CIRAD 212, 226, 264
Cladosporium sp. 257
C. colocasiae 340, 347
Clamps 174
CMD 22, 27, 36, 37, 73
CMV 262
Cochliobolus lunatus 69
Coelosternus spp. 64
Coir dust 82
Colchicine 105, 298, 299, 311
Coleosporium capsici 257, 259
Colletotrichum gloeosporioides 69, 71, 211, 256, 257, 258, 259
Colocasia affinis 298, 300

C. bicolor 298, 300
C. esculenta 277, 300
C. e. var. antiquorum 286
C. e. var. esculenta 286
C. fallax 298, 300
C. gigantea 298, 300, 302
C. gracilis 298
C. indica 300
C. virosa 298
C. yunnanensis 298, 300
C. mannii 298
Colocasia bobone disease virus (CBDV) 340, 348
Colombia 9, 190
Columbus (Christopher) 93, 187
Congo (*ex* Zaire) 9
Congo, Dem. Rep. 190, 283
Conoderes amplicollis 152, 155
Continuous partitioning 322
Cook Islands 94
Copper oxychloride 161
Coptotermes spp. 64
Corticium rolfsii 257
Corynebacterium spp. 256
Corynespora cassiicola 257
Cosmopterix spp. 152, 155
Costa Rica 25, 35, 190, 354
Criconemoides 67
Crop Growth Rate (CGR) 132, 133, 137, 231
Crotolaria 56
Cryptocoryne spiralis 300
Crystals of calcium oxalate 351, 352
CsCMD 71
CTCRI 21, 29, 33, 212, 220, 226, 301, 306
Cuba 9, 97, 153, 165, 190, 282
Cucumber mosaic virus (CMV) 261
Cucurbita ficifolia 124
Curing 173, 269
Curvularia sp. 257, 259
CVMD 72
Cyanidin 169
Cyanogenic glucosides 13, 17, 29, 66, 78
Cylas spp. 108, 119, 123, 141, 154, 155
C. formicarius 152
Cylas brunneus 151, 152
C. formicarius 124, 151, 153, 166
Cyrtomenus bergi 64, 66
Cyrtosperma merkusii 277, 295

DaBV 263
Dacus dorsalis 304
Dasheen Mosaic Virus (DMsV) 311, 340, 348
DAV 263, 264
DbBV 263
Dextrin 86
Diabrotica spp. 152, 155
D. undecimpunctata howardi 155
D. bateata 155
Diazinon 141
Dichloropropene 157
Dieffenbachia picta 300
Dimethoate 159
Dimethylsulphoxide (DMSO) 312
Dioscorea abyssinica 186
D. alata 183, 193
D. batatas 201
D. bulbifera 183, 187, 195
D. burkilliana 186
D. cayenensis 183, 186, 197
D. esculenta 183, 199
D. hamiltonii 208
D. hastata 209
D. hispida 185
D. minutifolia 209
D. nummularia 183, 202
D. opposita-japonica 183, 201, 251
D. pentaphylla 183, 203
D. persimilis 208
D. praehensilis 186
D. rotundata 183, 199
D. smilacifolia 209
D. transversa 183, 204
D. trifida 183, 187, 205
Dioscorea alata bacilliform virus (DaBV) 261
Dioscorea alata virus (syn. Yam mild mosaic virus) (DAV) 261
Dioscorea bulbifera bacilliform virus (DbBV) 261
Dioscorea dumetorum potyvirus (DDV) 261
Dioscorea dumetorum virus (DdV) 261
Dioscorea esculenta virus (DEV) 261
Dioscorea latent virus (DLV) 261
Dioscorea latent virus (DLV) 261
Dioscorea mottle virus (DMoV) 261
Dioscorea trifida virus (DTV) 261
Dioscorine 185
Diosgenin 268
Diplodia sp. 257
Distal (part of tuber) 241
Diuron 56
Dolichos sp. 55
Dominican Rep.
aroids in 283, 331, 332, 354
sweet potato in 97, 153, 166
yams in 190

Dracunculus vulgaris 300
Drosophilella pisticola 304
D. stamenicola 304

East African cassava mosaic 72
Easter Island 94
Ecuador 9
Egypt 97, 283, 331
ELISA 124, 165, 260, 261, 348
Elsinoe batatas 108, 110, 119, 141, 160
E. brasiliensis 69
EPSP 37
Equatorial Guinea 317
Erinnyis alope 64
E. ello 64, 66
Erwinia carotovora 211, 256, 340
E. ssp. carotovora 68
E. carotovora 343
E. chrysanthemi 158, 343
Erythrina spp. 239
Escherichia coli 177
Ethanol 87
Ethiopia 97, 118, 190, 225
EU (European Union) 81, 270
Eucopidocaulus spp. 339, 354
Euscepes postfasciatus 151, 152, 166
Evapotranspiration (ET) 326
Exon and intron beta-amylase genes 93

Farinha 7
Farinha d'agua 84
Fenamiphos 157
Fenthion 152
Fiji Islands 77, 184, 190, 280, 283
Flakes 274
Flemingia macrophylla 55
Flour 84, 274, 357, 358, 360
Flow cytometry 210
Fluometuron 56
Fomes lignosus 69
France 201, 251
Frankliniella williamsi 64, 67
Fructose 87, 172, 267
Fufu
made with cassava 10, 27, 83, 84
made with yam 181, 201, 265, 273
Fuligo violacea 160
Fusarium spp. 66, 71, 257, 259
F. monoliforme 69, 257
F. oxysporum sp. batatas 160, 162
F. oxysporum 69, 257
F. semitectum 69
F. solani sp. batatas 160, 163
Futuna (Island) 330

Gabon 190, 283
Galactose 258
Gallirallus philippensis 287
Gari 10, 83, 84
Ghana
aroids in 283, 317, 357
cassava in 9, 25, 28, 60
yams in 188, 190, 223, 270
Gibberellic acid 223, 271, 312, 313
Gliricidia sepium 153, 303
Glomerella cingulata 69, 71, 256, 257
G. manihotis 71
Glucoisomerase 87
Glucose 86, 87, 172, 267
Glutamate 178
Glycine sp. 55, 334, 340
Glyphosate 37, 56, 140, 145, 334
Goías state, Brazil 4, 6
Gonaspidiotus hartii 254
Goplana dioscoreae 257
Green panic 157
Guadeloupe 201, 210, 235
Guinea 190, 283
GUS beta-glucoronidase 225
Guyana 7, 190

Haiti 9, 97, 190
HarvestPlus initiative 77
Hawaii
aroids in 283, 315, 331, 333, 357, 359
sweet potato in 94
Hawaiians 188
Helicobadisum mompa 160
Heliconia indica 273
Helicotylenchus spp. 67, 256, 340, 342,
Heminthosporium sp. 257
Heterolligus meles 253
H. appius 253
Heteronuchus licas 253
Heterospoium luci 257
Heterotermes tenuis 64
Hippotion celeri 340
Hirschmanniella miticausa 340, 342
Hispaniola 93
HPLC analyses 113, 115
Hypostomatous (stomata) 16, 46

Ipomoea aquatica 99
I. aquatica 152
I. batatas var. apiculata 92
I. cyanchifolia 103
I. gracilis 102, 103, 120
I. indica 152
I. lacunosa 103, 120
I. leucantha 91, 120
I. littoralis 91, 103, 120
I. nil 111, 124
I. peruviana 103
I. pes-caprae 152
I. ramoni 120
I. ramosissima 103
I. tabascana 103
I. tenuissima 103
I. tiliacea 102, 103, 120
I. trichocarpa 103, 120
I. trifida 91, 92, 102, 103, 104, 105, 120,
I. triloba 92, 102, 103, 120
I. umbraticola 103
I. x grandiflora 103
I. x leucantha 103
IITA
cassava in 10, 21, 26, 28, 33, 34, 37, 68, 73
yams in 189, 121, 216, 220, 222
Illosporium sp. 257
Imperata cylindrica 56, 153
India 9, 51, 59, 95, 97, 213, 215, 335
Indian cassava mosaic virus 72
Indonesia 9, 97, 115, 294, 345
INIVIT 166
INRA 212, 217, 218, 226
Ivory Coast
aroids in 283
cassava in 52
yams in 181, 188, 190, 212, 215, 242, 270

Jamaica 97, 190
Japan
aroids in 283, 294, 331
sweet potato in 97, 107, 110, 113, 117, 121, 130, 132, 143, 158, 159, 162, 169, 1711, 178, 179
yams in 190
Japanese yam mosaic virus (JYMV) 261
Jatrophobia (Eudiplosis) brasiliensis 64
Jiaodong 284

K_2O/N ratio 134
Kamote 95
Kasetsart University (Thailand) 28
Kenya 97, 170
Kerala 294
Konnyaku 358
Konzo (disease) 78
Kuk swamp (PNG) 184, 279
Kumara 93
Kyushu 136, 143

Lactobacillus plantarum 357
Lactococcus lactis 357
Lafun 10
Lagenandra meeboldii 300
L. ovata 300
Lagochirus spp. 64
LAI
in aroids 321, 326
in cassava 40, 42, 43, 47
in sweet potato 132, 136, 137
in yams 235, 238
Laiyang 284
Landang 83
Lapita 184
Laplap 83, 273, 357
Lasia spinosa 300
Lasiodiplodia theobromae 257
Lepdiotica reichei 254
Leucaena sp. 55
Leuconostic lactis 357
Leucopholis rorida 64
Liberia 283
Light emitting diode (LED) 154
Linamarase 84
Linamarin 17
Linuron 56
Longidorus sylphus 340, 342, 340
Lotaustralin 17
Louisiana State University (LSU) 123
Lycopene 78

Macrophomina phaseoli 257
Manihot aescufolia 4, 18
M. anomala 18, 31
M. apii 67
M. caerulescens 31
M. carthaginensis 4
M. catinga 31
M. dichotoma 18, 31
M. esculenta spp. flabellifolia 4, 5, 6, 13
M. esculenta spp. peruviana 4
M. glaziovii 13, 31, 33, 67
M. grahami 4, 18

Manihot aescufolia– continued
M. leptophylla 4
M. neusana 18
M. oligantha subsp. nesteli 31
M. palmata 68
M. pilosa 18
M. pohlii 18
M. pruinosa 4, 33
M. pseudoglaziovii 18, 31
M. saxicola 4
M. stipularis 31
M. tripartita 31
M. tristis 31
M. zehntneri 18
Madagascar 9, 77, 97, 187, 283
Madeira 281
Malate dehydrogenase 208
Malathion 159
Malaysia 9, 49, 52, 95, 304, 345
Maltodextrins 87
Maltose 172, 267
Mancozeb 141, 161
Mannose 258, 360
Marajo Island 3
Mato Grosso 6
Meloidogyne spp. 67, 156, 157, 211, 256, 340, 343
M. arenaria 156, 255,
M. hapla 156, 255
M. incognita 156, 254, 255, 256, 342
M. javanica 156, 255, 342
Merremia peltata 340
Metarhizium anisopliae var. *anisopliae* 341
Methyl bromide 157, 341, 355
Metolachlor 56
Mexico 97
Mid-Holocene *see also* Archaeology 184, 279
Milking (yam double harvest) 251, 252
Monilochaetes infuscans 160
Monochaetia sp. 257
Mononychellus tanajoa 64, 65
Mozambique 9
Mucuna sp. 55, 56, 334, 340
M. pruriens 56, 256
Myanmar 9
Mychosphaerella dioscoreicola 257
Mycotoxin 83

NAR (net assimilatory rate) 42, 132, 133, 134, 137
Neosilba perezi 64
Nesophrosyne 159
New Caledonia
aroids in 337
yams in 215, 221, 240, 244, 265, 267
New England 96
New Zealand
sweet potato in 94, 131, 132, 145, 190
aroids in 284, 331, 354, 356
N-fixing legume species 55
Niam 181
Nicaragua 309, 354
Nigeria
aroids in 283, 298, 333, 337, 357
cassava in 9, 23, 28, 71, 97
yams in 188, 189, 190, 215, 217, 221, 244, 249, 251, 256, 260
NIRS (near infrared reflectance spectroscopy) 113
Noodles 167
North Carolina 140
North Korea 97
No-tillage (zero tillage) 49, 50

Ochyrotica fasciata 152, 155
Oidium sp. 257
O. manihotis 69
Omphisa anastomasalis 152, 155
Ophiobolus manihotis 69
Ornamental traits 308
Orosius lotopharogum ryukyuensis 159
Oxalates 170
Oxamyl 157

Paleolithic 184
Panama 190
Panicum artropurpureus 157
P. maximum 56
P. maximum var. trichoglume 157
Papua New Guinea
aroids in 279, 280, 301, 309, 324, 332, 345
cassava in 77
sweet potato in 94, 119, 122, 125, 142, 161, 169,
yams in 184, 190, 234, 267
Papuana spp. 339, 340
P. biroi 339
P. huebneri 339
P. ininermis 339
P. szentivanyi 339
P. trinodosa 339
P. uninodis 339

P. vexans 346
P. woodlarkiana 339
Paraguay 9
Paraquat 56, 124
Patchiella reaumuri 340, 342
Pemphigus sp. 341
Penicillium cyclopium 257
P. gladioli 257
P. oxalicum 257
P. sclerotigenum 257
Pennisetum sp. 56
Peonidin 169
PEP carboxylase 32
Periconia sp. 257
Periderm 101
Peroxidase 273
Peru 9, 97, 118
Pestalotia sp. 257
Pestalotiopsis cruenta 257
Phaeolus manihotis 69
P. vulgaris 144
Phasic partitioning 322
Pheidole megacephala 166
Phenacoccus herreni 64, 65
P. manihoti 64, 65
Phenols 273
Phichit plain, Thailand 330
Philippines 167
aroids in 283, 345
cassava in 9, 51, 52, 53, 59, 83
sweet potato in 97, 174
PhilRootcrops 301
Phoma (or Phyllosticta) 71, 257, 259
Phomopsis sp. 257, 259
P. ipomoea-batatas 160
P. manihot 69
Phyllophaga spp. 64
Phyllostica spp. 69, 256, 257
P. batatas 160
P. colocasiophila *340, 347*
Physarum plumbeum 160
Phytoliths 6
Phytophthora spp. 71
P. colocasiae 301, 306, 340, 343, 344, 345, 349
P. dreschleri 69
P. erythropseptica 69
P. parasitica 69
P. richardii 69
Piper aduncum 153
Pistia stratiotes 300
Pits 174
Placali 83
Planococcus citri 254
Plenodomus destruens 160, 163
PNC (primary nodal complex) 229, 230
Poi 357
Polyethylene bags 82, 221, 355
Polyethylene glycol (PEG)-mediated osmotic stress 326
Polyphenoloxidase (PPO) 80, 273
Polyphenols 167
Pomacea canaliculata 340, 342
P. bridgesii 342
P. conica 342
P. paludosa 342
Pratylenchus spp. 67, 340, 342
P. coffeae 254, 255, 258
Prionoryctes rufopiceus 254
P. caniculus 254
Proximal (part of tuber) 241
Pseudococcus mandioca 64
Pseudomonas batatae 158
P. solanacearum 158
Pueraria sp. 55
P. phaseoloides 256, 334, 340
Puerto Rico 225, 249, 256
Pythium spp. 66, 71, 160, 257, 317
P. aphanidermatum 346
P. carolinianum 346
P. graminicolum 346
P. irregulare 346
P. middletonii 346
P. myriotylum 340, 346, 347, 349
P. schleroteichum 69
P. splendens 346, 347

QTL 36, 314

Radiation Use Efficiency (RUE) 235
Raffinose 267
Rancho Peludo 3
Remusatia vivipara 300
Rhizoctonia sp. 257
Rhizopus nigricans 160, 163
R. nodosus 257
R. stolonifer 163
Ridomil 347
Rondónia 6
Rotylenchulus sp. 67
R. reniformis 256
R. solani 259
Rwanda 97, 98, 283
Ryuku (Islands) 159, 314

Saccharomyces cerevisiae 178
Saccharose 267
Saccharum spontaneum 339
Saint Vincent 190
Salmonella sp. 177
Samoa 190
Sào Tomé 188, 282, 283
Scirtothrips manihoti 64, 67
Sclerotium sp. 71
  S. bataticola 160–161, 163
  S. bradys 254, 255, 256
  S. ipomoea 158
  S. rolfsii 69, 160, 162, 256, 315, 340, 348
Scutellonema 67
Septoria babaticola 160
Serratia spp. 256
Shandong 284
Sierra de Tamaulipas 3
Sierra Leone 28, 181
Silba pendula 64
Siratro 157
Sodium hypochlorite 355
Solomon Islands
    aroids in 280, 283
    cassava in 77
    sweet potato in 94, 97, 159, 161, 190
South African mosaic virus 72
South Korea 97
Spermidine synthase genes 124
SPFMV 124
Sphaceloma batatas 160
  S. manihoticola 69
Sphaeropsis sp. 257
Sphaerostilbe repens 69, 257
SPMMV 165
SPMV 165
Sporophytic type 108
SPVD 123
SPVY 165
SPYN 226
Sree Harsha 33
Sree Keerthi 255
Sree Padma 306
Sri Lanka 9, 325
Stachybotrys sp. 257
Standard pan evaporation (SPE) 326
Starch 274, 275
    extraction 86, 358
Stemphyllium sp. 257
Steroidal sapogenins 268
Steudnera discolor 300
Stictococcus vayssierei 64
Streptomyces ipomoea 158
  S. guianensis 54, 55
Sucrose 172
Sudan 190
Sweet potato chloritic stunt virus (SPCSV) 164
Sweet potato feathery mottle virus (SPFMV) 163
Sweet potato mild virus (SPMV) 164
Sweet potato virus 2 (SPV2) 163
Sweet potato virus G (SPVG) 164
Sweet types, cassava 3
Sweet potato virus disease (SPVD) 164

T. proserpina 348
Tagetes spp. 256
Tahiti 93
Taiwan 107
Tamil Nadu 49
TAN 78
TANSAO 306, 315, 346
Tanu 243
Tanzania 9, 97
Taro bacilliform virus (TaBV) 340, 348
Taro reovirus (TaRV) 340
Taro reovirus (TaRV) 349
Taro vein chlorosis virus (TaVCV) 340
Taro vein chlorosis virus (TaVCV) 349
Tarophagus proserpina 340, 341
TCS (true cassava seeds) 23
Tehucan Valley 3
Tephrosia candida 55
Terpenoids 154
Tetramorium guineense 166
Tetranychus urticae 64, 65
Thailand 9, 52, 53, 283, 330, 345
Theriophonum indicum 300
  T. minutum 300
Thermogenesis 302
Togo 190
Tonga 161
Tracheids 101
Trichoderma pseudokoningii 85
Trinidad and Tobago 283
Trypsin inhibitor activity (TIA)
    in aroids 352, 353
    in sweet potato 118, 168, 173
    in yams 266
Tylenchorhynchus spp. 340, 342
Typhlodromalus aripo 65
Typhonium bulbiferum 300
  T. cuspidatum 300
  T. trilobatum 300

Uganda
cassava in 9
sweet potato in 97, 119, 143, 164, 175
UHT 274
Upper Rio Negro, Venezuela 5
Uromyces spp. 69, 97
USA (United States)
aroids in 283, 354
cassava in 81,
sweet potato in 96, 98, 107, 115, 122, 129, 130, 131, 132, 150, 158, 162, 169, 171, 173, 176, 178
yams in 270

Vanuatu
aroids in 280, 287
cassava in 19, 25, 83
sweet potato in 136, 159, 161
yams in 202, 213, 215, 216, 221, 249, 267, 273
VARTC 226
VASI 226
Vatiga illudens 64, 67
Vatiga manihotae 64, 67
Vegetative growth index (VGI) 307, 327
Venezuela 9, 97, 190
Veracruz 92
Vermicularia sp. 257
Verticilium spp. 163
Vetiveria zizanioides 54
Vietnam
aroids in 329, 345
cassava in 9, 49, 60
sweet potato in 97, 176, 177

Wax coating 172, 268
Waxy locus (*Wx*) 30, 31

Xanthomonas batatas 158
X. axonopodis pv. manihotis 22, 67, 68
Xanthosoma atrovirens 290
X. auriculatum 298
X. belophyllum 298
X. brasiliense 290
X. caracu 298
X. helleborifolium 298
X. hylae 317
X. maximilianii 317
X. mexicanum 298
X. pentaphyllum 298
X. robustum 298
X. sagittifolium 277, 288, 300
X. undipes 298
X. violaceum 290, 300
Xiphinema sp. 67
Xylem tissues 101

Yam internal brown spot virus (IBSV) 261
Yam mosaic virus (YMV) 206, 217, 219, 263, 264, 261
YMMV 263
Ynhame 181

Zimbabwe 121
Zonocerus elegans 64
Z. variegatus 64